00080547

BOMBAY BRANCH
OF THE
Royal Asiatic Society.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 23 January, 2019

WORKS OF PROF. WM. H. BURR

PUBLISHED BY

JOHN WILEY & SONS, Inc.

Ancient and Modern Engineering and the Isthmian Canal.

8vo, xv + 476 pages, profusely illustrated, including many half-tones. Cloth, $3.50 net.

Elasticity and Resistance of Materials of Engineering.

For the use of Engineers and Students. Containing the latest engineering experience and tests. Sixth Edition, rewritten and enlarged. 8vo, 1100 pages. Cloth, $7.50.

Suspension Bridges—Arch Ribs and Cantilevers.

8vo, xi + 417 pages, 68 figures, and 6 full-page and folding plates. Cloth, $4.50 net.

BY PROF. BURR and DR. FALK

The Graphic Method by Influence Lines for Bridge and Roof Computations.

8vo, xi + 253 pages, 4 folding plates. Cloth, $3.00.

The Design and Construction of Metallic Bridges.

8vo, xiii + 532 pages, many figures in the text and 4 folding plates. Cloth, $5.00.

BY DR. MYRON S. FALK

PUBLISHED BY

MYRON C. CLARK PUBLISHING CO.,
355 DEARBORN ST., CHICAGO, ILL.

Cements, Mortars and Concretes—Their Physical Properties.

Containing the results of late investigations upon these materials. 8vo, 176 pages. Cloth, $2.50.

ANCIENT

AND

MODERN ENGINEERING

AND

THE ISTHMIAN CANAL.

BY

WILLIAM H. BURR, C.E.,

Professor of Civil Engineering in Columbia University; Member of the American Society of Civil Engineers and of the Institution of Civil Engineers of Great Britain.

FIRST EDITION.

FIRST THOUSAND.

NEW YORK:

JOHN WILEY & SONS.

LONDON: CHAPMAN & HALL, LIMITED.

1907.

Copyright, 1902,
BY
WILLIAM H. BURR

The Scientific Press
Robert Drummond and Company
New York

INTRODUCTION.

THIS book is the outcome of a course of six lectures delivered at the Cooper Union in the city of New York in February and March, 1902, under the auspices of Columbia University. It seemed desirable by the President of the University that the subject-matter of the lectures should be prepared for ultimate publication. The six Parts of the book, therefore, comprise the substance of the six lectures, suitably expanded for the purposes of publication.

It may be interesting to state that the half-tone illustrations have, with scarcely an exception, been prepared from photographs of the actual subjects illustrated. All such illustrations in Parts V and VI devoted to the Nicaragua and Panama Canal routes are made from photographs at the various locations by members of the force of the Isthmian Canal Commission; they are, therefore, absolutely true representations of the actual localities to which they apply.

For other illustrations the author wishes to express his indebtedness to Messrs. G. P. Putnam's Sons, Messrs. Turneaure and Russell, John Wiley & Sons, The Morrison-Jewell Filtration Company, Mr. H. M. Sperry, Signal Engineer, *The Engineering News*, *The Railroad Gazette*, The American Society of Civil Engineers, The Standard Switch and Signal Company, The

Baldwin Locomotive Works, the American Locomotive Works, Mr. Clemens Herschel, and the International Pump Company, and to others from whom the author has received courtesies which he deeply appreciates.

The classification or division of the matter of the text, and the table of contents, have been made so complete, with a view to convenience even of the desultory reader in seeking any particular subject or paragraph, that no index has been prepared, as it is believed that the table of contents, as arranged, practically supplies the information ordinarily given by a comprehensive index.

Complete and detailed treatments of the purely technical matters covered by Part II will be found in the author's "Elasticity and Resistance of Materials" and in his "Stresses in Bridge and Roof Trusses, Arched Ribs and Suspension Bridges."

W. H. B.

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY,
October 24, 1902.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

ANCIENT CIVIL-ENGINEERING WORKS.

CHAPTER I.

ART.		PAGE
1.	Introductory	1
2.	Hydraulic Works of Chaldea and Egypt	2
3.	Structural Works in Chaldea and Egypt	4
4.	Ancient Maritime Commerce	7
5.	The Change of the Nile Channel at Memphis	8
6.	The Pyramids	8
7.	Obelisks, Labyrinths, and Temples	12
8.	Nile Irrigation	13
9.	Prehistoric Bridge-building	14
10.	Ancient Brick-making	15
11.	Ancient Arches	16

CHAPTER II.

12.	The Beginnings of Engineering Works of Record	19
13.	The Appian Way and other Roman Roads	20
14.	Natural Advantages of Rome in Structural Stones	22
15.	Pozzuolana Hydraulic Cement	24
16.	Roman Bricks and Masonry	25
17.	Roman Building Laws	27
18.	Old Roman Walls	27
19.	The Servian Wall	28
20.	Old Roman Sewers	29
21.	Early Roman Bridges	31
22.	Bridge of Alcantara	35
23.	Military Bridges of the Romans	35
24.	The Roman Arch	36

CHAPTER III.

ART.		PAGE
25.	The Roman Water-supply	37
26.	The Roman Aqueducts	38
27.	Anio Vetus	39
28.	Tepula	40
29.	Virgo	40
30.	Alsietina	40
31.	Claudia	41
32.	Anio Novus	42
33.	Lengths and Dates of Aqueducts	42
34.	Intakes and Settling-basins	43
35.	Delivery-tanks	44
36.	Leakage and Lining of Aqueducts	44
37.	Grade of Aqueduct Channels	45
38.	Qualities of Roman Waters	46
39.	Combined Aqueducts	46
40.	Property Rights in Roman Waters	46
41.	Adjutages and Unit of Measurement	47
42.	The Stealing of Water	49
43.	Aqueduct Alignment and Design of Siphons	49

CHAPTER IV.

44.	Antiquity of Masonry Aqueducts	52
45.	Pont du Gard	52
46.	Aqueducts at Segovia, Metz, and other Places	53
47.	Tunnels	54
48.	Ostia, the Harbor of Rome	56
49.	Harbors of Claudius and Trajan	58

CHAPTER V.

50.	Ancient Engineering Science	60
51.	Ancient Views of the Physical Properties of Materials	61
52.	Roman Civil Engineers Searching for Water	62
53.	Locating and Designing Conduits	63
54.	Siphons	64
55.	Healthful Sites for Cities	65
56.	Foundations of Structures	65
57.	Pozzuolana and Sand	66
58.	Lime Mortar	66
59.	Roman Bricks according to Vitruvius	66
60.	Roman Timber	67
61.	The Rules of Vitruvius for Harbors	67
62.	The Thrusts of Arches and Earth; Retaining-walls and Pavements	68
63.	The Professional Spirit of Vitruvius	68
64.	Mechanical Appliances of the Ancients	69
65.	Unlimited Forces and Time	69

PART II.

BRIDGES.

CHAPTER VI.

ART.		PAGE
66.	Introductory	70
67.	First Cast-iron Arch	70
68.	Early Timber Bridges in America	71
69.	Town Lattice Bridge	72
70.	Howe Truss	74
71.	Pratt Truss	76
72.	Squire Whipple's Work	77
73.	Character of Work of Early Builders	77

CHAPTER VII.

74.	Modern Bridge Theory	78
75.	The Stresses in Beams	79
76.	Vertical and Horizontal Shearing Stresses	80
77.	Law of Variation of Stresses of Tension and Compression	82
78.	Fundamental Formulæ of Theory of Beams	83
79.	Practical Applications	85
80.	Deflection	86
81.	Bending Moments and Shears with Single Load	87
82.	Bending Moments and Shears with any System of Loads	89
83.	Bending Moments and Shears with Uniform Loads	92
84.	Greatest Shear for Uniform Moving Load	94
85.	Bending Moments and Shears for Cantilever Beams	96
86.	Greatest Bending Moment with any System of Loading	97
87.	Applications to Rolled Beams	99

CHAPTER VIII.

88.	The Truss Element or Triangle of Bracing	100
89.	Simple Trusses	101
90.	The Pratt Truss Type	102
91.	The Howe Truss Type	105
92.	The Simple Triangular Truss	106
93.	Through- and Deck-Bridges	108
94.	Multiple Systems of Triangulation	108
95.	Influence of Mill and Shop Capacity on Length of Span	109
96.	Trusses with Broken or Inclined Chords	109
97.	Position of any Moving Load for Greatest Webb Stress	110
98.	Application of Criterions for both Chord and Web Stresses	111
99.	Influence Lines	112
100.	Influence Lines for Moments both for Beams and Trusses	113
101.	Influence Lines for Shears both for Beams and Trusses	115
102.	Application of Influence-line Method to Trusses	118

CHAPTER IX.

ART. PAGE
103. Lateral Wind Pressure on Trusses ... 122
104. Upper and Lower Lateral Bracing ... 124
105. Bridge Plans and Shopwork ... 125
106. Erection of Bridges ... 126
107. Statically Determinate Trusses ... 126
108. Continuous Beams and Trusses—Theorem of Three Moments ... 128
109. Application to Draw- or Swing-bridges ... 130
110. Special Method for Deflection of Trusses ... 130
111. Application of Method for Deflection of Triangular Frame ... 133
112. Application of Method for Deflection to Truss ... 134
113. Method of Least Work ... 137
114. Application of Method of Least Work to General Problem ... 138
115. Application of Method of Least Work to Trussed Beam ... 139
116. Removal of Indetermination by Methods of Least Work and Deflection ... 141

CHAPTER X.

117. The Arched Rib, of both Steel and Masonry ... 142
118. Arched Rib with Ends Fixed ... 144
119. Arched Rib with Ends Jointed ... 144
120. Arched Rib with Crown and Ends Jointed ... 145
121. Relative Stiffness of Arched Ribs ... 145
122. General Conditions of Analysis of Arched Ribs ... 146

CHAPTER XI.

123. Beams of Combined Steel and Concrete ... 149

CHAPTER XII.

124. The Masonry Arch ... 154
125. Old and New Theories of the Arch ... 155
126. Stress Conditions in the Arch-ring ... 158
127. Applications to an Actual Arch ... 158
128. Intensities of Pressure in the Arch-ring ... 162
129. Permissible Working Pressures ... 163
130. Largest Arch Spans ... 163

CHAPTER XIII.

131. Cantilever and Stiffened Suspension Bridges ... 166
132. Cantilever Bridges ... 166
133. Stiffened Suspension Bridges ... 168
134. The Stiffening Truss ... 170
135. Location and Arrangement of Stiffening Trusses ... 171
136. Division of Load between Cables and Stiffening Truss ... 173
137. Stresses in Cables and Moments and Shears in Trusses ... 174
138. Thermal Stresses and Moments in Stiffened Suspension Bridges ... 175
139. Formation of the Cables ... 176
140. Economical Limits of Spans ... 177

PART III.

WATER-WORKS FOR CITIES AND TOWNS.

CHAPTER XIV.

ART.		PAGE
141.	Introductory	179
142.	First Steam-pumps	180
143.	Water-supply of Paris and London	181
144.	Early Water-pipes	181
145.	Earliest Water-supplies in the United States	182
146.	Quality and Uses of Public Water-supply	182
147.	Amount of Public Water-supply	183
148.	Increase of Daily Consumption and the Division of that Consumption	183
149.	Waste of Public Water	186
150.	Analysis of Reasonable Daily Supply per Head of Population	188
151.	Actual Daily Consumption in Cities of the United States	189
152.	Actual Daily Consumption in Foreign Cities	191
153.	Variations in Rate of Daily Consumption	192
154.	Supply of Fire-streams	193

CHAPTER XV.

155.	Waste of Water, Particularly in the City of New York	196
156.	Division of Daily Consumption in the City of New York	197
157.	Daily Domestic Consumption	198
158.	Incurable and Curable Wastes	199
159.	Needless and Incurable Waste in City of New York	200
160.	Increase in Population	200
161.	Sources of Public Water-supplies	202
162.	Rain-gauges and their Records	204
163.	Elements of Annual and Monthly Rainfall	204
164.	Hourly or Less Rates of Rainfall	207
165.	Extent of Heavy Rain-storms	207
166.	Provision for Low Rainfall Years	208
167.	Available Portion of Rainfall or Run-off of Watersheds	209
168.	Run-off of Sudbury Watershed	211
169.	Run-off of Croton Watershed	211
170.	Evaporation from Reservoirs	213
171.	Evaporation from the Earth's Surface	215

CHAPTER XVI.

172.	Application of Fitzgerald's Results to the Croton Watershed	216
173.	The Capacity of the Croton Watershed	217
174.	Necessary Storage for New York Supply to Compensate for Deficiency	218
175.	No Exact Rule for Storage Capacity	220
176.	The Color of Water	221
177.	Stripping Reservoir Sites	222

ART. PAGE
178. Average Depth of Reservoirs should be as Great as Practicable 224
179. Overturn of Contents of Reservoirs Due to Seasonal Changes of Temperature.. 224
180. The Construction of Reservoirs..... 225
181. Gate-houses, and Pipe-lines in Embankments..... 229
182. High Masonry Dams..... 230

CHAPTER XVII.

183. Gravity Supplies..... 234
184. Masonry Conduits..... 234
185. Metal Conduits..... 236
186. General Formula for Discharge of Conduits—Chezy's Formula..... 237
187. Kutter's Formula..... 239
188. Hydraulic Gradient..... 241
189. Flow of Water in Large Masonry Conduits..... 244
190. Flow of Water through Large Closed Pipes 245
191. Change of Hydraulic Gradient by Changing Diameter of Pipe..... 250
192. Control of Flow by Gates at Upper End of Pipe-line..... 251
193. Flow in Old and New Cast-iron Pipes—Tubercles..... 251
194. Timber-stave Pipes..... 253

CHAPTER XVIII.

195. Pumping and Pumps..... 254
196. Resistances of Pumps and Main—Dynamic Head 258
197. Duty of Pumping-engines..... 260
198. Data to be Observed in Pumping-engine Tests..... 261
199. Basis of Computations for Duty..... 262
200. Heat-units and Ash in 100 Pounds of Coal, and Amount of Work Equivalent to a Heat-unit..... 262
201. Three Methods of Estimating Duty..... 265
202. Trial Test and Duty of Allis Pumping-engine 265
203. Conditions Affecting Duty of Pumping-engines..... 266
204. Speeds and Duties of Modern Pumping-engines 266

CHAPTER XIX.

205. Distributing-reservoirs and their Capacities..... 267
206. System of Distributing Mains and Pipes 268
207. Diameters of and Velocities in Distributing Mains and Pipes 269
208. Required Pressures in Mains and Pipes..... 270
209. Fire-hydrants..... 270
210. Elements of Distributing Systems..... 270

CHAPTER XX.

211. Sanitary Improvement of Public Water-supplies..... 276
212. Improvement by Sedimentation..... 277
213. Sedimentation Aided by Chemicals..... 279
214. Amount of Solid Matter Removed by Sedimentation 279
215. Two Methods of Operating Sedimentation-basins..... 279

ART. PAGE
216. Sizes and Construction of Settling-basins ... 280
217. Two Methods of Filtration ... 281
218. Conditions Necessary for Reduction of Organic Matter ... 282
219. Slow Filtration through Sand—Intermittent Filtration ... 283
220. Removal of Bacteria in the Filter ... 286
221. Preliminary Treatment—Sizes of Sand Grains ... 286
222. Most Effective Sizes of Sand Grains ... 288
223. Air and Water Capacities ... 288
224. Bacterial Efficiency and Purification—Hygienic Efficiency ... 290
225. Bacterial Activity near Top of Filter ... 290
226. Rate of Filtration ... 291
227. Effective Head on Filter ... 291
228. Constant Rate of Filtration Necessary ... 292
229. Scraping of Filters ... 293
230. Introduction of Water to Intermittent Filters ... 294
231. Effect of Low Temperature ... 294
232. Choice of Intermittent or Continuous Filtration ... 294
233. Size and Arrangement of Slow Sand Filters ... 295
234. Design of Filter-beds ... 296
235. Covered Filters ... 299
236. Clear-water Drain-pipes of Filters ... 299
237. Arrangement of the Sand at Lawrence and Albany ... 300
238. Velocity of Flow through Sand ... 302
239. Frequency of Scraping and Amount Filtered between Scrapings ... 303
240. Cleaning the Clogged Sand ... 303
241. Controlling or Regulating Apparatus ... 305
242. Cost of Slow Sand Filters ... 307
243. Cost of Operation of Albany Filter ... 308
244. Operation and Cost of Operation of Lawrence Filter ... 309
245. Sanitary Results of Operation of Lawrence and Albany Filters ... 310
246. Rapid Filtration with Coagulants ... 311
247. Operation of Coagulants ... 312
248. Principal Parts of Mechanical Filter-plant—Coagulation and Subsidence ... 313
249. Amount of Coagulant—Advantageous Effect of Alum on Organic Matter ... 314
250. High Heads and Rates for Rapid Filtration ... 315
251. Types and General Arrangement of Mechanical Filters ... 316
252. Cost of Mechanical Filters ... 318
253. Relative Features of Slow and Rapid Filtration ... 318

PART IV.

SOME FEATURES OF RAILROAD ENGINEERING.

CHAPTER XXI.

254. Introductory ... 320
255. Train Resistances ... 322
256. Grades ... 322

ART. PAGE
257. Curves 324
258. Resistance of Curves and Compensation in Grades 324
259. Transition Curves 325
260. Road-bed, including Ties 327
261. Mountain Locations of Railroad Lines 328
262. The Georgetown Loop 331
263. Tunnel-loop Location, Rhætian Railways, Switzerland 331

CHAPTER XXII.

264. Railroad Signalling 335
265. The Pilot Guard 335
266. The Train Staff 335
267. First Basis of Railroad Signalling 336
268. Code of American Railway Association 337
268*a*. The Block 338
269. Three Classes of Railroad Signals 338
270. The Banner Signal 338
271. The Semaphore 340
272. Colors for Signalling 340
273. Indications of the Semaphore 341
274. General Character of Block System 342
275. Block Systems in Use 343
276. Locations of Signals 344
277. Home, Distant, and Advance Signals 344
278. Typical Working of Auto-controlled Manual System 345
279. General Results 348
280. Distant Signals 349
281. Function of Advance Signals 349
282. Signalling at a Single-track Crossing 350
283. Signalling at a Double-track Crossing 352
284. Signalling for Double-track Junction and Cross-over 352
285. General Observations 353
286. Interlocking-machines 354
287. Methods of Applying Power in Systems of Signalling 357
288. Train-staff Signalling 358

CHAPTER XXIII.

289. Evolution of the Locomotive 363
290. Increase of Locomotive Weight and Rate of Combustion of Fuel 365
291. Principal Parts of a Modern Locomotive 366
292. The Wootten Fire-box and Boiler 367
293. Locomotives with Wootten Boilers 370
294. Recent Improvements in Locomotive Design 372
295. Compound Locomotives with Tandem Cylinders 373
296. Evaporative Efficiency of Different Rates of Combustion 375
296*a*. Tractive Force of a Locomotive 376
297. Central Atlantic Type of Locomotive 378
298. Consolidation Engine, N. Y. C. & H. R. R. R. 379

ART. PAGE
299. P., B. & L. E. Consolidation Engine..... 380
300. L. S. & M. S, Fast Passenger Engine..... 381
301. Northern Pacific Tandem Compound Locomotive..... 382
302. Union Pacific Vauclain Compound Locomotive..... 384
303. Southern Pacific Mogul with Vanderbilt Boiler..... 384
304. The "Soo" Decapod Locomotive..... 385
305. The A., T. & S. F. Decapod, the Heaviest Locomotive yet Built..... 386
306. Comparison of Some of the Heaviest Locomotives in Use..... 389

PART V.

THE NICARAGUA ROUTE FOR A SHIP-CANAL.

307. Feasibility of Nicaragua Route..... 390
308. Discovery of Lake Nicaragua..... 390
309. Early Maritime Commerce with Lake Nicaragua..... 391
310. Early Examination of Nicaragua Route..... 392
311. English Invasion of Nicaragua..... 392
312. Atlantic and Pacific Ship-canal Company..... 392
313. Survey and Project of Col. O. W. Childs..... 393
314. The Project of the Maritime Canal Company..... 393
315. The Work of the Ludlow and Nicaragua Canal Commissions..... 394
316. The Route of the Isthmian Canal Commission..... 395
317. Standard Dimensions of Canal Prism..... 396
318. The San Juan Delta..... 397
319. The San Carlos and Serapiqui Rivers..... 398
320. The Rapids and Castillo Viejo..... 399
321. The Upper San Juan..... 399
322. The Rainfall from Greytown to the Lake..... 399
323. Lake-surface Elevation and Slope of the River..... 400
324. Discharges of the San Juan, San Carlos, Serapiqui..... 401
325. Navigation on the San Juan..... 401
326. The Canal Line through the Lake and Across the West Side..... 402
327. Character of the Country West of the Lake..... 403
328. Granada to Managua, thence to Corinto..... 404
329. General Features of the Route..... 404
330. Artificial Harbor at Greytown..... 405
331. Artificial Harbor at Brito..... 407
332. From Greytown Harbor to Lock No. 2..... 408
333. From Lock No. 2 to the Lake..... 409
334. Fort San Carlos to Brito..... 410
335. Examinations by Borings..... 411
336. Classification and Estimate of Quantities..... 412
337. Classification and Unit Prices..... 413
338. Curvature of the Route..... 413

ART. PAGE
339. The Conchuda Dam and Wasteway 414
340. Regulation of the Lake Level 417
341. Evaporation and Lockage 418
342. The Required Slope of the Canalized River Surface 419
343. All Surplus Water to be Discharged over the Conchuda Dam 419
344. Control of the Surface Elevation of the Lake 420
345. Greatest Velocities in Canalized River 425
346. Wasteways or Overflows 427
347. Temporary Harbors and Service Railroad 427
348. Itemized Statement of Length and Cost 427

PART VI.

THE PANAMA ROUTE FOR A SHIP CANAL.

349. The First Panama Transit Line 429
350. Harbor of Porto Bello Established in 1597 429
351. First Traffic along the Chagres River, and the Importance of the Isthmian Commerce 431
352. First Survey for Isthmian Canal Ordered in 1520 431
353. Old Panama Sacked by Morgan and the Present City Founded 431
354. The Beginnings of the French Enterprise 432
355. The Wyse Concession and the International Congress of 1870 432
356. The Plan without Locks of the Old Panama Canal Company 433
357. The Control of the Floods in the Chagres 434
358. Estimate of Time and Cost—Appointment of Liquidators 435
359. The "Commission d'Etude" 435
360. Extensions of Time for Completion 436
361. Organization of the New Panama Canal Company, 1894 437
362. Priority of the Panama Railroad Concession 437
363. Resumption of Work by the New Company—The Engineering Commission and the Comité Technique 438
364. Plan of the New Company 439
365. Alternative Plan of the New Panama Canal Company 440
366. The Isthmian Canal Commission and its Work 441
367. The Route of the Isthmian Canal Commission that of the New Panama Canal Company 441
368. Plan for a Sea-level Canal 443
369. Colon Harbor and Canal Entrance 443
370. Panama Harbor and Entrance to Canal 444
371. The Route from Colon to Bohio 445
372. The Bohio Dam 446
373. Variation in Surface Elevation of Lake 448
374. The Extent of Lake Bohio and the Canal Line in It 448
375. The Floods of the Chagres 449

ART.		PAGE
376.	The Gigante Spillway or Waste-weir	450
377.	Storage in Lake Bohio for Driest Dry Season	451
378.	Lake Bohio as a Flood Controller	452
379.	Effect of Highest Floods on Current in Channel in Lake Bohio	453
380.	Alhajuela Reservoir not Needed at Opening of Canal	453
381.	Locks on Panama Route	454
382.	The Bohio Locks	454
383.	The Pedro Miguel and Miraflores Locks	454
384.	Guard-gates near Obispo	455
385.	Character and Stability of the Culebra Cut	455
386.	Length and Curvature	456
387.	Small Diversion-channels	457
388.	Principal Items of Work to be Performed	457
389.	Lengths of Sections and Elements of Total Cost	458
390.	The Twenty Per Cent Allowances for Exigencies	459
391.	Value of Plant, Property, and Rights on the Isthmus	460
392.	Offer of New Panama Coal Company to Sell for $40,000,000	461
393.	Annual Costs of Operation and Maintenance	462
394.	Volcanoes and Earthquakes	463
395.	Hygienic Conditions on the Two Routes	464
396.	Time of Passage Through the Canal	465
397.	Time for Completion on the Two Routes	466
398.	Industrial and Commercial Value of the Canal	469
399.	Comparison of Routes	471

PART I.

ANCIENT CIVIL-ENGINEERING WORKS.

CHAPTER I.

1. Introductory.—It is a common impression even among civil engineers that their profession is of modern origin, and it is frequently called the youngest of the professions. That impression is erroneous from every point of view. Many engineering works of magnitude and of great importance to the people whom they served were executed in the very dawn of history, and they have been followed by many other works of at least equal magnitude and under circumstances scarcely less noteworthy, of which we have either remains or records. During the lapse of the arts and of almost every process of civilization throughout the darkness of the Middle Ages there was little if any progress made in the art of the engineer, and what little was done was executed almost entirely under the name of architecture. With the revival of intellectual activity and with the development of science the value of its practical application to the growing nations of the civilized world caused the modern profession of civil engineering to take definite shape and to be known by the name which it now carries, but which was not known to ancient peoples. Unfortunately the beginnings of engineering cannot be traced; there is no historical record running back far enough to render account of the earliest engineering works whose ruins remain as enduring evidence of what was then accomplished.

It is probably correct to state that the material progress of any people has always been concurrent with the development of the art of civil engineering, and, hence, that the practice of civil engineering began among the people who made the earliest progress in civilization, to whom "the art of directing the Great Sources of Power in Nature for the use and convenience of man" became an early and imperative necessity. Indeed that conclusion is confirmed by the most ancient ruins of what may be termed public works that archæological investigations have revealed to us, among which are those to be found in the Chaldean region, in India, and in Egypt. Obviously, anything like a detailed account of the structural and other works of such ancient character must be lacking, as some of them were built before even the beginnings of history. Our only data, therefore, are the remains of such works, and unfortunately they have too frequently been subject to the destructive operations of both man and nature.

2. Hydraulic Works of Chaldea and Egypt.—It is absolutely certain that the populous centres of prehistoric times could not have existed nor have been served with those means of communication imperatively necessary to their welfare without the practice of the art of engineering, under whatever name they may have applied to it. It is known beyond any doubt that the anciently populous and prosperous country at the head of the Persian Gulf and watered by the Euphrates and the Tigris was irrigated and served by a most complete system of canals, and the same observation can be made in reference to the valley of the Nile. It is not possible at this period of that country's history to determine to what extent irrigation was practised or how extensively the former country was served by water transportation conducted along artificial channels; but hydraulic works, including dams and sluices with other regulating appliances designed to bring waters from the rivers on to the land, were certainly among the earliest executed for the benefit of the communities inhabiting those regions. The remains of those works, spread over a large territory in the vicinity of ancient Babylon, Nippur, and other centres of population, show beyond the slightest doubt that there existed a network of water communication

throughout what was in those days a country rich in agricultural products and which supported the operations of a most pros-

perous commerce. These canals were of ample dimensions to float boats of no mean size, although much smaller than those occupied in our larger systems of canal transportation. They

were many miles in length, frequently interlacing among themselves and intersecting both the Tigris and the Euphrates. The remains of these canals, some of them still containing water, show that they must originally have been filled to depths varying from five or six to fifteen or twenty feet, and that their widths may have been twenty-five or thirty feet or more. Another curious feature is their occasional arrangement in twos and threes alongside of each other with embankments only between. The entire Euphrates-Tigris valley from the head of the Persian Gulf at least to modern Baghdad (i.e., Babylonia) and possibly to ancient Nineveh was served by these artificial waterways. Later, when Alexander the Great made one of his victorious expeditions through the Assyrian country, he found in the Tigris obstructions to the passage of his ships down-stream in the shape of masonry dams. This was between 356 and 322 B.C. These substantial dams were built across the river for the purpose of intakes to irrigating-canals for the benefit of the adjacent country. These canals, like those of Egypt, were fitted with all the necessary regulating-devices of sluices or gates, both of a crude character, but evidently sufficiently effective for their purpose.

It is known that there were in those early days interchanges of large amounts and varieties of commodities, and it is almost if not quite certain that the countries tributary to the Persian Gulf not only produced sufficient grain for their own needs, but also carried on considerable commerce with the Asiatic coast. We have no means of ascertaining either the volume or the precise character of the traffic, but there is little or no doubt of its existence. It is established also that the waters of the Red Sea and the Nile were connected by a canal about 1450 B.C. Recent investigations about Nippur and other sites of ancient cities in that region confirm other indications that the practice of some branches of hydraulic engineering had received material development from possibly two to four thousand years before the Christian era.

3. Structural Works in Chaldea and Egypt.—The ruins of ancient buildings which have been unearthed by excavations in the same vicinity show with the same degree of certainty that the art of constructing buildings of considerable dimensions had

also made material progress at the same time, and in many cases must have involved engineering considerations of a decided character both as to structural materials and to foundations. Bricks were manufactured and used. Stones were quarried and dressed for building purposes and applied so as to produce structural results of considerable excellence. Even the arch was probably used to some extent in that locality in those early days, but stone and timber beams were constantly employed. In the prehistoric masonry constructions of both the Egyptians and Chaldeans and probably other prehistoric peoples, lime or cement mortar was not employed, but came into use at a subsequent period when the properties of lime and cement as cementing materials began to be recognized. The first cementing material probably used in Egypt was a sticky clay, or possibly a calcareous clay or earth. The same material was also used in the valley of the Euphrates, but in the latter country there are springs of bitumen, where that material exudes from the earth in large quantities. The use of this asphaltic cement at times possibly involved that of sand or gravel in some of the early constructions. Later, lime mortar and possibly a weak hydraulic cement came to be employed, although there is little if any evidence of the latter material.

Iron was manufactured and used at least in small quantities, and for some structural purposes, even though in a crude manner. Bituminous or other asphaltic material was found as a natural product at various points, and its value for certain structural purposes was well known; it was used both for waterproofing and for cement. It is practically certain that the construction of engineering works whose interesting ruins still remain involved a considerable number of affiliated engineering operations of which no evidence has yet been found, and of the employment of tools and appliances of which we have no record. So far as these works were of a public character they were constructed by the aid of a very different labor system from that now existing. The kings or ruling potentates of those early times were clothed with the most arbitrary authority, sometimes exercised wisely in the best interests of their people, but at other times the ruling motive was selfishness actuated by the most intense egotism

and brutal tyranny. Hence all public works were executed practically as royal enterprises and chiefly by forced labor, perhaps generally without compensation except mere sustenance. Under such conditions it was possible to construct works on a scale out of all proportion to national usefulness and without structural economy. When it is remembered that these conditions existed without even the shadow of engineering science, it is obvious that structural economy or the adaptation of well-considered means to an end will not be found to characterize engineering operations of prehistoric times. Nevertheless there are evidences of good judgment and reasonable engineering design found in connection with some of these works, particularly with those of an hydraulic character. Water was lifted or pumped by spiral or screw machines and by water-wheels, and it is not improbable that other appliances of power served the purposes of many industrial and crude manufacturing operations which it is now impossible for us to determine.

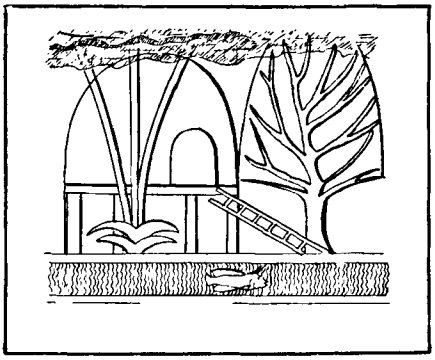


FIG. 1.—Home Built on Piles in the Land of Punt.

It is an interesting fact that while many ancient works were exceedingly massive, like the pyramids, the largest of those of which the ruins have been preserved seldom seem to show little or any evidence of serious settlement. Whether the ancients had unusually sound ideas as to the design of foundation works, or whether those only have come down to us that were founded directly upon rock, we have scarcely any means of deciding. Nor can we determine at this time what special recourses were available for foundation work on soft ground. Probably one

of the earliest recognized instances, if not the earliest, of the building of structures on piles is that given by Sir George Rawlinson, when he states that a fleet of merchant vessels sent down the northeast African coast by the Egyptian queen Hatasu, probably 1700 B.C. or 1600 B.C., found a people whose huts were supported on piles in order to raise them above the marshy ground and possibly for additional safety. A representation (Fig. 1) of one of these native homes on piles is found among Egyptian hieroglyphics of the period of Queen Hatasu.

4. Ancient Maritime Commerce.—It is well known that both the Chaldean region and the Nile valley and delta, at least from Ethiopia to the Mediterranean Sea, were densely populated during the period of two to four or five thousand years before the Christian era. By means of the irrigation works to which reference has already been made both lands became highly productive, and it is also well known that those peoples carried on a considerable commerce with other countries, as did the Phœnicians also, at least between the innumerable wars which seemed to be the main business of states in those days. These commercial operations required not only the construction of fleets of what seem to us small vessels for such purposes, but also harbor works at least suitable to the vessels then in use. The marine activity of the Phœnicians is undoubted, and there is strong reason to believe that there was also similar activity between Babylonian ports and those east of them along the shores of the Indian Ocean, perhaps even as far as ancient Cathay, and possibly also to the eastern coast of Africa.

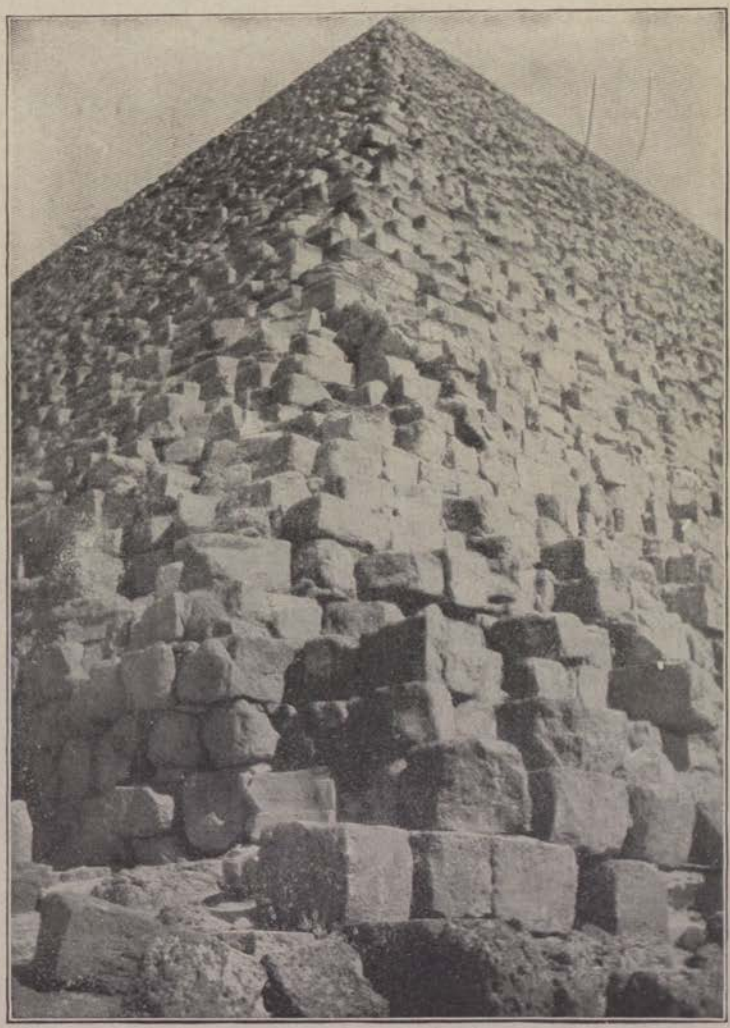
Investigations in the early history of Egypt have shown that a Phœnician fleet, constructed at some Egyptian port on the Red Sea, undoubtedly made the complete circuit of Africa and returned to Egypt through the Mediterranean Sea the third year after setting out, over 2100 years (about 600 B.C.) before the historic fleet of the Portuguese explorer Vasco da Gama sailed the same circuit in the opposite direction. It is therefore probable, in view of these facts, that at least simple harbor works of sufficient efficiency for those early days found place in the public works of the ancient kingdoms bordering upon the Mediterranean and Red seas and the Persian Gulf.

5. The Change of the Nile Channel at Memphis.—Although such obscure accounts as can be gathered in connection with the founding of the city of Memphis are so shadowy as to be largely legendary, it has been established beyond much if any doubt that prior to its building the reigning Egyptian monarch determined to change the course of the Nile so as to make it flow on the easterly side of the valley instead of the westerly. This was for the purpose of securing ample space for his city on the west of the river, and, also, that the latter might furnish a defence towards the east, from which direction invading enemies usually approached. He accordingly formed an immense dam or dike across the Nile as it then existed, and compelled it to change its course near the foot of the Libyan Hills on the west and seek a new channel nearer the easterly side of the valley. This must have been an engineering work of almost appalling magnitude in those early times, yet even with the crude means and limited resources of that early period, possibly, if not probably, at least 5000 B.C., the work was successfully accomplished.

6. The Pyramids.—Among the most prominent ancient structural works are the pyramids of Egypt, those royal tombs of which so much has been written. These are found chiefly in the immediate vicinity of Memphis on the Nile. There are sixty or seventy of them in all, the first of which was built by the Egyptian king Khufu and is known as the "Great Pyramid" or the "First Pyramid of Ghizeh." They have been called "the most prodigious of all human constructions." Their ages are uncertain, but they probably date from about 4000 B.C. to about 2500 B.C. These are antedated, however, by two Egyptian pyramidal constructions of still more ancient character whose ages cannot be determined, one at Meydoum and the other at Saccarah.

The pyramids at Memphis are constructed of limestone and granite, the latter being the prominent material and used entirely for certain portions of the pyramids where the stone would be subjected to severe duty. The great mass of most of the pyramids consists of roughly hewn or squared blocks with little of any material properly considered mortar. The interior portions, especially of the later pyramids, were sometimes partially com-

posed of chips, rough stones, mud bricks, or even mud, cellular retaining-walls being used in the latter cases for the main struc-



A Corner of the Great Pyramid.
(Copyright by S. S. McClure Co., 1902. Courtesy of *McClure's Magazine*.)

tural features. In all pyramids, however, the outer or exposed surfaces and the walls and roofs of all interior chambers were finished with finely jointed large stones, perhaps usually polished.

The Great Pyramid has a square base, which was originally 764 feet on a side, with a height of apex above the surface of the ground of over 480 feet. This great mass of masonry contains about 3,500,000 cubic yards and weighs nearly 7,000,000 tons. The area of its base is 13.4 acres. The Greek historian Herodotus states that its construction required the labor of 100,000 men for twenty years. An enormous quantity of granite was required to be transported about 500 miles down the Nile from the quarries at Syene. Some of the blocks at the base are 30 feet long with a cross-section of 5 feet by 4 or 5 feet. The bulk of the entire mass is of comparatively small stones, although so squared and dressed as to fit closely together. Familiar descriptions of this work have told us that the small passages leading from the exterior to the sepulchral chambers are placed nearly in a vertical plane through the apex. The highest or king's chamber, as it is called, measures 34 feet by 17 feet and is 19 feet high, and in it is placed the sarcophagus of King Khufu. It is composed entirely of granite most exactly cut and fitted and beautifully polished. The construction of the roof is remarkable, as it is composed of nine great blocks "each nearly 19 feet long and 4 feet wide, which are laid side by side upon the walls so as to form a complete ceiling." There is a singular feature

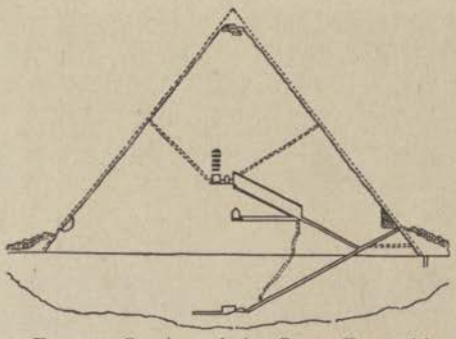


FIG. 2.—Section of the Great Pyramid.

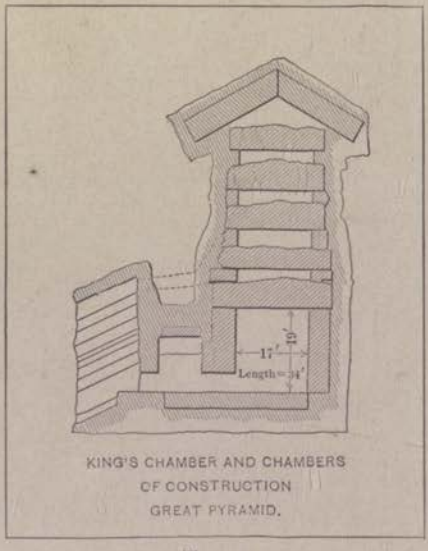
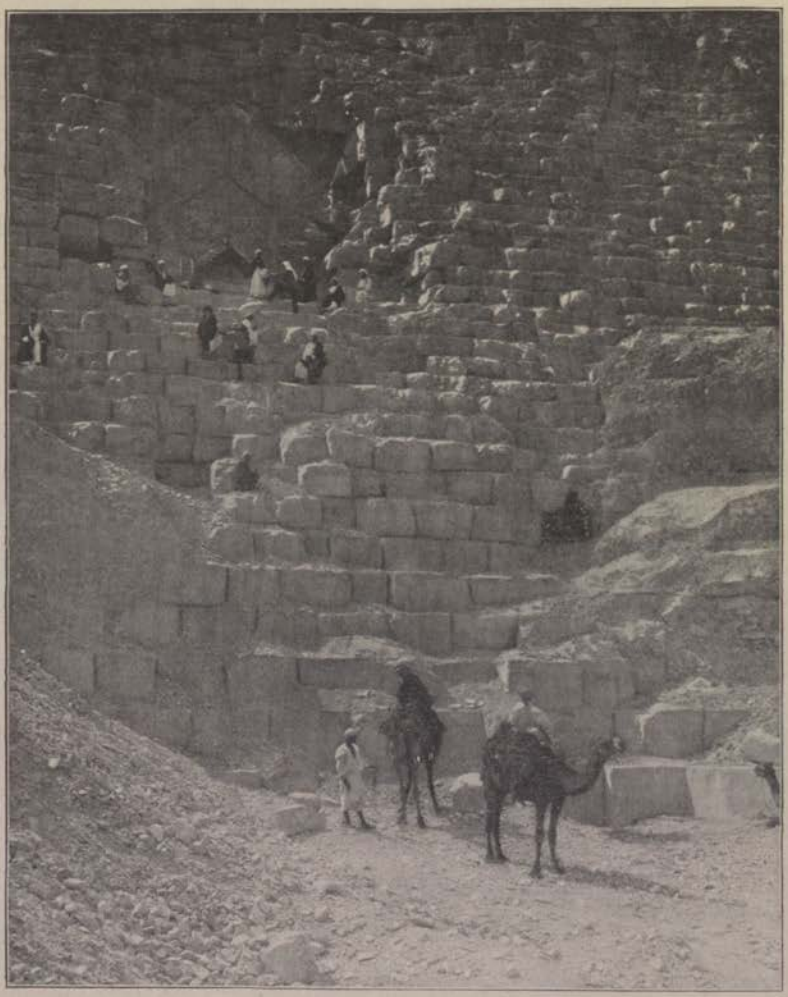


FIG. 3.

of construction of this ceiling designed to remove all pressure from it and consisting of five alternate open spaces and blocks of granite placed in vertical series, the highest open space being



Entrance to the Great Pyramid.

roofed over with inclined granite slabs leaning or strutted against each other like the letter V inverted. This arrangement relieves the ceiling of the sepulchral chamber from all pressure; indeed

only the inclined highest set of granite blocks or slabs carry any load besides their own weight. There are two small ventilating- or air-shafts running in about equally inclined directions upward from the king's chamber to the north and south faces of the pyramid. These air-shafts are square and vary between 6 and 9 inches on a side. The age of this pyramid is probably not far from 5000 years.

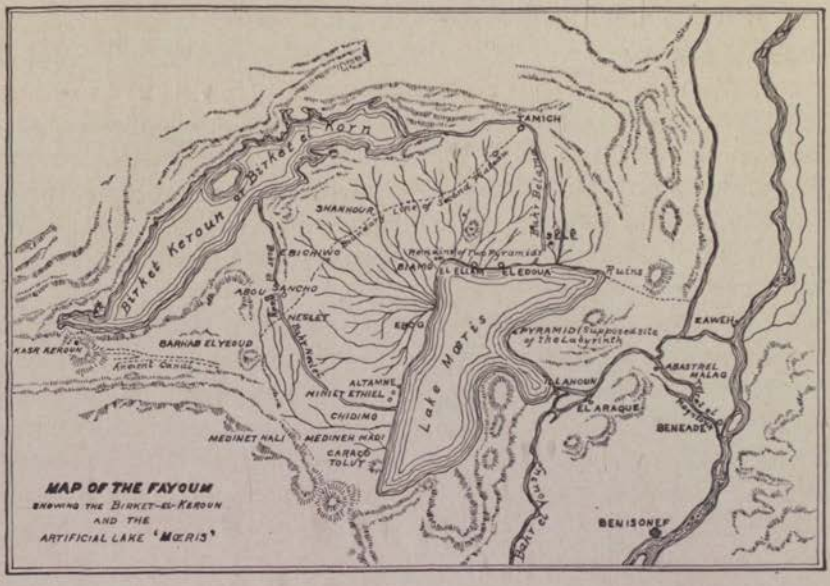
The second pyramid is not much inferior in size to the Great Pyramid, its base being a square of about 707 feet on a side, and its height about 454 feet. The remaining pyramids are much inferior in size, diminishing to comparatively small dimensions, and of materials much inferior to those used in the earlier and larger pyramids.

7. Obelisks, Labyrinths, and Temples.—Among other constructions of the Egyptians which may be called engineering in character, as well as architectural, are the obelisks, the "Labyrinth" so called, on the shore of Lake Mœris, and the magnificent temples at the ancient capital Thebes, which are the most remarkable architectural creations probably that the world has ever known. These latter were not completed by one king, as was each of the pyramids. They were sometimes despoiled and largely wrecked by invading hosts from Assyria, and then reconstructed in following periods by successive Egyptian kings and again added to by still subsequent monarchs, whose reigns were characterized by statesmanship, success in war, and prosperity in the country. Their construction conclusively indicates laborious operations and transportation of great blocks of stone characteristic of engineering development of the highest order for the days in which they took place. The dates of these constructions are by no means well defined, but they extend over the period running from probably about 2500 B.C. to about 400 B.C., with the summit of excellence about midway between.

Another class of ancient structures which can receive but a passing notice, although it deserves more, is the elaborate rock tombs of some of the old Egyptian monarchs in the rocks of the Libyan Hills. They were very extensive constructions and contained numerous successions of "passages, chambers, corridors, staircases, and pillared halls, each further removed from

the entrance than the last, and all covered with an infinite number of brilliant paintings." These tombs really constituted rock tunnels with complicated ramifications which must have added much to the difficulty of the work and required the exercise of engineering skill and resources of a high order.

8. Nile Irrigation.—The value of the waters of the Nile for irrigation and fertilization were fully appreciated by the ancient Egyptians. They also apparently realized the national value of some means of equalizing the overflow, although the annual régimen of the Nile was unusually uniform. There were, however,



periods of great depression throughout the whole Nile valley consequent upon the phenomenal failure of overflow to the normal extent. One of the earliest monarchs who was actuated by a fine public spirit undertook to solve the problem of providing against such depressions by diverting a portion of the flood-waters of the Nile into an enormous reservoir, so that during seasons of insufficient inundation the reservoir-waters could be drawn upon for the purpose of irrigation. This monarch is known as the good Amenemhat, although the Greeks call him Mœris. In

the Nile valley, less than a hundred miles above Memphis, on the left side or to the west of the river, there is a gap in the Libyan Hills leading to an immense depression, the lower parts of which are much below the level of the water in the Nile. This topographical depression, perhaps 50 miles in length by 30 in breadth, with an area between 600 and 700 square miles, now contains two bodies of water or lakes, one known as the Birket Keroun and the other as Lake Mœris. The vicinity of this depression is called the Fayoum. A narrow rocky gorge connects it with the west branch of the Nile, known as Bahr el Yousuf, and it is probable that during extreme high water in the Nile there was a natural overflow into the Fayoum. The good Amenemhat, with the judgment of an engineer, or guided by advisers who possessed that judgment, appreciated the potential value of this natural depression as a possible reservoir for the surplus Nile waters and excavated a channel, possibly a natural channel enlarged, of suitable depth from it to the Bahr el Yousuf. As a consequence he secured a storage-reservoir of enormous capacity and which proved of inestimable value to the lowlands along the Nile in times of shortage in the river-floods.

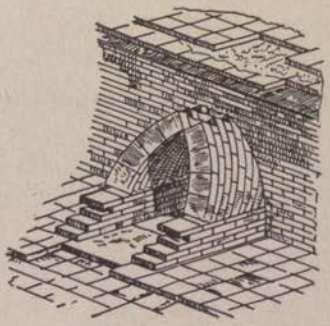
Investigators have differed much in their conclusions as to the extent of this reservoir. Some have maintained that only the lower depressions of the Fayoum were filled for reservoir purposes, while others, like Mr. Cope Whitehouse, believe that the entire depression of the Fayoum was utilized with the exception of a few very high points, and that the depth of water might have been as much as 300 feet in some places. In the latter case the circuit of the lake would have been from 300 to 500 miles. Whatever may have been the size of the lake, however, its construction and use with its regulating-works was a piece of hydraulic engineering of the highest type, and it indicates an extraordinary development of that class of operations for the period in which it was executed. The exact date of this construction cannot be determined, but it may have been as early as 2000 B.C., or perhaps earlier.

9. Prehistoric Bridge-building. — The development of the art of bridge-building seems to have lagged somewhat in the prehistoric period. The use of rafts and boats prevented the

need of bridges for crossing streams from being pressing. It is not improbable that some small and crude pile or other timber structures of short spans were employed, but no remains of this class of construction have been found. Large quantities of timber and much of an excellent quality were used in the construction of buildings. That much is known, but there is practically no evidence leading to the belief that timber bridges of any magnitude were used by prehistoric people. It is highly probable that single-timber-beam crossings of small streams were used, but that must be considered the limit of ancient bridging until other evidence than that now available is found.

10. Ancient Brick-making.—It has already been seen that stone as a building material has been used since the most ancient periods, and the use of brick goes back almost as far. Fortunately it was frequently a custom of the ancient brick-makers to stamp proprietary marks upon their bricks, and we know by these marks that bricks were made in the Chaldean regions certainly from 3000 to 4000 years before the Christian era. In Egypt also the manufacture of brick dates back nearly or quite as far. Some of these Chaldean bricks, as well as those in other parts of the ancient world, were of poor quality, readily destroyed by water or even a heavy storm of rain when driving upon them. Other bricks, however, were manufactured of good quality of material and by such methods as to produce results which compare favorably with our modern building-bricks. The ruins of cities, at least in Assyria and Chaldea, show that enormous buildings, many of them palaces of kings, were constructed largely of these bricks, although they were elaborately decorated with other material. The walls were heavy, indeed so massive that many of the ruin-mounds are frequently formed almost entirely of the disintegrated brick of poorer quality. These old builders not only executed their work on a large scale, but did not hesitate to pile up practically an artificial mountain of earth, or other suitable material, on which to construct a palace or temple. The danger of water to these native bricks was so well known and recognized that elaborate and very excellent systems of subsurface drains or sewers were frequently constructed to carry off the storm-water as fast as it fell.

11. Ancient Arches. — In the practice of these building operations it became necessary to form many openings and to construct roofs for the sewers or drains, and the arch, both true and false, came to be used in the Euphrates valley, in that of the Nile, and in other portions of the ancient world. Pointed sewer-arches of brick have been found in what is supposed to be the palace of Nimrod on the Tigris River, possibly of the date about 1300 B.C. Excavations at Nippur have revealed a mud-brick pointed arch supposed to date back to possibly 4000 B.C. Also semicircular voussoir arches have been discovered at the ruins of Khorsabad near Nineveh with spans of 12 to 15 feet. These arches are supposed to belong to the reign of Sargon, an Assyrian king who flourished about 705 to 722 B.C. Again, the ancient so-called treasury of Atreus at Mycenæ in Greece, although a dome, exhibits an excellent example of the method of forming the false arch, the date of the construction being probably about 1000 B.C. The main portion of this structure consists of a pointed dome, the diameter of the base being



VAULTED DRAIN, KHORSABAD
FIG. 4.

VAULTED DRAINS, KHO SABAD
FIG. 5.

48 feet and the interior central height 49 feet. A central section shows a beehive shape, as in Fig. 6.

The exterior approach is between two walls 20 feet apart, the intermediate entrance to the dome or main chamber being a passage 9 feet 6 inches wide at the bottom and 7 feet 10 inches at the top and about 19 feet high. At right angles to the entrance there is a chamber 27 feet by 20 feet cut into the adjacent

rock, entered through a doorway about 4 feet 6 inches wide and 9 feet 6 inches high. Both the main entrance to the dome and the doorway to the adjacent chamber are covered or roofed with large flat lintel-stones, over which are the triangular relieving (false) arches, so common in ancient construction, by which the lintels are relieved of load, the triangular openings being closed by single, great upright flat stones. There are a considerable number of these in Greece. The stone used is a "hard

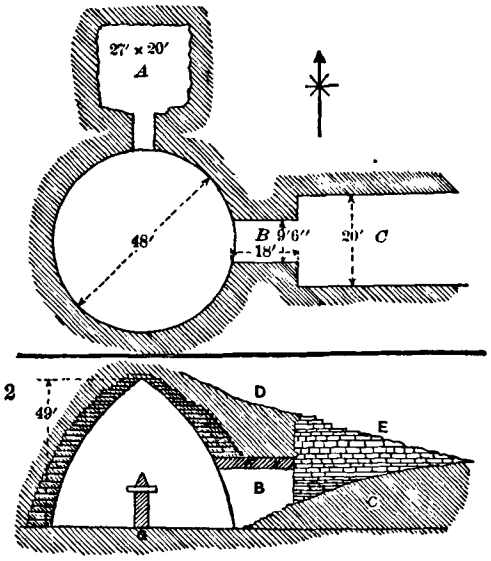


FIG. 6.—Plan and Section of the Treasury of Atreus at Mycenæ.

1. Plan of the Treasury of Atreus: *A*, rock-cut chamber, probably a tomb; *B*, doorway; *C*, approach.

2. Section of the above: *B*, doorway; *C*, approach filled up with earth; *D*, slope of the ground; *E*, wall on north side of approach; *F*, lintel stone, weight 133 tons; *G*, door to rock-cut chamber.

and beautiful breccia" from the neighboring hills and Mount Eubora near by. The courses of stone are about two feet thick and closely fitted without cement.

The great majority, or perhaps all, of the Assyrian true arches, so far discovered, are formed of wedge-shaped bricks, most of them

being semicircular, although some are pointed, the span being not over about 15 feet. The most of the arches found at Nineveh and Babylon belong to a period reaching possibly from 1300 to 800 B.C., but some of the Egyptian arches are still older. Egyptians, Assyrians, Greeks, and other ancient people used false arches formed by projecting each horizontal course of stones or bricks over that below it on either side of an opening. The repetition of this procedure at last brings both sides of the opening together at the top of the arch, and they are surmounted at that point with a single flat stone, brick, or tile. It has been supposed by some that these false arches, whose sides may be formed either straight or curved, exhibit the oldest form of the arch, and that the true arch with its ring or rings of wedge-shaped voussoirs was a subsequent development. It is possible that this is true, but the complete proof certainly is lacking. In Egypt and Chaldea both styles of arches were used concurrently, and it is probably impossible to determine which preceded the other. Again, some engineers have contended that two flat slabs of stone leaning against each other, each inclined like the rafters of a roof, was the original form of the arch, as found in the pyramids of Egypt; but it is probable that the true arch was used in Chaldea prior to the time of the pyramids. Indeed crude arches of brick have been found at Thebes in Egypt dating back possibly to 2500 B.C., or still earlier. Aside from that, however, such an arrangement of two stones is not an arch at all, either true or false. The arrangement is simply a combination of two beams. A condition of stress characteristic of that in the true arch is lacking.

The ancient character of the engineering works whose ruins are found in Chaldea and Assyria is shown by the simple facts that Babylon was destroyed about the year 690 B.C. and Nineveh about the year 606 B.C.

CHAPTER II.

12. The Beginnings of Engineering Works of Record.—In a later period of the world's history we reach a stage in the development of engineering works of which we have both records and remains in such well-defined shape that the characteristics of the profession may be realized in a definite manner. This is particularly true of the civil-engineering works of the Romans. In their sturdy and unyielding character, with their limitless energy and resolution, the conditions requisite for the execution of engineering works of great magnitude are found. An effeminate or generally æsthetic nation like the Greeks would furnish but indifferent opportunity for the inception and development of great engineering works, but the resolute and vigorous Roman nation offered precisely the conditions needed. They appreciated among other things the absolute necessityof the freest possible communication with the countries which they conquered and made part of their own empire. They recognized water transportation as the most economical and effective, and used it wherever possible. They also realized the advantages of roads of the highest degree of solidity and excellence. No other roads have ever been constructed so direct, so solid, and so admirably adapted to their purposes as those built by the Romans. They virtually ignored all obstacles and built their highways in the most direct line practicable, making deep cuts and fills with apparently little regard for those features which we consider obstacles of sufficient magnitude to be avoided. They regarded this system of land communication so highly that they made it radiate from the Golden Mile-stone in the Roman Forum. The point from which radiated these roads was therefore in the very centre of Roman life and authority, and it fitly indicated the importance which the Roman government gave to the system

of communication that bound together with the strongest bonds all parts of the republic and of the empire.

The design and construction of these roads must have been a matter to which their constructors gave the most careful attention and study. They were works involving principles deduced from the most careful thought and extended experience. There were incorporated in them the most effective materials of construction then known, and it was evidently the purpose of their constructors that they should possess indefinite endurance. The existence of some of them at the present time, with no other attention given to them than required for ordinary maintenance, demonstrates that the confidence of the builders was not misplaced.

Street Fountain and Watering-trough in Pompeii. Called the Fountain of Plenty, from the figure with Horn of Plenty on the perforated upright post.

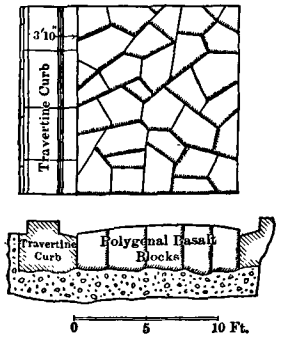
13. The Appian Way and other Roman Roads.—Probably the oldest and most celebrated of these old Roman roads is the Appian Way. It was the most substantially built, and the breadth of roadway varied from 14 to 18 feet exclusive of the footwalks. Statius called it the Queen of Roads. It was begun by Appius Claudius Cæcus, 312 years before the Christian era. He carried

its construction from the Roman gate called Porta Capena to Capua, but it was not entirely completed till about the year 30 B.C. Its total length was three hundred and fifty miles, and it formed a perfect highway from Rome to Brundisium, an important port on what may be called the southeastern point of Italy. It was built in such an enduring manner that it appears to have been in perfect repair as late as 500 to 565 A.D.

The plan of construction of these roads was so varied as to suit local conditions, but only as required by sound engineering judgment. They wisely employed local materials wherever possible, but did not hesitate to transport proper material from distant points wherever necessary. This seemed to be one of their fundamental principles of road construction. In this respect the old Romans exhibited more engineering and business wisdom than some of the American states in the beginnings of improved road construction in this country. An examination of the remains of some Roman roads now existing appears to indicate that in earth the bottom of the requisite excavation was first suitably compacted, apparently by ramming, although rollers may have been used. On this compacted subgrade were laid two or three courses of flat stones on their beds and generally in mortar. The second layer placed on the preceding was rubble masonry of small stones or of coarse concrete. On the latter was placed the third layer of finer concrete. The fourth or surface course, consisting of close and nicely jointed polygonal blocks, was then put in place, and formed an excellent unyielding pavement. This resulted in a most substantial roadway, sometimes exceeding 3 feet in total thickness. It is difficult to conceive of a more substantial and enduring type of road construction. The two lower layers were omitted when the road was constructed in rock. Obviously the finer concrete constituting the second layer from the top surface was a binder between the pavement surface and the foundation of the roadway structure.

The paved part of a great road was usually about 16 feet in width, and raised stone causeways or walls separated it from an unpaved way on each side having half the width of the main or paved portion. This seemed to be the type of the great or main Roman roads. Other highways of less important character

were constructed of inferior materials, earth or clay sometimes being used instead of mortar; but in such cases greater crowning was employed, and the road was more elevated, possibly for better drainage. Then, as now, adequate drainage was considered one of the first features of good road design. City streets were paved with the nicely jointed polygonal blocks to which reference has already been made, while the footways were paved with rectangular slabs much like our modern sidewalks.



EXAMPLE OF EARLY BASALT ROAD. BY THE TEMPLE OF SATURN ON THE CLIVUS CAPITOLINUS.

FIG. 7.

The smooth polygonal pavements of the old Romans put to the keenest shame the barbarous cobblestone street surfaces with which the people of American cities have been and are still so tortured.

The beneficial influence of these old Roman highways has extended down even to the present time in France, where some of them were built. The unnecessarily elaborate construction has not been followed, but the recognition of the public benefits of excellent roads has been maintained. The lower course of the foundation-stones apparently began to be set on edge toward the latter part of the eighteenth century, the French engineer Tresaguet having adopted that practice in 1764. At the same time he reduced the thickness of the upper layers. His methods were but modifications of the old Roman system, and they prevailed in France until the influence of the English engineers Macadam and Telford began to be felt.

14. Natural Advantages of Rome in Structural Stones.— Although the ancient Romans were born engineers, possessing the mental qualities and sturdy character requisite for the analytic treatment and execution of engineering problems, it is doubtful whether they would have attained to such an advanced position in structural matters had not the city of Rome been so favorably located.

The geological character of the great Roman plain and the Roman hills certainly contributed most materially to the early

development of some of the most prominent of the Roman engineering works. The plain surrounding the city of Rome is composed largely of alluvial and sandy deposits, or of the emissions of neighboring volcanoes, of which the Alban Hills form a group. While these and other volcanic hills in the vicinity are, and have been for a long period, quiescent, they were formerly in a very active state. The scoriæ, or matter emitted in volcanic eruptions, is found there in all possible degrees of coherence or solidity, from pulverulent masses to hard rock. The characteristic Roman material called tufa is a mixture of volcanic ash and sand, loose and friable, as dropped from the eruptions in large quantities or again compressed into masses with all degrees of hardness. The hard varieties of yellow or brown tufa form building material much used, although a considerable percentage of it would not be considered fit building material for structures of even moderate height at the present time. The most of it weathers easily, but forms a fairly good building-stone when protected by a coating of plaster or stucco.

Another class of building-stones found at or in the vicinity of Rome is the so-called "peperino," consisting chiefly of two varieties of conglomerate of ash, gravel, broken pieces of lava, and pieces of limestone, some possessing good weathering qualities, while others do not. Ancient quarries of these stones exist whence millions of cubic yards have been removed, and are still being worked. The better varieties of "peperino" possess good resisting qualities, and were much used in those portions of masonry construction where high resistance was needed, as in the ring-stones of arches, heavily loaded points of foundations, and other similar situations.

Some of the prehistoric masonry remains of the Romans show that their earliest constructors appreciated intelligently the qualities of this stone for portions of works where the duty was most severe.

Lava from the extinct volcanoes of the Alban Hills called "silex" was used for paving roads and for making concrete. It was hard and of gray color. At times considerable quantities of this stone were employed. A species of pure limestone called "travertine," of a creamy white color, was quarried at Tibur or

Tivoli, and began to be used about the second century B.C. Vitruvius speaks of its having good weathering qualities, but naturally it is easily calcined. Its structure is crystalline, and it is strong in consequence of that quality only when it is laid on its bed.

15. Pozzuolana Hydraulic Cement.—The most valuable of all building materials of old Rome was the "pozzuolana," as it furnished the basis of a strong, enduring, and economic concrete, and permitted almost an indefinite development of masonry construction. Had there not been at Rome the materials ready at hand to be manufactured into an excellent cementing product, it is highly probable that neither the structural advance nor the commercial supremacy of the Roman people could have been attained. It is at least certain that the majority of the great masonry works constructed by the Romans could not have been built without the hydraulic cementing material produced with so little difficulty and in such large quantities from the volcanic earth called pozzuolana. The name is believed to have its origin from the large masses of this material at Pozzuoli near Naples. Great beds are also found at and near Rome. The earliest date of its use cannot be determined, but it has given that strong and durable character to Roman concrete which has enabled Roman masonry to stand throughout centuries, to the admiration of engineers.

It is a volcanic ash, generally pulverulent, of a reddish color, but differs somewhat in appearance and texture according to the locality from which it is taken. It consists chiefly of silicate of alumina, but contains a little oxide of iron, alkali, and possibly other components. The Romans therefore pulverized the pozzuolana and mixed it with lime to make hydraulic cement. This in turn was mixed with sand and gravel and broken stone to form mortar and concrete, and that process is carried on to this day. The concrete was hand-mixed, and treated about as it is at present. After having been well mixed the Romans frequently deposited it in layers of 6 to 9 or 10 inches thick, and subjected it to ramming. In connection with this matter of mortar and concrete production, Vitruvius observes that pit sand is preferable to either sea or river sand.

16. Roman Bricks and Masonry.—The Romans produced bricks both by sun-baking and by burning, although there are now remaining apparently no specimens of the former in Rome. Bricks were used very largely for facing purposes, such as a veneer for concrete work. The failure to recognize this fact has led some investigators and writers into error. As matter of fact bricks were used as a covering for concrete work, the latter performing all the structural functions.

The old Roman aqueducts were frequently lined with concrete, made of a mixture of pozzuolana, lime, and crushed (pounded) bricks or potsherds. The same material was also used for floors under the fine mortar in which the mosaics were imbedded.

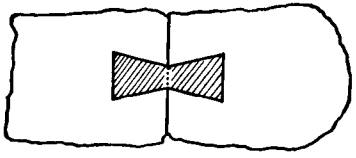
Marble came into use in Rome about 100 B.C., from Luna, near modern Carrara, Mt. Hymettus, and Mt. Pentelicus, near Athens and the Isle of Paros, nearly all being for sculpture purposes. Colored and structural marbles were brought from quarries in various parts of Italy, Greece, Phrygia, Egypt, near Thebes (oriental alabaster or "onyx"), Arabia, and near Damascus.

From the latter part of the first century B.C. the hard building-stones like granites and basalts were brought to Rome in large quantities. Most of the granites came from Philæ on the Nile. The basalts came both from Lacedæmonia and Egypt. Both emery (from the island of Naxos in the Ægean Sea) and diamond-dust drills were used in quarrying or working these stones. Ships among the largest, if not the largest, of those days, were built to transport obelisks and other large monoliths.

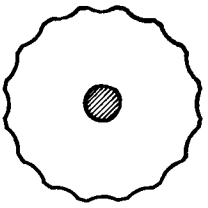
The quality of ancient Roman mortar varies considerably as it is now found. That of the first and second centuries is remarkably hard, and made with red pozzuolana. In the third century it began to be inferior in quality, brown pozzuolana sometimes being used. The reason for this difference in quality cannot be confidently assigned. The deterioration noted in the third-century work may be due to the introduction of bad materials, or to the wrong manipulation of material intrinsically good, or it is not unlikely the deterioration is due to a combination of these two influences. The use of mortar indicates a class

of early construction; it is found in the Servian wall on the Aventine, of date 700 B.C., or possibly earlier.

Under the empire (27 B.C. to A.D. 475) large blocks of tufa,



Dovetail Wooden Tenon.



Wooden Dowel.

FIG. 8.

limestone (travertine), or marble were set with very close joints, with either no mortar or, if any, as thin as paper; end, top, and bottom clamps of iron were used to bond such stones together. It was also customary, in laying such large, nicely finished blocks of stone without mortar, to use double dovetailed wooden ties, or, as in the case of columns, a continuous central dowel of wood, as shown in the figures.

The joints were frequently so close as to give the impression that the stones might have been fitted by grinding together. In rectangular dimension stonework (ashlar) great care was taken, as at present, to secure a good bond by the use of judiciously proportioned headers and stretchers. Foundation courses were made thicker than the body of the superincumbent wall, apparently to distribute foundation weights precisely as done at present. Weaker stone was used in thicker portions of walls, and strong stone in thinner portions. Also at points of concentrated loading, piers or columns of strong stone are found built into the bodies of walls of softer or weaker stone. Quarry chips, broken lava, broken bricks, or other suitable refuse fragments were used for concrete in the interest of economy, the broken material always being so chosen as to possess a sharp surface to which the cement would attach itself in the strongest possible bond.

At the quarries where the stones were cut the latter were marked apparently to identify their places in the complete

structure, or for other purposes. The remains of the quarries themselves as seen at present are remarkable both for their enormous extent and for the system on which the quarrying was conducted. It appears that the systems employed were admirably adapted to the character of the stone worked, and that the quarrying operations were executed as efficiently and with as sound engineering judgment as those employed in great modern quarries.

17. Roman Building Laws. — So much depended upon the excellence of the building in Rome, and upon the materials and methods employed, that building laws or municipal regulations were enacted in the ancient city, prescribing kind and quality of material, thickness of walls, maximum height of buildings, minimum width of streets, and many other provisions quite similar to those enacted in our modern cities. The differences appear to arise from the different local conditions to be dealt with, rather than from any failure on the part of the old Romans to reach an adequate conception of the general plans suitable for the masses of buildings in a great city. Prior to the great fire A.D. 64 in Nero's reign, an act prescribing fire-proof exterior coverings of buildings was under consideration, and subsequently to that conflagration it was enacted into law. Many of the city roads or streets were paved with closely fitting irregular polygonal blocks of basalt, laid on concrete foundations, and with limestone (travertine) curbs and gutters, producing an effect not unlike our modern streets.

18. Old Roman Walls.—In no class of works did the ancient Romans show greater engineering skill or development than in the massive masonry structures that were built not only in and about the city of Rome, but also in distant provinces under Roman jurisdiction. Among the home structures various walls, constituting strong defences against the attacks of enemies, stand in particular prominence. Some of these great structures had their origin prior even to historic times. The so-called "Wall of Romulus," around the famous Roma Quadrata of the Palentine, is among the latter. It is supposed by many that this wall formed the primitive circuit of the legendary city of Romulus. That, however, is an archæological and not an engineering ques-

tion, and, whatever its correct answer may be, the wall itself is a great engineering work; it demonstrates that the early Romans, whatever may have been their origin, had attained no little skill in quarrying and in the building of dry masonry, no mortar being used in this ancient wall. Portions of it 40 feet high and 10 feet thick at bottom, built against a rocky hill, are still standing. The courses are 22 to 24 inches thick, and they are laid as alternate headers and stretchers; the lengths of the blocks being 3 to 5 feet, and the width from 19 to 22 inches. The ends of the blocks are carefully worked and true, as are the vertical joints in much of the wall, although some of the latter, on the other hand, are left as much as 2 inches open.

Civil engineers, who are familiar with the difficulties frequently experienced in laying up dry walls of considerable height, as evidenced by many instances of failure probably within the knowledge of every experienced engineer, will realize that this great dry-masonry structure must have been put in place by men of no little engineering capacity. The rock is soft tufa, and marks on the blocks indicate that chisels from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in width were used, as well as sharp-pointed picks. In all cases the faces of the blocks were left undressed, i.e., in modern terms they were "quarry-faced."

19. The Servian Wall.—Later in the history of Rome the great Servian Wall, built chiefly by Servius Tullius to enclose the seven hills of Rome, occupies a most prominent position as an engineering work. Part of the wall, all of which belongs to the regal period (753 to 509 B.C.), is supposed to be earlier than Servius, and may have been planned and executed by Tarquinius Priscus. A part only of the stones of this wall were laid in cement mortar, and concrete was used, to some extent at least, in its foundation and backing. The presence of cement mortar in this structure differentiates it radically from the wall of Romulus. Probably the discovery of pozzuolana cement, and the fabrication of mortar and concrete from it, had been made in the intervening period between the two constructions. Tufa, usually the softer varieties but of varying degrees of hardness, was mostly used in this wall, and the blocks were placed, as in the previous instance, as alternate headers and stretchers in

courses about two feet thick. Portions of the wall 45 feet high and about 12 feet thick have been uncovered. At points it was pierced with arched openings of 11 feet 5 inches span, possibly as embrasures for catapults or other engines of war. The upper parts of these openings are circular arches with the usual wedge-like ring-stones. The voussoirs were cut from peperino stone. This wall, like that of Romulus, was constructed as a military work of defence, and at some points it was built up

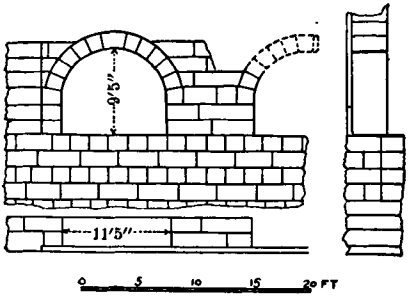


FIG. 9.—Part of Servian Wall on Aventine.

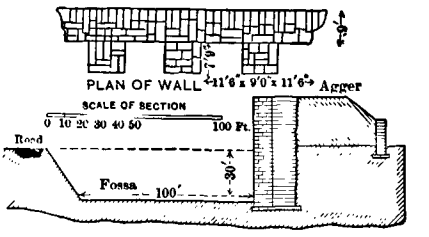


FIG. 10.—Wall and Agger of Servius.

from the bottom of a wide foss 30 feet deep. At such places it was counterforted or buttressed, a portion of wall 11 feet 6 inches long being found between two counterforts, each of the latter being 9 feet wide and projecting 7 feet 9 inches out from the wall.

20. Old Roman Sewers.—It is demonstrable by the writings of Vitruvius and others that the old Romans, or at any rate the better educated of them, possessed a correct general idea of some portions of the science of Sanitary Engineering, so far as anything of the nature of science could then be known. Their sanitary views were certainly abreast of the scientific knowledge of that early day. The existence of the "cloacæ," or great sewers, of the ancient city of Rome showed that its people, or at least its rulers, not only appreciated the value of draining and sewering their city, but also that they knew how to secure the construction of efficient and enduring sewers or drains. It has been stated, and it is probably true, that this system of cloacæ, or sewers, was so complete that every street of the ancient city was drained through

its members into the Tiber. They were undoubtedly the result of a gradual growth in sewer construction and did not spring at once into existence, but they date back certainly to the beginning of the period of the kings (753 B.C.). The famous Cloaca Maxima, as great as any sewer in the system, and certainly the most noted, is still in use, much of it being in good order. The mouth of the latter where it discharges into the Tiber is 11 feet wide and 12 feet high, constituting a large arch opening with three rings of voussoirs of peperino stone. Many other sewers of this system are also built with arch tops of the same stone, with neatly cut and closely fitting voussoirs. We do not find, unfortunately, any detailed accounts of the procedures involved in the design of these sewers, yet it is altogether probable that the old Roman civil engineers formed the cross-sections, grades, and other physical features of their sewer system by rational processes, although they would doubtless appear crude and elementary at the present time. It would not be strange if they made many failures in the course of their structural experiences, but they certainly left in the old Roman sewers examples of enduring work of its kind.

Some portions of this ancient sewer system are built with tops that are not true arches, and it is not impossible that they antedate the regal period. These tops are false arches formed of horizontal courses of tufa or peperino, each projecting over that below until the two sides thus formed meet at the top. The outline of the crowns of such sewers may therefore be triangular, curved, or polygonal; they were usually triangular. Smaller drains forming feeders to the larger members of the system were formed with tops composed of two flat stones laid with equal inclination to a vertical line so as to lean against each other at their upper edges and over the axis of the sewer. This method of forming the tops of the drains by two inclined flat stones was a crude but effective way of accomplishing the desired purpose.

The main members of this great sewer system seem to have followed the meandering courses of small rivers or streams, constituting the natural drainage-courses of the site of the city. The Cloaca Maxima has an exceedingly crooked course and it, along with others, was probably first formed by walling up the sides

of a stream and subsequently closing in the top. Modern engineers know that such an alignment for a sewer is viciously bad, and while this complicated system of drains is admirably constructed in many ways for its date, it cannot be considered a perfect piece of engineering work in the light of present engineering knowledge. It is probable that the walling in of the sides of the original streams began to be done in Rome at least as early as the advent of the Tarquins, possibly as early as 800 B.C. or earlier.

We know little about the original outfalls or points of discharge into the Tiber, except that, as previously stated, these points were made through the massive quay-walls constructed during the period of the kings along both shores of the Tiber, probably largely for defence as originally built. The discharge of the old Roman sewers through the face of this quay-wall and into the river is precisely the manner in which the sewers of New York City in many places are discharged into the North, East, and Harlem rivers.

The Cloaca Maxima is not the only great ancient sewer thus far discovered. There are at least two others equal to it, and some of the single stones with which they are built contain as much as 45 cubic feet each. These cloacæ were not mere sewers; indeed they were more drains than sewers, for they carried off flood-waters and the natural drainage as well as the sewerage. They were therefore combined sewers and drains closely akin to the sewers of our "combined" systems. The openings into them were made along the streets of Rome and in public buildings or some other public places. There is no evidence that they were ventilated except through these openings, and from each noxious gases were constantly rising to be taken into the lungs of the passers-by. It is a rather curious as well as important fact that so far as excavations have been made there is practically no evidence that a private residence in Rome was connected with the sewers. The "latrines" were generally located adjacent to the Roman kitchens and discharged into the cloacæ.

21. Early Roman Bridges.—The early Romans were excellent bridge-builders as well as constructors in other lines of engineering work. Although the ancient city was first located on the left

bank of the Tiber, apparently it was but a comparatively short time before the need of means for readily crossing from bank to bank was felt. The capacity of the Roman engineers was equal to the demands of the occasion, and it is now known that seven or eight ancient bridges connected the two shores of the river Tiber. The oldest bridge is that known as Pons Sublicius. No iron was used in its construction, as bronze was the chief metal employed in that early day. The structure was probably all of timber except possibly the abutments and the piers. A French engineer, Colonel Emy, has exhibited in his "Traité de l'Art de la Charpenterie" a plan of this structure restored as an all-timber bridge with pile foundations. Lanciani, on the other hand, believes that the abutments and piers must have been of masonry. The masonry structures, however, known to exist at a later day may have been parts of the work of rebuilding after the two destructions by floods. The date of its construction is not known, but tradition places it in the time of Ancus Marcius. This may or may not be correct. A flood destroyed the bridge in 23 B.C., and again in the time of Antoninus Pius, but on both occasions it was rebuilt. The structure has long since disappeared. The piers only remained for a number of centuries, and the last traces of them were removed in 1877 in order to clear the bed of the river.

Fig. 11 shows Colonel Emy's restoration of the plan for the pile bridge which Julius Cæsar built across the Rhine in ten days for military purposes. This plan may or may not include accurate features of the structure, but it is certain that such a timber bridge was built, and well preserved pieces of the piles have been taken from under water at the site little the worse for wear after two thousand years of submersion.

The censor Ælius Scaurus built a masonry arch across the Tiber about a mile and a half from Rome in the year 100 B.C. This bridge is now known as the Ponte Molle, and some parts of the original structure are supposed to be included in it, having been retained in the repeated alterations. The arches vary in span from 51 to 79 feet, and the width of the structure is a little less than 29 feet.

In or about the year 104 A.D. the emperor Trajan constructed

what is supposed to be a wooden arch bridge with masonry piers across the Danube just below the rapids of the Iron Gate.

A *bas relief* on the Trajan Column at Rome exhibits the timber arches, but fails to give the span lengths, which have been the

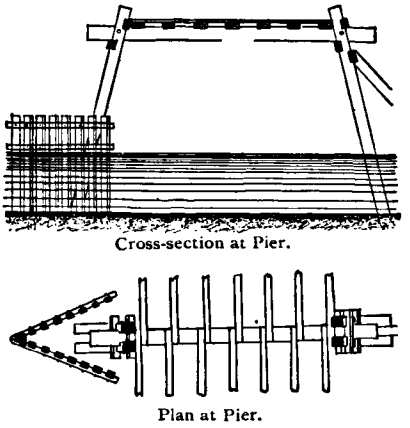


FIG. 11.—Bridge thrown across the Rhine by Julius Cæsar.

subject of much controversy, some supposing them to have been as much as 170 feet.

The ancient Pons Fabricius, now known as Ponte Quattiro Capi, still exists, and it is the only one which remains intact after an expiration of nearly two thousand years. It has three arches, the fourth being concealed by the modern embankment at one end; a small arch pierces the pier between the other two arches. This structure is divided into two parts by the island of Æsculapius. It is known that a wooden bridge must have joined that island with the left bank of the Tiber as early as 192 B.C., and a similar structure on the other side of the island is supposed to have completed the structure. While Lucius Fabricius was Commissioner of Roads in the year 62 B.C. he reconstructed the first-named portion into a masonry structure of arches. An engraved inscription below the parapets shows that the work was duly and satisfactorily completed, and further that it was the custom to require the constructors or builders of bridges to guarantee their work for the period of forty years. Possession of the last deposit,

made in advance as a guarantee of the satisfactory fulfilment of the contract, could not be regained until the forty-first year after completion.

The Pons Cestius is a bridge since known as the Pons Gratianus and Ponte di S. Bartolomeo. Its first construction is

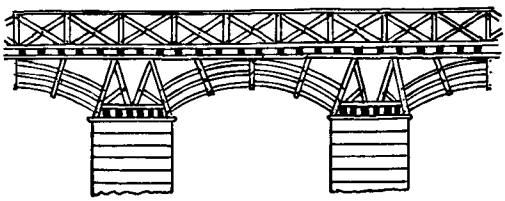


FIG. 12.—Trajan's Bridge.

supposed to have been completed in or about 46 B.C., and it was rebuilt for the first time in A.D. 365. A third restoration took place in the eleventh century. The modern reconstruction in 1886–89 was so complete that only the middle arch remains as an ancient portion of the structure. The island divides the bridge into two parts, the Ship of Æsculapius lying between the two, but it is not known when or by whom the island was turned into that form.

Another old Roman bridge, of which but a small portion is now standing, is Pons Æmilius, the piers of which were founded in 181 B.C., but the arches were added and the bridge completed only in 143 B.C. It was badly placed, so that the current of the river in times of high water exerted a heavy pressure upon the piers, and in consequence it was at least four times carried away by floods, the first time in the year A.D. 280.

The discovery of what appears to be a row of three or four ruins of piers nearly 340 feet up-stream from the Ponte Sisto seems to indicate that a bridge was once located at that point, although little or nothing is known of it as a bridge structure. Some suppose it to be the bridge of Agrippa.

The most historical of all the old Roman bridges is that which was called Pons Ælius, now known as Ponte S. Angelo, built by Hadrian A.D. 136. Before the reconstruction of the bridge in

1892 six masonry arches were visible, and the discovery of two more since that date makes a total of eight, of which it is supposed that only three were needed in a dry season. The pavement of the approach to this bridge as it existed in 1892 was the ancient roadway surface. Its condition at that time was an evidence of the substantial character of the old Roman pavement.

Below the latter bridge remains of another can be seen at low water. It is supposed that this structure was the work of Nero, although its name is not known.

The modern Ponte Sisto is a reconstruction of the old Pons Valentinianus or bridge of Valentinian I. The latter was an old Roman bridge, and it was regarded as one of the most impressive of all the structures crossing the river. It was rebuilt in A.D. 366–67.

The most of these bridges were built of masonry and are of the usual substantial type characteristic of the early Romans. They were ornamented by masonry features in the main portions and by ornate balustrades along either side of the roadway and sidewalks. The roadway pavements were of the usual irregular polygonal old Roman type, the sidewalk surfaces being composed of the large slabs or stones commonly used in the early days of Rome for that purpose.

22. Bridge of Alcantara.—Among the old Roman bridges should be mentioned that constructed at Alcantara in Spain, supposedly by Trajan, about A.D. 105. It is 670 feet long and its greatest height is 210 feet. One of its spans is partially destroyed. The structure is built of blocks of stone without cementing material. In this case the number of arches is even, there being six in all, the central two having larger spans than those which flank them. It is a bridge of no little impressiveness and beauty and is a most successful design.

23. Military Bridges of the Romans.—In the old Roman military expeditions the art of constructing temporary timber structures along lines of communication was well known and practised with a high degree of ability. Just what system of construction was employed cannot be determined, but piles were constantly used. At least some of these timber military bridges, and possibly all, were constructed with comparatively short spans, the

trusses being composed of such braces and beams as might be put in place between bents of piles. As already observed, some of the sticks of these bridges have been found in the beds of German rivers, and at other places, perfectly preserved after an immersion of about two thousand years. These instances furnish conclusive evidence of the enduring qualities of timber always saturated with water.

24. The Roman Arch.—The Romans developed the semicircular arch to a high degree of excellence, and used it most extensively in many sewers, roads, and aqueducts. While the aqueduct spans were usually made with a length of about 18 or 20 feet, they built arches with span lengths as much as 120 feet or more, comparing favorably with our modern arch-bridge work. They seldom used any other curve for their arches than the circular, and when they built bridges an odd number of spans was usually employed, with the central opening the largest, possibly in obedience to the well-known esthetic law that an odd number of openings is more agreeable to the eye than an even number. Apparently they were apprehensive of the safety of the piers from which their arches sprang, and it was not an uncommon rule to make the thickness of the piers one third of the clear span. Nearly one fourth of the entire length of the structure would thus be occupied by the pier thicknesses. Although the use of mortar, both lime and cement, early came into use with the Romans, they usually laid up the ring-stones of their arches dry, i.e., without the interposition of mortar joints.

CHAPTER III.

25. The Roman Water-supply.—There is no stronger evidence of engineering development in ancient Rome, nor of the advanced state of civilization which characterized its people, than its famous system of water-supply, which was remarkable both for the volume of water daily supplied to the city and for the extensive aqueducts, many of whose ruins still stand, as impressive monuments of the vast public works completed by the Romans. These ruins, and those of many other works, would of themselves assure us of the elaborate system of supply, but fortunately there has been preserved a most admirable description of it, the laws regulating consumption, the manner of administering the water department of the government of the ancient city, and much other collateral information of a most interesting character. In the work entitled, in English, "The Two Books on the Water-supply of the City of Rome," by (Sextus) Julius Frontinus, an eminent old Roman citizen, who, besides having filled the office of water commissioner * of the city, was governor of Britain and three times consul, as well as having enjoyed the dignity of being augur. He may properly be called a Roman engineer, although he evidently was a man of many public affairs, and so esteemed by the emperors who ruled during his time that he accompanied them in various wars as a military man of high rank. He wrote seven books at least, viz., "A Treatise on Surveying," "Art of War," "Strategematics," "Essays on Farming," "Treatise on Boundaries, Roads, etc.," "A Work on Roman Colonies," and his account of the water-works of Rome, entitled "De Aquis." It is the latter

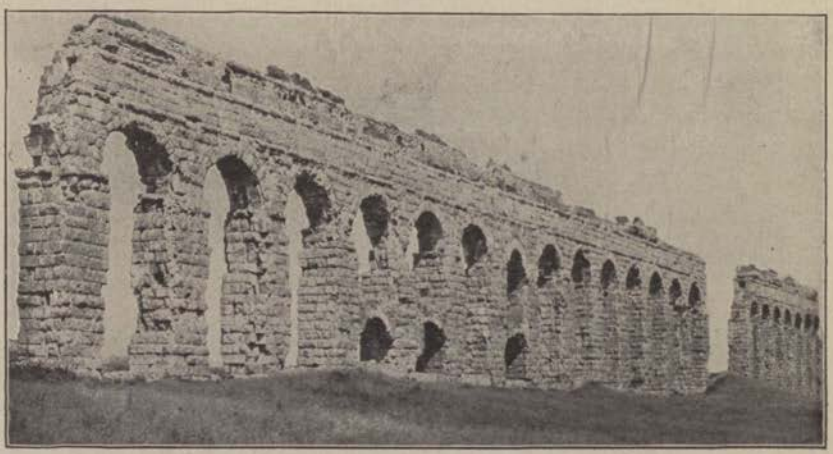
* The first permanent water commissioner in Rome was M. Agrippa, son-in-law of Cæsar Augustus, who took office B.C. 34. He was one of the greatest Roman engineers and constructors, if indeed he was not the first in rank.

book in which engineers are particularly interested. The translation of this book from the original Latin is made from what is termed the "Montecassino Manuscript," an account of which with the translation is given by Mr. Clemens Herschel in his entertaining work, "Frontinus, and the Water-supply of the City of Rome."

As near as can be determined Frontinus lived from about A.D. 35 to A.D. 103 or 104. Judging from the offices which Frontinus held and the honors which he enjoyed throughout his life, it would appear that he was a patrician; he was certainly a man of excellent executive capacity, of intellectual vigor and refined taste, and a conscientious public servant. The water-supply of the city was held by the Romans to be one of the most important of all its public works, and its administration during the life of Frontinus was entrusted to what we should call a water commissioner, appointed by the emperor. It was considered to be an office of dignity and honor, and the proper discharge of its responsibilities was a public duty which required a high order of talent, as well as great integrity of character.

26. The Roman Aqueducts.—Frontinus states that from the foundation of the city of Rome until 313 B.C., i.e., for a period of 441 years, the only water-supply was that drawn either from the river Tiber or from wells or springs. The veneration of the Romans for springs is a well-known feature of their religious tenets. They were preserved with the greatest care, and hedged about with careful safeguards against irreverent treatment or polluting conditions. Apparently after this date the people of Rome began to feel the need of a public water-supply adequate to meet the requirements of a great city. At any rate, in the year 313 B.C. the first aqueduct, called the Appia, for bringing public water into the city of Rome was attempted by Censors Appius Claudius, Crassus, and C. Plautius, the former having constructed the aqueduct, and the latter having found the springs. Appius must have been an engineer of no mean capacity, for it was he who constructed the first portion of the Appian Way. The origin of this water-supply is some springs about 10 miles from Rome, and they may now be seen at the bottom of stone quarries in the valley of the Anio River. This

aqueduct, Aqua Appia, is mostly an underground waterway, only about 300 feet of it being carried on masonry arches. At the point where it enters the city it was over 50 feet below the surface; its clear cross-section is given as $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet wide by 5 feet



Claudia, of dimension stone, and Anio Novus, of brick and concrete, on top of it.

high. The elevation of its water-surface in Rome was probably under 60 feet above sea-level.

27. Anio Vetus.—The next aqueduct built for the water-supply of Rome was called Anio Vetus. It was built 272–269 B.C., and is about 43 miles long; it took its water from the river Anio. About 1100 feet of its length was carried above ground on an artificial structure. It also was a low-level aqueduct, the elevation at which it delivered water at Rome being about 150 feet above sea-level. It was built of heavy blocks of masonry, laid in cement, and the cross-section of its channel was about 3.7 feet wide by 8 feet high. In the year 144 B.C. the Roman senate made an appropriation equal to about $400,000 of our money to repair the two aqueducts already constructed, and to construct a new one called Aqua Marcia, to deliver water to the city at an elevation of about 195 feet above sea-level. This aqueduct was finished 140 B.C.; it is nearly 58 miles long, and carried water of most excellent quality through a channel which, at the head of the aqueduct, was $5\frac{7}{8}$ feet wide

by $8\frac{3}{10}$ feet high, but farther down the structure was reduced to 3 feet wide by $5\frac{7}{10}$ feet high. The excellent water of these springs is used for the present supply of Rome, and is brought in the Aqua Pia, built in 1869, as a reconstruction of the old Aqua Marcia. This aqueduct, like its two predecessors, is built of dimension stone, 18 inches by 18 inches by 42 inches, or larger, laid in cement; but concrete and brick were used in the later aqueducts, with the exception of Claudia.

28. Tepula.—The aqueduct called Aqua Tepula, about 11 miles in length, and completed 125 B.C., was constructed to bring into the city of Rome a slightly warm water from the volcanic springs situated on the hill called Monte Albani (Alban Hills) southeast of Rome. The temperature of these springs is about 63° Fahr. In the year B.C. 33 Agrippa caused the water from some springs high up the same valley to be brought in over the aqueduct Aqua Julia, 14 miles long. This latter water was considerably colder than that of the Tepula Springs. The two waters were united before reaching Rome and allowed to flow together far enough to be thoroughly mixed. They were then divided and carried into Rome in two conduits. The volume of water carried in the Aqua Julia was about three times that taken from the Tepula Springs, the cross-section of the latter being only 2.7 feet wide by 3.3 feet high, while that of Julia was 2.3 feet by 4.6 feet. The water from Aqua Julia entered Rome at an elevation of about 212 feet above sea-level, and that from Aqua Tepula about 11 feet lower.

29. Virgo.—The sixth aqueduct in chronological order was called Virgo, and it was completed 19 B.C. It takes water from springs about 8 miles from Rome and only about 80 feet above sea-level, but the length of the aqueduct is about 13 miles. The delivery of water in the city by this aqueduct is about 67 feet above that level. The cross-section of this channel is about 1.6 feet wide and 6.6 feet high.

30. Alsietina.—The preceding aqueducts are all located on the left or easterly bank of the Tiber, but one early structure was located on the right bank of the Tiber to supply what was called the Trans-Tiberine section of the city, and it was known as Aqua Alsietina. The emperor Augustus had this aqueduct

constructed during his reign, and it was finished in the year A.D. 10. Its source is a small lake of the same name with itself, about 20 miles from Rome. The elevation of this lake is about 680 feet above sea-level, while the water was delivered at an elevation of about 55 feet above the same level. The water carried by this aqueduct was of such a poor quality that Frontinus could not "conceive why such a wise prince as Augustus should have brought to Rome such a discreditable and unwholesome water as the Alsietina, unless it was for the use of Naumachia." The latter was a small artificial lake or pond in which sham naval fights were conducted.

31. Claudia.—The eighth aqueduct described by Frontinus is the Aqua Claudia, built of dimension stone, which he calls a

Sand and Pebble Catch-tanks near Tivoli. Dimension-stone aqueducts of Marcia at either end of the tank built of small stone; *opus incretum*. The arches are chambers of the tanks.

magnificent work on account of the large volume of water which it supplied, its good quality, and the impressive character of considerable portions of the aqueduct itself, between 9 and 10 miles being carried on arches. It was built in 38–52 A.D. and is forty-three miles long. The sources of its supply are found in the valley of the Anio, and consequently it belongs to the system on the left bank of the Tiber. The cross-section

of its channel was about 3.3 feet wide by 6.6 feet high. It was a work greatly admired by the Roman people, as is evidenced by the praise "given to it by Roman authors who wrote at that time." It delivered water at the Palatine 185 feet above sea-level. According to Pliny, the combined cost of it and the Aqua Anio Novus was 55,500,000 sestertii, or nearly $3,000,000. This aqueduct probably belongs to the highest type of Roman hydraulic engineering. It follows closely the location of the Aqua Marcia, although its alignment now includes a cut-off tunnel about 3 miles long, the latter having been constructed about thirty-six years after the aqueduct was opened. Mr. Clemens Herschel observes that the total sum expended for these two aqueducts makes a cost of about $6 per lineal foot for the two. The arches of this aqueduct and those of the Anio Novus have clear spans of 18 to 20 feet, with a thickness at the crown of about 3 feet.

32. Anio Novus.—The ninth aqueduct described by Frontinus is called Anio Novus. It was also constructed in the years A.D. 38–52. This aqueduct has a length of about 54 miles and takes its supply from artificial reservoirs constructed by Nero at his country-seat in the valley of the Anio near modern Subiaco. This structure is built of brick masonry lined with concrete. That portion of the Aqua Claudia which is located on the Campagna carries for 7 miles the Anio Novus, and it forms the long line of aqueduct ruins near Roma Vecchia. The upper surface of the arch ring at the crown forms the bottom of the channel of the aqueduct. The cross-section of the channel of the Anio Novus was 3.3 feet wide by 9 feet high. The elevation of the water in this, as in the Claudia, when it reached the Palatine was about 185 feet above sea-level. The Anio Novus in some respects would seem to be a scarcely less notable work than the Claudia. About 8 miles of its length is carried on arches, some of them reaching a height of about 105 feet from the ground.

33. Lengths and Dates of Aqueducts.—These nine aqueducts constituted all those described by Frontinus, as no others were completed prior to his time. Five others were, however, subsequently completed between the years 109 A.D. and 306 A.D., but enough has already been shown in connection with the older

structures to show the character of the water-supply of ancient Rome.

The following tabular statement is a part of that given by Mr. F. W. Blackford in "The Journal of the Association of Engineering Societies," December, 1896. It shows the dates and lengths of the ancient aqueducts of Rome between the years 312 B.C. and 226 A.D., with the length of the arch portions. The list includes those built up to the end of the Empire. It will be observed that the total length of the aqueducts is 346 miles, and that of the arch portions 44 miles. The figures vary a little from those given by Lanciani and others, but they are essentially accurate.

Name.	Date. B.C.	Total Length in Miles.	Length of Arches in Miles.
Appia	312	11	Little
Anio Vetus	272–264	43	"
Marcia	145	61	12
Tepula	126	13	Little
Julia	34	15	6
Virgo	21	14	Little
	A.D.		
Alsietina	10	22	Little
Augusta	10	6	"
Claudia	50	46	10
Anio Novus	52	58	9
Triana	109	42	Little
Alexandrina	226	15	7
Totals		346	44

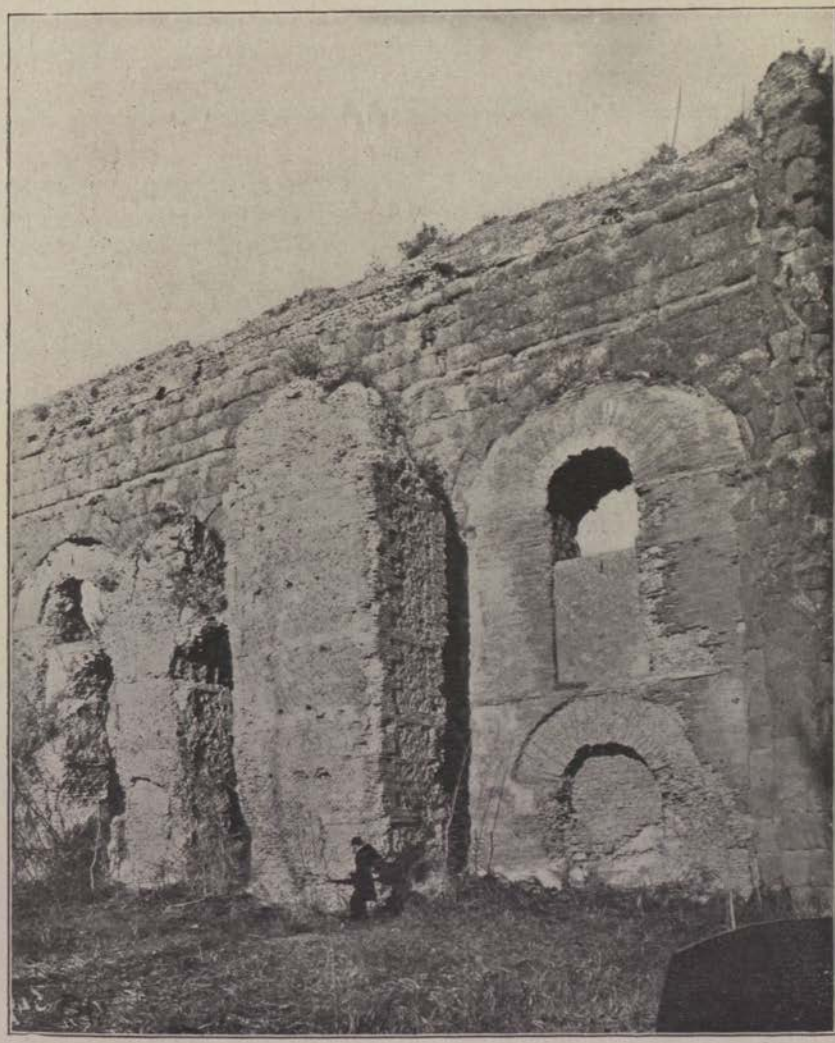
34. Intakes and Settling-basins. — The preceding brief descriptions of the old Roman aqueducts give but a superficial idea of the real features of those great works and of the system of water-supply of which they were such essential portions. Enough has been shown, however, to demonstrate conclusively that the engineers and constructors of old Rome were men who, on the one hand, possessed a high order of engineering talent and, on the other, ability to put in place great structures whose proportions and physical characteristics have commanded the admiration of engineers and others from the time of their completion to the present day. If a detailed statement were to be

made in regard to the water-supply of ancient Rome, it would appear that much care was taken to insure wholesome and potable water. At the intakes of a number of the aqueducts, reservoirs or basins were constructed in which the waters were first received and which acted as settling-basins, so that as much sedimentation as possible might take place. Similar basins (picinæ) were also constructed at different points along the aqueducts for the same purpose and for such other purposes as the preservation of the water in a portion of the aqueduct in case another portion had to be repaired or met with an accident which for the time being might put it out of use. These basins were usually constructed of a number of apartments, the water flowing from one to the other, very much as sewage in some sewage-disposal works flows at the present time through a series of settling-basins. The object of these picinæ was the clearing of the water by sedimentation. Indeed there was in some cases a use of salt in the water to aid in clarifying it. This is an early type of the modern process of clarifying water by chemical precipitation, not the best of potable-water practice, but one that is sometimes permissible.

35. Delivery-tanks.—The aqueducts brought the water to castellæ or delivery-tanks, i.e., small reservoirs, both inside the city and outside of it, and from these users were obliged by law to take their supplies; that is, for baths, for fountains, for public uses, for irrigation, and for private uses. When Frontinus wrote his "De Aquis" a little less than three tenths of all the water brought to Rome by the aqueducts was used outside of the city. The remainder was distributed in the city from 247 delivery-tanks or small reservoirs, about one sixth of it being consumed by 39 ornamental fountains and 591 water-basins.

36. Leakage and Lining of Aqueducts.—These aqueducts were by no means water-tight. Indeed they were subject to serious leakage, and Frontinus shows that forces of laborers were constantly employed in maintaining and repairing them. As has been stated, the older aqueducts were built of dimension stones, while the later were constructed of concrete or bricks and concrete. The channels of these aqueducts, as well as reservoirs and other similar structures, were made as nearly water-

tight as possible by lining them with a concrete in which pottery, broken into fine fragments, was mixed with mortar.



Claudia and Anio Novus near Porta Furba. Repairs in brickwork and in a composite of concrete and brickwork.

37. Grade of Aqueduct Channels.—The fall of the water-surface in these aqueducts cannot be exactly determined. The

levelling-instruments used by the Romans were simple and, as we should regard them, crude, although they served fairly well the purposes to which they were applied. They were not sufficiently accurate to determine closely the slope or grade of the water-surface in the aqueduct channels. The deposition of the lime from the water along the water-surface on the sides of the channels in many cases would enable that slope to be determined at the present time, but sufficiently careful examinations have not yet been made for that purpose. Lanciani states that the slopes in the Aqua Anio Vetus vary from about one in one thousand to four in one thousand. An examination of the incrustation on the sides of the Aqua Marcia near its intake makes it appear that the slope of the surface was about .06 foot per 100 feet, which would produce a velocity, according to the formula of Darcy, of about 3.3 feet per second. In some aqueducts built in Roman provinces it would appear that slopes have been found ranging from one in six hundred to one in three thousand.

38. Qualities of Roman Waters.—The chief characteristic in most of the old Roman waters was their extreme hardness. They range from 11° to 48° of hardness, the latter belonging to the water of the Anio, while the potable waters in this country scarcely reach 5°. The old Romans recognized these characteristics of their waters and, as has been intimated, used the best of them for table purposes, while the less wholesome were employed for fountains, flushing sewers, and other purposes not affected by undesirable qualities. The water from Claudia, for instance, was used for the imperial table. The water from the Aqua Marcia was also of excellent quality, while that brought in by the Aqua Alsietina was probably not used for potable purposes at all.

39. Combined Aqueducts. — In several cases a number of aqueduct channels were carried in one aqueduct. A marked instance of this kind was that of Julia, Tepula, and Marcia, all being carried in vertical series in one structure. Numerous instances of this sort occurred.

40. Property Rights in Roman Waters.—In reading the two books of Frontinus one will be impressed by the property values which the old Romans created in water rights. The laws of

Rome were exceedingly explicit as to the rights of water-users and as to the manner in which water should be taken from the aqueducts and from the pipes leading from the reservoirs in and about the city. The proper methods for taking the water and using it were carefully set forth, and penalties were prescribed for violations of the laws pertaining to the use of water. There were many abuses in old Rome in the administration of the public water-supply, and one of the most troublesome duties which Frontinus had to perform lay in reforming those abuses and preventing the stealing of water. The unit of use of water (a "quinaria," whose value is not now determinable) was the volume which would flow from an orifice .907 inch in diameter and having an area of about .63 of a square inch. Mr. Herschel shows that in consequence of the failure of the Romans to understand the laws of the discharge of water under varying heads, the quinaria may have ranged from .0143 cubic foot to .0044 cubic foot per second or between even wider limits.

41. Ajutages and Unit of Measurement.—Frontinus describes twenty-five ajutages of different diameter, officially approved in connection with the Roman system of public water-supply; but only fifteen of these were actually used in his day. All of these were circular in form, although two others had been used prior to that time. They varied in diameter from .907 to 8.964 English inches and were originally made of lead, but that soft metal lent itself too easily to the efforts of unscrupulous water-users to enlarge them by thinning the metal. In his time they were made of bronze, which was a hard metal and could not be tampered with so as to enlarge its cross-section. The discharge through the smallest of these ajutages was the quinaria, the unit in the scale of water rights. The largest of the above ajutages had a capacity of a little over 97 quinariæ.

This unit (the quinaria) was based wholly on superficial area, and had no relation whatever to the head over the orifice or to the velocity corresponding to that head. Although Frontinus refers in several cases to the fact that the deeper the ajutage is placed below the water surface the greater will be the discharge through it, also to the fact that a channel or pipe of a given area of cross-section will pass more water when the latter flows through it

with a high velocity, he and other Roman engineers seem to have failed completely to connect the idea of volume of discharge to the product of area of section by velocity. In the Roman mind of his day, and for perhaps several hundred years after that, the area of the cross-section of the prism of water in motion was the only measure of the volume of discharge. This seems actually preposterous at the present time, and yet, as observed by Mr. Herschel, possibly a majority of people now living have no clearer idea of the volume of water flowing in either a closed or open channel. Existing statutes even respecting water rights bear out this statement, improbable as it may at first sight appear. This early Roman view of the discharge is, however, in some respects inexplicable, for Hero of Alexandria wrote, probably in the period 100–50 B.C., that the section of flow only was not sufficient to determine the quantity of water furnished by a spring. He proceeded to set forth that it was also necessary to know the velocity of the current, and further explained that by forming a reservoir into which a stream would discharge for an hour the flow or discharge of that stream for the same length of time would be equal to the volume of water received by the reservoir. His ideas as to the discharge of a stream of water were apparently as clear as those of a hydraulic engineer of the present time. Indeed the method which he outlines is one which is now used wherever practicable.

It has been a question with some whether Frontinus and other Roman engineers were acquainted with the fact that a flaring or outward ajutage would increase the flow or discharge through the orifice. The evidence seems insufficient to establish completely that degree of knowledge on their part. At the same time, in the CXII. chapter of Frontinus' book on the "Water-supply of the City of Rome," he states that in some cases pipes of greater diameter than that of the orifice were improperly attached to legal ajutages. He then states: "As a consequence the water, not being held together for the lawful distance, and being on the contrary forced through the short restricted distance, easily filled the adjoining larger pipe." He was convinced that the use of a pipe with increased diameter under such circumstances would give the user of the water a larger supply than

that to which he was entitled, and he was certainly right in at least most cases.

The actual unit orifice through which the unit volume of water called the quinaria was discharged was usually of bronze stamped by a proper official, thus making its use legal for a given amount of water. The Roman engineers understood that such an orifice should be inserted accurately at right angles to the side of the vessel or orifice, and that was the only legal way to make the insertion. Furthermore, the law required that there should be no change in the diameter of the pipe within 50 feet of the orifice. It was well known that a flaring pipe of increased diameter applied immediately at the orifice would largely increase the discharge, and unscrupulous people resorted to that means for increasing the amount of water to be obtained for a given price.

42. The Stealing of Water.—It appears also that Frontinus experienced much trouble from clandestine abstraction of water from reservoirs and water-pipes. The administration of the water commissioner's office had been exceedingly corrupt prior to his induction into office, and some of his most troublesome official work arose from his efforts to detect water-thieves, and to guard the supply system from being tapped irregularly or illegally. We occasionally hear of similar instances of water-stealing at the present time, which shows that human nature has not altogether changed since the time of Frontinus.

43. Aqueduct Alignment and Design of Siphons.—The alignment of some of the Roman aqueducts followed closely the contours of the hills around the heads of valleys, while others took a more direct line across the valleys on suitable structures, frequently series of arches. Judging from our own point of view it may not be clear at first sight why such extensive masonry constructions were used when the aqueduct could have been kept in excavation by following more closely the topography of the country. There is little doubt that the Romans knew perfectly well what they were about. Indeed it is definitely stated in some of the old Roman writings that the structures were built across valleys for the specific purpose of saving distance which, in most instances at least, meant saving in cost.

These masonry structures, it must be remembered, were built of material immediately at hand. Furthermore, these aqueducts were generally only made of sufficient width for the purpose of carrying water-channels. They were not wide structures. In some cases they were not more than 8 feet or 9 feet wide for a height of nearly 100 feet. The cost of construction was thus largely reduced below that of wide structures.

Old Roman Lead and Terra-cotta Pipe.

The Romans were perfectly familiar with the construction of inverted siphons. As a matter of fact Vitruvius, in Chapter VII of his Eighth book, decribes in detail how they should be designed. His specific descriptions relate to lead pipes, but it is clear from what he states at other points that he considered earthenware pipes equally available. He sets forth how the pipes should be carried down one slope, along the bottom of the valley, and up the other slope, the lowest portion being called the "venter." He realized the necessity of guarding all elbows in the pipe by using a single piece of stone as a detail for the

elbow, a hole being cut in it in each direction in which the adjoining sections of pipe should be inserted, the sections of lead pipe being 10 feet long, and even goes so far as to describe the standpipes that should be inserted for the purpose of allowing air to escape. Vitruvius also advises that the water should not only be admitted to inverted siphons in a gradual manner, but that ashes should be thrown into the water when the siphon is first used in order that they may settle into the joints or open places so as to close any existing leaks. Lead-pipe siphons, 12 to 18 inches in diameter, with 1 inch thickness of metal under 200 feet head, built in ancient times, have been found at Lyons in France. Also a drain-pipe siphon with masonry reinforcement was built at Alatri in Italy 125 B.C. to carry water under a head of about 340 feet. There are other notable instances of inverted siphons constructed and used during the ancient Roman period, some of them being of lead pipe imbedded in concrete.

CHAPTER IV.

44. Antiquity of Masonry Aqueducts. — Masonry aqueducts, either solid or with open arches, were not first constructed by the city of Rome; their origin was much farther back in antiquity than that. The Greeks at least used them before the Roman engineers, and it is not unlikely that the latter drew their original ideas from the former, if indeed they were not instructed by them. Nor during the times of the Romans was the construction of aqueducts confined to Rome. Wherever Roman colonies were created it would appear that vast sums were expended in the construction of aqueducts for the purpose of suitably supplying cities with water. Such constructions are found at many points in Spain, France, and other countries which were in ancient times Roman colonies. It is probable that there are not less than one hundred, and perhaps many more, of such structures in existence at the present time.

45. Pont du Gard.—Among the more prominent aqueducts constructed during the old Roman period and outside of Italy were the Pont du Gard at Nismes in the south of France, and those at Segovia and Tarragona in Spain. The Pont du Gard has three tiers of arches with a single channel at the top. The greatest height above the river Gardon is about 180 feet, and the length of the structure along the second tier of arches is 885 feet. The arches in the lowest tier are 51 feet, 63 feet, and 80.5 feet in span, while the arches in the highest tier are uniformly 15 feet 9 inches in span. The thickness of the masonry at the top of the structure from face to face is 11 feet 9 inches, and 20 feet 9 inches at the lower tier of arches, the thickness at the intermediate tier being 15 feet.

The largest arch has a depth of keystone of 5 feet 3 inches, while the other arches of the lower tier have a depth of keystone

of 5 feet. The depth of the ring-stones of the small upper arches is 2 feet 7 inches. This structure forms a sort of composite construction, the lower arches constituting four separate arch-rings placed side by side, making a total thickness of 20 feet 9 inches. The intermediate arches consist of three similar series of narrow arches placed side by side, but the masonry of the upper tier is continuous throughout from face to face. The three and four parallel series of arches of the middle and lowest tiers are in no way bonded or connected with each other. There is no cementing material in any of the arch-rings, but cement mortar was used in rubble masonry or concrete around the channel through which the water flowed above the upper tier of small arches. This structure is supposed to have been built between the years 31 B.C. and 14 A.D.

46. Aqueducts at Segovia, Metz, and Other Places. — The Segovia aqueduct was built by the emperor Trajan about A.D. 100–115. It is built without mortar, and has 109 arches, but 30 are modern, being reproductions of the old. It has a length of over 2400 feet, and in places its height is about 100 feet. The old Tarragona aqueduct is built with two series of arches, 25 being in the upper series and 11 in the lower. It is 876 feet long and has a maximum height of over 80 feet. At Mayence there are ruins of an aqueduct about 16,000 feet long. In Dacia, Africa, and Greece there are other similar ruins. Near Metz are the remains of a large old Roman aqueduct. It consisted of a single row of arches, and had no features of particular prominence. This latter observation, however, could not be made of one of the bridges in the aqueduct at Antioch. Although the masonry and design of this latter structure were crude, its greatest height is 200 feet, and its length 700 feet. The lower portion of this structure was a solid wall with the exception of two openings, the arches extending in a single row along its upper portion. On the island of Mytilene are the ruins of another old aqueduct about 500 feet long, with a maximum height of about 80 feet.

The building of these remarkable aqueducts was practised at least down to the later periods of the Roman empire, that of Pyrgos, near Constantinople,—built not earlier than the tenth

century,—being an excellent example. It consists of two branches at right angles to each other. The greater branch is 670 feet long, and its greatest height 106 feet. There are three tiers of arches, the two upper being of semicircular and the lower of Gothic outline. The number in each tier for a given height is the same, but with an increasing length of span in rising from the lowest to the highest tier. Thus the highest tier of piers is the lightest, relieving the top of the structure of weight. The lowest row of piers is reinforced by counterforts or buttresses. At the top of the structure the width or thickness is 11 feet, but the thickness increases uniformly to 21 feet at the bottom. The smaller branch of the aqueduct is 300 feet long, and was built with twelve semicircular arches.

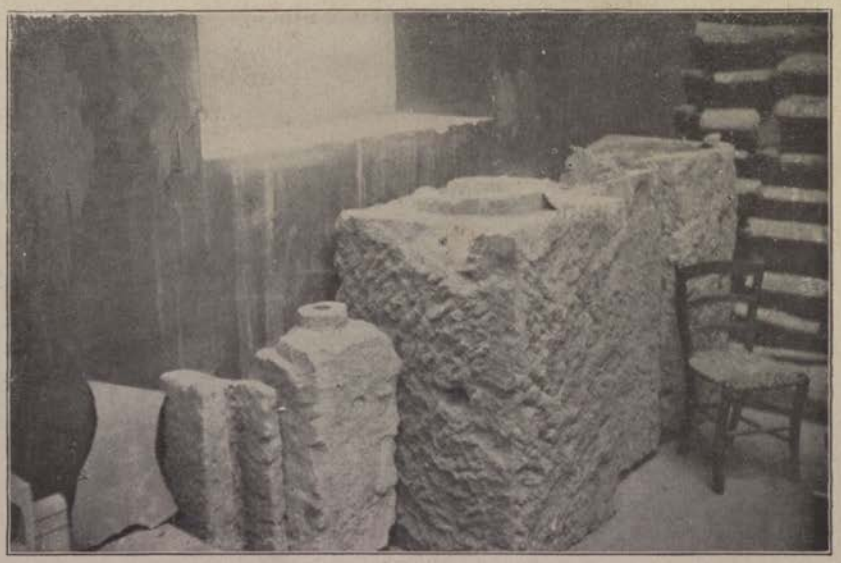
47. Tunnels.—The construction of tunnels, especially in connection with the building of aqueducts, constituting a branch of engineering procedure, was frequently practised by the ancient nations. Large tunnel-works were executed many times by the ancient Greeks and Romans. It would seem that the Greeks were the instructors of the Romans in this line of engineering operations. As early as B.C. 625 we are told that the Greek engineer Eupalinus constructed a tunnel 8 feet broad, 8 feet high, and 4200 feet long, through which was built a channel for carrying water to the city of Athens.

Sixty-five years later a similar work was constructed for the same Grecian city. Indeed it appears that tunnels were constructed in the time of the earliest history of aqueducts built to supply ancient Greek and Roman cities with water.

It is certain that at the beginning of the Christian era tunnelling processes were well known among the Romans. Vitruvius writes, in speaking of the construction of aqueducts, in Chapter VII of the Eighth Book: "If hills intervene between the city wall and spring head, tunnels underground must be made, preserving the fall above assigned; if the ground cut through be sandstone or stone, the channel may be cut therein; but if the soil be earth or gravel, side walls must be built, and an arch turned over, and through this the water may be conducted. The distance between the shafts over the tunnelled part is to be 120 feet."

The Romans pierced rock in their tunnel-work, not only by chiselling, but sometimes by building fire against the rock so as to heat it as hot as possible. The heated rock was then drenched with cold water, so that it might be cracked and disintegrated to as great an extent as practicable. According to Pliny vinegar was used instead of water in some cases, under the impression that it was more efficacious.

One of the methods mentioned by Vitruvius is plainly "the cut and cover" procedure of the present day. In Duruy's



Roman water-pipe made of bored-out blocks of stone.

history of Rome a tunnel over three miles long is mentioned on a line of an aqueduct at Antibes in France, as well as another constructed to drain Lake Fucinus in Italy, about A.D. 50. It is there stated that the latter required eleven years' labor of 30,000 men to build a rock tunnel with a section of 86 to 96 square feet 18,000 feet long.

Lanciani, in his "Ancient Rome," states that about A.D. 152 a Roman engineer (Nonius Datus) began the construction of a tunnel in Algeria, and after having carefully laid out the axis of the tunnel across the ridge "by surveying, and taking the

levels of the mountains," left the progress of the work in the hands of the contractor and his workmen. After the rather long absence from such a work of four years he was called back by the Roman governor to ascertain why the two opposite sections of the tunnel, as constructed, would not meet, and to take the requisite measures for the completion of the work through which water was to be conducted to Saldæ in a suitable channel. He explains that there should have been no difficulty, and that the failure of the two headings to meet was due to the negligence of the contractor and his assistant, whom he states "had committed blunder upon blunder," although he writes, "As always happens in these cases, the fault was attributed to the engineer." He solved the problem by connecting the two approximately parallel tunnels by a transverse tunnel, so that water was finally brought to the city of Saldæ.

The art of tunnel construction has been one of the most widely practised branches of Civil Engineering from the times of the ancient Assyrians, Egyptians, Greeks, Romans, and other ancient nations down to the present.

48. Ostia, the Harbor of Rome.—The capacity of the ancient Romans to build harbor-works is shown by what they did at Ostia, which was then at the mouth of the Tiber, but is now not less than four miles inland from the present shore-line. At the Ostia mouth of the river the present annual average advance seaward is not less than 30 feet, and at the Fiumicino mouth about one third of that amount.

The ancient port of Ostia is supposed to have been founded during the reign of the fourth king Ancus Marcius, but it attained its period of greatest importance during the reign of Claudius and Trajanus. At that time the fertile portions of the Campania had been so largely taken up by the country-places of the wealthy Romans that it was no longer possible for the peasantry to cultivate sufficient ground to yield the grain required by the home market of the Romans. Large fleets were consequently engaged in the foreign grain-trade of Rome. The wheat and other grain required in great quantities was grown mostly in Egypt, although Carthage and other countries supplied large amounts. The great fleets occupied in this trade made ancient Ostia their

Roman port. At the present time it has no inhabitants, but is a group of complete ruins, with its streets of tombs, baths,

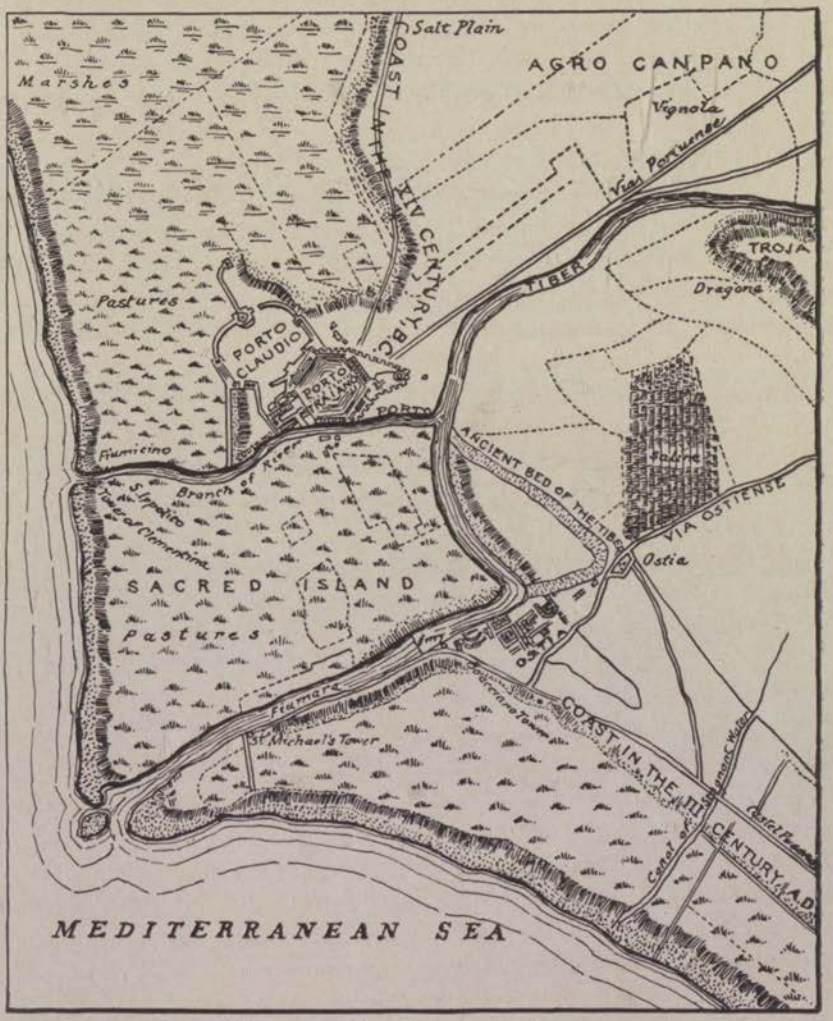


FIG. 13.—Plan of Ostia and Porto.

palaces, and temples, deeply covered with the accumulations of many centuries. Enough excavations have been made along the shores of the Tiber at this point to show that the river was bordered with continuous and substantial masonry quays, flanked

on the land side by successions of great warehouses, obviously designed to receive grain, wine, oil, and other products of the time. The entrance to this harbor was difficult, as the mouth of the river was shallow, with bars apparently obstructing its approach. There were no jetties, or other seaward works for the protection of vessels desiring to make the harbor. It is stated that during one storm nearly or quite two hundred vessels were destroyed while they were actually in the harbor.

49. Harbors of Claudius and Trajan.—The difficulty in entering the mouth of the Tiber prompted the emperor Claudius to construct another harbor to accommodate the vast commerce then centring at the port of Rome. Instead of increasing the capacity of Ostia and opening the mouth of the river by deepening it, he constructed a new harbor on what was then the seashore, a short distance from Ostia, and connected it with the Tiber by a canal, the extension of which by the natural forces of the river has become the Fiumicino, the only present navigable entrance to the river. This harbor was enclosed by two walls stretching out from the shore, and converging on the sea side to a suitable opening left for the entrance of ships. The superficial area of this harbor was about 175 acres, but it became insufficient during the time of Trajan. He then proceeded to excavate inland a hexagonal harbor with a superficial area of about 100 acres, which was connected both with the harbor of Claudius and the canal connecting the latter with the Tiber. These harbor-works were elaborate in their fittings for the accommodation of ships, and were built most substantially of masonry. They showed that at least in some branches of harbor-work the old Romans were as good engineers as in the construction of aqueducts, bridges, and other internal public works. The harbors at ancient Ostia, including those of Claudius and Trajan, were not the only works of their class constructed by the Romans, but they are sufficient to show as great advancement in harbor and dock work as in other lines of engineering.

These harbors were practically defenceless and exposed to the incursions of pirates, which came to be frequently and successfully made in the days of the declining power of Rome. It was therefore rather early in the Christian era that these attacks

discouraged, and ultimately drove away, first, the maritime business of the Romans and, subsequently, all the inhabitants of these ports, leaving the pillaged remnants of the vast harbor-works, warehouses, palaces, temples, and other buildings in the ruined condition in which they are now found.

CHAPTER V.

50. Ancient Engineering Science. — The state of what may be called the philosophy or science of engineering construction in ancient Rome is admirably illustrated by the work on Architecture by Marcus Vitruvius Pollio, who is ordinarily known as Vitruvius, and who wrote probably a little more than two thousand years ago. He calls himself an architect, and his work is a classic in that profession of which he claims to be a member. Although much of his work was purely architectural, a great portion of it, on the other hand, was not architecture as we now know it, but civil engineering in the best sense of the term. It must be remembered, therefore, that what is here written applies to that large portion of his work which is purely civil engineering.

It will be seen that although he understood really little or nothing about the science of civil engineering as we now comprehend it, he perceived many of the general and fundamental principles of the best practice of that profession and frequently applied them in a manner which would do credit to a modern civil engineer. He not only laid down axioms to govern the design of civil-engineering structures and machinery for the transmission of power, but he also set forth many considerations bearing upon public and private health and the practice of sanitary engineering in a way that was highly creditable to the state of scientific knowledge in his day. Speaking of the general qualifications of an architect, remembering that that word as he understood it includes the civil engineer, he states: "An architect should be ingenious, and apt in the acquisition of knowledge; . . . he should be a good writer, a skilful draughtsman, versed in geometry and optics, expert at figures, acquainted with history, informed on the principles of natural and moral philosophy, somewhat of a musician, not ignorant of the sciences both of

law and physics, nor of the motions, laws, and relations to each other of the heavenly bodies." Again he adds: "Moral philosophy will teach the architect to be above meanness in his dealings and to avoid arrogance; it will make him just, compliant, and faithful to his employer; and, what is of the highest importance, it will prevent avarice gaining an ascendency over him; for he should not be occupied with the thoughts of filling his coffers, nor with the desire of grasping everything in the shape of gain, but by the gravity of his manners and a good character should be careful to preserve his dignity."

These quaint statements of the desirable qualities of a professional man are worthy to be considered rules of good professional living at this time fully as much as they were in the days of old Rome. His esteem for his profession was evidently high, but not higher than the value which every civil engineer should put upon his professional life. The need of a general education for a civil engineer is greater now even than in his day, although musical accomplishments need not be considered as essential in modern engineering practice. That qualification, it is interesting to observe in passing, was inserted by Vitruvius in order to illustrate the wide range of engineering practice in those days when the architect-engineer was called upon, among other things, to construct catapults and other engines of war, in which a nice adjustment of gut ropes was determined by the musical tones emitted under the desired tension.

51. Ancient Views of the Physical Properties of Materials.—When it is remembered that the chemical constitution of materials used in engineering was absolutely unknown, that no quantitative determination of physical qualities had been made, and that the first correct conception of engineering science had yet to be acquired, it is a matter of wonder that there had been attained the engineering development evidenced both by ancient writings like those of Vitruvius and great engineering works like those of Rome, in the Babylonian Plain and in Egypt. In discussing the problem of water-supply, he mentions that certain learned ancients, "physiologists and philosophers, maintained that there are four elements—air, fire, water, and earth—and that their mixture, according to the difference of the species,

formed a natural mode of different qualities. We must recollect that not only from these elements are all things generated, but that they can neither be nourished nor grow without their assistance." This view of the construction of material things was not conducive to a clear comprehension of those physical laws which lie at the foundation of engineering science, and it is absolutely essential that these elementary considerations be kept constantly in view in considering the engineering attainments of the Romans and other ancient peoples.

52. Roman Civil Engineers Searching for Water.—In ancient times, as at present, it was very important in many cases to know where to look for water, and how to make what might promise to be a successful search for it. Vitruvius states that the sources of water for a supply may easily be found "if the springs are open and flowing above ground." If the sources are not so evident, but are more obscure, he recommends that "before sunrise one must lie down prostrate in the spot where he seeks to find it, and, with his chin placed on the ground and fixed, look around the place; for, the chin being fixed, the eye cannot range upwards further than it ought and is confined to the level of the place. Then where the vapors are seen curling together and rising into the air, there dig, because those appearances are not discovered in dry places." This method of discovering water-supply would be considered by modern engineers at least somewhat awkward as well as damp and disagreeable in the early morning hours. It is not more fantastic, however, or less philosophical than the use of the divining-rod, which has been practised in modern times as well as ancient, and is used even in some country districts at the present time.

Vitruvius does not forget that the local features, including both those of soil and of an artificial character, may affect the quality of the water and possibly make it dangerous. He, therefore, sets forth general directions by which good potable water may be found and that of a dangerous nature avoided. The necessity of distinguishing between good and bad water was as present to his mind and to the minds of the old Roman engineers as to civil engineers of the present day, but the means for making a successful discrimination were crude and obviously faulty, and

very often unsuccessful. He set forth, what is well known, that rain-water when collected from an uncontaminated atmosphere is most wholesome, but proceeds to give reasons which would not now be considered in the highest degree scientific.

In Chapter V of his Eighth Book there are described some "means of judging water" so quaint and amusing that they may now well be quoted even though no civil engineer would be bold enough to cite them in modern hydraulic practice. He says: "If it be of an open and running stream, before we lay it on, the shape of the limbs of the inhabitants of the neighborhood should be looked to and considered. If they are strongly formed, of fresh color, with sound legs and without blear eyes, the supply is of good quality." At another point he comes rather closely to our modern requirements which look to the exclusion of minute and elementary vegetable growths, when he says: "Moreover, if the water itself, when in the spring, is limpid and transparent, and the places over which it runs do not generate moss, nor reeds, nor other filth be near it, everything about it having a clean appearance, it will be manifest by these signs that such water is light and exceedingly wholesome."

53. Locating and Designing Conduits.— In treating of the manner of conducting water in pipes or other conduits, he adverts to the necessity of accurate levelling and the instruments that were used for that purpose. The three instruments which he mentions as being used are called the dioptra, the level (*libra aquaria*), and the chorobates, the latter consisting of a rod about 20 feet in length, having two legs at its extremities of equal length and at right angles to it. Cross-pieces were fastened between the rod and the legs with vertical lines accurately marked on them. These vertical lines were placed in a truly vertical position by means of plumb-lines so that the top of the rod was perfectly level, and the work could thus be made level in reference to it.

In Rome the water was generally conducted either by means of open channels, usually built in masonry for the purpose, or in lead pipes, or in "earthen tubes." Vitruvius states that the open channels should be as solid as possible, and have a fall of not less than one half a foot in 100 feet. The open channels

were covered with an arch top, so that the sun might be kept from striking the water. After bringing the water to the city it was divided into three parts. One was for the supply of pools and fountains, another for the supply of baths, and a third for the supply of private houses. A charge was made for the use of water for the pools, fountains, and baths, and in this way a yearly revenue was obtained. A further charge was also made for the water used in private houses, the revenue from which was applied for the maintenance of the aqueduct which supplied the water. The treatment to be given to the different soils, rocks, and other materials through which the conduit was built which brought the supply to Rome is duly set forth by Vitruvius, and he describes the conditions under which tunnels were constructed. He also described the methods of classifying the lead pipes through which water was conducted from the reservoirs to the various points in the city after stating that they must be made in lengths of not less than 10 feet. The sheets of lead employed in the manufacture of the pipes he describes as ranging in width from 5 inches to 100 inches. The diameter of the pipe would obviously equal very closely the width of the sheet divided by the ratio between the circumference and the diameter of the corresponding circle.

54. Siphons.—He speaks of passing valleys in the construction of the conduits by means of what we now call siphons, and prescribes a method for relieving it of the accumulated air. In speaking of earthen tubes or pipes he says that they are to be provided not less than 2 inches thick and "tongued at one end so that they may fit into one another," the joints being coated with quicklime and oil. He further observes that water conducted through earthen pipes is more wholesome than that through lead, and that water conveyed in lead must be injurious because from it white lead is obtained, which is said to be injurious to the human system. Indeed the effects of lead-poisoning were recognized in those early days, and its avoidance was attempted. In the digging of wells he wisely states that "the utmost ingenuity and discrimination" must be used in the examination of the conditions under which wells were to be dug. He also appreciated the advantage of sedimentation, for he advises

that reservoirs be made in compartments so that, as the water flows from one to another, sedimentation may take place and the water be made more wholesome.

55. Healthful Sites for Cities.—In the location of cities, as well as of private residences, Vitruvius lays down the general principle that the greatest care should be taken to select sites which are healthy and subject only to clean and sanitary surroundings. Marshy places and those subject to fogs, especially those "charged with the exhalations of the fenny animals," are to be avoided. Apparently this reference to "fenny animals" may have beneath it the fundamental idea of bacteria, but that is not certain. The main point of all these directions for the securing of sanitary conditions of living is that, so far as his technical knowledge permitted him to go, he insists on the same class of wholesome conditions that would be prescribed by a modern sanitary engineer.

56. Foundations of Structures.—Similarly in Chapter V of his First Book, on "Foundations of Walls and Towers," Vitruvius shows a realization of the principal conditions needful and requisite for the suitable founding of heavy buildings. After a sanitary site for a city is determined and one that can be put in communication with other people "by good roads, and river or sea navigation for the transportation of merchandise," he proceeds to state that "foundations should be carried down to solid bottom, if such can be found, and that they should be built thereon of such thickness as may be necessary for the proper support of that part of the wall standing above the natural level of the ground. 'They should be of the soundest workmanship, and materials of greater thickness than the walls above." Again, in speaking of the foundations supporting columns, he states: "The intervals between the foundations brought up under the columns should be either rammed down hard, or arched, so as to prevent the foundation-piers from swerving. If solid ground cannot be come to, and the ground be loose or marshy, the place must be excavated, cleared, and either alder, olive, or oak piles, previously charred, must be driven with a machine as close to each other as possible and the intervals between the piles filled with ashes. The heaviest foundations

may be laid on such a base." It is thus seen that pile foundations were used by the Romans, and that the piles were driven with a machine. It would be difficult to give sounder general rules of practice even after more than two thousand years' additional experience.

57. Pozzuolana and Sand.—Of all the materials which were useful to the Romans in their various classes of construction, including the foundations of roads, "pozzuolana" must have been the most useful, and that which contributed more to the development of successful construction in Rome than any other single agent. Vitruvius speaks of it frequently and gives rules not only for the use of it in the production of mortar and concrete, but also lays down at considerable length the treatment which should be given to lime in order to produce the best results. It was common, according to his statements, to use two measures of "pozzuolana" with one of lime in order to obtain a suitable cementing material. This mixture was used in varying proportions with sand and gravel or broken stone to produce concrete. He describes the various grades of sands to be found about Rome and the manner of using them. The statement is made that sand should be free of earth and that the best of it was such as to yield a "grating sound" when "rubbed between the fingers." This is certainly a good engineering test of sand. He prefers pit-sand to either river- or sea-sand; indeed throughout all his directions regarding this particular class of construction his rules might be used at the present time with perfect propriety.

58. Lime Mortar.—The old Romans had also discovered the advisability of allowing lime to stand for a considerable period of time after slaking. This insured the slaking of all those small portions which were possibly a little hydraulic and therefore slaked very slowly. He prescribes as a good proportion two parts of sand to one of lime, and also mentions the proportion of three to one. He attempts to explain the setting, as we term it, of lime, but his explanation in obscure terms, involving qualities of the elements of fire and air, is not very satisfactory.

59. Roman Bricks according to Vitruvius.—As is well known, the Romans were good brick-makers, and they were well aware

that bricks made from "ductile and cohesive" "red or white chalky" earth were far preferable to those made of more gravelly or sandy clay. The Roman bricks were both sun-dried and kiln-burned.

60. Roman Timber.—Timber was a material much used by the Romans, and the greater part of that which they used probably was grown in Italy, although considerable quantities were imported from other localities. Vitruvius writes in considerable detail concerning the selection of timber while standing, as well as in reference to its treatment before being used in structures. Like every material used by the old Romans in construction, the various kinds and qualities of timber received careful study from them, and they were by no means novices in the art of producing the best results from those kinds of timber with which they were familiar.

61. The Rules of Vitruvius for Harbors.—In Chapter XII of his Fifth Book Vitruvius lays down certain general rules for the selection and formation of harbors, and it is known that the Romans were familiar with elaborate and effective harbor construction, as is shown by that at Ostia. He appreciates that a natural harbor is one which has "rocks or long promontories jutting out, which from the shape of the place form curves or angles," and that in such places "nothing more is necessary than to construct portices and arsenals around them, or passages to the markets." He then proceeds to state that if such a natural formation is not to be found, and that if "on one side there is a more proper shore than on the other, by means of building or of heaps of stones, a projection is run out, and in this the enclosures of harbors are formed." He then proceeds to explain how "pozzuolana" and lime, in the proportion of two of the former to one of the latter, are used in subaqueous construction. He also prescribed a mode of building a masonry wall up from the bottom of an excavation made within what we should call a coffer-dam, formed, among other things, "of oaken piles tied together with chain pieces." The Romans knew well how to select harbors and how to construct in an effective manner the artificial works connected with them, although it appears that the effects of tidal and river currents in estuaries were neither well understood in

themselves nor in their transporting power of the solid material which those currents eroded.

62. The Thrusts of Arches and Earth; Retaining-walls and Pavements.—Although the Romans possessed little or no knowledge of analytical mechanics they attained to some good qualitative mechanical conceptions. Among other things they understood fairly well the general character of the thrust of an arch and the tendency of the earth to overthrow a retaining-wall. They knew that a massive abutment was needed to receive safely the thrust of an arch, and they counterforted or buttressed retaining-walls in order to hold them firmly in place. They also realized the danger of wet earth pressing against a retaining-wall, and even made a series of offsets or teeth on the inside of the wall on which the earth rested in order to aid in holding the wall in place. Vitruvius recommends as a safeguard against the pressure of earth wet by winter rains that "the thickness of the wall must be proportioned to the weight of earth against it," and that counterforts or buttresses be employed "at a distance from each other equal to the height of the foundations, and of the same width as the foundations," the projections at the bottom being equal in thickne s to that of the wall, and diminishing toward the top.

He gives in considerable detail instructions for the forming of pavements and stucco work, so many examples of which are still existing in Rome. These rules are in many respects precisely the same as would govern the construction of similar work at the present time. There are also described in a general way the methods of producing white and red lead, as pigments of paints, and a considerable number of other pigments of different colors.

63. The Professional Spirit of Vitruvius.—It is evident, from many passages in the writings of this Roman architect-engineer, that the ways of the professional men in old Rome were not always such as led to his peace of mind. Vitruvius utters bitter complaints which show that he did not consider purely professional knowledge and service to be adequately recognized or appreciated by his countrymen. He writes that in the city of Ephesus an ancient law provided that if the cost of a given

work completed under the plans and specifications of an architect did not exceed the estimate, he was commended "with decrees and honors," but if the cost exceeded the estimate with 25 per cent added thereto, he "was required to pay that excess out of his own pocket." Then he exclaims, "Would to God that such a law existed among the Roman people, not only in respect to their public but also to their private buildings, for then the unskilful could not commit their depredations with impunity, and those who were the most skilful in the intricacies of the art would follow the profession!"

64. Mechanical Appliances of the Ancients.—It is well known that the ancients possessed at least some simple types of machines, for the reason that they raised many great stones to a considerable height in completed works after having transported them great distances from the quarries whence they were taken. Undoubtedly these machines were of a simple and crude character and were made effective largely by the power of great numbers of men. We are not acquainted with all the details of these machines, although the general types are fairly well known. The elementary machines, including the lever, the inclined plane, the pulley, and the screw, which is only an application of the inclined plane, were all used not only by the Romans, but probably by every civilized ancient nation. Vitruvius describes a considerable number of these machines, and from his descriptions it is clear that they had wide application in the structural works of the Romans. The block and fall, as we term the pulley at the present time, was a common machine in the plant of a Roman constructor, as were also various modifications and applications of the lever, the roller, and the inclined plane.

65. Unlimited Forces and Time.—It is neither surprising nor very remarkable that with the use of these simple machines, aided by a practically unlimited number of men, the necessary raising or other movement of heavy weights was accomplished by the Romans and other ancient peoples. It is to be borne in mind that the element of time was of far less consequence in those days than at present, and that the rate of progress made in the construction of most if not all ancient engineering works was what we should consider intolerably slow.

PART II.

BRIDGES.

CHAPTER VI.

66. Introductory.—Although the bridge structures of to-day serve the same general purposes as those served by the most ancient structures, they are very different engineering products. It is not long, in comparison with the historic and prehistoric periods during which bridges have been built, since the science of mechanics has been sufficiently developed to make bridge design a rational procedure; and it is scarcely more than a century since the principles of mechanics were first applied to the design of bridge structures in such a way as to determine even approximately the amount of stress produced in any member by the imposed load. Naturally the first efforts made toward a truly rational bridge design were in fact simple and crude and only loosely approximate in their results. Probably the first analytic treatment of bridges was given to the design of arches in masonry and then in cast iron. As the action of forces in structures became better known through the development of mechanical science, the applications of the latter became less crude and approximate and the approach to the refined accuracy of the present day was begun.

67. First Cast-iron Arch.—These older structures, nearly all of them arches or more or less related to the arch, first appeared in cast iron in the latter part of the eighteenth century, when nothing like an accurate analysis of forces developed by the applica-

tion of a given load was known. The first cast-iron arch was erected over the Severn in England near Coalbrookdale in the year 1779. This bridge had a span of 100 feet, and the under surface of the arch or soffit at the crown was 45 feet above the points at the abutment from which the arch sprang, or, as civil engineers put it, the arch had a span of 100 feet and a rise or versine of 45 feet. Other cast-iron arches were built in England soon after.

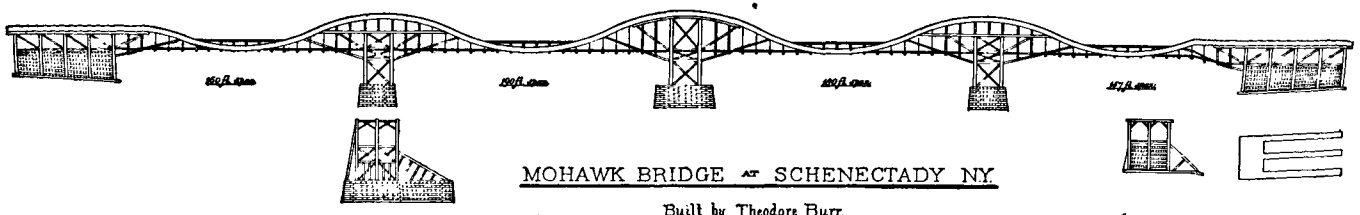
68. Early Timber Bridges in America.—Timber bridges have been built since the earliest historic periods and even earlier, but the widest and boldest applications of timber to bridge structures have been made in this country, beginning near the end of the eighteenth century and running to the middle of the nineteenth century, when timber began to be displaced by iron. Timber bridges and those of combined iron and timber are built to some extent even at the present day, but the most extended work of this class is to be found in the period just named.

In 1660 what was called the "Great Bridge" was built across the Charles River near Boston, and was a structure on piles. Other similar structures followed, but the first long-span timber bridge, where genuine bridge trussing or framing was used, appears to have been completed in 1792, when Colonel William P. Riddle constructed the Amoskeag Bridge across the Merrimac River at Manchester, N. H., in six spans of a little over 92 feet from centre to centre of piers. From that time timber bridges, mostly on the combined arch and truss principle, were built, many of them examples of remarkably excellent engineering structures for their day. Among these the most prominent were the Bellows Falls Bridge, in two spans of 184 feet each from centre to centre of piers, over the Connecticut River, built in 1785–92 by Colonel Enoch Hale; the Essex-Merrimac Bridge over the Merrimac River, three miles above Newburyport, Mass., built by Timothy Palmer in 1792, consisting actually of two bridges with Deer Island between them, the principal feature of each being a kind of arched truss of 160 feet span on one side of the island and 113 feet span on the other; the Piscataqua Bridge, seven miles above Portsmouth, N. H., in which a "stupendous arch of 244 feet cord is allowed to be a masterly piece

of architecture, planned and built by the ingenious Timothy Palmer of Newburyport, Mass.," in 1794; the so-called "Permanent Bridge" over the Schuylkill River at Philadelphia, built in 1804–06 in two arches of 150 feet and one of 195 feet, all in the clear, after the design of Timothy Palmer; the Waterford Bridge over the Hudson River, built in 1804 by Theodore Burr, in four combined arch and truss spans, one of 154 feet, one of 161 feet, one of 176 feet, and the fourth of 180 feet, all in the clear; the Trenton Bridge, built in 1804–06 over the Delaware River at Trenton, N. J., by Theodore Burr, in five arch spans of the bowstring type, ranging from 161 feet to 203 feet in the clear; a remarkable kind of wooden suspension bridge built by Theodore Burr in 1808 across the Mohawk River at Schnectady, N. Y., in spans ranging in length from 157 feet to 190 feet; the Susquehanna Bridge at Harrisburg, Pa., built by Theodore Burr in 1812–16 in twelve spans of about 210 feet each; the so-called Colossus Bridge, built in 1812 by Lewis Wernwag over the Schuylkill River at Fairmount, Pa., with a clear span of 340 feet $3\frac{3}{4}$ inches; the New Hope Bridge, built in 1814 over the Delaware River, in six 175 feet combined arch and truss spans, and a considerable number of others built by the same engineer.

Some of these wooden bridges, like those at Easton, Pa., and at Waterford, N. Y., remained in use for over ninety years with only ordinary repairs and with nearly all of the timber in good condition. In such cases the arches and trusses have been housed and covered with boards, so as to make what has been commonly called a covered bridge. The curious timber suspension bridge built by Theodore Burr at Schenectady was used twenty years as originally built, but its excessive deflection under loads made it necessary to build up a pier under the middle of each span so as to support the bridge structure at those points. These bridges were all constructed to carry highway traffic, but timber bridges to carry railroad traffic were subsequently built on similar plans, except that Burr's plan of wooden suspension bridge at Schenectady was never repeated.

69. Town Lattice Bridge.—A later type of timber bridge which was most extensively used in this country was invented by Ithiel Town in January, 1820, which was known as the Town



MOHAWK BRIDGE AT SCHENECTADY NY.

Built by Theodore Burr.

FIG. 1.

PATENT BRIDGE "COLOSSUS"

Across the River Schuylkill at Philadelphia.

Single Arch 340 feet 3 & ½ inches.

Built by Lewis Wernwag.

FIG. 2.

lattice bridge. This timber bridge was among those used for railroad structures. As shown by the plan it was composed of a close timber lattice, heavy plank being used as the lattice members, and they were all joined by wooden pins at their inter-

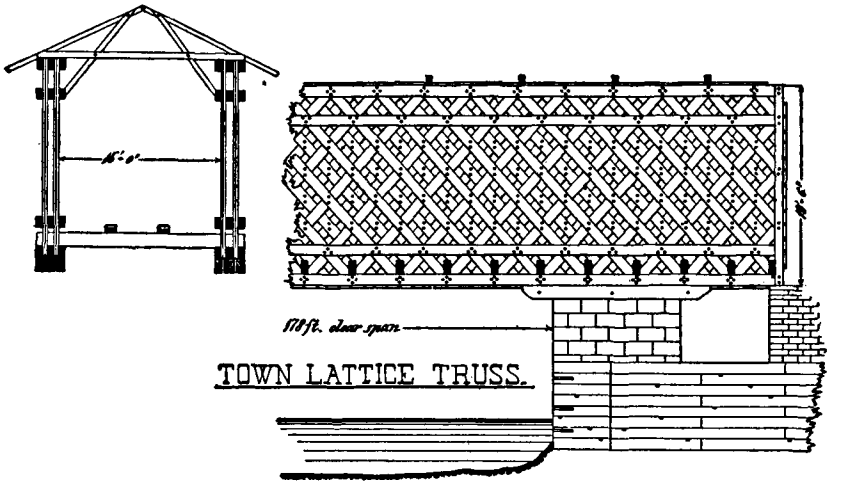


FIG. 3.

sections. This type of timber structure was comparatively common not longer ago than twenty-five years, and probably some structures of its kind are still in use. The close latticework with its many pinned intersections made a very safe and strong framework, and it enjoyed deserved popularity. It was the forerunner in timber of the modern all-riveted iron and steel lattice truss. It is of sufficient significance to state, in connection with the Town lattice, that its inventor claimed that his trusses could be made of wrought or cast iron as well as timber. In many cases timber arches were combined with them.

70. Howe Truss.—The next distinct advance made in the development of bridge construction in the United States was made by brevet Lieutenant-Colonel Long of the Corps of Engineers, U.S.A., in 1830–39, and by William Howe, who patented the bridge known as the Howe truss, although the structure more lately known under that name is a modification of Howe's original truss. Long's truss was entirely of timber, including the keys, pins, or treenails required, and it was frequently built

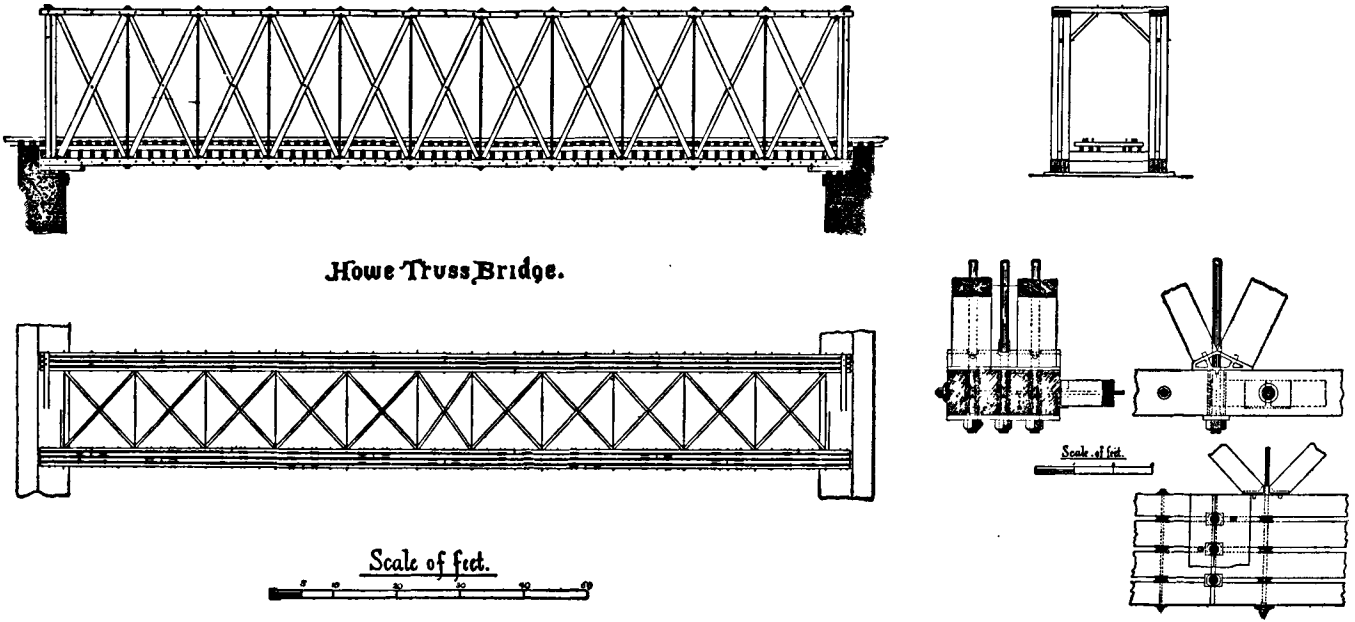


FIG. 4.

in combination with the wooden arch. The truss was considerably used, but it was not sufficiently popular to remain in use.

The Howe truss was not an all-wooden bridge. The top and bottom horizontal members, known as "chords," the inclined braces between them and the vertical end braces, all connecting the two chords, were of timber, and they were bolted at all intersections; but the vertical braces were of round iron with screw ends. These rods extended through both chords and received nuts at both ends pressing on cast-iron washers through which the rods extended. These wrought-iron round rods were in groups at each panel-point, numbering as many as existing stresses required. The ends of the timber braces abutted against cast-iron joint-boxes. The railroad floor was carried on heavy timber ties running entirely across the bridge and resting upon the lower chord members. It was a structure simple in character, easily framed, and of materials readily secured. It was also easily erected and could quickly be constructed for any reasonable length of span. It possessed so many merits that it became widely adopted and is used in modified form at the present day, particularly on lines where the first cost of construction must be kept as low as possible. The large amount of timber in it and the simple character of its wrought-iron or steel members greatly reduces its first cost.

71. Pratt Truss.—In 1844 the two Pratts, Thomas W. and Caleb, patented the truss, largely of timber, which has since been perpetuated in form by probably the largest number of iron and steel spans ever constructed on a single type. The original Pratt trusses had timber upper and lower chords, but the vertical braces were also made of timber instead of iron, while the inclined braces were of round wrought iron with screw ends, the reverse of the web arrangement in the Howe type. This truss had the great advantage of making the longest braces (of iron) resist tension only, while the shorter vertical braces resist compression. As a partially timber bridge it could not compete with the Howe truss, because it contained materially more iron and consequently was more costly. This structure practically closed the period of development of timber bridges.

72. Squire Whipple's Work.—What amounted to a new epoch in the development of bridge construction in this country practically began in 1840 when Squire Whipple built his first bowstring truss with wrought-iron tension and cast-iron compression members. While the Pratts and Howe had begun to employ to some extent the analysis of stresses in the design of their bridge members, the era of exact bridge analysis began with Squire Whipple. He subjected his bridge designs to the exacting requirements of a rational analysis, and to him belongs the honor of placing the design of bridges upon the firm foundation of a systematic mathematical analysis.

73. Character of Work of Early Builders.—The names of Palmer, Burr, and Wernwag were connected with an era of admirable engineering works, but, with bridge analysis practically unknown, and with the simplest and crudest materials at their disposal, their resources were largely constituted of an intuitive engineering judgment of high quality and remarkable force in the execution of their designs never excelled in American engineering. They occasionally made failures, it is true, but it is not recorded that they ever made the same error twice, and the works which they constructed form a series of precedents which have made themselves felt in the entire development of American bridge building.

CHAPTER VII.

74. Modern Bridge Theory.—The evolution of bridge design having reached that point where necessity of accurate analysis began to make itself felt, it is necessary to recognize some of the fundamental theoretical considerations which lie at the base of modern bridge theory, and which involve to a considerable extent that branch of engineering science known as the elasticity or strength of the materials used in engineering construction.

The entire group of modern bridge structures may be divided into simple beams or girders, trusses, arches, suspension bridges, and arched ribs, each class being adapted to carry either highway or railway traffic. That class of structure known as beams or girders is characterized by very few features. There are solid beams like those of timber, with square or rectangular cross-sections, and the so-called flanged girders which are constituted of two horizontal pieces, one at the top and the other at the bottom, connected by a vertical plate running the entire length of the beam. The fundamental theory is identically the same for both and is known as the "common theory of flexure," i.e., the theory of beams carrying loads.

If an ordinary scantling or piece of timber of square or rectangular cross-section, like a plank or a timber joist, so commonly used for floors, be supported at each end, it is a matter of common observation that it will sustain an amount of load depending upon the dimensions of the stick and length of span. When such a bar or piece is loaded certain forces or stresses, as they are called, are brought into action in its interior. The word "stress" is used simply to indicate a force that exists in the interior of any piece of material. It is a force and nothing else. It is treated and analyzed in every way precisely as a force. If the stresses or forces set up by the loading in the interior of the bar

become greater than the material can resist, it begins to break, and the breaking of that portion of the timber in which the stresses or forces are greatest constitutes its failure. The load which produces this failure in a beam is called the breaking load of the beam. In engineering practice all beams are so designed or proportioned that the greatest load placed on them shall be only a safe percentage of the breaking load; the safe load usually being found between $\frac{1}{3}$ and $\frac{1}{6}$ of the breaking load. In most buildings the safe or working load, as it is called, is probably about $\frac{1}{4}$ of the breaking load.

75. The Stresses in Beams.—The proper design of beams or girders to carry prescribed loads is based upon the stresses which are developed or brought into action by them. It can easily be observed that if a beam supported at each end be composed of a number of thin planks or boards placed one upon the other, it will carry very little load. Each plank or board acts independently of the others and a very small load will cause a sag, as shown in Fig. 6. If there be taken, on the other hand,

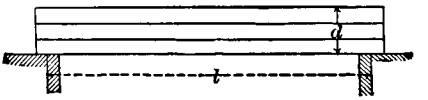


FIG. 5.

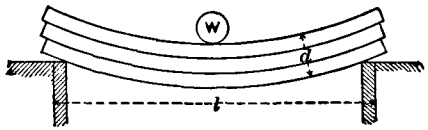


FIG. 6.

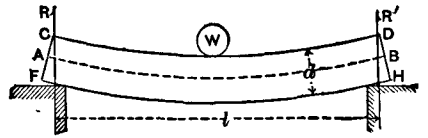


FIG. 7.

a beam made of a single stick of timber of the same width and depth as the number of planks shown in Fig. 6, so as to secure the solid beam shown in Fig. 7, it is a further common observation that this latter beam may carry many times the load which the laminated beam, shown in Fig. 6, sustains. The thin planks or boards readily slide over each other, so that the ends present

the serrated form shown in Fig. 6. The preventing of this sliding is the sole cause of the greatly increased stiffness of the solid beam shown in Fig. 7, for there is thus developed along the imaginary horizontal sections in the solid beam of Fig. 7 what are called shearing forces or stresses; and since they exist on horizontal sections or planes running throughout the entire length of the beam, they are called horizontal shears.

At each end of the beam shown in Fig. 7 there will be an upward or supporting force exerted by the abutments on which the ends of the beam rest. Those upward or supporting forces are shown at R and R' and are called reactions, because the abutments, so to speak, react against the ends of the beam when the latter is loaded. These reactions depend for their value on the amount and the location of the loading which the beam carries. Obviously these upward forces or reactions tend to cut or shear off the ends of the beam immediately above them, and if the loads were sufficiently large and the beam kept from bending, the reactions would actually shear off those ends, just as punches or shears in a machine-shop actually shear off the metal when the rivet-hole is punched, or when a plate is cut by shearing into two parts. The beam, however, bends or sags before shearing apart actually takes place.

76. Vertical and Horizontal Shearing Stresses.—If it be supposed that the length of the beam is divided into a great number

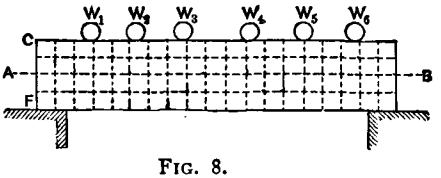


FIG. 8.

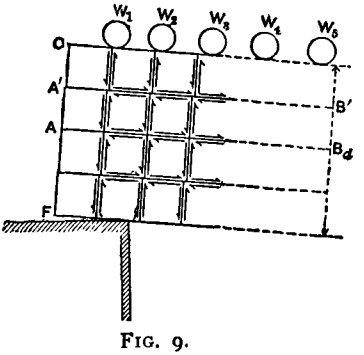


FIG. 9.

of parts by imaginary vertical lines, like those shown in Fig. 8, then vertical shearing forces will be developed in those vertical planes and sometimes, though not often, they are enough to

cause failure. It is not an uncommon thing, on the other hand, in timber to have actual shearing failure take place along a horizontal plane through the centre of the beam. Indeed this is recognized frequently as the principal method of failure in very short spans. When this horizontal shearing failure takes place, the upper and lower parts of the beam slide over each other and act precisely like the group of planks shown in Fig. 6.

If, then, the loaded beam be divided by vertical and horizontal planes into the small rectangular portions shown in Figs. 8 and 9, on each such vertical and horizontal imaginary plane there will be respectively vertical and horizontal shearing forces, which are shown by arrows in Fig. 9. It will be noticed in that figure that in each corner of the rectangle the two shearing forces act either toward or from each other; in no case do the two adjacent shearing forces act around the rectangle in the same direction. This is a condition of shearing stresses peculiar to the bent beam. It can be demonstrated by theory and is confirmed by experiment. There is a further peculiarity about these shearing forces which act in pairs either toward or from the same angle in any rectangle, and it is that the two stresses adjacent to each other have precisely the same value per square inch (or any square unit that may be used) of the surface on which they act. These stresses per square inch vary, however, either along the length of the beam or as the centre line of any normal cross-section is departed from. They are greatest along the centre line or central horizontal plane represented by AB, and they are zero at the top and bottom surfaces of the beam.

Inasmuch as the horizontal shear along the plane $A'B'$ is less than that along AB in Fig. 9, a part of the latter has been taken up by the horizontal fibres of the beam lying between the two planes. In other words, the horizontal layer of fibres at $A'B'$ is subjected to a greater stress or force along its length than at AB. The same general observation can be made in reference to any horizontal layer of fibres that is farther away from the centre than another. Hence the farther any fibre is from the centre the greater will be the stress or force to which it is subjected in the direction of its length. It results, then, that the

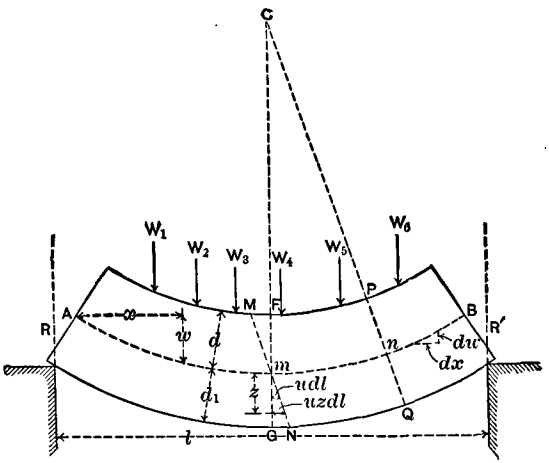
horizontal layers of fibres which are farthest from the centre line of the beam, i.e., those at the exterior surfaces, will be subjected to the greatest force or stress, and that is precisely what exists in a loaded beam whatever the material may be.

77. Law of Variation of Stresses of Tension and Compression. —Since a horizontal beam supported at each end is deflected or bent downward when loaded, it will take a curved form like that shown in either Fig. 7 or Fig. 10; but this deflection can only take place by the shortening of the top of the beam and the lengthening of its bottom. This shows that the upper part of the beam is compressed throughout its entire length, while the lower part is stretched. In engineering language, it is stated that the upper part of the beam is thus subjected to compression and the lower part to tension. The horizontal layers or fibres receive their tension and compression from the vertical and horizontal shearing forces in the manner already explained. If the conditions of loading of the bent beam should be subjected to mathematical analysis, it would be found that throughout the originally horizontal plane AB, Fig. 7, passing through the centre of each section there would be no stress of either tension or compression, although the horizontal shearing stress there would be a maximum. Further, as this central plane is departed from the stress of tension or compression per square inch in any vertical section would be found to increase directly as the distance from it. This is a very simple law, but one of the greatest importance in the design of all beams and girders, whatever may be the form or size of cross-section. It is a law, which applies equally to the solid timber beam and to the flanged steel girder, whether that girder be rolled in the mill or built up of plates and angles or other sections in the shop. It is a fundamental law of what is called the common theory of flexure, and is the very foundation of all beam and girder design. The horizontal plane represented by the line AB in Fig. 8, along which there is neither tension nor compression, is called the "neutral plane," and its intersection with any normal cross-section of the beam is called the "neutral axis" of that section. Mathematical analysis shows that the neutral plane passes through the centres of gravity of all the normal sections of the beam and, hence, that the neutral axis

passes through the centre of gravity of the section to which it belongs.

78. Fundamental Formulæ of Theory of Beams.—The fundamental formulæ of the theory of loaded beams may be quite simply written. Fig. 10 exhibits in a much exaggerated manner a bent beam supporting any system of loads W_1, W_2, W_3, etc.,

FIG. 10.



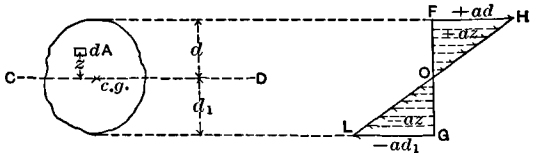


FIG. 11.

while Fig. 11 shows a normal cross-section of the same beam. In Fig. 10 *AB* is the neutral line, and in Fig. 11 *CD* is the neutral axis passing through the centre of gravity, *c.g.*, of the section.

If *a* is the amount of force or stress on a square inch (or other square unit), i.e., the intensity of stress, at the distance of unity from the neutral axis *CD* of the section, then, by the fundamental law already stated, the amount acting on another square inch at any other distance *z* from the neutral axis will be *az*. This quantity is called the "intensity of stress" (tension or compression) at the distance *z* from the neutral axis. Evidently it has its

greatest values in the extreme fibres of the section, i.e., ad and ad_1. At the neutral axis az becomes equal to zero. FG in Fig. 11 represents the same line as FG in Fig. 10. If the line FH in Fig. 11 be laid down equal to ad and at right angles to FG, and if O represent the centre of gravity, *c.g.*, of the section, then let the straight line LH be drawn. Any line drawn parallel to FH from FG to LH will represent the intensity of stress in the corresponding part of the beam's cross-section. Obviously, as these lines are drawn in opposite directions from FG, those above O will indicate stress of one kind, and those below that point stress of another kind, i.e., if that above be tension, that below will be compression. It can be demonstrated by a simple process that the total tension on one side of the neutral axis is just equal to the total compression on the other side, and from that condition it follows that the neutral axis must pass through the centre of gravity or centroid of the section.

Returning to the left-hand portion of Fig. 11, let dA represent a very small portion of the cross-section; then will $az.dA$ be the amount of stress acting on it. The moment of this stress or force about the neutral axis will be $azdA.z = az^2.dA$. If this expression be applied to every small portion of the entire section, the aggregate or total sum of the small moments so found will be the moment of all the stresses in the section about the neutral axis. That moment will have the value

$$M = \int az^2.dA = a\int z^2 d.A = aI. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

In equation (1) the symbol $\int$ means that the sum of all the small quantities to the right of it is taken, and I stands for that sum which, in the science of mechanics, is called the moment of inertia of the cross-section about its neutral axis. The value of the quantity I may easily be computed for all forms of section. Numerical values belonging to all the usual forms employed in engineering practice are found in extended tables in the handbooks of the large iron and steel companies of the country, so that its use ordinarily involves no computations of its value.

Equation (1) may readily be changed into two other forms for convenient practical use. In Fig. 10 mn is supposed to be

a very short portion of the centre line of the beam represented by dl. Before the beam is bent the section FG is supposed to have the position MN parallel to PQ. Also let u be the small amount of stretching or compression (shortening) of a unit's length of fibre at unit's distance from the centre line AB of the beam, then will udl and $uzdl$ be the short lines parallel to GN in the triangle GmN shown in the figure. The point C is the centre of curvature of the line mn, and $Cn = Cm$ is the radius. The two triangles Cnm and mNG are therefore similar, hence

$$\frac{udl}{1} = \frac{mn}{\rho} = \frac{dl}{\rho}; \quad \therefore u = \frac{1}{\rho}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (2)$$

If the quantity called the coefficient or modulus of elasticity be represented by E, then, by the fundamental law of the theory of elasticity in solid bodies,

$$a = Eu. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (3)$$

As has already been shown, the greatest stresses (intensities) in the section are $+ad$ (tension) and $-ad_1$ (compression). If K represent that greatest intensity of stress, then

$$K = ad, \quad \text{and} \quad a = \frac{K}{d}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (4)$$

If the value of a from equation (4) be substituted in equation (1),

$$M = \frac{KI}{d}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (5)$$

79. Practical Applications.—Equation (5) is a formula constantly used in engineering practice. All quantities in the second member are known in any given case. K is prescribed in the specifications, and is known as the "working resistance" in the design of beams and girders. For rolled steel beams in buildings it is frequently taken at 16,000 pounds, i.e., 16,000 pounds per square inch, about one fourth the breaking strength of the steel. In railroad-bridge work it may be found between 10,000 and 12,000 pounds, or approximately one fifth of the breaking strength of the steel. The quantities I and d depend upon the form and dimensions of the cross-section, and are either known or may be determined. The quotient $I \div d$ is now known as the "section modulus," and its numerical values for all forms of rolled beams

can be found in published tables. The use of equation (5) is therefore in the highest degree convenient and practicable.

80. Deflection.—It is frequently necessary, both in the design of beams and framed bridges, to ascertain how much the given loading will cause the beam or truss to sag, or, in engineering language, to deflect below the position occupied when unloaded. The deflection is determined by the sagging in the vertical plane of the neutral line below its position when the structure carries no load. In Fig. 10 the curved line AB is the neutral line of the beam when supporting loads. If the loads should be removed, the line AB would return to a horizontal position. The line drawn horizontally through A and indicated by x is the position of the centre line of the beam before being bent. The vertical distance w below this horizontal line shows the amount by which the point at the end of the line x is dropped in consequence of the flexure of the beam. The vertical distance w is therefore called the deflection. Evidently the deflection varies with the amount of loading and with the distance from the end of the beam. The curved line AB in one special case only is a circle. The general character of that curve is determined by the loading and the length of span.

In order that the deflection may be properly considered it is necessary that the relation between x and w shall be established for all conditions of loading and length of span. If the value of u from equation (2) be placed in equation (3), there will result

$$a = \frac{E}{\rho}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (6)$$

If the value of a from equation (6) be substituted in the last member of equation (1), there will at once result

$$M = \frac{EI}{\rho}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (7)$$

It is established by a very simple process in differential calculus that

$$\frac{1}{\rho} = \frac{d^2w}{dx^2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (8)$$

Hence, substituting from equation (8) in equation (7),

$$M = EI\frac{d^2w}{dx^2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (9)$$

Equation (9) may be used by means of some very simple operations in integral calculus to determine the value of w in terms of x and the loads on the beam when the value of the bending moment M is known, and the procedures for determining that quantity will presently be given.

Using the processes of the calculus, the two following equations will immediately be found:

$$\frac{dw}{dx} = \frac{1}{EI}\int M dx; \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (10)$$

$$w = \frac{1}{EI}\int\int M dx^2. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (11)$$

As already explained, numerical values for both E and I may be taken at once from tables already prepared for all materials and for all shapes of beams ordinarily employed in structural work, so that equation (11) enables the deflection or sag of the bent beam to be computed in any case. The expression $\frac{dw}{dx}$ is the tangent of the angle made by the neutral line of a bent beam with a horizontal line at any given point, and it is a quantity that it is sometimes necessary to determine. dw and dx are indefinitely short vertical and horizontal lines respectively, as shown immediately to the left of B in Fig. 10.

Equation (11) is not used in structural work nearly as much as equation (5), but both of them are of practical value and involve only simple operations in their use.

81. Bending Moments and Shears with Single Load. — The second members of equations (5) and (9) exhibit values of the moments of the internal forces or stresses in any normal cross-section of a bent beam about the neutral axis of the section, while the values of M must be expressed in terms of the external forces or loading. Inasmuch as the latter moment develops just the internal moment, it is obvious that the two must be equal. In order to write the value of the external moment in terms of

any loading, it is probably the simplest procedure to consider a beam carrying a single load. In Fig. 12, AB is such a beam, and W is a load which may be placed anywhere in the span, whose length is l. The distances of the load from the abutments are represented by x_1 and x_2. The reactions or supporting forces exerted under the ends of the beam at the abutments are shown by R and R'. The reactions, determined by the simple law of the lever, are

$$R = W\frac{x_2}{l} \quad \text{and} \quad R' = W\frac{x_1}{l}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (12)$$

The greatest bending moment in the beam will occur at the point of application of the load, and its value will be

$$M_1 = Rx_1 = W\frac{x_1 x_2}{l} = -R'x_2. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (13)$$

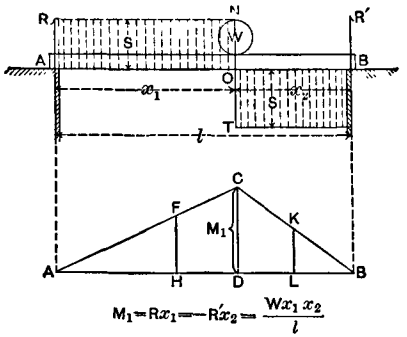


FIG. 12.

The bending moments at the end of the beam are obviously zero, and the second and fourth members of equation (13) show that the moment increases directly as the distance from either end. Hence in the lower portion of Fig. 12, at D, immediately under the load W, the line DC is laid off at any convenient scale to represent the moment M_1. The straight lines AC and CB are then drawn. Any vertical intercept, as FH or KL, between AB and either AC or CB will represent the bending moment at the corresponding point in the beam. The simple triangular diagram ACB therefore represents the complete condition of bending of the beam under the single load W placed at any point in the span.

The beam AB is supposed for the moment to have no weight. Consequently the only force acting upon the portion of the beam AO is the reaction R, and, similarly, R' is the only force acting upon the portion OB. Obviously so far as the simple action of these two forces or reactions is concerned, the tendency of each is to cause vertical slices of the beam, so to speak, to slide over each other. In other words, in engineering language, the portion AO of the beam is subjected to the shear $S=R$, while OB is subjected to the shear $S'=-R'$. The cross-sectional area of the beam must be sufficient to resist the shear S or S'. The upper part of Fig. 13 shaded with broken vertical lines indicates this condition of shear. It is evident from this simple case that the total vertical shears at the ends of any beam will be the reactions or supporting forces exerted at those ends, and that each will remain constant for the adjoining portion of the beam.

The third member of equation (13) shows that the greatest bending moment M_1 in the beam varies as the product x_1x_2 of the segments of the span. That product will have its greatest value when $x_1=x_2$. Hence *a simple beam loaded by a single weight will be subjected to the greatest possible bending moment when the weight is placed at the middle of the span, at which point also that moment will be found.*

82. Bending Moments and Shears with any System of Loads.—The general case of a simple beam loaded with any system of weights whatever may be represented in Fig. 13, in which the beam of Fig. 12 is supposed to carry three loads, w_1, w_2, w_3. The spacing of the loads is as shown. The reactions or supporting forces R' are determined precisely as in Fig. 12, each reaction in this case being the resultant of three loads instead of one. Applying the law of the lever as before, the reaction R will have the value

$$R=W_3\frac{d}{l}+W_2\frac{d+c}{l}+W_1\frac{d+c+b}{l}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (14)$$

A similar value may be written for R', but it is probably simpler, after having found one reaction, to write

$$R'=W_1+W_2+W_3-R. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (15)$$

As the beam is supposed to have no weight, no load will act upon the beam between the given weights. The bending moments at the points of application of the three weights or loads will be

$$\left.\begin{aligned} M_1 &= Ra, \\ M_2 &= R(a+b) - W_1 b, \\ M_3 &= R(a+b+c) - W_1(b+c) - W_2 c. \end{aligned}\right\} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (16)$$

After substituting the value of R from equation (14) in equations (16) the values of the latter are at once known.

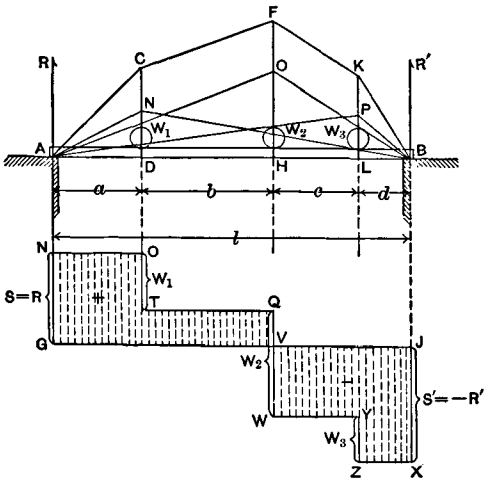


FIG. 13.

The bending produced by each weight will also be represented precisely like that in Fig. 12. The triangle ANB represents the bending produced by W_1; AOB the bending produced by W_2; and APB the bending produced by W_3. The resultant bending effect produced by the three loads or weights acting simultaneously is simply the summation of the three effects each due to a single load. Hence DC is erected vertically through the point of application of W_1, so as to equal DN added to the two vertical intercepts between AB and AP, and AB and AO. Similarly, HF is equal to HO added to the intercepts between AB and AP, and AB and BN. Finally, KL is equal to PL added to the other two intercepts, one between AB and BN, and the other between

AB and BO. Straight lines then are drawn through A, C, F, K, and B. Any vertical intercept between AB and $ACFKB$ will represent the bending moment in the beam at the corresponding point. Obviously any number of loads of any magnitude, or a uniform load, may be treated in precisely the same way.

An important practical rule can readily be deduced from the equations (16), each one of which may be regarded as a general equation of moments. If the system of three, or any other number of loads, be moved a small distance Δx, while they all remain separated by the same distances as before, the bending moment M will be changed by the amount shown in equation (16*a*):

$$\Delta M = R\Delta x - W_1\Delta x - W_2\Delta x - \text{etc.} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (16a)$$

If the notation of the differential calculus be used by writing the letter d instead of Δ, and if both members of equation (16*a*) be then divided by dx, equation (16*b*) will result:

$$\frac{\Delta M}{\Delta x} = \frac{dM}{dx} = R - W_1 - W_2 - \text{etc.} = \text{shear.} \quad . \quad (16b)$$

The second member of this equation shows the sum of all the external forces acting on one portion of the beam, that portion being limited by the section about which the moment M acts. That sum of all the external forces, as given by the second member of equation (16*b*), is evidently the total transverse shear at the section considered. Equation (16*b*) then shows, in the language of the differential calculus, that the first derivative of M in respect to x is equal to the total transverse shear. It is further established in the differential calculus that whenever a function, such as M, the bending moment, is a maximum or a minimum, the first derivative is equal to zero. The application of this principle to equation (16*b*) shows that the bending moment in any beam or truss has its greatest value wherever the shear is zero. Hence, in order to determine at what section the bending moment has its greatest value in any loaded beam carrying a given system of loads, it is only necessary to sum up all the forces or loads, including the reaction R, on that beam from one end to the point where that sum or shear is zero; at this latter point the greatest moment sought will be found. This

is a very simple method of determining the section at which the greatest moment in the beam exists.

The preceding formulæ and diagrams may be extended to include any number of loads, and they are constantly used in engineering practice, not only for beams and girders in buildings, but also for bridges carrying railroad trains. Whatever may be the number of loads, the expressions for the bending moments at the various points of application of those loads are to be written precisely as indicated in equations (16). When the number of loads becomes great the number of terms in the equations correspondingly increase, but in reality they are just as simple as those for a smaller number of loads.

The diagram for the vertical shear in this beam is the lower part of Fig. 13. As in the case of Fig. 12 the shear at A is the reaction R, as it is R' at the other end of the beam. The shear in the portion AD of the beam has the value R, but in passing the point D to the right the weight W_1 represented by OT must be subtracted from R, so that the shear over the section b of the span is $R-W_1$ or QV in the diagram. Similarly, in passing the point H toward the right, both W_2 and W_1 must be subtracted from R, giving the negative shear (the previous shear being taken positive) VW. The negative shear VW remains constant throughout the distance c, but is increased by W_3 at the point L, so that throughout the distance d the shear $S' = -R'$. These shear values are all shown in the lower portion of Fig. 13 by the vertical shaded lines. Obviously it is a matter of indifference whether the shear above the straight line GJ is made positive or negative; it is only necessary to recognize that the signs are different.

In the case of heavy beams, either built or rolled, as in railroad structures, it is of the greatest importance to determine both the bending moments and the shears, as represented in the preceding equations and diagrams, and to provide sufficient metal to resist them.

The case of Fig. 13 is perfectly general for moments and shears, and the methods developed are applicable to any amount or any system of loading whatever.

83. Bending Moments and Shears with Uniform Loads.— Fig. 14 represents what is really a special case of Fig. 13, in which

the loading is uniform for each unit of length of the beam throughout the whole span l. Inasmuch as the load is uniformly distributed, it is evident that the reaction at each end of the beam will be one half the total load, or

$$R = R' = \frac{wl}{2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (17)$$

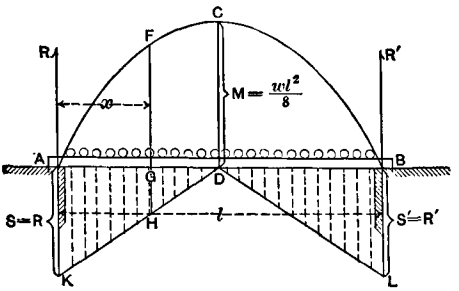


FIG. 14.

The general expression for the bending moment at any point G in the span, and located at the distance x from the end A, will take the form

$$M = Rx - wx.\frac{x}{2} = \frac{w}{2}x(l-x). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (18)$$

This equation, giving the value of M, is the equation of a parabola with the vertex over the middle of the span. The bending moment at the latter point will be found by placing $x = \frac{l}{2}$ in equation (18), which will give

$$M = \frac{wl^2}{8}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (19)$$

Hence, in Fig. 14, if the vertical line DC be erected at D, so as to represent the value of M in equation (19) to a convenient scale, the parabola ACB may be at once drawn. Any vertical intercept, as GF between AB and the curve $AFCB$, will represent by the same scale the bending moment in the beam at the point indicated by the intercept. Equation (19), giving the greatest external bending moment in a simple beam due to a uniform load, is constantly employed in structural work, and shows that

that moment is equal to the total load multiplied by one eighth of the span.

It has already been shown, in connection with Fig. 12, that when a single centre weight rests on a beam the centre bending moment is equal to that weight multiplied by one fourth the span. If the total uniform load in the one case is equal to the single load in the other, these equations show that the single centre load will produce just double the bending moment due to the same load uniformly distributed over the span. Wherever it is feasible, therefore, the load should be distributed rather than concentrated at the centre of the span.

That portion of Fig. 14 shaded with vertical lines shows the shear existing in the beam. Evidently the shear at each end is equal to the reaction, or one half the total load on the span. The expression for the shear at any point, as G, distant x from A will be

$$S = R - wx = w\left(\frac{l}{2} - x\right). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (20)$$

If $x = \frac{l}{2}$ in equation (20), S becomes equal to zero. In other words, there is no shear at the centre of the span of a beam uniformly loaded. Hence, if at each end of the span a vertical line AK or BL be laid off downward, and if straight lines KD and DL be drawn, any vertical intercept, as GH, between these lines and AB will represent the shear at the corresponding point. Equation (20) also shows that the shear S at any point is equal to the load resting on the beam between the centre D and that point. Although this case of uniform loading is a special one it finds wide application in practical operations.

84. Greatest Shear for Uniform Moving Load.—The preceding loads have been treated as if they were occupying fixed positions on the beams considered. This is not always the case. Many of the most important problems in connection with the loading of beams and bridges arise under the supposition that the load is movable, like that of a passing railroad train. One of the simplest of these problems, although of much importance, consists in finding the location of a uniform moving load, like that of a train of cars, which will produce the greatest shear at a given

point of a simple beam, such as that represented in Fig. 15, in which a moving load is supposed to pass continuously over the span from the left-hand end A. It is required to determine what position of this uniform load will produce the greatest shear at the section C.

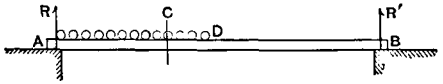


FIG. 15.

Let the moving load extend from A to any point D to the right of C. The two reactions R and R' may be found by the methods already indicated. Let W represent the uniform load resting on the portion CD of the span. The shear S' existing at C will be

$$S' = R' - W. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (21)$$

Let R''' be that part of R' which is due to W, and R'' that part due to the load on AC. Evidently R''' is less than W; then

$$S' = R'' + R''' - W. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (22)$$

Since the negative quantity W is greater than the positive quantity R''', S' will have its greatest value when both W and R''' are zero. Hence the greatest shear at the point C will exist when

$$S' = R''. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (23)$$

Obviously the loading must extend at least from A to C in order that R'' may have its maximum value. Hence *the greatest shear at any section will exist when the uniform load extends from the end of the span to that section, whatever may be the density of the load.*

If the segment of the span covered by the moving load is greater than one half the span, the maximum shear is called the *main shear;* but if that segment is less than one half the span, the maximum shear is called the *counter-shear.* The reason for these two names will be apparent later in the discussion of bridge-trusses.

This rule for determining the maximum shear at any section of a beam is equally applicable to bridge-trusses under certain conditions, and has an important bearing upon the determination

of the greatest stresses in some of the members of bridge-frames, although it has less importance now than it had in the earlier days of bridge building.

85. Bending Moments and Shears for Cantilever Beams.—The case of a loaded overhanging beam or cantilever bracket, as shown in Fig. 16, is sometimes found. In that figure a single weight W is supposed to be applied at the end, while a uniform load w per unit of length extends over its length l. The bending moment at any point C distant x from the end will obviously be

$$M = Wx + \frac{wx^2}{2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (24)$$

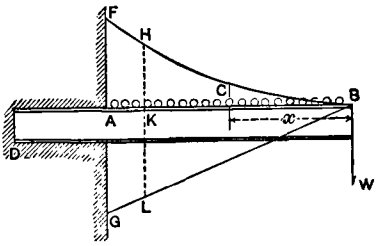


FIG. 16.

The greatest value of the bending moment will be found by placing x equal to l in equation (24), and it will have the value

$$M_1 = Wl + \frac{wl^2}{2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (25)$$

The shear at any point and at the end A respectively will be

$$S = W + wx \quad \text{and} \quad S_1 = W + wl. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (26)$$

The shear due to W is equal to itself and is constant throughout the whole length of the beam.

The second term of the second member of equation (24) is the equation of a parabola with its vertex at B, Fig. 16. Hence if AF be laid off equal to $\frac{wl^2}{2}$, and if the parabola FHB be drawn, any vertical intercept, as HK, between that curve and AB will represent the bending moment at the corresponding point. On the other hand, the first term of the second member of equation (24) shows that the bending moment due to W varies directly

as the distance from B. Hence if AG be laid off vertically downward from A equal to Wl to any convenient scale, then any intercept, as KL, between AB and BG will represent the bending moment due to W at the corresponding point of the beam.

86. Greatest Bending Moment with any System of Loading.—One of the most important positions of loading to be established either for simple beams or for bridge-trusses is that at which any given system of loading whatever is to be placed on any span so as to produce the maximum bending moment at any prescribed point in that span. In order to make the case perfectly general a system of arbitrary loads, like that shown in Fig. 17, is assumed and the system is supposed to be a moving one.

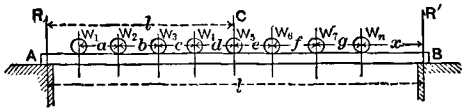


FIG. 17.

The separate loads are placed at fixed distances apart, indicated by the letters a, b, c, d, etc., W_1 being supposed to be at the head of the train, while W_n is the last load having a variable distance x between it and the end of the span. In Fig. 17 this system of moving loads or train is supposed to pass over the span l from right to left. The problem is to determine the position of the loading, so that the bending moment at the section C of the beam or truss will be a maximum, the section C being at the distance l' from the left-hand end of the span. The complete analysis of this problem is comparatively simple and may readily be found, but it is not necessary for the accomplishment of the present purpose to give it here. In order to exhibit the formula which expresses the desired condition, let $W_{n'}$ be that weight which is really placed at C, but which is assumed to be an indefinitely short distance to the left of that point, for a reason which will presently be explained. The equation of condition or criterion sought will then be the following:

$$\frac{l'}{l} = \frac{W_1 + W_2 + \ldots + W_{n'}}{W_1 + W_2 + W_3 + \ldots + W_n}. \quad \ldots \quad (27)$$

If the loads are so placed as to fulfil the condition expressed

in equation (27), the bending moment at section C will be a maximum. If the variation in the train weights is very great, it is possible that there may be more than one position of the train which will satisfy that equation. It is necessary, therefore, frequently to try different positions of the loading by that criterion and then ascertain which of the resulting maximum moments is the greatest. It is not usually necessary to make more than one or two such trials. The application of the equation is therefore simple and involves but little labor.

It will usually happen that $W_{n'}$ in equation (27) is not to be taken as the whole of that weight, but only so much of it as may be necessary to satisfy the equation. This is simply assuming that any weight, W, may be considered as made up of two separate weights placed indefinitely near to each other, which is permissible.

After having found the position of loading which satisfies equation (27), the resulting maximum bending moment will take the following form:

$$M_1 = \frac{l'}{l}[W_1 a + (W_1 + W_2)b + \ldots + (W_1 + W_2 + \ldots + W_n)x]$$
$$- W_1 a - (W_1 + W_2)b - \ldots - (W_1 + W_2 + \ldots + W_{n'-1})(?). \quad (28)$$

In this equation x corresponds to the position of loading for maximum bending, while the sign (?) represents the distance between the concentrations $W_{n'-1}$ and $W_{n'}$. This equation has a very formidable appearance, but its composition is simple and it is constantly used in making computations for the design of railroad bridges. The loads W_1, W_2, W_3, etc., represent the actual weights on the driving-axles and other axles of locomotives, tenders, and cars, and the spacings a, b, c, etc., are the actual spacings found between those axles. In other words, these quantities are the actual weights and dimensions of the different portions of moving railroad trains.

The computations indicated by equation (28) are not made anew in every instance. Concentrated weights of typical locomotives, tenders, and cars are prescribed by different railroad companies for their different classes of trains, ranging from the heaviest freight traffic to the lightest passenger train. A tabu-

lation is then made from equation (28) for each such typical train, and it is used as frequently as is necessary to design a bridge to carry the prescribed traffic. The tabulations thus made are never changed for a given or prescribed loading.

87. Applications to Rolled Beams.—It is to be remembered that these last observations do not limit the use of equations (27) and (28) to railroad-bridge trusses only; they are equally applicable to solid and rolled beams and are frequently used in connection with their design. Great quantities of these beams and various rolled steel shapes are used in the construction of large modern city buildings, as well as in railroad and highway bridge structures. The steel frames of the great office buildings, so many of which are seen in New York and Chicago as well as in other cities, which carry the entire weight of the building, are formed wholly of these steel shapes. The so-called handbooks published by steel-producing companies exhibit the various shapes rolled in each mill. These books also give in tabular statements many numerical values of the moment of inertia, the section modulus, and other elements of all these sections, so that the formulæ which have been established in the preceding pages may be applied in practical work with great convenience and little labor. Tables are also given showing the sizes of rolled beams required to sustain the loads named in them. Such tables are formed for practical use, so that, knowing the distance apart of the beams, their span, and the load per square foot which they carry, the required size of beam may be selected without even computation. Such labor-saving tables are quite common at the present time, and they reduce greatly the labor of numerical computations.

CHAPTER VIII.

88. The Truss Element or Triangle of Bracing.—A number of the preceding formulæ find their applications to bridge-trusses, as well as to beams; hence it is necessary to give attention at least to some simple forms of those trusses.

The skeleton of every bridge-truss properly designed to carry its load is an assemblage of triangles. In other words, the truss element, i.e., the simplest possible truss, is the triangular frame, such as is shown in skeleton in Figs. 18 and 18*a*. These simple triangular frames are sometimes called the King-post Truss. The action of such a triangular frame in carrying a vertical load is extremely simple. In Fig. 18 let the weight W be suspended

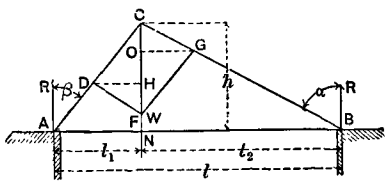


FIG. 18.

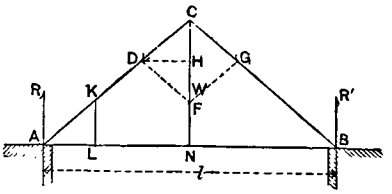


FIG. 18*a*.

from the apex C of the triangle. The line CF represents that weight, and if the latter be resolved into its two components parallel to the two upper members of the triangular frame, the two component forces CG and CD will result. If from D and G the horizontal lines DH and GO be drawn, those two lines will represent the horizontal components of the forces or stresses in the two bars CA and CB. The force HD will act to the left at the point A, and the force CG will act to the right at B, and as these two forces are equal and opposite to each other, equilibrium will result. Either of the horizontal forces will represent the magnitude of the tension in AB. Both AC and CB will be in

compression, the former being compressed by the force CD, and the latter by the force CG. The manner of drawing a parallelogram of forces makes the triangle COG similar to CNB, and CHD similar to CNA; hence HW divided by CH will be equal to AN divided by NB. But HW is the vertical component of the stress in CB, while CH is the vertical component of the stress in AC, the latter being represented by the reaction R and the former by the reaction R'. It is seen, therefore, that the weight W is carried by the frame to the two abutment supports A and B, precisely as if it were a solid beam. In other words, the important principle is established that when weights rest upon a simple truss supported at each end they will produce reactions at the ends in accordance with the principle of the lever, precisely as in the case of a solid beam. In engineering parlance it is stated that the weight W is divided according to the principle of the lever, and that each portion travels to its proper abutment through the members of the triangular frame. If the two inclined members of the triangular frame are equally inclined to a vertical, the case of Fig. 18*a* results, in which one half of the weight goes to each abutment.

The triangular frame, with equally inclined sides, shown in Fig. 18*a*, is evidently the simplest form of roof-truss, constituting two equally inclined members with a horizontal tie.

89. Simple Trusses.—The simplest forms of trussing used for bridge purposes are those shown in Figs. 19, 20, and 21. There are many other forms which are exhibited in complete treatises on bridge structures, but these three are as simple as any, and they have been far more used than any other types. The horizontal members af and AB are called the "chords," the former being the upper chord and the latter the lower chord. The vertical and inclined members connecting the two chords are called the web members or braces. When a bridge is loaded, either by its own weight only, or by its own weight added to that of a moving train of cars, the upper chord will evidently be in compression, while the lower chord is in tension. A portion, which may be called a half, of the web members will be in tension and the other portion, or half, will be in compression.

The function of the upper and lower chords is to take up or

80547

resist the horizontal tension and compression which correspond to the direct stresses of tension and compression existing in the longitudinal fibres of a loaded solid or flanged beam. The metal designed to take these so-called direct stresses is concentrated in the chords of trusses, whereas it is distributed throughout the entire section of a beam, whether that beam be solid or flanged. The function of the web members of a truss is to resist the transverse or vertical shear which is represented by the algebraic sum of the reactions and loads. The total section of a solid beam resists these vertical shears, while the web only of a flanged beam is estimated to perform that duty. The horizontal shears, which have already been recognized as existing along the horizontal planes in a bent beam, are resisted by the inclined web members of a truss, the horizontal stress components being the horizontal shears, whereas the vertical shears are resisted by the vertical web members of a truss. If the web members are all inclined, as shown in Fig. 21, each web member resists both horizontal and vertical shear. It is thus seen that the members of a truss perform precisely the same duties as the various portions of either solid or flanged beams. Inasmuch as the chords of bridge-trusses resist the direct or horizontal stresses of tension and compression produced by the bending in the truss, it is obvious that the greatest chord stresses will be found at the centre of the span, and that they will be the smallest at the ends of the span. In the web members, on the contrary, since the vertical shear is the greatest at the ends of the span and equal to the reactions at those points, decreasing towards the centre precisely as in solid beams, the greatest web stresses will be found at the ends of the span and the least near the centre. It is obvious that the areas of cross-sections of either chords or web members must be proportioned to the stresses which they carry. Hence the distribution of stresses just described tends to a uniform distribution of the truss weights over the span.

90. The Pratt Truss Type.—In the discussion of these three simple types of trusses, the simplest possible loading of a perfectly uniform train will be assumed. The portions into which the trusses are divided by the vertical or inclined bracing are called panels. In Fig. 19, for instance, the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 of the lower

chord and a, b, c, d, e, and f of the upper chord are called panel-points. The distance between each consecutive two of these points is called a panel length. The uniform train-load which is to be assumed will be represented by the weight W at each panel-point. This is called the "moving load" or "live load." The own weight of the structure is called the "dead load" or the "fixed load." The dead load per upper-chord panel will be taken as W', and W_1 for the lower chord. The loads to be used will, therefore, be as follows:

Panel moving load $= W$;
Upper-chord panel dead load $= W'$;
Lower " " " " $= W_1$.

There will also be used the length of panel and depth of truss as follows:

Panel length $= p$;
Depth of truss $= d$.

In these simple trusses with horizontal upper and lower chords the stress in any inclined web members is equal to the shear multiplied by the secant of the inclination of the members to a vertical line. Also, at each panel-point every inclined web member, in passing from the end to the centre of the span, adds to either chord stress at that point an amount represented by the horizontal component of the stress which it carries; or, what is the same thing, an amount equal to the shear at the panel in question multiplied by the tangent of its angle of inclination to a vertical line.

It has already been shown in discussing solid beams that the greatest shear at any section will be found when the uniform moving load covers one of the segments of the span. This principle holds equally true for trusses carrying uniform panel-loads like those under consideration. In determining the stresses in these trusses, therefore, the inclined web members will take their greatest stresses when the moving train or load extends from the farthest end of the span up to the foot of the member in question. In this connection it is to be observed also that any two web members meeting in the chord which does not carry

the moving load take their greatest stresses for the same position of the latter. The so-called "counter web members" take no stresses from the dead load.

Inasmuch as every load placed upon a truss will produce compression in the upper chord and tension in the lower, the greatest chord stresses will obviously exist when the moving load covers the entire span, and that condition of loading is to be used for the stresses in the following cases.

Bearing these general observations in mind, the ordinary simple method of truss analysis yields the tabulated statement of stresses given below for the three types selected for consideration. The first case to be treated is that of Fig. 19, which represents the Pratt truss type. The moving load is supposed to pass across the bridge from right to left. The plus sign indicates tension and the minus sign compression.

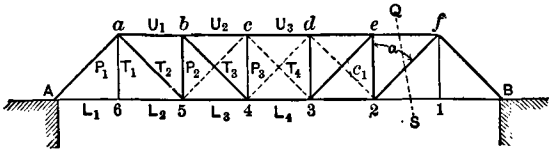


FIG. 19.

Stress in $c_1 = +(\frac{1}{7}+\frac{2}{7})W \sec \alpha = \frac{3}{7}W \sec \alpha$.
Stress in $T_4 = +(\frac{1}{7}+\frac{2}{7}+\frac{3}{7})W \sec \alpha = \frac{6}{7}W \sec \alpha$;
" " $T_3 = +[(\frac{1}{7}+\frac{2}{7}+\frac{3}{7}+\frac{4}{7})W + W' + W_1] \sec \alpha$
$= (\frac{10}{7}W + W' + W_1) \sec \alpha$;
" " $T_2 = +[(\frac{1}{7}+\frac{2}{7}+\frac{3}{7}+\frac{4}{7}+\frac{5}{7})W + 2w' + 2w_1] \sec \alpha$
$= (\frac{15}{7}W + 2w' + 2w_1) \sec \alpha$;
" " $T_1 = +(W + W_1)$.

Stress in $P_3 = -(\frac{6}{7}W + W')$;
" " $P_2 = -(\frac{10}{7}W + 2W' + W_1)$;
" " $P_1 = -3(W + W' + W_1) \sec \alpha$.

Stress in L_1 = *Stress in* $L_2 = +3(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$;
" " L_3 = " " $L_2 + 2(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= +5(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$;
" " L_4 = " " $L_3 + (W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= +6(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$.

$$\text{Stress in } U_1 = -\text{Stress in } L_3 = -5(W+W'+W_1)\tan\alpha;$$
$$\text{“ “ } U_2 = -\text{ “ “ } L_4 = -6(W+W'+W_1)\tan\alpha;$$
$$\text{“ “ } U_3 = \text{ “ “ } U_2 = -6(W+W'+W_1)\tan\alpha.$$

It is easy to check any of the chord stresses by the method of moments. As an example, let moments first be taken about the panel-point 5 in the lower chord, and then about the panel-point c in the upper chord. The following expressions for the chord members U_1 and L_4 will be found, and it will be noticed that they are identical with the stresses for the same members given in the preceding tabulation, the counter-members, shown in broken lines, being omitted from consideration as they are not needed.

$$\text{Stress in } U_1 = \frac{R.2p-(W+W'+W_1)p}{d}$$
$$= 5(W+W'+W_1)\frac{p}{d} = 5(W+W'+W_1)\tan\alpha. \quad . \quad (29)$$

$$\text{Stress in } L_4 = \frac{R.3p-2(W+W'+W_1).1\frac{1}{2}p}{d}$$
$$= 6(W+W'+W_1)\tan\alpha. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (30)$$

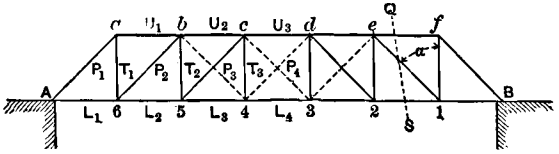


FIG. 20.

91. The Howe Truss Type.—The truss shown in Fig. 20 is the skeleton of the Howe truss, to which reference has already been made. The inclined web members are all in compression, while the vertical web members are all in tension. In the Howe truss all compression members are composed of timber. It has the disadvantage of subjecting the longest web members to compression. It thus makes the truss, if built all in iron or steel, heavier and more expensive than the trusses of the Pratt type. As in the preceding case, the moving train or load is supposed to pass across the bridge from B to A. Also, as before, the + sign indicates tension and the − sign compression. The

greatest stresses, given in the tabulated statement below, can be computed or checked by the method of moments in this case, precisely as in the preceding.

Stress in $c_1 = -(\frac{1}{7}+\frac{2}{7})W \sec a = -\frac{3}{7}W \sec a.$
Stress in $P_4 = -(\frac{1}{7}+\frac{2}{7}+\frac{3}{7})W \sec a = -\frac{6}{7}W \sec a;$
" " $P_3 = -(\frac{10}{7}W + W' + W_1) \sec a;$
" " $P_2 = -(\frac{15}{7}W + 2W' + 2W_1) \sec a;$
" " $P_1 = -3(W + W' + W_1) \sec a.$

Stress in $T_3 = +(\frac{10}{7}W + W_1) \sec a;$
" " $T_2 = +(\frac{15}{7}W + W' + 2W_1) \sec a;$
" " $T_1 = +(3W + 2W' + 3W_1) \sec a.$

Stress in $L_1 = +3(W + W' + W_1) \tan a;$
" " $L_2 = +3(W + W' + W_1) \tan a + 2(W + W' + W_1) \tan a$
$= +5(W + W' + W_1) \tan a;$
" " $L_3 = +5(W + W' + W_1) \tan a + (W + W' + W_1) \tan a$
$= +6(W + W' + W_1) \tan a;$
" " $L_4 =$ *Stress in* L_3.

Stress in $U_1 = -$ *Stress in* $L_1;$
" " $U_2 = -$ " " $L_2;$
" " $U_3 = -$ " " $L_3.$

It will be noticed in the cases of Figs. 19 and 20 that upper and lower chord panels in the same lozenge or oblique panel have identically the same stresses, but with opposite signs. For instance, in Fig. 20 the stress in U_2 is equal in amount to that in L_2; and the same observation can be made in reference to the stresses in U_2 and L_4 of Fig. 19. This must necessarily always be the case in trusses having vertical web members.

In making computations for these forms of trusses it is very essential to observe where the first counter-member, as c_1, must be used. These counter-members may be omitted if the proper main web members near the centre of the span are designed to take both tension and compression.

92. The Simple Triangular Truss.—The truss shown in Fig. 21, in which all the web members have equal inclination to a vertical line, is sometimes called the Warren Truss, although that term has also been applied specially to this type of truss

so proportioned as to make the depth just equal to the panel length. As before, the moving train is supposed to pass over the bridge from B toward A, while the + sign represents tension and the − sign compression. The greatest stresses are the following.

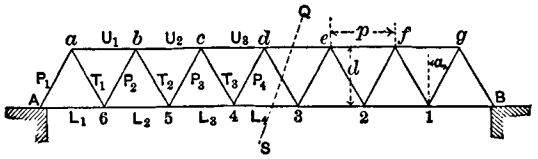


FIG. 21.

Stress in $P_4 = \begin{cases} -(\frac{6}{7}W + \frac{1}{2}W') \sec \alpha, \text{ or} \\ +(\frac{6}{7}W - \frac{1}{2}W') \sec \alpha; \end{cases}$

" " $P_3 = \begin{cases} -(\frac{10}{7}W + 1\frac{1}{2}W' + W_1) \sec \alpha, \text{ or} \\ +(\frac{3}{7}W - 1\frac{1}{2}W' - W_1) \sec \alpha; \end{cases}$

" " $P_2 = -(\frac{15}{7}W + 2\frac{1}{2}W' + 2W_1) \sec \alpha;$

" " $P_1 = -(3W + 3\frac{1}{2}W' + 3W_1) \sec \alpha.$

Stress in $T_3 = \begin{cases} +(\frac{10}{7}W + \frac{1}{2}W' + W_1) \sec \alpha, \text{ or} \\ -(\frac{3}{7}W - \frac{1}{2}W' - W_1) \sec \alpha; \end{cases}$

" " $T_2 = +(\frac{15}{7}W + 1\frac{1}{2}W' + 2W_1) \sec \alpha;$

" " $T_1 = +(3W + 2\frac{1}{2}W' + 3W_1) \sec \alpha.$

Stress in $L_1 = +3(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha + \frac{1}{2}W' \tan \alpha;$

" " $L_2 = \textit{Stress in } L_1 + (5W + 5W' + 5W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= +8(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha + \frac{1}{2}W' \tan \alpha;$

" " $L_3 = \textit{Stress in } L_2 + 3(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= +11(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha + \frac{1}{2}W' \tan \alpha;$

" " $L_4 = \textit{Stress in } L_3 + (W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= +12(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha + \frac{1}{2}W' \tan \alpha.$

Stress in $U_1 = -6(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha;$

" " $U_2 = -6(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha - 4(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= -10(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha;$

" " $U_3 = -10(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha - 2(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha$
$= -12(W + W' + W_1) \tan \alpha.$

The chord stresses may be checked or found by the method of moments, precisely as in the case of Fig. 19. If, for instance, it is desired to determine the stresses in the upper chord member

U_2, moments must be taken about the lower-chord panel-point 5, and about the upper-chord panel-point d for the lower-chord stress in L_4. Taking moments about those points, results given in equations (31) and (32) will at once follow, which it will be observed are identical with the values previously found for the same members.

$$\text{Stress in } U_2 = -\frac{(3W+3\tfrac{1}{2}W'+3W_1).2p-2W'p-(W+W_1)p}{d}$$

$$= -10(W+W'+W_1)\tan a. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (31)$$

$$\text{Stress in } L_4 = +\frac{(3W+3\tfrac{1}{2}W'+3W_1).3\tfrac{1}{2}p-3(W+W_1).1\tfrac{1}{2}p-3W'.2p}{d}$$

$$= +12(W+W_1+W')\tan a+\tfrac{1}{2}W'\tan a. \quad . \quad . \quad (32)$$

93. Through and Deck Bridges.—These simple trusses have all been taken as belonging to the "through" type, i.e., the moving load passes along their lower chords. It is quite common to have the moving load pass along the upper chords, in which cases the bridges are said to be "deck" structures. The general methods of computation are precisely the same whether the trusses be deck or through. It is only necessary carefully to observe that the application of the methods of analysis depends upon the position of each panel-load as it passes across the structure.

94. Multiple Systems of Triangulation.—Figs. 19, 20, and 21 exhibit what are called single systems of triangulation or single

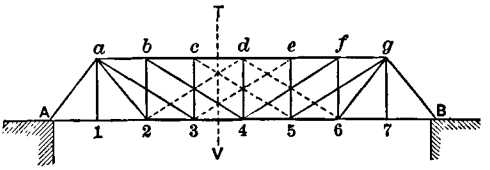


FIG. 22.

systems of bracing, but in each of those types the system of web members may be double or triple; in other words, they may be manifold. There have been many bridges built in which two or more systems of bracing are employed. Fig. 22 represents a truss with a double system of triangulation, known at one time

as the Whipple truss. Fig. 23, again, exhibits a quadruple system of triangulation with all inclined web members. The

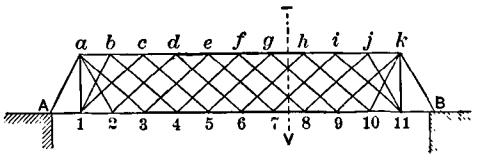


FIG. 23.

method of computation for such manifold systems is precisely the same as for a single system, each system in the compound truss being treated as carrying those loads only which rest at its panel points. This procedure is not quite accurate. The complete consideration of an exact method of computation would take the treatment into a region of rather complicated analysis beyond the purposes of these lectures, but its outlines will be set forth on a later page. The exact method of treatment of two or more web systems involves the elastic properties of the material of which the trusses are composed. In the best modern bridge practice engineers prefer to design trusses of all lengths with single web systems, although the panels are frequently subdivided to avoid stringers and floor-beams of too great weight.

95. Influence of Mill and Shop Capacity on Length of Span.—In the early years of iron and steel bridge building the sizes of individual members were limited by the shop capacity for handling and manufacturing, and by the relatively small dimensions of bars of various shapes, and of plates which could be produced by rolling-mills. As both mill and shop processes have advanced and their capacities increased, corresponding progress has been made in bridge design. Civil engineers have availed themselves of those advances, so that at the present time single-system trusses with depths as great as 85 feet or more and spans of over 550 feet are not considered specially remarkable.

96. Trusses with Broken or Inclined Chords.—As the lengths of spans have increased certain substantial advantages have been gained in design by no longer making the upper chords hori-

zontal in the case of long through-spans, or indeed in the cases of through-spans of moderate length. The greatest bending moments and the greatest chord stresses have been shown to exist at the centre of the span, while the greatest web stresses are found near the ends. Trusses may be lightened in view of those considerations by making their depths less at the ends than at the centre. This not only decreases the sectional areas of the heaviest web members near the ends of the truss, but also shortens them. It adds somewhat to the sectional area of the end upper-chord members, but the resultant effect is a decrease in total weight of material and increased stability against wind pressure by the decreased height and less exposure near the ends. It has therefore come to be the ruling practice at the present time to make through-trusses with inclined upper chords for practically all spans from about 200 feet upward. A skeleton diagram of such a truss is given in Fig. 24.

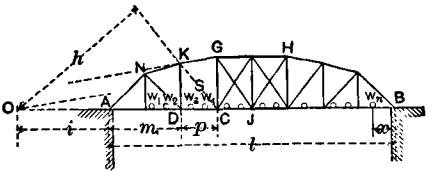


FIG. 24.

97. Position of any Moving Load for Greatest Web Stress.— In the preceding treatment of bridge-trusses with parallel and horizontal chords a moving or live load has been taken as a series of uniform weights concentrated at the panel-points. This simple procedure was formerly generally used, and at the present time it is occasionally employed, but it is now almost universal practice to assume for railroad bridges a moving load consisting of a series of concentrations, which represent both in amount and distribution the weights on the axles of an actual railroad train. If a bridge is supposed to be traversed by such a train, it becomes necessary to determine a method for ascertaining the positions of the train causing the greatest stresses in the various members of the bridge-truss. The mathematical demonstration of the formulæ determining

those positions of loading need not be given here, but it can be found in almost any standard work on bridges.

In order to show concisely the results of such a demonstration let it be desired to find the position of a moving load which will give the greatest stress to any web member, as S in Fig. 24. Let the point of intersection of GK and DC be found in the point O, then let CK be extended, and on its extension let the perpendicular h be dropped from O. The distance of the point O from A, the end of the span, is i, while m is the distance AD. Using the same notation which has been employed in the discussion of beams, together with that shown in Fig. 24, equation (33) expresses the condition to be fulfilled by the train-loads in order that S shall have its greatest stress. The first parenthesis in the second member of that equation represents the load between the panel p and the left end of the span, while the second parenthesis represents the load in panel p itself.

$$W_1+W_2+\ \ldots\ +W_n=-\frac{l}{i}(W_1+W_2+\text{ etc.})$$
$$+(W_3+W_4+\text{etc.})\frac{l(m+i)}{pi}. \quad (33)$$

It will be noticed in equation (33) that the quantity m shows in what panel the inclined web member whose greatest stress is desired is located, and it is important to observe that panel carefully. If, for instance, the vertical member KD were in question, the point O would be located at the intersection of the panel NK and the lower chord of the bridge. In other words, the point O must be at the intersection of the two chord members belonging to the same panel in which the web member is located.

98. Application of Criterions for both Chord and Web Stresses.—The criterion, equation (33), belongs to web members only. If it is desired to find the position of moving load which will give the greatest chord stresses in any panel, equation (27), already established for beams, is to be used precisely as it stands, the quantity l' representing the distance from one end of the span to the panel-point about which moments are taken.

If the desired positions of the moving load for greatest stresses have been found by equations (27) and (33), those stresses themselves are readily found by taking moments about panel-points for chord members and about the intersection-points O, Fig. 24, for web members. These operations are simple in character and are performed with great facility. Tabulations and diagrams are made for given systems of loading by which these computations are much shortened and which enable the numerical work of any special case to be performed quickly and with little liability to error. These tabulations and diagrams and other shortening processes may be found set forth in detail in many publications and works on bridge structures. They constitute a part of the office outfit of civil engineers engaged in structural work.

The criterion, equation (27), for the greatest bending moments in a bridge is applicable to any truss whatever, whether the chords are parallel or inclined, but it is not so with equation (33). If the chords of the trusses are parallel, the quantity i in equation (33) becomes infinitely great, and the equation takes the following form:

$$W_1 + W_2 + \ldots + W_n = \frac{l}{p}(W_3 + W_4 + \text{etc.}). \quad . \quad . \quad (34)$$

Ordinarily the span l divided by the panel length p is equal to the number of panels in the span. Hence equation (34) shows, in the case of parallel or horizontal chords, that when the moving load is placed for the greatest web stress in any panel, the total load on the bridge is equal to the load in that panel multiplied by the total number of panels.

99. Influence Lines.—A graphical method, known as that of "influence lines," is used for determining the greatest shears and bending moments caused by a train of concentrated weights passing along a beam or bridge-truss. Obviously it must express in essence that which has already been shown by the formulæ which determine positions of moving loads for the greatest shears and bending moments. In reality it is the application of graphical methods which have become so popular to the determination of the greatest stresses in beams and bridges.

100. Influence Lines for Moments both for Beams and Trusses.—It is convenient to construct these influence lines for an arbitrary load which may be considered a unit load; the effect of any other load will then be in proportion to its magnitude. The results determined from influence lines drawn for a load which may be considered a unit can, therefore, be made available for other loads by multiplying the former by the ratio between any desired load and that for which the influence lines are found.

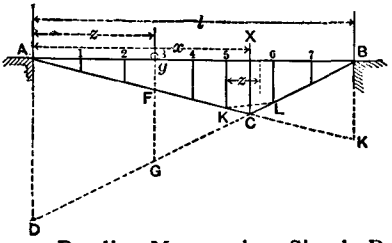


FIG. 25.—Bending Moment in a Simple Beam.

AB in Fig. 25 represents a beam simply supported at each end, so that any load g resting upon it will be divided between the points of support, according to the law of the lever. Let it be desired to determine the bending moment at the section X produced by the load g in all of its positions as it passes across the span from A to B. Two expressions for the bending moment must be written, one for the load g at any point in AX, and the other for the load at any point in BX. The expression for the first bending moment is

$$M = g\frac{z}{l}(l-x), \quad \ldots \ldots \quad (a)$$

and that for the latter

$$M' = g\frac{l-z}{l}x. \quad \ldots \ldots \quad (b)$$

As shown in the figure, z and x, the latter locating the section at which the bending moments are to be found, are measured to the right from A. Equation (a) shows that if the quantity $g(l-x)$ be laid off, by any convenient scale, as BK at right angles to AB, XC will represent the moment M by the same scale when $x=z$ or when z has any value between o and x. Similarly will

AD be laid off at right angles to AB by the same scale as before, to represent gx. Then when $x = z$ the expression for M' will have the same value XC as before. Hence if the lines AC and CB be drawn as parts of AK and DB, any vertical intercept between AB and ACB will represent the bending at X produced by the load g when placed at the point from which the intercept is drawn. The lines AC and CB are the influence lines for the bending moments produced by the load g in its passage across the span AB. It is to be observed that the influence lines are continuous only when the positions of the moving load are consecutive. In case those positions are not consecutive the influence lines are polygonal in form.

If there are a number of loads g resting on the span at the same time, the total bending moments produced at X will be found by taking the sum of all the vertical intercepts between AB and ACB, drawn at the various points where those loads rest. The influence lines drawn for a single load, therefore, may be at once used for any number of loads.

The load g is considered as a unit load. If the vertical intercepts representing the bending moments by the scale used are themselves represented by y, and if W represent any load whatever, the general expression for the bending moment at X, produced by any system of loads, will be

$$\frac{1}{g}\Sigma Wy. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (c)$$

If this expression be written as a series, the general value of the bending moment will be the following:

$$M = \frac{1}{g}(W_1y_1 + W_2y_2 + W_3y_3 + \text{etc.}). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (d)$$

The effect of a moving train upon the bending moment at any given section is thus easily made apparent by means of influence lines. It is obvious that there will be as many influence lines to be drawn as there are sections to be considered. In the case of a truss-bridge there will be such a section at every panel-point.

A slight modification of the preceding results is to be made

when the loads are applied to the beam or truss at panel-points only.

In Fig. 25 let 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 be panel-points at which loads are applied, and let the load g be located at the distance z' to the right of panel-point 5, also let the panel length be p. The reactions at 5 and 6 will then be $R_5 = g\frac{p-z'}{p}$ and $R_6 = g\frac{z'}{p}$. The reactions at A will then be $R = g\frac{l-z}{l}$. Hence the moment at any section X in the panel in question will be

$$M = Rx - R_5(z' - (z-x)) = g\left[\frac{l-x}{l}z - (z - z' + p - x)\frac{z'}{p}\right]. \quad . \quad (e)$$

Remembering that $z - z'$ is a constant quantity, it is at once clear that the preceding expression is the equation of a straight line, with M and z or z' the variables. If $z' = 0$, equation (e) becomes identical with equation (a), while if $z' = p$, it becomes identical with equation (b). Hence the influence line for the panel in which the load is placed, as 5–6, is the straight line KL. It is manifest that when the load g is in any other panel than that in which the section X is located, the effect of the two reactions at the extremities of that panel will be precisely the same at the section as the weight itself acting along its own line of action. Hence the two portions AK and BL of the influence line are to be constructed as if the load were applied directly to the beam or truss, and in the manner already shown. The complete influence line will then be $AKLB$, and it shows that the existence of the panel slightly reduces the bending at any section within its limits. The panel 5–6, as treated, is that of a beam in which the bending moment will, in general, vary from point to point. If AB were a truss, however, X would always be taken at a panel-point, and no intercept between panel-points, as 5 and 6, would be considered.

101. Influence Lines for Shears both for Beams and Trusses.— The influence lines for shears in a simple beam, supported at each end, can be drawn in the manner shown in Fig. 25*a*. In that figure AB represents a non-continuous beam with span l sup-

ported at each end and a conventional load g at the distance z from A. The reaction at A will be

$$R = \frac{l-z}{l} g.$$

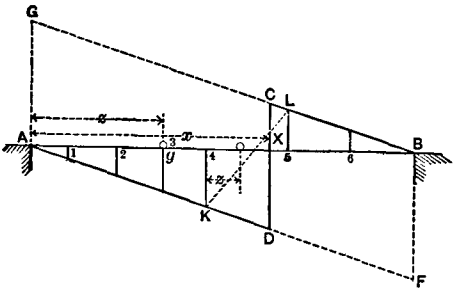


FIG. 25*a*.—Shear in a Simple Beam.

Let X be the section at which the shear for various positions of g is to be found. When g is placed at any point between A and X the shear S at the latter point will be

$$S = R = g = -g\frac{z}{l}; \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (f)$$

but when the load is placed between B and X the shear becomes

$$S' = R = g - g\frac{z}{l}. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (h)$$

Obviously these two values of the shear are equations of two parallel straight lines, that represented by equation (f) passing through A, and that represented by equation (h) passing through B, the constant vertical distance between them being g. Hence let BF be laid off negatively downward and AG positively upward, each being equal to g by any convenient scale. The ordinates drawn from the various positions 1, 2, 3 . . . 6 of g on AB to AD and BC will be the shears at X produced by the load g at any point of the span, and determined by equations (f) and (h). The influence line, therefore, for the section X will be the broken line $ADCB$. When g is at X the sign of the shear changes, since the latter passes through a zero value.

If a train of weights W_1, W_2, W_3, etc., passes across the span, the total shear at X will be found by taking the sum of the vertical

intercepts between AB and $ADCB$, drawn at the positions occupied by the various single weights of the train. If those single weights are expressed in terms of the unit load g, the shear S will have the value

$$S=\frac{1}{g}\Sigma Wy;$$

y being the general value of the intercept between AB and the influence line. The latter shows that the greatest negative shear at X will exist when the greatest possible amount of loading is placed on AX only, while the greatest positive shear at the same section will exist when BX only is loaded. If BX is the smaller segment of span, the latter shear is called the "counter-shear," and the former the "main shear."

If the loads are applied at panel-points of the span only, the treatment is the same in general character as that employed for bending moments. In Fig. 25*a* let 4 and 5 be the panel-points between which the load g is found, and let the panel length be p. Also, let z' be the distance of the weight g from panel-point 4. The reactions at A and 4 will then be

$$R=\frac{l-z}{l}g \quad \text{and} \quad R_4=\frac{p-z'}{p}g.$$

The shear at the section X for any position of the weight g will then be

$$S=R-R_4=g\left(\frac{z'}{p}-\frac{z}{l}\right). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (k)$$

As this is the equation of a straight line, with S and z or z' for the coordinates, the influence line for the panel in which the section X is located will be the straight line represented by KL in Fig. 25*a*.

If z' is placed equal to 0 and p successively, then will equation (k) become identical with equations (f) and (h) in succession. The shears at points 4 and 5 will therefore take the same values as if the loads were applied directly to the beam. For the reasons stated in connection with the consideration of bending moments, loads in other panels than that containing the section for which the influence line is drawn will have the same effect on that sec-

tion as if they were applied directly to the beam or truss. Hence *AKLB* is the complete influence line for this case.

It is evident that there must be as many influence lines drawn as there are sections to be discussed. Also, if g is taken as some convenient unit, i.e., 1000 or 10,000 pounds, it is clear that the labors of computation will be much reduced.

102. Application of Influence-line Method to Trusses.—In considering both the bending moments and shears when the loads are applied at panel-points, it has been assumed, as would be the case in an ordinary beam, that the bending moments as well as the shears may vary in the panel; but this latter condition does not hold in a bridge-truss. Neither bending moment nor shear varies in any one panel. Yet the influence lines for moments and shears are to be drawn precisely as shown in Figs. 25 and 25*a*. The section X will always be found at a panel-point, and no intercept drawn within the limits of the panel adjacent to that section carrying the load g is to be used. This method will be illustrated by the aid of Fig. 25*b*.

The employment of influence lines may be illustrated by determining the moment and shear in a single section of the truss shown in Fig. 24, which is reproduced in Fig. 25*c*, when carrying the moving load exhibited in Fig. 25*b*, although its use may be much extended beyond this simple procedure.

The moving load shown in Fig. 25*b* is that of a railroad train consisting of a uniform train-load of 4000 pounds per linear foot drawn by two locomotives with the wheel concentrations shown; it is a train-load frequently used in the design of the heaviest class of railroad structures. If the criterion of equation (27) be applied to this moving load, passing along the truss shown in Fig. 25*c*, from left to right, it will be found that the greatest bending moment is produced at the section Q when the second driving-axle of the second locomotive is placed at the truss section in question, as shown in Fig. 25*c*.

The unit load to be used in connection with the influence lines will be taken at 10,000 pounds. Remembering that the panel lengths are each 30 feet, it will be seen that the panel-point Q is 150 feet from A. Hence the product gx will be 1,500,000 foot-pounds. Similarly the product $g(l-x)$ will be 900,000 foot-

pounds. Laying off the first of these quantities, as AD, at a scale of 1,000,000 foot-pounds per linear inch, and the second quantity, as BK, by the same scale, the influence line ACB can at once be completed. Vertical lines are next to be drawn through the positions of the various weights, including one through the centre of the uniform train-load 110 feet in length resting on the truss. The vertical line through the centre of the uniform train-load is shown at O. By carefully scaling the vertical intercepts between AB and ACB, and remembering that each of the loads on the truss must be divided by 10,000, the following tabulated statement will be obtained, the sum of the intercepts for each set of equal weights being added into one item, and all the items of intercepts being multiplied by 1,000,000:

.195	× 110	× .4	× 1,000,000	= 8,580,000	foot-pounds.	
1.78	× 2.6	×	"	= 4,628,000	"	"
2.14	× 4	×	"	= 8,560,000	"	"
.485	× 2	×	"	= 970,000	"	"
1.525	× 2.6	×	"	= 3,965,000	"	"
.9	× 4	×	"	= 3,600,000	"	"
.12	× 2	×	"	= 240,000	"	"
				2)30,543,000	"	"
			Moment for one truss	= 15,271,500	"	"

The lever-arm of ef, i.e., the normal distance from Q to ef, is 39.7 feet. Hence the stress in ef is

$$\frac{15,271,500}{39.7} = 384,700 \text{ pounds.}$$

All the chord stresses can obviously be found in the same manner.

In order to place the same moving load so as to produce the greatest shear at the same section Q, the criterion of equation (33) must be employed. The dimensions of the truss shown in connection with Fig. 29 give the following data to be used in that equation: $i = 210$ feet, $m = 60$ feet, and $p = 30$ feet. Hence $\frac{l(m+i)}{pi} = 10\frac{2}{7}$, $\frac{l}{i} = 1\frac{1}{7}$. Introducing these quantities into equation (33), and remembering that the train moves on to the bridge

from A, it would be found that the second axle of the first locomotive must be placed at the section Q, as shown in Fig. 25d, which exhibits the lower-chord panel-points numbered from 1 to 7. The conventional unit load g will be taken in this case at 20,000 pounds. It is represented as AG and BF (Fig.

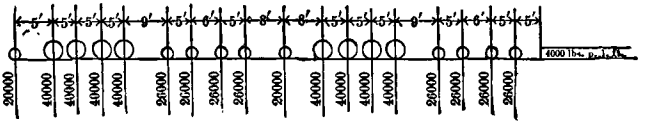


FIG. 25b.

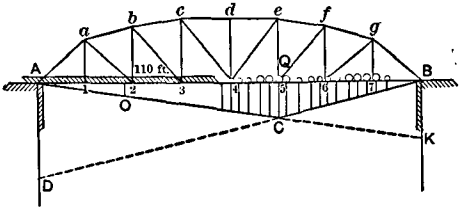


FIG. 25c.

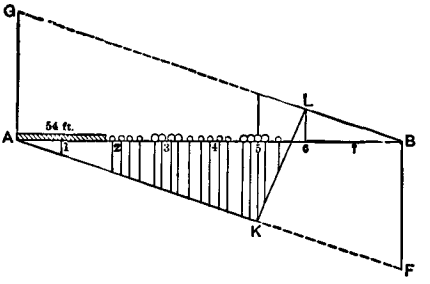


FIG. 25d.

25d), laid off at a scale of 10,000 pounds per inch. K is immediately under panel-point 5 and L is immediately above panel-point 6, hence the broken line $AKLB$ is the influence line desired. The vertical lines are then drawn from each train concentration in its proper position, all as shown, including the vertical line through the centre of the 54 feet of uniform train-load on the left. The summation of all the vertical intercepts between AB and the influence line AKL, having regard to the scale and to

the ratio between the various loads and the unit load g, will give the following tabular statement:

.22	× 54 ×	.2	× 10,000	= 23,760	pounds.
2.2	× 1.3 ×	"		= 28,600	"
3.02	× 2 ×	"		= 60,400	"
.9	× 1 ×	"		= 9,000	"
4.06	× 1.3 ×	"		= 53,780	"
4.53	× 2 ×	"		= 90,060	"
.5	× 1 ×	"		= 5,000	"
				2)270,600	"
	Shear for one truss			= 135,300	"

These simple operations illustrate the main principles of the method of influence lines from which numerous and useful extensions may be made.

CHAPTER IX.

103. Lateral Wind Pressure on Trusses.—The duties of a bridge structure are not confined entirely to the supporting of vertical loads. There are some horizontal or lateral loads of considerable magnitude which must be resisted; these are the wind loads resulting from wind pressure against both structure and moving train. In order to determine the magnitudes of these loads it is assumed in the first place that the direction of the wind is practically or exactly at right angles to the planes of the trusses and the sides of the cars. This assumption is essentially correct. There is probably nothing else so variable as both the direction and pressure of the wind. These variations are not so apparent in the exposure of our bodies to the wind, for the reason that we cannot readily appreciate even considerable changes either in direction or pressure. As a matter of fact suitable measuring apparatus shows that there is nothing steady or continued in connection with the wind unless it be its incessant variability. Its direction may be either horizontal or inclined, or even vertical, while within a few seconds its pressure may vary between wide limits. Under such circumstances the wind is as likely to blow directly against both bridge and train as in any other direction, and inasmuch as such a condition would subject the structure to its most severe duty against lateral forces, it is only safe and proper that the assumption should be made. The open work of bridge-trusses enables the wind to exert practically its full pressure against both trusses of a single-track bridge, or against even three trusses if they are used for a double-track structure. Hence it is customary to take the exposed surface of bridge-trusses as the total projected area on a plane throughout the bridge axis of both trusses if there are two, or of three

trusses if there are three. Inasmuch as the floor of a bridge from its lowest point to the top of the rails or other highest point of the floor is practically closed against the passage of the wind, all that surface between the lowest point and the top of the rail or highest floor-member is considered area on which wind pressure may act.

Many experimental observations show that on large surfaces, greater perhaps than 400 or 500 square feet in area, the pressure of the wind seldom exceeds 20 or 25 pounds per square foot, while it may reach 80 or 90 pounds, or possibly more on small surfaces of from 2 to 40 or 50 square feet in area. This distinction between small and large exposed areas in the treatment of wind pressures is fundamental and should never be neglected.

This whole subject of wind pressures has not yet been brought into a completely definite or well-defined condition through lack of sufficient experimental observations, but in order to be at least reasonably safe civil engineers frequently, and perhaps usually, assume a wind pressure acting simultaneously on both bridge and train at 30 pounds per square foot of exposed surface and 50 pounds per square foot of the total exposed surface of a bridge structure which carries no moving load. This distinction arises chiefly from the fact that a wind pressure of 30 pounds per square foot on the side of many railroad trains, particularly light ones, will overturn them, and it would be useless to use a larger pressure for a loaded structure. There have been wind pressures in this country so great as to blow unloaded bridges off their piers; indeed in one case a locomotive was overturned which must have resisted a wind pressure on its exposed surface of not less than 90 pounds and possibly more than 100 pounds per square foot.

The consideration of wind pressure is of the greatest importance in connection with the high trusses of long spans, as well as in long suspension and cantilever bridges, and in the design of high viaducts, all of which structures receive lateral wind pressures of great magnitude.

Some engineers, instead of deducing the lateral wind loads from the area of the projected truss surfaces, specify a certain

amount for each linear foot of span, as in "The General Specifications for Steel Railroad Bridges and Viaducts" by Mr. Theodore Cooper it is prescribed that a lateral force of 150 pounds for each foot of span shall be taken along the upper chords of through-bridges and the lower chords of deck-bridges for all spans up to 300 feet in length; and that for the same spans a lateral force of 450 pounds for each foot of span shall be taken for the lower chords of through-spans and the upper chords of deck-spans, 300 pounds of this to be treated as a moving load and as acting on a train of cars at a line $8\frac{5}{10}$ feet above the base of rail.

When the span exceeds 300 feet in length each of the above amounts of load per linear foot is to be increased by 10 pounds for each additional 30 feet of span.

Special wind-loadings and conditions under which they are to be used are also prescribed for viaducts.

These wind loads are resisted in the bridges on which they act by a truss formed between each two upper chords for the upper portion of the bridge, and between each two lower chords for the lower portion of the structure.

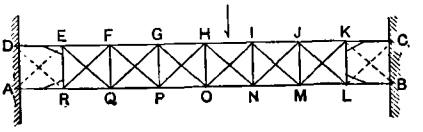


FIG. 26.

104. Upper and Lower Lateral Bracing.—Fig. 26 shows what are called the upper and lower lateral bracing for such trusses as are shown in the preceding figures. The wind is supposed to act in the direction shown by the arrow. *DERA* and *KLBC* are the two portals at the ends of the structure, braced so as to resist the lateral wind pressures. It will be observed that the systems of bracing between the chords make an ordinary truss, but in a horizontal plane, except in the case of inclined chords like that of Fig. 24. In the latter case the lateral trusses are obviously not in horizontal planes, but they may be considered in computations precisely as if they were. These lateral trusses are then treated with their horizontal panel wind loads just as the vertical trusses are treated for their corresponding vertical loads, and the resulting stresses are employed in designing web and chord

members precisely as in vertical trusses. The wind stresses in the chords, in some cases, are to be added to those due to vertical loading, and in some cases subtracted. In other words, the resultant stresses are recognized and the chord members are so designed as properly to resist them. At the present time it is the tendency in the best structural work to make all the web members of these lateral trusses of such section that they can resist both tension and compression, as this contributes to the general stiffness of the structure. On account of the great variability of the wind pressures and the liability of the blows of greatest intensity to vary suddenly, some engineers regard all the wind load on structure or train as a moving load and make their computations accordingly. It is an excellent practice and is probably at least as close an approximation to actual wind effects as the assumption of a uniform wind pressure on a structure.

Both the lateral and transverse wind bracing of railroad bridges have other essential duties to perform than the resistance of lateral wind pressures. Rapidly moving railroad trains produce a swaying effect on a bridge, in consequence of unavoidable unevenness of tracks, lack of balance of locomotive driving-wheels, and other similar influences. These must be resisted wholly by the lateral and transverse bracing, and these results constitute an important part of the duties of that bracing. These peculiar demands, in connection with the lateral stability of bridges, make it the more desirable that the lateral and transverse bracing should be as stiff as practicable.

105. Bridge Plans and Shopwork.—After the computations for a bridge design are completed in a civil engineer's office they are placed in the drawing-room, where the most detailed and exact plans of every piece which enters the bridge are made. The numerical computations connected with this part of bridge construction are of a laborious nature and must be made with absolute accuracy, otherwise it would be quite impossible to put the bridge together in the field. The various quantities of bars, plates, angles, and other shapes required are then ordered from the rolling-mill by means of these plans or drawings. On receipt of the material at the shop the

shopwork of manufacture is begun, and it involves a great variety of operations. The bridge-shop is filled with tools and engines of the heaviest description. Punches, lathes, planers, riveters, forges, boring and other machines of the largest dimensions are all brought to bear in the manufacture of the completed bridge.

106. Erection of Bridges.—When the shop operations are completed the bridge members are shipped to the site where the bridge is to be erected or put in place for final use. A timber staging, frequently of the heaviest timbers for large spans, called false works, is first erected in a temporary but very substantial manner. The top of this false work, or timber staging, is of such height that it will receive the steelwork of the bridge at exactly the right elevation. The bridge members are then brought onto the staging and each put in place and joined with pins and rivets. If the shopwork has not been done with mathematical accuracy, the bridge will not go together. On the accuracy of the shopwork, therefore, depends the possibility of properly fitting and joining the structure in its final position. The operations of the shop are so nicely disposed and so accurately performed that it is not an exaggeration to state that the serious misfit of a bridge member in American engineering practice at the present time is practically impossible. This leads to rapid erection so that the steelwork of a pin-connected railroad bridge 500 feet long can be put in place on the timber staging, or false works, and made safe in less than four days, although such a feat would have been considered impossible twenty years ago.

107. Statically Determinate Trusses. — The bridge structures which have been treated require but the simplest analysis, based only on statical equations of equilibrium of forces acting in one plane, i.e., the plane of the truss. It is known from the science of mechanics that the number of those equations is at most but three for any system of forces or loads, viz., two equations of forces and one of moments. This may be simply illustrated by the system of forces F_1,

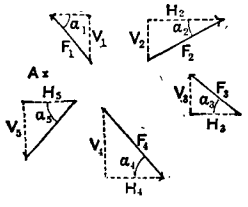


FIG. 27.

F_2, etc., in Fig. 27. Let each force be resolved into its vertical and horizontal components V and H. Also let l_1, l_2, etc. (not shown in the figure), be the normals or lever-arms dropped from any point A on the lines of action of the forces F_1, F_2, etc., so that the moments of the forces about that point will be F_1l_1, F_2l_2, etc. The conditions of purely statical equilibrium are expressed by the three general equations

$$H_1+H_2+\text{etc.}=F_1\cos\alpha_1+F_2\cos\alpha_2+\text{etc.}=0; \quad . \quad (35)$$

$$V_1+V_2+\text{etc.}=F_1\sin\alpha_1+F_2\sin\alpha_2+\text{etc.}=0; \quad . \quad . \quad (36)$$

$$Fl=F_1l_1+F_2l_2+\text{etc.}=0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (37)$$

If all the forces except three are known, obviously those three can be found by the three preceding equations; but if more than three are unknown, those three equations are not sufficient to find them. Other equations must be available or the unknown forces cannot be found. In modern methods of stress determinations those other needed equations express known elastic relations or values, such as deflections or the work performed in stressing the different members of structures under loads. A few fundamental equations of these methods will be given.

In Figs. 19, 20, and 21 let the truss be cut or divided by the imaginary sections QS. Each section cuts but three members, and as the loads and reactions are known, the stresses in the cut members will yield but three unknown forces, which may be found by the three equations of equilibrium (35), (36), (37). If more than three members are cut, however, as in the section TV of Figs. 22 and 23, making more than three unknown equations to be found, other equations than the three of statical equilibrium must be available. Hence the general principle that *if it is possible to cut not more than three members by a section through the truss, it is statically determinate*, but *if it is not possible to cut less than four or more, the stresses are statically indeterminate.*

At each joint in the truss the stresses in the members meeting there constitute, with the external forces or loads acting at the same point, a system in equilibrium represented by the two equations (35) and (36). If there are m such joints in the entire structure, there will be $2m$ such equations by which the same number of unknown quantities may be found. Since equilibrium

exists at every joint in the truss, the entire truss will be in equilibrium, and that is equivalent to the equilibrium of all the external forces acting on it. This latter condition is expressed by the three equations (35), (36), and (37), and they are essentially included in the number $2m$. Hence there will remain but $2m-3$ equations available for the determination of unknown stresses or external forces.

If, therefore, all the external forces (loads and reactions) are known, the $2m-3$ equations of static equilibrium can be applied to the determination of stresses in the bars of the truss or other structure. It follows, therefore, that the greatest number of bars that a statically determinate truss can have is

$$n = 2m - 3. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (38)$$

In Fig. 19 there are twelve joints and twenty-one members, omitting counter web members and the verticals *ab* and *fl*, which are, statically speaking, either superfluous or not really bars of the truss. Hence

$$m = 12 \quad \text{and} \quad 2m - 3 = 21. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (39)$$

Again, in Fig. 21 there are fifteen joints. Hence

$$m = 15, \quad 2m - 3 = 27,$$

and there are twenty-seven bars or members of the truss. The number of joints and bars in actual, statically determinate trusses, therefore, confirm the results.

108. Continuous Beams and Trusses—Theorem of Three Moments.—These considerations find direct application to what are known as "continuous beams," i.e., beams (or trusses) which reach continuously over two or more spans, as shown in Fig. 28.

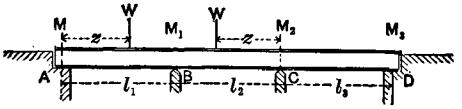


FIG. 28.

The beam shown is continuous over three spans, but a beam or truss may be continuous over any number of spans. In general the ends of the beam or girder may be fixed or held at the ends A and D, so that bending moments M and M_3 at the

same points may have value. The bending moments at the other points of support are represented by M_1, M_2, etc. The points of support may or may not be at the same elevation, but they are usually assumed to be so in engineering practice. Finally, it is ordinarily assumed that the continuous structure is straight before being loaded, and that in that condition it simply touches the points of support. Whether the preceding assumptions are made or not, a perfectly general equation can be written expressing the relation between the bending moments over each set of three consecutive points of support, as M, M_1, and M_2, or M_1, M_2, and M_3. Such an equation expresses what is called the "Theorem of Three Moments." It is not necessary to give the most general form of this theorem, as that which is ordinarily used embodies the simplifying assumptions already described. This simplified form of the "Theorem of Three Moments" applied to the case of Fig. 28 will yield the following two equations:

$$Ml_1 + 2M_1(l_1 + l_2) + M_2 l_2 + \frac{1}{l_1}\overset{1}{\Sigma} W(l_1^2 - z^2)z + \frac{1}{l_2}\overset{2}{\Sigma} W(l_2^2 - z^2)z = 0. \quad (40)$$

$$M_1 l_2 + 2M_2(l_2 + l_3) + M_3 l_3 + \frac{1}{l_2}\overset{2}{\Sigma} W(l_2^2 - z^2) + \frac{1}{l_3}\overset{3}{\Sigma} W(l_3^2 - z^2)z = 0. \quad (41)$$

The figure over the sign of summation shows the span to which the summation belongs. If there is but one weight or load W in each span, the sign of summation is to be omitted. In an ordinary bridge structure or beam the ends are simply supported and $M = M_3 = 0$. In any case if the number of supports be n, there will be $n - 2$ equations like the preceding.

If the end moments M and M_3 are not zero, they will be determinable by the local conditions in each instance. In any event, therefore, they will be known, and there will be but $n - 2$ unknown moments to be found by the same number of equations. When the moments are known the reactions follow from simple formulæ.

109. Application to Draw- or Swing-bridges.—In general the reactions or supporting forces of the beams and trusses of ordinary civil-engineering practice are vertical, and all their points of application are known. Hence there are but two equations of equilibrium, equations (36) and (37), for external forces. These two equations for the external forces and the $n-2$ equations derived from the theorem of three moments are therefore always sufficient to determine the n reactions. After the reactions are known all the stresses in the bars or members of the trusses can at once be found. The preceding equations and methods as described are constantly employed in the design and construction of swing- or draw-bridges.

110. Special Method for Deflection of Trusses.—The method of finding the elastic deflections produced by the bending of solid beams has already been shown, but it is frequently necessary to determine the elastic deflections of bridge-trusses or other jointed or so-called articulate frames or structures. It is not practicable to use the same formulæ for the latter class of structures as for the former. The elastic deflection of a bridge- or roof-truss depends upon the stretching or compressions of its various members in consequence of the tensile or compressive forces to which they are subjected. Any method by which the deflection is found, therefore, must involve these elastic changes of length. There are a number of methods which give the desired expressions, but probably the simplest as well as the most elegant procedure is that which reaches the desired expression through the consideration of the work performed in the truss members in producing their elastic lengthenings and shortenings.

The general features of this method can readily be shown by reference to Fig. 29. It may be supposed that it is desired to find the deflection of any point, as J, of the lower chord produced both by the dead and live load which it carries. It is known from what has preceded that every member of the upper chord will be shortened and that every member of the lower chord will be lengthened; and also that generally the vertical web members will be shortened and the inclined web members lengthened. If there can be obtained an expression giving that part of the deflection of J which is due to the change of length

of any one member of the truss independently of the others, then that expression may be applied to every other member in the entire truss, and by taking the sum of all those effects the desired deflection will at once result. While this expression will be found for some one particular truss member, it will be of such a general form that it may be used for any truss member whatever; it will be written for the upper-chord member *BC* in Fig. 29.

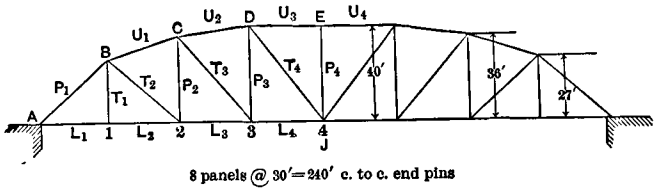


FIG. 29.

The general problem is to determine the deflection of the point *J* when the bridge carries both dead and moving load over the entire span, as shown in Fig. 29. The general plan of procedure is first to find the stresses due to this combined load in every member of the truss, so that the corresponding lengthening or shortening is at once shown. The effect of this lengthening and shortening for any single member *BC* in producing deflection at *J* is then determined; the sum of all such effects for every member of the truss is next taken, and that sum is the deflection sought. In this case the vertical deflection will be found, because that is the deflection generally desired in connection with bridge structures, but precisely the same method and essentially the same formulæ are used to find the deflection in any direction whatever. The following notation will be employed:

Let w = deflection in inches at any panel-point or joint of the truss;

" P = any arbitrary load or weight supposed to be hung at the point where the deflection is desired and acting as if gradually applied. This may be taken as unity;

" Z = stress produced in any member of truss by P;

" S = stress produced in any member of truss by the combined dead and moving loads;

Let l = length in inches of any member of the truss in which Z or S is found;
" A = area of cross-section of same member in square inches;
" E = coefficient of elasticity.

S or Z may be either tension or compression, and the formulæ will be so expressed that tension will be made positive and compression negative.

The change of length of the chord member BC produced by a stress gradually increasing from zero to S is $\frac{S}{AE}l$. If it be supposed that BC is a spring of such stiffness that it will be compressed by the gradual application of Z exactly as much as the shortening of the actual member by the stress S, the deflection of the point 4 with the weight P hung from it, and due to that compression alone, will be precisely the same as that due to the actual shortening of BC by the combined dead and moving loads.

It is known by one of the elementary principles of mechanics that, since P acts along the direction of the vertical deflection w, the work performed by the weight P over that deflection is equal to the work performed by Z over the change of length l. Hence

$$\frac{l}{2}Pw = \frac{l}{2}Z\frac{Sl}{AE}, \text{ or}$$

$$w = \frac{Z}{P}\frac{Sl}{AE}. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (42)$$

The quantity $Z \div P$ is the stress produced in the member by a unit load applied at the joint or point where the deflection is desired. Again, $S \div A$ is the stress per unit of area, i.e., intensity of stress, in the member considered by the actual dead and moving loads. For brevity let these be written

$$\frac{Z}{P} = z \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{S}{A} = s;$$

then

$$w = \frac{zsl}{E}. \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots \quad (43)$$

If the influence of every member of the truss is similarly expressed, the value of the total deflection produced by the dead and moving loads will be

$$w = \sum \frac{zsl}{E}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (44)$$

The sign of summation Σ indicates that the summation is to extend over all the web and chord members of the truss.

111. Application of Method for Deflection to Triangular Frame.—Before applying those equations to the case of Fig. 29 it is best to consider a simpler case, i.e., that of the triangular frame shown in Fig. 18. The reactions are

$$R = \frac{l_2}{l} W \quad \text{and} \quad R' = \frac{l_1}{l} W. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (45)$$

The stresses in the various members are:

In CB, $S = \frac{l_1}{l} W \sec \alpha$.

" CA, $S = \frac{l_2}{l} W \sec \beta$.

" AB, $S = \frac{l_2}{l} W \tan \beta = \frac{l_1}{l} W \tan \alpha$.

Also: $CB = h \sec \alpha$; area of section $= A_1$.
$CA = h \sec \beta$; " " " $= A_2$.
$AB = l$; " " " $= A_3$.

In this instance it is simplest to take $P = W$. Equation (44) then gives

$$w = \left(\frac{l_1^2}{l^2} \frac{h \sec^3 \alpha}{A_1} + \frac{l_2^2}{l^2} \frac{h \sec^3 \beta}{A_2} + \frac{l_2^2}{l^2} \frac{l \tan^2 \beta}{A_3} \right) \frac{W}{E}. \quad . \quad (46)$$

Let it be supposed that

$l = 25$ feet $= 300$ inches;
$h = 8$ feet 4 inches $= 100$ inches;
$l_2 = 16$ feet 8 inches $= 200$ inches and $l_1 = 100$ inches;
$\tan \beta = 1$; $\sec \beta = 1.414$;
$\sec \alpha = 2.24$;
$W = 10{,}000$ pounds.

If the bars are all supposed to be of yellow-pine timber, there may be taken

$$E = 1{,}000{,}000 \text{ pounds};$$
$$A_1 = 10'' \times 12'' = 120 \text{ square inches};$$
$$A_2 = 10'' \times 10'' = 100 \text{ square inches};$$
$$A_3 = 10'' \times 12'' = 120 \text{ square inches}.$$

The insertion of these quantities in equation (46) gives the deflection

$$w = .01042 + .01253 + .01111 = 0''.034. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (47)$$

Equation (47) is so written as to show the portion of the deflection due to each member of the frame.

In applying either equation (43) or equation (44) care must be taken to give each stress and its corresponding strain (lengthening or shortening) the proper sign. As the formulæ have been written and used, a tensile stress and its resulting stretch must each be written positive, while a compressive stress must be written negative. This holds true for both the stresses Z and S (or z and s). The magnitude of the assumed load P is a matter of indifference, since the stress Z will always be proportional to it and the ratio $P \div Z$ will therefore be constant. P is frequently taken as unity; or, as in the case just given, it may have any value that the conditions of the problem make most convenient.

112. Application of Method for Deflection to Truss.—In making application of the deflection formulæ to any steel railroad truss similar to that shown in Fig. 29, it will first be necessary to determine the stresses in all its members due to the dead and moving loads, since the deflection under the moving load is sought. These loads will be considered uniform, and that is sufficiently accurate for any railroad bridge. The moving train-load will be taken as covering the entire span, assumed, for a single-track railroad, 240 feet in length between centres of end pins. There are eight panels of 30 feet each, and the depth of truss at centre is 40 feet. Other truss dimensions are as shown in Fig. 29. The dead loads, or own weight, are taken at 400 pounds per linear foot of span for the rails and other pieces that constitute the track; at 400 pounds per linear foot for the

steel floor-beams and stringers, and 1600 pounds per linear foot for the weight of trusses and bracing. The moving train-load will be taken at 4000 pounds per linear foot. This will make the panel-loads for each truss as follows:

Lower-chord dead load,	$30 \times 800 = 24{,}000$	pounds per panel.
Lower-chord moving load,	$30 \times 2000 = 60{,}000$	" " "
Total load on lower chord	$= 84{,}000$	" " "
Upper-chord dead load,	$30 \times 400 = 12{,}000$	" " "

The structure is a "through" bridge, hence all moving loads rest on the lower chord.

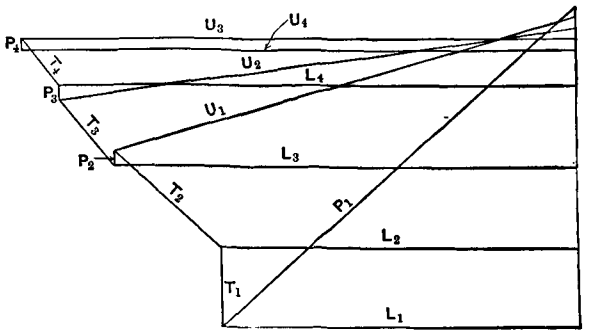


FIG. 30.

The stresses in the truss members due to the combined uniform dead and moving load are best found by the graphical method. One diagram only is needed to determine all the stresses, and it is shown in Fig. 30. This diagram is drawn accurately to scale, and the stresses measured from it are shown in the table on page 136.

The stresses in all the truss members due to the unit load hung at J are readily found by the single diagram shown in Fig. 31, also carefully drawn to scale. These stresses measured from the diagram are given in the table as indicated by the column z; they are also represented in equation (44) by the letter z. The quantity s in equation (44) is the intensity of the stress (pounds per square inch of cross-section of member) produced by the combined dead and moving loads in each member. As shown,

	S	s	z	l	w
L_1	+373,300	+12,000	+.555	360	+.08563
L_2	+373,300	+12,000	+.555	360	+.08563
L_3	+480,000	+12,000	+.833	360	+.1284
L_4	+540,000	+12,000	+1.125	360	+.1736
P_1	−502,300	−9,000	−.748	472	+.1132
U_1	−501,000	−9,500	−.870	376	+.1108
U_2	−544,800	−10,000	−1.135	363	+.1472
U_3	−576,000	−10,000	−1.50	360	+ 1928
T_1	+84,000	+9,000	0	324	.....
T_2	+143,500	+10,000	+.3738	472	+.0629
P_2	−12,000	−1,000	−.250	432	+.00386
T_3	+93,720	+7,400	+.456	562	+.0677
P_3	+12,000	+1,000	−.35	480	−.0060
T_4	+60,000	+4,800	+.625	600	+.0643
P_4	−12,000	−1,000	0	480	.....

Deflection for $\frac{1}{2}$ truss members = 1.2300 inches.
Deflection at $f = 2 \times 1.2300 = 2.4600$ inches.

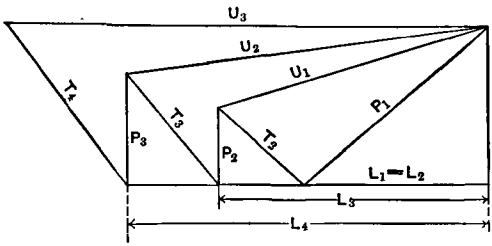


FIG. 31.

these stresses are least in the web members near the centre of the span, and greatest in the chord members. The lengths in inches of the truss members are shown in the proper column of the table. It will be observed that all counter web members are omitted, as they are not needed for the uniform load. The coefficient of elasticity (E) is taken at 28,000,000 pounds. The quantities represented by the second member of equation (44) are computed from these data, and they appear in the last column of the table, the sum of which gives the desired deflection in inches. The elements of the table show how much of the deflection is due to the chords and to the web members, and they show that disregarding the latter would lead to a considerable error.

As the deflection is usually desired in inches, the lengths of members must be taken in the same unit.

113. Method of Least Work.—The so-called theorem or principle of "Least Work" is closely related to the subject of elastic deflections just considered in its availability for furnishing equations of condition in addition to those of a purely statical character in cases where indetermination would result without them. This principle of least work is expressed in the simple statement that when any structure supports external loading the work performed in producing elastic deformation of all the members will be the least possible. Although this principle may not be susceptible of a complete and general demonstration, it may be shown to hold true in many cases if not all. The hypothesis is most reasonable and furnishes elegant solutions in many useful problems.

The application of this principle requires the determination of expressions for the work performed in the elastic lengthening and shortening of pieces subjected either to tension or compression, and for the work performed in the elastic bending of beams carrying loads at right angles to their axes. Both of these expressions can be very simply found.

Let it be supposed that a piece of material whose length is L and the area of whose cross-section is A is either stretched or compressed by the weight or load S applied so as to increase gradually from zero to its full value. The elastic change of length will be $\frac{SL}{AE}$, E being the coefficient of elasticity. The average force acting will be $\frac{1}{2}S$, hence the work performed in producing the strain will be

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{S^2L}{AE}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (48)$$

It will generally be best, although not necessary, to take L in inches. The expression (48) applies either to tension or compression precisely as it stands.

To obtain the expression for the work performed by the stresses in a beam bent by loads acting at right angles to its axis, a differential length (dL) of the beam is considered at any normal section in which the bending moment is M, the total length being L. Let I be the moment of inertia of the normal section, A,

about an axis passing through the centre of gravity of the latter, and let k be the intensity of stress (usually the stress per square inch) at any point distant d from the axis about which I is taken. The elastic change produced in the indefinitely short length dL when the intensity k exists is $\frac{k}{E}dL$. If dA is an indefinitely small portion of the normal section, the average force or stress, either of tension or compression, acting through the small elastic change of length just given, can be written by the aid of equation (5) as

$$\tfrac{1}{2}k.dA = \frac{Md}{2I}.dA. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (49)$$

Hence the work performed in any normal section of the member, for which M remains unchanged, will be, since $\int k.dA.d = M$,

$$\int \frac{M}{2IE}kd.dA.dL = \frac{M^2}{2EI}dL. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (50)$$

The work performed throughout the entire piece will then be

$$\int \frac{M^2}{2EI}dL. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (51)$$

Each of the expressions (48) and (51) belongs to a single piece or member of the structure. The total work performed in all the pieces subjected either to direct stress or to bending, and which, according to the principle of least work, must be a minimum, is found by taking the summation of the two preceding expressions:

$$e = \tfrac{1}{2E}\sum \frac{S^2L}{A} + \tfrac{1}{2E}\sum \int \frac{M^2}{I}dL = \text{minimum}. \quad . \quad (52)$$

In making an application of equation (52) it is to be remembered that S is the direct stress of tension or compression in any member, and that M is the general value of the bending moment in any bent member expressed in terms of the length L.

114. Application of Method of Least Work to General Problem.—The problem which generally presents itself in the use of equation (52) is the finding of an equation which expresses the condi-

tion that the work expended in producing elastic deformation shall be a minimum, some particular stress in the structure or some external load or force being the variable. If t represent that variable, then the desired equation of condition will be found simply by placing the first differential coefficient of e in equation (52) equal to zero:

$$\frac{de}{dt} = \frac{1}{E}\left(\sum \frac{S}{A}\frac{dS}{dt}dL + \sum \int \frac{M}{I}\frac{dM}{dt}dL\right) = 0. \quad . \quad (53)$$

The solution of equation (53) will give a value of t which will make the work performed as expressed in equation (52) a minimum. This method is not a difficult one to employ in such cases as those of drawbridges and stiffened suspension bridges. In the latter case particularly it is of great practical value.

115. Application of Method of Least Work to Trussed Beam. —The method of least work may be illustrated by the application of the preceding equations to the simple truss shown in Fig. 32. The pieces BC and GD are supposed to be of yellow-pine timber, the former 10 inches by 14 inches (vertical) in section and the latter 8 inches by 10 inches, while each of the pieces BD and DC are two $1\frac{5}{8}$-inch round steel bars. The coefficient of elasticity E will be taken at 1,000,000 pounds for the timber and 28,000,000 for the steel. The length of BC is 360 inches; GD 96 inches; $BD = 96 \times 2.13 = 204.5$ inches.

$$\tan \alpha = 1.875 \quad \text{and} \quad \sec \alpha = 2.13.$$

The weight W resting at G is 20,000 pounds. A part of this weight is carried by BC as a simple timber beam, while the remainder of the load will be carried on the triangular frame BCD acting as a truss, the elastic deflection of the latter throwing a part of the load on BC acting as a beam. According to the principle of least work the division of the load will be such as to make the work performed in straining the different members of the system a minimum.

That part of W which rests on BC as a simple beam may be represented by W_1, while W_2 represents the remaining portion carried by the triangular frame. As G is at the centre of the span, the beam reaction at either B or C is $\frac{1}{2}W_1$. Hence the

general value of the bending moment in either half of the beam at any distance x from either B or C is

$$M = \tfrac{1}{2}W_1 x. \quad \text{Hence } M^2dL = \tfrac{1}{4}W_1^2 x^2 dx.$$

As there is but one member acting as a beam, whose moment of inertia I is constant, the second term of the second member of equation (52) becomes, by the aid of the preceding equation,

$$\frac{1}{2EI}\int M^2 dL = \frac{1}{EI}\int_0^{l/2} \tfrac{1}{4}W_1^2 x^2 dx = \frac{1}{EI}\frac{W_1^2 l^3}{96}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (54)$$

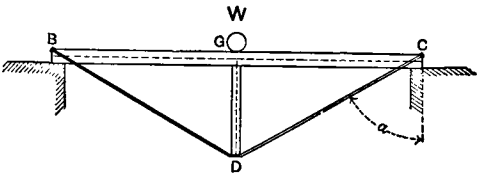


FIG. 32.

The numerical elements of the expression for the work done in the members of the triangular frame are:

Member.	Stress.	Length.	Area of Section.
BC	$\frac{1}{2}W_2 \tan \alpha$	360 inches $= l$	140 square inches
DC	$\frac{1}{2}W_2 \sec \alpha$	204.5 "	4.14 " "
DG	W_2	96 "	80 " "

$$I = \frac{10 \times 14^3}{12} = \frac{27440}{12} = 2286.7.$$

The substitution of those quantities in the first term of the second member of equation (52) will give

$$\frac{1}{2E}\sum\frac{S^2 L}{A} = \frac{1}{2{,}000{,}000}\left(\frac{W_2^2 \tan^2 \alpha . 360}{4 \times 140} + \frac{W_2^2 . 96}{80}\right) + \frac{2}{56{,}000{,}000}\frac{W_2^2 \sec^2 \alpha . 204.5}{4 \times 4.14} = .000{,}003{,}73 W_2^2.$$

The substitution of numerical quantities in equation (54) gives

$$\frac{1}{EI}\frac{W_1^2 l^3}{96} = .000{,}213 W_1^2.$$

Or, since $W - W_2 = W_1$,

$$e = .000{,}003{,}73 W_2^2 + .000{,}213 (W - W_2)^2. \quad . \quad . \quad (55)$$

Hence

$$\frac{de}{dW_2} = .000,007,46W_2 - .000,426(W - W_2) = 0. \quad . \quad . \quad (56)$$

The solution of this equation gives

$$W_2 = .893W = 19,660 \text{ pounds.}$$
$$W_1 = \quad 340 \quad ''$$

It is interesting to observe that the first term of the second member of equation (56) is the deflection of the point of application of W_2 as a point in the frame, while the second term is the deflection of the point of application of W_1 considered as a point of the beam. In other words, the condition resulting from the application of the principle of least work is equivalent to making the elastic deflections by W_1 and W_2 equal. Indeed equation (53) expresses the equivalence of deflections whenever the features of the problem are such as to involve concurrent deflections of two different parts of the structure.

116. Removal of Indetermination by Methods of Least Work and Deflection. — The indetermination existing in connection with the computations for such trusses as those shown in Fig. 22 and Fig. 23 can be removed by finding equations of condition by the aid of the method of least work or of deflections. It is evident that the component systems of bracing of which such trusses are composed must all deflect equally. Hence expressions may be found for the deflections of those component trusses, each under its own load. Since these deflections must be equal, equations of condition at once result. A sufficient number of such equations, taken with those required by statical equilibrium, can be found to solve completely the problem. Such methods, however, are laborious, and the ordinary assumption of each system carrying wholly the loads resting at its panel-points is sufficiently near for all ordinary purposes.

The method of least work can be very conveniently used for the solution of a great number of simple problems, like that which requires the determination of the four reactions under the four legs of a table, carrying a single weight or a number of weights, and many others of the same character.

CHAPTER X.

117. The Arched Rib, of both Steel and Masonry.—During the past ten or fifteen years the type of bridge structure called the arched rib has come into much use, and its merits insure for it a wider application in the future. It partakes somewhat of the nature of both truss and arch; or it may be considered a curved beam or girder. The ordinary beam or truss when placed in a horizontal position and loaded vertically yields only vertical reactions. Under the same conditions, however, the arched rib will produce both vertical and horizontal reactions, and the latter must either be resisted by abutments of sufficient mass, or by a tie-rod, usually horizontal, connecting the springing points of the rib.

The arched rib may be built solid, as was done in the early days of bridge-building in this country when engineers like Palmer, Burr, and Wernwag introduced timber arches in combination with their wooden trusses, or as a curved plate girder, one of the most prominent examples of which is the Washington Bridge across the Harlem River in the city of New York; or, again, as a braced frame or curved truss, like the 800 feet arched rib carrying the roadway traffic and trolley cars across the Niagara gorge, or like those used in such great railroad train-sheds as the Grand Central Station, New York, the Pennsylvania stations at Jersey City and Philadelphia, and the Philadelphia and Reading station in Philadelphia. Those are all admirable examples of steel arched ribs, and they are built to sustain not only vertical loads but, in the case of station roofs, the normal or horizontal wind pressures.

Within a few years, less than ten, another type of arched rib has been brought into use and promises to be one of the most

beautiful as well as the most substantial applications of this type of structure; that is, the arched rib of combined steel and concrete. Many examples of this type of structure already exist both in this country and in Europe, probably the most prominent of which in this country is that at Topeka, Kansas, across the Kansas River.

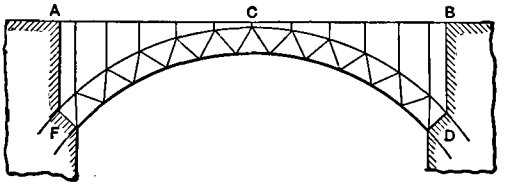


FIG. 33.

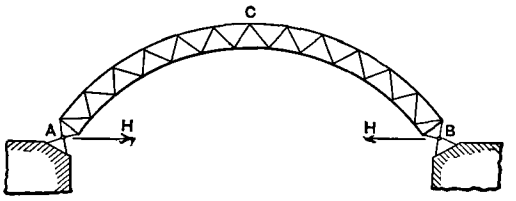


FIG. 34.

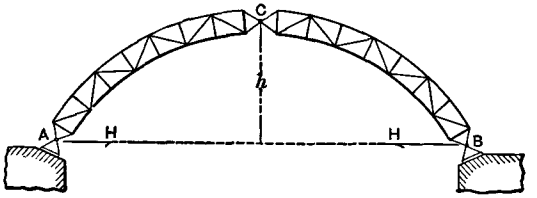


FIG. 35.

The characteristic feature of this type of structure, so far as the stresses developed in it are concerned, is the thrust throughout its length, more or less nearly parallel to its axis, which is combined with the bending moments and shears similar to those found in ordinary bridge-trusses. This thrust is the arch characteristic and differentiates it in a measure from the ordinary bridge-truss, while the bending moments and shears to which it is subjected differentiate it, on the other hand, from the pure arch type or a series of blocks in which thrust only exists. The

thrust, bending moments, and shears in arched ribs are all affected by certain principal features of design. Those features are either fixedness of the ends of the ribs or the presence of pin-joints at those ends or at the crown. Fig. 33 represents an arched rib with its ends D and F supposed to be rigidly fixed in masonry or by other effective means.

118. Arched Rib with Ends Fixed.—The railroad steel arched bridge at St. Louis, built by Captain Eads between 1868 and 1874, is a structure of this character. The three spans (two each 537 feet 3 inches and one 552 feet 6 inches in length from centre to centre of piers) consist of ribs the main members of which are composed of chrome steel. It was a structure of unprecedented span when it was built, and constituted one of the boldest pieces of engineering in its day. The chords of the ribs are tubes made of steel staves, and their ends are rigidly anchored to the masonry piers on which they rest. It is exceedingly difficult, indeed impossible, to fix rigidly the ends of such a structure, and observations in this particular instance have shown that the extremities of the ribs are not truly fixed, for the piers themselves yield a little, giving elastic motion under some conditions of loading.

119. Arched Rib with Ends Jointed.—The rib shown in Fig. 34 is different from the preceding in that pin-joints are supplied at each end, so that the rib may experience elastic distortion or strain by small rotations about the pins at A and B. In the computations for such a design it is assumed that the ends of the rib may freely change their inclination at those points. As a matter of fact the friction is so great, even if no corrosion exists, as to prevent motion, but the presence of the pins makes no bending moment possible at the end joints, and the failure to move freely probably produces no serious effect upon the stresses in the ribs. The presence of these pin-joints simplifies the computations of stresses and renders them better defined, so that there is less doubt as to the actual condition of stress under a given load than in the type shown in Fig. 33 with ends fixed more or less stiffly. In Fig. 34, if the horizontal force H exerted by the ends of the rib against the points of support is known, the remaining stresses in the structure can readily be computed;

but neither in Fig. 34 nor in Fig. 33 are statical equations sufficient for the determination of stresses. Equations of condition, depending upon the elastic properties of the material, are required before solutions of the problems arising can be made.

120. Arched Rib with Crown and Ends Jointed.—The rib shown in Fig. 35 possesses one characteristic radically different from any found in the ribs of Figs. 33 and 34, in that it is three-jointed, one pin-joint being at the crown and one at each end. So far as the conditions of stress are concerned, this is the simplest rib of all. Since there is a pin-joint at the crown as well as at the ends, the bending moments must be zero at each of those three points whatever may be the condition of loading. The point of application of the force or thrust at the crown, therefore, is always known, as well as the points of application at the ends of the joints. As will presently be seen, this condition makes equations of statical equilibrium sufficient for the determination of all stresses in the rib, and no equations depending upon the elastic properties of the material are required. The stresses in this class of ribs, therefore, are more easily determined than in the other two, and they are better defined. These qualities have insured for it a somewhat more popular position than either of the other two classes. The ribs of the great train-sheds of the Pennsylvania and Reading railroads in Jersey City and in Philadelphia belong to this class, while those of the Grand Central Station at New York City belong to the class shown in Fig. 34, as does the arched rib across the Niagara gorge, to which reference has already been made.

121. Relative Stiffness of Arch Ribs.—Obviously the three-hinged ribs are less stiff than the two-hinged ribs or those with fixed ends. This is a matter of less consequence for station roofs than for structures carrying railroad loads. The joints of the two-hinged rib being at the ends of the structure, there is but little difference in stiffness between that class of ribs and those with ends fixed. Indeed the difference is so slight, and the uncertainty as to the degree of fixedness of the fixed ends of the rib is so great, that the latter type of rib possesses no real advantage over that with hinged ends.

122. General Conditions of Analysis of Arched Ribs.—In each of the three types of arched ribs shown in Figs. 33, 34, and 35 it is supposed that all external forces act in the vertical planes which contain the centre lines of the various members of the rib. There are, therefore, the three conditions of statical equilibrium expressed by the three equations (35), (36), and (37). In practically all cases, except those of arched ribs employed in roof construction, all the external loads are vertical. In such cases the equations of statical equilibrium of the entire structure may be reduced to two only, viz., equations (36) and (37). These features of the problems connected with the design of arched ribs will always make necessary, except in the case of the three-hinged rib (Fig. 35), equations of condition depending upon the elastic properties of the structure.

The rib represented by Fig. 33 is supposed to have its ends so fixed that the inclinations of the centre line at F and D will never change whatever may be the loading or the variation of temperature. This requires the application at each of those points of a couple whose moment varies in value, but which is always equal and opposite to the bending moment at the same point produced by the loads imposed on the rib. It is also to be observed that the loads resting upon the rib are not divided between the points of support F and D in accordance with the law of the lever, since the conditions of fixedness at the ends are equivalent to continuity. There are then to be found, as acting external to the rib, the two vertical reactions and the two moments at F and D, as well as the horizontal thrust exerted at the ends of the structure, which is sometimes resisted by the tie-rod, making five unknown quantities. Inasmuch as all external loading is supposed to be vertical, equations (36) and (37) are the only statical equations available, and three others, depending upon the elastic properties of the structure, must be supplied in order to obtain the total of five equations of condition to determine the five unknown quantities. Inasmuch as the end inclinations remain unchanged, the total extension or compression of the material at any given constant distance from the axis of the rib taken between the two end sections F and D must be equal to zero. Similarly, whatever may be the

amount or condition of loading, the vertical and horizontal deflections of either of the ends F or D in relation to the other must be zero, since no relative motion between these two points can take place. It is not necessary in these lectures to give the demonstration of the equations which express the three preceding elastic conditions, but if M is the general value of the bending moment for any point of the rib, and if x and y are the horizontal and vertical coordinates of the centre line of the rib, taking the central point of the section at either F or D as an origin, those equations, taken in the order in which the elastic conditions have been named, will be the following, in which n represents a short length of rib within which the bending moment M is supposed to remain unchanged.

$$\sum_D^F n\,M = 0; \quad \sum_D^F n\,Mx = 0; \quad \sum_D^F n\,My = 0. \quad . \quad (57)$$

The second and third of these equations express the condition that the vertical and horizontal deflections respectively of the two ends in reference to each other shall be zero. The conditions expressed by equation (57) are constantly used in engineering practice to determine the bending moments and stresses which exist in the arched rib with fixed ends. The graphical method is ordinarily used for that purpose, as its employment is a comparatively simple procedure for a rib whose curvature is any whatever.

If the rib has hinged joints at the ends, as in Fig. 34, obviously there can be no bending moment at either of those two points, and hence the two equations of condition which were required in connection with Fig. 33 to determine them will not be needed. There is, therefore, no restriction as to the angle of inclination of the centre line of the rib at those two points. Again, it is obvious that either end A or B may have vertical movement, i.e., deflection in reference to the other, without affecting the condition of stress in any member of the rib; but it is equally obvious that neither A nor B can be moved horizontally, i.e., deflected in reference to the other, without producing bending in the rib and developing stresses in the various members. The unknown

quantities in this case are, therefore, only the horizontal thrust H exerted at the two springing points A and B, and the two vertical reactions, making a total of three unknown quantities, equations for two of which will be given by equations (36) and (37). The other equation required is the third expression in equation (57), expressing the condition that the horizontal deflection of either of the points A or B in respect to the other is zero, since the span AB is supposed to remain unchanged. By the application of the graphical method to this case, as to the preceding, the employment of equations (36), (37), and (58) will afford an easy and quick determination of the three unknown quantities, whatever may be the curvature of the rib.

$$\sum_{B}^{A} n\, My = 0. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (58)$$

If the reactions and horizontal thrust H are found, stresses in every member may readily be computed and the complete design made.

If the arch is three-hinged, as in Fig. 35, the condition that the bending moment must be zero at the crown C under all conditions of loading gives a third statical equation independent of the elastic properties of the structure which, in connection with equations (36) and (37), give three equations of condition sufficient to determine the two vertical reactions and the horizontal thrust H. In this case, as has already been stated, no elastic equations of condition are required.

The determination of the end reactions, bending moments, and horizontal thrust H, in these various cases, is all that is necessary in order to compute with ease and immediately the stresses in every member of the rib. These computations are obviously the final numerical work required for the complete design of the structure. These procedures are always followed, and in precisely the manner indicated, in the design of arched ribs by civil engineers, whether the rib be articulated, i.e., with open bracing, or with a solid plate web, like those of the Washington Bridge across the Harlem River.

CHAPTER XI.

123. Beams of Combined Steel and Concrete.*—A reference has already been made to a class of beams and arches recently come into use and now quite widely employed, composed of steel and concrete, the former being completely surrounded by and imbedded in the latter. These composite beams are very extensively used in the floors of fire-proof buildings as well as for other purposes. Arches of combined concrete and steel were probably first built in Germany and but a comparatively few years ago. During the past ten years they have been largely introduced into this country, and many such structures have not only been designed but built. The most prominent design of arches of combined concrete and steel are those of the proposed memorial bridge across the Potomac River at Washington, for which a first prize was awarded as the result of a national competition in the early part of 1900. So far as the bending or flexure of these composite beams and arches is concerned, the theory is identically the same for both, the formulæ for each of which are given below. In order to express these formulæ the following notation will be needed:

P is the thrust along the arch determined by the methods explained in the consideration of arched ribs.

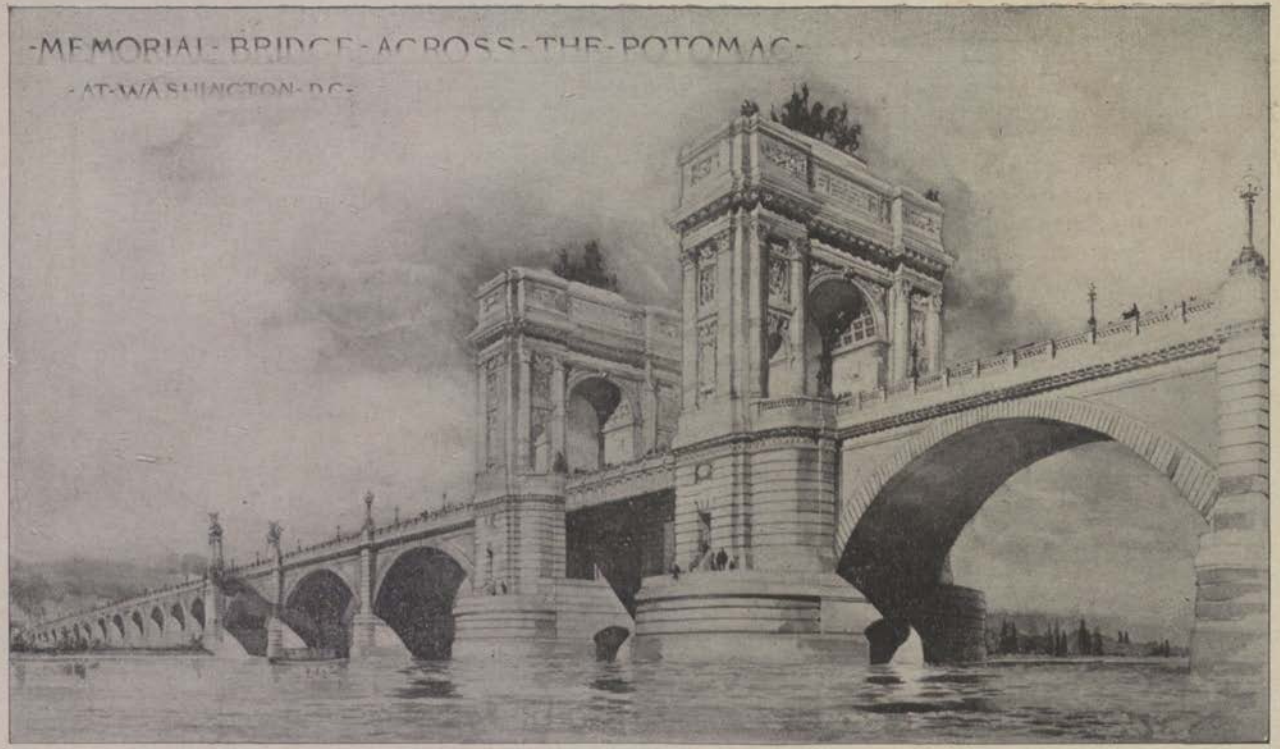
l is the distance of the line of the thrust P from the axis of the arched rib.

E_1 and E_2 are coefficients of elasticity for the two materials.

A_1 and A_2 are areas of normal section of the two materials.

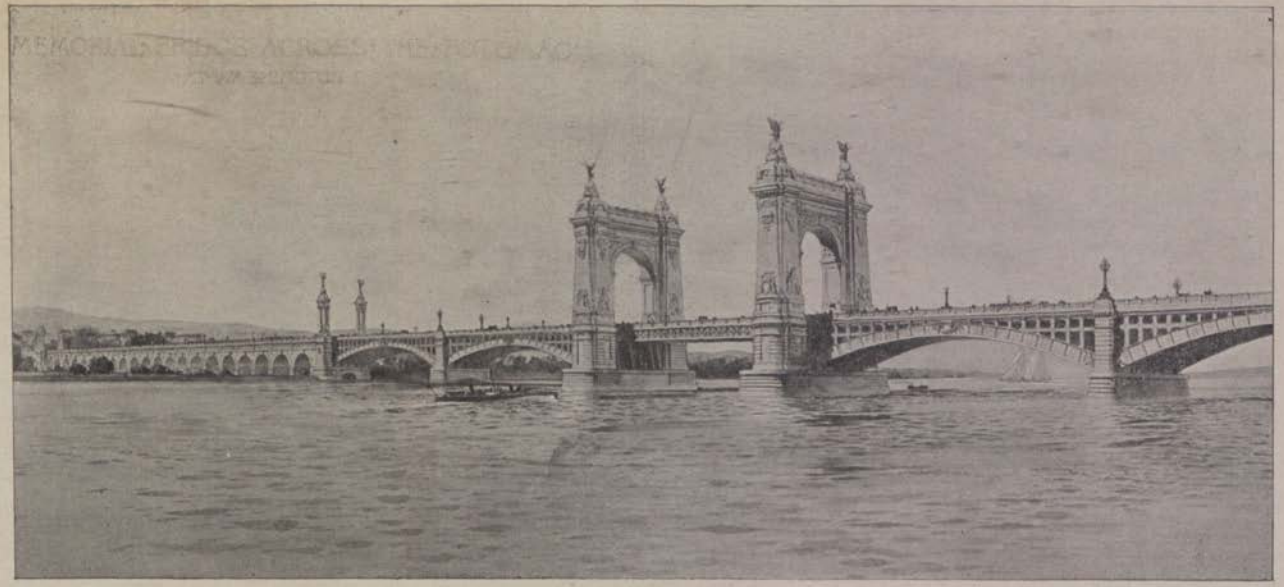
I_1 and I_2 are moments of inertia of A_1 and A_2 about the neutral axes of the composite beam or arch sections.

* For a complete and detailed statement of this whole subject, including design work, reference should be made to the author's "Elasticity and Resistance of Materials."



Wm. H. Burr, Civil Engineer.
E. P. Casey, Associated Architect.

PLAN NO. 2.
Plan Awarded First Prize in National Competition.
River spans 192 feet clear. Total length of structure 3615 feet.



Wm. H. Burr, Civil Engineer.
E. P. Casey, Associated Architect.

PLAN NO. 1.

The Towers of this Plan were Recommended by Board of Award to be Substituted for Those in Plan No. 2.

River spans 283 feet clear. Total length of structure 3437 feet.

k_1 and k_2 are intensities of bending stress in the extreme fibres of the two materials.

h_1 and h_2 are total depths of the two materials.

d_1 and d_2 are distances from the neutral axes to farthest fibres of the two materials; distances to other extreme fibres would be $(h_1 - d_1)$ and $(h_2 - d_2)$.

W_1 and W_2 are loads, either distributed or concentrated, carried by the two portions.

$W = W_1 + W_2$ is total load on the beam or arch.

$$q_1 = \frac{W_1}{W} \quad \text{and} \quad q_2 = \frac{W_2}{W}; \quad \therefore q_1 + q_2 = 1; \quad e = \frac{E_2}{E_1}.$$

The application of the theory of flexure to the case of a beam or arch of two different materials, steel and concrete in this case, will give the following results:

$$M = Pl; \text{ hence } M_1 = q_1 Pl \quad \text{and} \quad M_2 = q_2 Pl. \quad . \quad . \quad (59)$$

$$q_1 = \frac{W_1}{W} = \frac{E_1 I_1}{E_1 I_1 + E_2 I_2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (60)$$

$$q_2 = \frac{W_2}{W} = \frac{E_2 I_2}{E_1 I_1 + E_2 I_2}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (61)$$

$$k_1 = \left(\frac{P}{A_1 + eA_2} + \frac{Md}{I_1 + eI_2}\right). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (62)$$

$$k_2 = e\left(\frac{P}{A_1 + eA_2} + \frac{Md}{I_1 + eI_2}\right). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (63)$$

These formulæ exhibit some of the main features of the analysis which must be used in designing either beams or arches of combined steel and concrete. In the use of these equations care must be taken to give the proper sign to the bending moment M. They obviously apply to the combination of any two materials, although at the present time the only two used in such composite structures are steel and concrete. If the subscript 1 belongs to the concrete portion, and the subscript 2 to the steel portion, there may be taken $E_1 = 1{,}500{,}000$ to $3{,}000{,}000$ and $E_2 = 30{,}000{,}000$. Hence $e = 20$ to 10.

The purpose of introducing the steel into the concrete is to make available in the composite structure the high tensile resist-

ance of that metal. A very small steel cross-section is sufficient to satisfactorily accomplish that purpose. The percentage of the total composite section represented by the steel will vary somewhat with the dimensions of the structure and the mode of using the material; it will usually range from 0.75 per cent to 1.5 per cent of the total section. The large mass of concrete in which the steel should be completely imbedded serves not only to afford a large portion of the compressive resistance required in both arches and beams, but also to preserve the steel effectively from corrosion. Many experiments have shown that it requires but a small per cent of steel section to give great tensile resistance to the composite mass.

CHAPTER XII.

124. The Masonry Arch.—The masonry arch is so old that its origin is lost in antiquity, but its complete theory has been developed with that of other bridge structures only within the latest period. It is only possible here to give some of the main features of that theory and a few of the fundamental ideas on which it is based. It is customary among engineers to regard the masonry arch as an assemblage of blocks finely cut to accurate dimensions, so that the assumption of either a uniform or uniformly varying pressure in the surface of contact between any two may be at least sufficiently near the truth for all practical purposes. Although care is taken to make joints between ring-stones or voussoirs completely cemented or filled with a rich cement mortar, it is usually the implicit assumption that such joints do not resist tension. As a matter of fact many arch joints are capable of resisting considerable tension, but, in consequence of settlement or shrinkage, cracks in them that may be almost or quite imperceptible frequently prevent complete continuity. It is, therefore, considered judicious to determine the stability of the ordinary masonry arch on the assumption that the joints do not resist tension.

In these observations it is not intended to convey the impression that no analysts treat the ordinary arch as a continuous elastic masonry mass, like the composite arches of steel and concrete. Although much may be said in favor of such treatment for all arches, it is believed that prolonged experience with arch structures makes it advisable to neglect any small capacity of resistance to tension which an ordinary cut-stone masonry joint may possess, in the interests of reasonable security.

The ring-stones or voussoirs of an arch are usually cut to form circular or elliptic curves, or to lines which do not differ sensibly

from those curves. The arch-ring may make a complete semicircle, as in the old Roman arches, or a segment of a semicircle; or the stones may be arranged to make a pointed arch, like the Gothic; or, again, a complete semiellipse may be formed, or possibly a segment of that curve. When a complete semiellipse or complete semicircle is formed, the arches are said to be full-centred, and in those cases they spring from a horizontal joint at each end. On the other hand, segmental arches spring from inclined joints at each end called skew-backs.

125. Old and New Theories of the Arch.—In the older theories of the arch, considered as a series of blocks simply abutting against each other, the resultant loading on each block was assumed to be vertical. In the modern theories, on the other hand, the resultant loading on any block is taken precisely as it is, either vertical or inclined, as the case may be. Many arches are loaded with earth over their arch-rings. This earth loading produces a horizontal pressure against each of the stones, as well as a vertical loading due to its own weight. In such cases it is necessary to recognize this horizontal or lateral pressure of the earth, as it is called, as a part of the arch loading.

It is known from the theory of earth pressure that the amount of that pressure per square foot or any other square unit may vary between rather wide limits, the upper of which is called the abutting power of earth, and the latter the conjugate pressure due to its own weight only. If w is the weight per cubic unit of earth and x the depth considered, and if φ be the angle of repose of the earth, the abutting power per square unit will have the value:

$$p = wx\frac{1+\sin\varphi}{1-\sin\varphi}, \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (64)$$

while the horizontal or conjugate pressure due to the weight of earth only will be:

$$p' = wx\frac{1-\sin\varphi}{1+\sin\varphi}. \quad \ldots\ldots \quad (65)$$

The use of these formulæ will be illustrated by actual arch computations.

Fig. 36 is supposed to show a set of ring-stones for an arch of any curvature whatever. The joints LM and ON represent the skew-backs or springing joints, while R and R_1 represent the supporting forces or reactions with centres of action at a' and a_1.

FIG. 36.

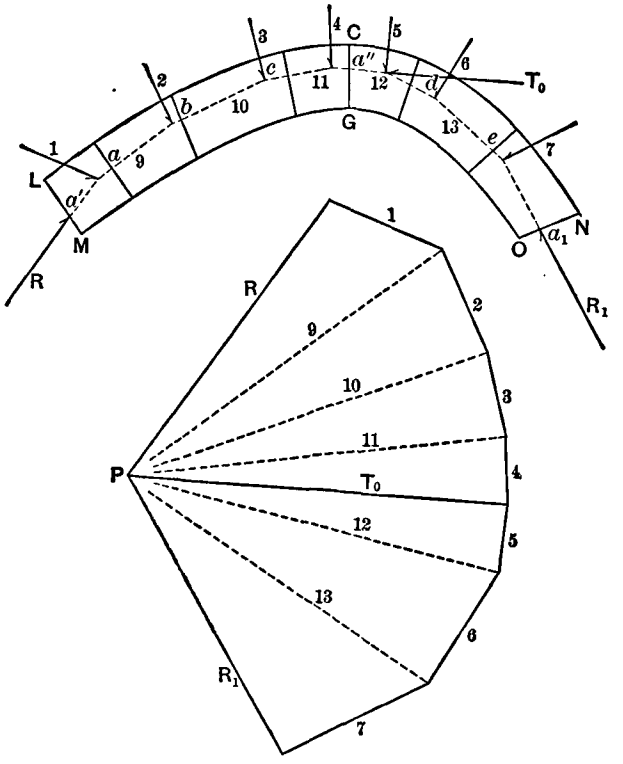


FIG. 37.

The ring is divided into blocks or pieces by the joints at a, b, c, d, and e, the resultant loading or force on each block being given by the lines with arrow-heads and numbered 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7. Fig. 37 represents a force polygon constructed in the ordinary manner by laying off carefully to scale the two reactions R and R_1, together with the loads or forces numbered 1 to 7, inclusive. By constructing the so-called polygonal frame in the ring-stones of Fig. 36 in the usual manner with its lines or sides parallel to

the radiating lines in Fig. 37, as shown by the broken lines, the points *a*, *b*, *c*, etc., are found where the resultant forces cut each joint. The line drawn through those points thus determined is called the line of resistance of the arch. Obviously, if that line of resistance be determined, the complete stability or instability of the arch, as the case may be, will be established. Furthermore, the complete determination of the force polygon in Fig. 37, and the corresponding polygonal frame drawn in the arch-ring, constitute all the computations involved in the design of an arch.

The thrust T_0 at the crown, shown both in Fig. 36 and Fig. 37, is frequently horizontal, although not necessarily so ; its value is shown by Fig. 37. In the older arch theories a principle was enunciated called the "principle of least resistance." The thrust T_0 is a fundamental and so-called passive force. That is, its magnitude depends not only upon its position, but also largely upon the magnitude of the active forces which represent the loading on the arch-ring. Under the principle of least resistance it was laid down as a fundamental proposition, in making arch computations, that this passive force T_0 must be the least possible consistent with the stability of the structure. While this provisional proposition answered its purpose well enough, there are other clearer methods of procedure which are thoroughly rational and involve the employment of no extraneous considerations other than those attached to the determination of statical equilibrium.

A scrutiny of the conditions existing in Fig. 36 will show that if the external forces or loadings on the individual blocks of the ring are given, four quantities are to be determined, viz., the two reactions R and R_1 and their lines of action. Inasmuch as no elastic features of the structure are to be considered, there are available for the determination of these four quantities the three equations of equilibrium, equations (35), (36), and (37), which are not sufficient for the purpose. If one line of action, such as that of R, be located by assuming its point of application a', the three equations just named will be sufficient for the determination of the remaining three equations; and that is precisely the method employed. It is tentative, but perfectly practicable. If, instead of assuming one of the points of application

of the reactions, we assume both of those points and construct a trial polygonal frame, it will be necessary to use but two of the three equations of statical equilibrium. For that purpose there are employed equations (35) and (36), but in a graphical manner, which will presently be illustrated.

126. Stress Conditions in the Arch-ring.—Before proceeding to the construction of an actual line of resistance, a little consideration must be given to the stress conditions in the arch-ring. As the joints are considered capable of resisting no tension, the dimensions of the arch-ring must be finally so proportioned that pressure only will exist in each and every joint. If each centre of pressure, as *a*, *b*, etc., in Fig. 36, is found in the middle third of the joint, it is known from a very simple demonstration in mechanics that no tension will ever exist in that joint, although the pressure may be zero at one extremity and a maximum at the other. This is the condition usually imposed in designing an arch-ring to carry given dead or live loads. It is usually specified that "the line of resistance of the ring must lie in the middle third." It must be borne in mind, however, that the stability of the ring is perfectly consistent with the location of the line of resistance outside of the limits of the middle third, provided it is not so far outside as to induce crushing of the ring-stones. Whenever that crushing begins the arch is in serious danger and complete failure is likely to result.

127. Applications to an Actual Arch.—These principles will be applied to the arch-ring shown in Fig. 38, in which the clear span *TU* is 90 feet. The radius *CO* of the soffit (as the under surface of the arch is called) is 50 feet, the ring being circular and segmental. The uniform thickness of the ring shown at the various joints is assumed at 4 feet as a trial value. The loading above the ring to the level of the line *E'O* is assumed to be dry earth weighing, when well rammed in place, 100 pounds per cubic foot. The depth of this earth filling at the crown *n* of the arch is taken at 4 feet. The ring-stones are assumed to be of granite or best quality of limestone, weighing 160 pounds per cubic foot. The thickness or width of arch-ring of one foot is assumed, as each foot in width is like every other foot, and the loads are taken for that width of ring. The rectangle *EJJ'E'*

is supposed to represent a moving load covering one half of the span and averaging 500 pounds per linear foot; in other words, averaging 500 pounds per square foot of upper surface projected in the line *E'O*. The total length of the arch-ring, measured on the soffit, is about 113 feet, and it is divided into ten equal portions for the purpose of convenient computation. The radial joints so located are as shown at *de*, *fg*, *hk*. From the points where these joints cut the extrados (as the upper surface of the arch-ring is called) vertical broken lines are erected, as shown in Fig. 38.

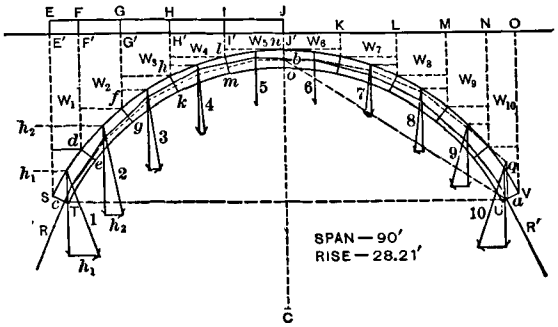


FIG. 38.

The horizontal line drawn to the left from *f* gives the vertical projection of that part of the extrados between *d* and *f*, and the horizontal earth pressure on *df* will be precisely the same in amount as that on the vertical projection of *df*, as just found. In the same manner the horizontal earth pressure on that part of the extrados between any two adjacent joints may be found. The mid-depths of these vertical projections below the line *E'O* are to be carefully measured by scale and then used for the values of x in equations (64) and (65), which now become equations (66) and (67), as the angle of repose φ is taken to correspond to a slope of earth surface of 1 vertical on $1\frac{1}{2}$ horizontal.

$$p = 3.51wx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (66)$$

$$p' = 0.285wx. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (67)$$

The horizontal earth pressures thus found are as follows:

$$h_1 = \begin{cases} 101{,}500 \text{ pounds}; \\ 8{,}700 \quad \text{“} \end{cases} \qquad h_3 = \begin{cases} 30{,}625 \text{ pounds}; \\ 2{,}625 \quad \text{“} \end{cases}$$

$$h_2 = \begin{cases} 59{,}500 \quad \text{“} \\ 5{,}100 \quad \text{“} \end{cases} \qquad h_4 = \begin{cases} 9{,}800 \quad \text{“} \\ 840 \quad \text{“} \end{cases}$$

These quantities h_1, etc., are found by multiplying the two intensities p and p' by the vertical projections of the surface on which they act. The larger values are found by equation (66) and represent the abutting power of the earth, while the smaller values are found by equation (67), and represent the horizontal or conjugate pressure of the earth due to its own weight only. The actual horizontal earth pressure against the arch-ring may lie anywhere between these limits.

The weights of the moving load, earth, and ring-stones between each pair of vertical lines and radial joints shown in Fig. 38 are next to be determined, and they are as follows:

$W_1 = 27{,}300$ pounds;	$W_6 = 12{,}300$ pounds;
$W_2 = 27{,}900$ "	$W_7 = 15{,}550$ "
$W_3 = 24{,}500$ "	$W_8 = 19{,}500$ "
$W_4 = 21{,}300$ "	$W_9 = 19{,}400$ "
$W_5 = 18{,}300$ "	$W_{10} = 24{,}300$ "

The centres of gravity of these various vertical forces are shown in Fig. 38 at the points W_1, W_2, etc. The triangles of forces shown in that figure and composed, each one, of a vertical and horizontal force as described, are laid down in actual position on the arch-ring, as shown. All data are thus secured for completing the force polygon and polygonal frame or line of resistance. It will be assumed that the reactions R and R' cut the springing joints at c and a, respectively, one third of the width of the joint from the soffit, and it will further be assumed that b, the mid-point of the joint at the crown, is also in the line of resistance. The assumption of the location of these three points is made for the reason, as is well known, that with a given system of forces a polygonal frame may be found which will pass through any three points in the ring.

The force polygon B, 1, 2, 3, . . . , 10, A, Fig. 39, is then drawn with the loadings on each ring segment found as already explained. The horizontal forces are taken as represented by the smaller values of h_1, h_2, h_3, h_4. Other force polygons with larger values of these horizontal forces were tried and not found satisfactory. Having constructed the force polygon and assumed the trial pole P', the radial lines are drawn from it as shown in

Fig. 39. The polygonal frame shown in broken lines in Fig. 38 results from this trial pole. The frame practically passes through *b* and *c*, but leaves the ring, passing outside of it, above the joint *VU*. The point *q* in this frame is vertically above *a*. The "three-point" method of finding the frame that will pass through

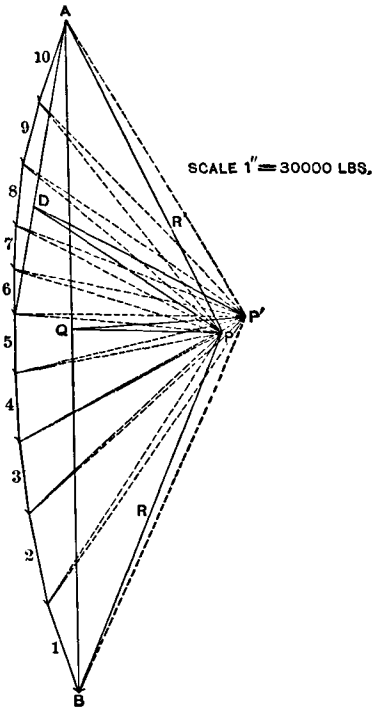


FIG. 39.

a, *b*, and *c* was then employed. The line *A*6, Fig. 39, was drawn; then *P'D* was drawn parallel to *qb*, Fig. 38 (not shown); after which *PD* was drawn parallel to *ab*, until it intercepted the horizontal line *PQ*, the line *P'Q* having previously been drawn parallel to *qc* (not shown). The final pole *P* was thus found. The polygonal frame shown in full lines in the arch-ring was then drawn with sides parallel to the lines radiating from *P*, all in accordance with the usual methods for such graphic analysis. That polygonal frame lies within the middle third of the arch-

ring, although at three points it touches the limit of the middle third. The arch, therefore, is stable.

This construction shows that, with the actual loading of the ring, a line of resistance can be found lying within the middle third; its stability under the conditions assumed is, therefore, demonstrated. It does not follow that the line of resistance as determined must necessarily exist, since there may be others located still more favorably for stability. This indetermination results from the fact already observed that the equations of statical equilibrium are not sufficient in number to determine the four unknown quantities (the two horizontal and the two vertical reactions); but the process of demonstrating the stability of the arch-ring is simple and sufficient for all ordinary purposes. The line of resistance found, if not the true one, is so near to it that no sensible waste of material is involved in employing it. This indetermination has prompted some engineers and other analysts to consider all arch-rings as elastic, thus obtaining other equations of condition. While such a procedure may be permissible, it is scarcely necessary, and perhaps not advisable, in view of the fact that many joints of cut-stone arches become slightly open by very small cracks, resulting possibly from unequal settlement, quite harmless in themselves, having practically no effect upon the stability of the structure.

128. Intensities of Pressure in the Arch-ring. — It still remains to ascertain whether the actual pressures of masonry in the arch-ring are too high or not. The greatest single force shown in the force polygon in Fig. 39 is the reaction R, having a value by scale of 122,000 pounds, under the left end of the arch, and it is supposed to act at the limit of the middle third of the joint. Hence the average pressure on that joint will be

$$\frac{122{,}000 \times 2}{4} = 61{,}000 \text{ pounds per square foot.}$$

This value may be taken as satisfactory for granite or the best quality of limestone.

Again, it is necessary in bridges, as in some other structures, to determine whether there is any liability of stones to slip on each other. In order that motion shall take place the resultant

forces acting on the surface of a stone joint must have an inclination to that surface less than a value which is not well determined and which depends upon the condition of the surface of the stone; it certainly must be less than 70°. The inclination of every resultant force in Fig. 38 to the surface on which it acts is considerably greater than that value and, hence, the stability of friction is certainly secured.

129. Permissible Working Pressures.—The working values of pressures permissible on cut-stone and brick or other masonry must be inferred from the results of the actual tests of such classes of masonry in connection with the results of experience with structures in which the actual pressures existing are known. It is safe to state that with such classes of material as are used in the best grade of engineering structures these pressures will generally be found not to exceed the following limits:

Concrete, 20,000 to 40,000 pounds per square foot.

Cement rubble, same values.

Hard-burned brick, cement-mortar joints, 30,000 to 50,000 pounds per square foot.

Limestone ashlar, 40,000 to 60,000 pounds per square foot.

Granite ashlar, 50,000 to 70,000 pounds per square foot.

The masonry arch is at the same time the most graceful and the most substantial and durable of all bridge structures, and it is deservedly coming to be more and more used in modern bridge practice. One of the greatest railroad corporations in the United States has, for a number of years, been substituting, wherever practicable, masonry arches for the iron and steel structures replaced. The high degree of excellence already developed in this country in the manufacture of the best grades of hydraulic cement at reasonable prices, and the abundance of cut stone, has brought this type of structure within the limits of a sound economy where cost but a few years ago would have excluded it. It is obviously limited in use to spans that are not very great but yet considerably longer than any hitherto constructed.

130. Largest Arch Spans.—The longest arch span yet built has been but recently completed in Germany at the city of Luxemburg. This bridge has a span of 275.5 feet and a rise of 101.8 feet. It is rather peculiarly built in two parallel parts

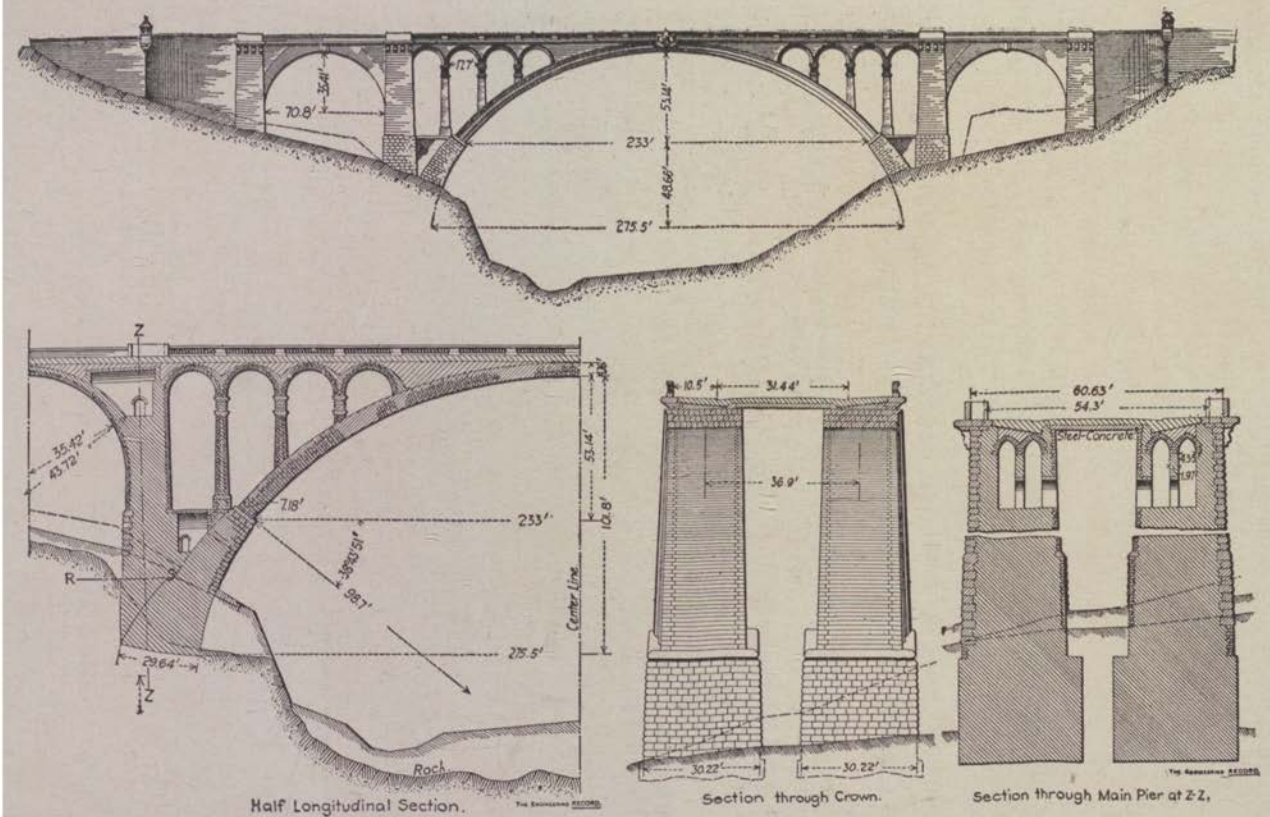
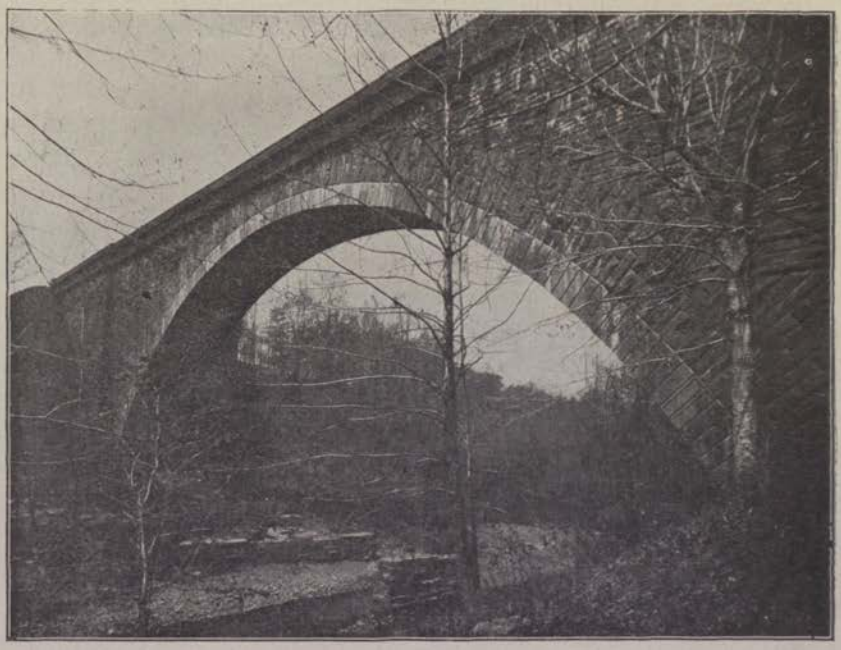


FIG. 40.—Elevation of Luxemburg Bridge and Sections of Main Span.

separated 19.5 feet in the clear, the space between being spanned by slabs or beams of combined concrete and steel. The arch-ring is 4.75 feet thick at the crown and 7.18 feet thick at a point 53.14 feet vertically below the crown where it joins the spandrel masonry. The roadway is about 52.5 feet wide and 144.5 feet above the water in the Petrusse River, which it spans.

The longest arch in this country is known as the Cabin John Bridge of 220 feet span and 57.5 feet rise. It is a segmental arch and is located a short distance from the city of Washington,



Cabin John Bridge, near Washington, D. C.

carrying the aqueduct for the water-supply of that city. These lengths of span may be exceeded in good ordinary masonry construction, but the high degree of strength and comparative lightness which characterize the combination of steel and concrete will enable bridges to be built in considerably greater spans than any yet contemplated in cut-stone masonry.

CHAPTER XIII.

131. Cantilever and Stiffened Suspension Bridges.—There are two other types of bridges of later development which have, in recent years, become prominent by remarkable examples of both completed structure and design; they are known as the cantilever and stiffened suspension bridges. Both are adapted to long spans, although the latter may be applied to much longer spans than the former. A cantilever structure, with a main span of 1800 feet between centres of piers, is now in process of construction across the St. Lawrence River at Quebec, while the well-known Forth Bridge across the Firth of Forth in Scotland has a main span of 1710 feet. The longest stiffened suspension bridge yet constructed is the New York and Brooklyn Bridge, with a river span of about 1595.5 feet between centres of towers, but the stiffened suspension system has been shown by actual design to be applicable to spans of more than 3200 feet, with material now commercially produced.

132. Cantilever Bridges.—Figs. 41 and 42 exhibit in skeleton outline two prominent cantilever designs for structures in this

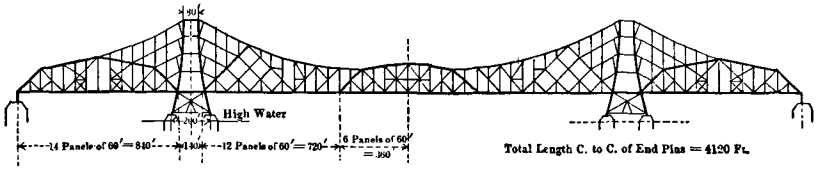


FIG. 41.

country. That shown in Fig. 41 was intended for a bridge across the Hudson River between Sixtieth and Seventieth streets, New York City. The main central opening has a span of 1800 feet, and a length of 2000 feet between centres of towers. Fig. 42 shows the Monongahela River cantilever bridge,* now being

* This bridge was designed by and is being constructed under the direction of Messrs. Boller and Hodge, Consulting Engineers, New York City.

built at Pittsburgh, Penn. Both figures exhibit the prominent features of the cantilever system. The main parts are the towers, at each end of the centre span, which are 534.5 feet high in the North River Bridge and 135 feet high in the Monongahela River structure, and the central main or river span with its simple non-continuous truss hung from the ends of the cantilever brackets or arms which flank it on both sides. These cantilever arms are simply projecting trusses continuous with the shore- or anchor-arms. They rest on the piers at either end of the main span, as a lever rests on its fulcrum. This arrangement requires the shore extremities or the anchor-arms to be anchored down by a heavy weight formed by the masonry piers at those points. Recapitulating and starting from the two shore ends of the structure, there are the anchor-spans, continuous at the towers, with the cantilever arms projecting outward toward the centre of the main opening and supporting at their ends the suspended truss, which is a simple, non-continuous one. It is thus evident that the cantilever bridge is a structure composed of continuous trusses with points of contraflexure permanently fixed at the ends of the suspended span. The greatest bending moments are at the towers, and the great depth at that point is given for the purpose of affording adequate

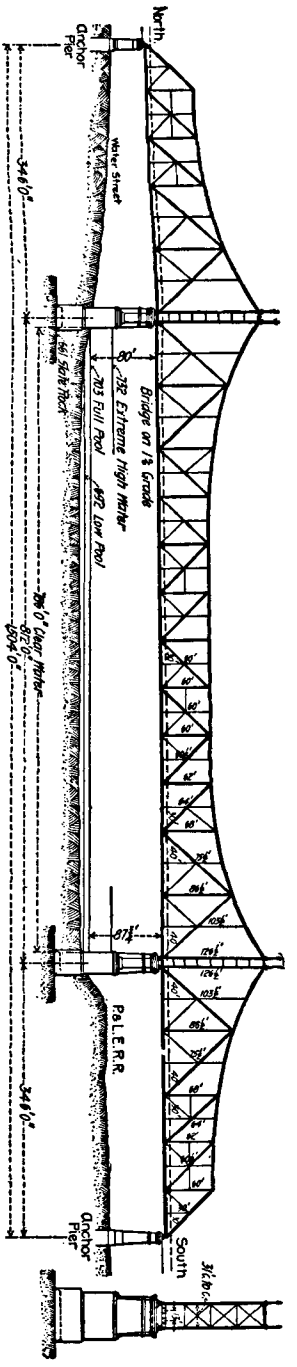


FIG. 42.—Monongahela Bridge—Pittsburgh, Carnegie & Western Railroad (Wabash), at Pittsburgh.

resistance to those moments by the members of the structure. The following statement shows some elements of the more prominent cantilever bridges of this country and of the Forth Bridge:

Name.	Length of Cantilever Opening, Centre to Centre of Towers.	Total Length.
Pittsburgh.....	812 feet.	1504 feet.
Red Rock(Colo.).....	660 "	990 "
Memphis (Tenn.).....	790.48 "	2378.2 "
Forth.....	1710 "	5330 "

The arrangement of web members of cantilever structures is designed to be such as will transfer the loads from the points of application to the points of support in the shortest and most direct paths. Both Figs. 41 and 42 show these general results accomplished by an advantageous arrangement of web members.

It is interesting to note that the first cantilever bridge designed and built in this country was constructed in 1871. This structure was designed and erected by the late C. Shaler Smith, a prominent civil engineer of his day.

133. Stiffened Suspension Bridges.—The stiffened suspension bridge is a structure radically different in its main features and its mode of transferring load to points of support from any heretofore considered, except arched ribs. When a load is supported by a beam or truss, the stresses, either in the web members of the truss or in the solid web of the beams, travel up and down those members in zigzag directions with a relatively large amount of metal required for that kind of transference. That metal is represented by the weight of the web members of the truss and of the solid web of the beam. Again, there are two sets of truss members—the chords or flanges, one of which sustains tension and the other an equal amount of compression. The greater part of this metal must be so placed and used that the working intensities of stress are comparatively small. This is particularly the case in compression members of both chords and webs which constitute the greater portion of the weight of the truss. All compression members are known as long columns which sustain not only direct compression but bending, and the amount

of stress or load which they carry per square inch is relatively small, decreasing as the length increases. For all these reasons the amount of metal required for both beams and trusses is comparatively large. In suspension bridges, however, the conditions requiring the employment of a relatively large amount of metal with relatively small unit stresses are absent. The main members of a suspension bridge are the cables and the stiffening trusses, the latter being light in reference to the length of span. The cables are subjected to tension only, which is the most economical of all methods of using metal. A member in tension tends to straighten itself, so that it is never subjected to bending by the load which it carries. The opposite condition exists with compression members. Again, grades of steel possessing the highest ultimate resistance may be used in the manufacture of cables. It is well known that wire is the strongest form in which either wrought iron or steel can be manufactured. While the ultimate tensile resistance of ordinary structural steel will seldom rise above 70,000 pounds per square inch, steel wire, suitable to be used in suspension-bridge cables, may be depended upon, at the present time, to give an ultimate resistance of at least 180,000 pounds per square inch. The elastic limit of ordinary structural steel is but little above half its ultimate resistance, while the elastic limit of the steel used in suspension-bridge cables is probably not less than three fourths of its ultimate resistance. It is seen, therefore, that the high resistance of steel wire makes the steel cable of the suspension bridge a remarkably economical application of metal to structural purposes.

The latest example of stiffened suspension-bridge is the new East River Bridge reaching across the East River from Broadway in Brooklyn to Delancey Street, New York City, now being built, with a main span of 1600 feet between centres of towers. The entire length of the metal structure is 7200 feet, and the elevation of the centres of cable at the tops of the towers is 333 feet above mean high water.

Fig. 43 shows a view of this bridge. Its three principal divisions are the cables, the stiffening trusses, and the towers. The latter afford suitable points of support for the cables, which not only extend over the river span, but are carried back to points

on the land where they are securely attached to a heavy mass of anchorage masonry. These anchorages must be sufficiently heavy to prevent any load which may come upon the bridge from moving them by the pull of the cables. It is usual to

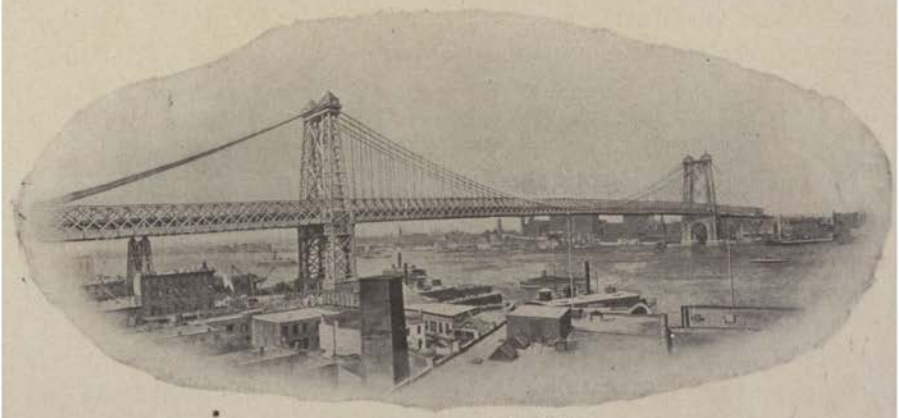


FIG. 43.—New East River Bridge.

make these masses so great that they are capable of resisting from two to two and a half times the pull of the cables.

134. The Stiffening Truss.—The function of the stiffening trusses is peculiar and imperatively essential to the proper action of the whole system. If they are absent and a weight should be placed upon the cable at any point, a deep sag at that point would result. If a moving load should attempt to pass along a roadway supported by a cable only, the latter would be greatly distorted, and it would be impossible to use such a structure for ordinary traffic. Some means must then be employed by which the cable shall maintain essentially the same shape and position, whatever may be the amount of loading. It can be readily shown that if any perfectly flexible suspension-bridge cable carries a load of uniform intensity over the span from one tower to the other, the curve of the cable will be a parabola, with its vertex at the lowest point. Furthermore, it can also be shown that if any portion of the span be subjected to a uniform load, the corresponding portion of the cable will also assume a parabolic

curve. It is assumed in all ordinary suspension-bridge design that the total weight of the structure, including the cables and the suspension-rods which connect the stiffening trusses to the cable, is uniformly distributed over the span, and that assumption is essentially correct. So far as the weight of the structure is concerned, therefore, the curve of the cable will always be parabolic. It only remains, therefore, to devise such stiffening trusses as will cause any moving load passing on or over the bridge to be carried uniformly to the cables throughout the entire span. This condition means that if any moving load whatever covers any portion of the span, the corresponding pull of the suspension-rods on the cables must be uniform from one tower to the other, and that result can be practically accomplished by the proper design of stiffening trusses; it is the complete function of those trusses to perform just that duty.

135. Location and Arrangement of Stiffening Trusses.—It has been, and is at the present time to a considerable extent, an open question as to the best location and arrangement of the stiffening trusses. The more common method in structures built is that illustrated by the New York and Brooklyn and the new East River bridges. Those stiffening trusses are uniform in depth, extending from one tower to the other, or into the land spans, and connected with the cables by suspension-rods running from the latter down to the lower chords of the trusses. It is obvious that the floor along which the moving load is carried must have considerable transverse stiffness, and hence it may appear advisable to place the stiffening trusses so that the floor may be carried by them. On the other hand, some civil engineers maintain that it is a better distribution of stiffening metal to place it where the cables themselves may form members of the stiffening trusses, with a view to greater economy of material.

Figs. 44, 45, and 46 illustrate some of the principal proposed methods of constructing stiffening trusses in direct connection with the cables. The structure shown in Fig. 44 illustrates the skeleton design of the Point Bridge at Pittsburgh. The curved member is a parabolic cable composed of eye-bars. This parabolic cable carries the entire weight of the structure and moving load when uniformly distributed. If a single weight

rests at the centre, the two straight members of the upper chord may be assumed to carry it. If a single weight rests at any other point of the span, it will be distributed by the bracing between the straight and curved members of the stiffening truss. Obviously the most unbalanced loading will occur when one half of the span is covered with moving load. In that case the bowstring stiffening truss in either half of Fig. 44 will make the re-

FIG. 44.

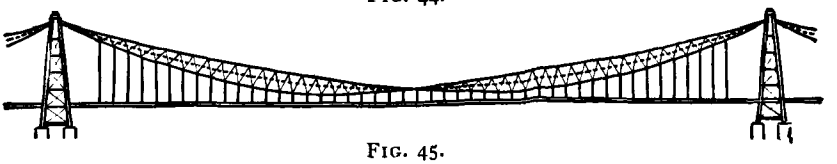


FIG. 45.

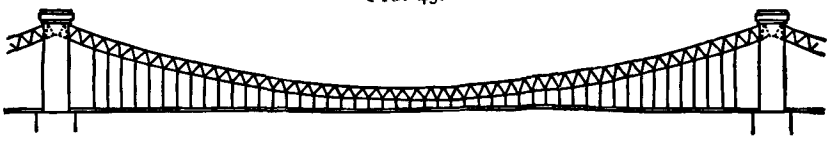


FIG. 46.

quired distribution and prevent the parabolic tension member from changing its form.

The type of bracing shown in Fig. 45 possesses some advantages of a peculiar nature. Each curved lower chord of the stiffening truss corresponds to the position of the perfectly flexible cable with the moving load covering that half of the span which belongs to the greatest sag of the cable. The two parabolic cables thus cross each other in a symmetrical manner at the centre of the span. If the moving load covers the entire span, the line of resistance or centre line of imaginary cable will be the parabola, shown by the broken line midway along each crescent stiffening truss. The diagonal bracing placed between the cables is so distributed and applied as to maintain the positions of cables under all conditions of loading.

The mode of constructing the stiffening truss between two

cables, shown in Fig. 46, is that adopted by Mr. G. Lindenthal in his design for a proposed stiffened suspension bridge across the Hudson River with a span of about 3000 feet. The two cables are parabolic in curvature and may be either concentric or parallel. This system of stiffening bracing possesses some advantages of uniformity and is well placed to secure efficient results. The same system has been used in suspension bridges of short span by Mr. Lindenthal at both St. Louis and Pittsburgh. The stiffening bracing produces practically a continuous stiffening truss from one tower to the other, whereas the systems shown in Figs. 44 and 45 involve practically a joint at the centre of the span.

In all these three types of vertical stiffness the floor is designed to meet only the exigencies of local loading, being connected with the stiffening truss above by suspension bars or rods, preferably of stiff section.

When stiffening trusses are placed along the line of the floor, as in the case of the two East River bridges, to which reference has already been made, those trusses need not necessarily be of uniform depth, and they may be continuous from tower to tower or jointed at the centre, like those of the New York and Brooklyn suspension bridge. This centre joint detracts a little from the stiffness of the structure, but in a proper design this is not serious.

136. Division of Load between Cables and Stiffening Truss.— In a case where continuous stiffening trusses are employed it is obvious that they may carry some portion of the moving load as ordinary trusses. The portion so carried will be that which is required to make the deflection of the stiffening truss equal to that of the cable added to the stretch of the suspension-rods. In the old theory of the stiffening truss constructed along the floor of the bridge this effect was ignored, and the computations for the stresses in those trusses were made by the aid of equations of statical equilibrium only. That assumption, that the cable carried the entire load, was necessary to remove the ambiguity which would otherwise exist. In modern suspension-bridge design those trusses may be assumed continuous from tower to tower with their ends anchored at the towers, or they may be

designed to be carried continuously through portions of the land spans and held at their extremities by struts reaching down to anchorages, so that those ends may never rise nor fall, but move horizontally if required. If there are no pin-joints in the trusses at the centre and ends of the main span, equations of statical equilibrium are not sufficient to enable the reactions under the trusses and the horizontal component of cable tension to be found.

One of the best methods of procedure for such cases is that of least work, in which the horizontal component of cable tension is so found that the total work performed in the elastic deflection of the stiffening trusses, suspension-rods, cables, and towers is a minimum. After having found this horizontal component of the cable tension and the reactions under the stiffening trusses, the stresses in all the members of the entire structure can be at once determined. It is obvious that the stiffening truss and the cables must deflect together. It is equally evident that the deeper the stiffening trusses are the more load will be required to deflect them to any given amount, and hence that the deeper they are the more load they will carry independently of the cable. It is desirable to throw as much of the duty of carrying loads upon the cables as possible. It therefore follows that the stiffening trusses should be made as shallow as the proper discharge of their stiffening duties will permit.

137. Stresses in Cables and Moments and Shears in Trusses.— The necessary limits of this discussion will not permit even the simplest analyses to be given. It is evident, however, that the greatest cable stresses will exist at the tops of the towers, and that if the horizontal component of cable tension be found by any proper method, the stress at any other point will be equal to that horizontal component multiplied by the secant of cable inclination to a horizontal line, it being supposed that the suspenders are found in a vertical plane.

If the stiffening trusses are jointed at the centre of the main span, as well as at the ends, the simple equations of statical equilibrium are sufficient in number to make all computations, for the reason that the centre pin-joint gives the additional condition that, whatever may be the amount or distribution of loading, the centre moment must be zero. If l is the length of

main or centre span and p the moving load per linear foot of span, and if the stiffening trusses run from tower to tower, the following equations will give their greatest moments and shears both by the old and new theory of the stiffening truss.

	p = load per lin. ft., Old theory.	l = length of span in ft., New theory.	
Max. moment....	$M = 0.01856pl^2$	$M = 0.01652pl^2$	no centre
Max. shear.....	$S = \frac{1}{8}pl$	$S = \frac{1}{8}pl$	hinge.

With centre hinge $M = 0.01883pl^2$ and $S = \frac{1}{8}pl$

The details of the theory of stiffening trusses for suspension bridges have been well developed during the past few years and are fully exhibited in modern engineering literature. The long spans requiring stiffened suspension bridges are usually found over navigable streams, and hence those bridges must be placed at comparatively high elevations. This is illustrated by the clear height of 135 feet required under the East River suspension-bridge structures already completed and in progress. Furthermore, the heights of towers above the lowest points of the cables usually run from one eighth to one twelfth of the span. These features expose the entire structure to comparatively high wind pressures, which must be carefully provided against. This is done by the requisite lateral bracing between the stiffening trusses and by what is called the cradling of the cables. The latter expression simply means that the cables as they are built are swung out of a vertical plane and toward the axis of the structure, being held in that position by suitable details. The cables on opposite sides of the bridge are thus moved in toward each other so as to produce increased stability against lateral movement. Occasionally horizontal cables are stretched between the towers in parabolic curves in order to resist horizontal pressures, just as the main cables carry vertical loads. This matter of stability against lateral wind pressures requires and receives the same degree of careful consideration in design as that accorded to the effects of vertical loading. The same general observation applies also to the design of the towers.

138. Thermal Stresses and Moments in Stiffened Suspension Bridges.—All material used in engineering structures expands

and contracts with rising and falling temperatures to such an extent that the resulting motions must be provided for in structures of considerable magnitude. In ordinary truss-bridges one end is supported upon rollers, so that as the span changes its length the truss ends move the required amount upon the rollers. In the case of stiffened suspension bridges, however, the ends of the cables at the anchorages are rigidly fixed, so that any adjustment required by change of temperature must be consistent with the change of length of cable between the anchorages. The backstays, which are those portions of the cables extending from the anchorages to the tops of the towers, expand and contract precisely as do the portions of the cable between the tops of the towers. As the cables lengthen, therefore, the sag or rise at the centre of the main span will be due to the change in the entire length of cable from anchorage to anchorage. In order to meet this condition it is usual to support the cables at the tops of the towers on seats called saddles which rest upon rollers, so as to afford any motion that may be required. Designs have been made in which the cables are fixed to the tops of steel towers. In such cases changes of temperature would subject the towers to considerable bending which would be provided for in the design.

The rise and fall at the centres of long spans of stiffened suspension bridges is considerable; indeed, for a variation of 120° Fahr. the centre of the New York and Brooklyn Bridge changes its elevation by 4.6 feet if the saddles are free to move, as intended. In the case of a stiffened suspension bridge designed to cross the North River at New York City with a main span of 3200 feet a variation of 120° Fahr. in temperature would produce a change of elevation of the centre of the span of 6.36 feet. Such thermal motions in the structure obviously will produce stresses of considerable magnitude in various parts of the stiffening trusses, all of which are invariably recognized and provided for in good design.

139. Formation of the Cables.—At the present time suspension-bridge cables are made by grouping together in one cylindrical mass a large number of so-called strands or individual small cables, each composed of a large number of parallel wires about one sixth of an inch in diameter. The four cables of the New York

and Brooklyn Bridge are each composed of 19 strands, each of the latter containing 332 parallel wires, making a total of 6308 wires, the cables themselves being 15½ inches in diameter. The wire is No. 7 gauge, i.e., 0.18 inch in diameter. In the new East River Bridge each of the four cables is 18¼ inches in diameter and contains 37 strands, each strand being composed of 208 wires all laid parallel to each other, or a total of 7696 wires. The size of the wire is No. 6 (Roebling) gauge, i.e., 0.192 inch in diameter. These strands are formed by laying wire by wire, each in its proper place. The strands are then bound together into a single cable, around which is tightly wound a sheathing or casing of smaller wire, 0.134 inch in diameter for the New York and Brooklyn Bridge. The tightness of this binding wire insures the unity of the whole cable, each wire having been placed in its original position so as to take a tension equal to that of each of the other wires. The suspension-rods are usually of wire cables and are attached by suitable details to the lower chords of the stiffening truss, also by specially designed clamps to the cable. The stiffening trusses are usually built with all riveted joints, so as to secure the greatest possible stiffness from end to end. The stiffened suspension bridge has been shown by experience, as well as by theory, to be well adapted to carry railroad traffic over long spans.

140. Economical Limits of Spans.—In the past, suspension bridges have, in a number of cases, been built for comparatively short spans, but it is well recognized among engineers that their economical use must be found for spans of comparatively great length. While definite lower limits cannot now be assigned to such spans, it is probable that with present materials of construction and with available shop and mill capacities the ordinary truss-bridge may be economically used up to spans approximately 700 to 800 feet, and that above that limit the cantilever system is economically applicable to lengths of span not yet determined but probably between 1600 and 2000 feet. The special field of economical employment of the long-span stiffened suspension bridge will be found at the upper limit of the cantilever system. So far as present investigations indicate, the stiffened suspension type of structure may be employed to

advantage from about 1800 feet up to the maximum practicable length of span not yet assignable, but perhaps in the vicinity of 4000 feet. Obviously such limits are approximate only and may be pushed upward by further improvements in the production of material and in the enlargement of both shop and mill capacity.

PART III.

WATER-WORKS FOR CITIES AND TOWNS.

CHAPTER XIV.

141. Introductory.—A preceding lecture in this course has shown to what an advanced state the public supply of water to large cities was developed in ancient times. The old Romans, Greeks, Egyptians, and other ancient peoples evidently posesssed an adequate appreciation of the value of efficient systems of public water-supply. Very curiously that appreciation diminished so greatly as almost to disappear during the middle ages. The demoralization of public spirit and the decrease of national power which followed the fall of Rome induced, in their turn, among other things, a neglect of the works of the great water system of Rome, entailing their partial destruction. The same retrogression in civilization seemed to affect other ancient nations as well, until probably the lowest state of the use of public waters and the construction of public water systems was reached somewhere between A.D. 1000 and A.D. 1300 or 1400. Without reasonable doubt the terrible epidemics or plagues of the middle ages can be charged to the absence of suitable water-supplies and affiliated consequences. During that middle period of the absence of scientific knowledge and any apparent desire to acquire it, sanitary works and consequently sanitary conditions of life were absolutely neglected. No progress whatever was made toward reaching those conditions so imperative in large centres of population for the well-being of the community. Grossly polluted waters were constantly used for public and private supplies, and no efforts whatever were made among the masses

toward the suitable disposition of refuse matters or, in a word, to attain to sanitary conditions of living.

A few important works were completed, particularly in Spain, but nothing indicative of general relief from the depths of ignorance and sanitary demoralization to which the greater portion of the civilized world had sunk at that time. The city of Paris took all its water from the Seine, except that which was supplied by a small aqueduct built in 1183. So small was the supply, aside from the water obtained from the river, that in 1550 it is estimated that the former amounted to about one quart only per head of population per day. The situation in London was equally bad, for it was only in the first half of the thirteenth century that spring-water was brought to the city by means of lead pipes and masonry conduits. Public water-works began to be constructed in Germany on a small scale in the early part of the fifteenth century. Obviously no pumps were available in those early days of water-supply, so that the small systems which have been mentioned were of the gravity class; that is, the water flowed naturally in open or closed channels from its sources to the points of consumption. Pumps of a simple and crude type first began to be used at a point on the old London Bridge in 1582, and in Hanover in 1527. Subsequently to those dates other pumps were set up on London Bridge, and installations of the same class of machinery were made in Paris in 1608, usually operated by water-power in some simple manner, as by the force of the water-currents. In 1624 the Paris supply received a reinforcement of 200,000 gallons per day by the completion of the aqueduct Arcueil. The New River Company was incorporated in 1619 for the partial supply of the city of London, and it began to lay its pipes at that time. As its name indicates, it took its supply from New River, and the inception of its business is believed to mark the first application of the principle of supplying each house with water. This company is still in existence and furnishes a considerable portion of the present London supply.

142. First Steam-pumps. — The application of steam to the creation or development of power by Watt, near the end of the eighteenth century, stimulated greatly the construction of water-

works, as it offered a very convenient and economical system of pumping. It seems probable that the first steam-pumps were used in London in 1761. Twenty years later a steam-pump was erected in Paris, while another was installed in 1783. The second steam-pump in London was probably constructed in 1787. In all these earlier instances of the use of steam-pumps river supplies were naturally used.

143. Water-supply of Paris and London. — After the early employment of steam pumping-machinery demonstrated its great efficiency for public water-supplies, the extension of the latter became more rapid, and since 1800 the supplies of the two great cities of London and Paris have been greatly increased. As late as 1890 the Paris supply amounted to about 65 gallons per head of population, one fourth of which was used as potable, being drawn from springs, while three fourths, drawn from rivers, was used for street-cleaning or other public purposes. This supply, however, was found inadequate and was re-enforced in 1892 by an addition of 30,000,000 gallons per day of potable water brought to the city by an aqueduct 63 miles long. Another addition of about 15,000,000 gallons has been provided more recently.

Rather curiously the water-supply of London is afforded by eight private companies, one of which is the old New River Company already mentioned. These companies, with one exception, draw their supply mainly from the rivers Thames and Lea, all such water being filtered. The remaining company draws its water from deep wells driven into the chalk. The total population supplied amounts to about 5,500,000, the rate of supply being thus less than 45 gallons per head per day.

144. Early Water-pipes.—Inasmuch as the use of cast iron for pipes was only begun about the year 1800, other materials were used prior to that date. As is well known, the pipes used in ancient water-works were either of lead or earthenware. In the eighteenth century wooden pipes made of logs with their centres bored out were used, sometimes 6 or 7 inches in diameter. As many lines of these log pipes were used as needed to conduct a single line of supply. In the earlier portion of the nineteenth century such log pipes, usually of pine or spruce, were used by

the old Manhattan Company for the supply of New York City. A section of such a wooden pipe, with a bore of about 2½ inches is preserved in the museum of the Department of Civil Engineering of Columbia University. Large quantities of such pipes were formerly used.

145. Earliest Water-supplies in the United States.—The earliest system of public water-supply in this country was completed for the city of Boston in 1652. This was a gravity system. It is believed that the first pumping-machinery for such a supply was set up for the town of Bethlehem, Pa., and put in operation in 1754. Subsequently water-supplies were completed for Providence, R. I., 1772, and for Morristown, N. J., in 1791; the latter has maintained a continuous existence since that date. The first use of steam pumping-machinery in this country was in Philadelphia in 1800. This machinery, curiously enough, was largely of wood, including some portions of the boiler; it was necessarily very crude and would perform with 100 pounds of coal only about one twenty-fifth or one thirtieth of what may be expected from first-class pumping-machinery at the present time. Other cities and towns soon began to follow the lead of these earlier municipalities in the construction of public water-supplies, but the principal development in this class of public works has taken place since about 1850.

It is estimated that the total population supplied in 1880 was about 12,000,000, which rose to about 23,000,000 in 1890, and it is probably not less than 50,000,000 at the present time.

146. Quality and Uses of Public Water-supply.—Advances in the public supplies in this country have been made rather in the line of quantity than quality. Insufficient attention has been given both to the quality of the original supply and to the character of the reservoirs in which it is gathered until within possibly the past decade. A few cities like Boston have scrutinized with care both the quality of the water and the character of the bottom and banks of reservoirs, and have spared neither means nor expense to acquire a high degree of excellence in their potable water. The same observations can be applied to a few other large cities, but to a few only. The realization of the dependence of public health upon the character of water-supply, however,

has been rapidly extending, and it will doubtless be but a short time before the care exercised in collecting and preparing water for public use will be as great in this country as in Europe, where few large cities omit the filtration of public waters.

The distribution of water supplied for public use is not limited to domestic purposes, although that class of consumption controls public health so far as it is affected by the consumption of water. The applications of water to such public purposes as street-cleaning and the extinguishing of fires are of the greatest importance and must receive most careful consideration. Again, the so-called system of water-carriage in the disposal of domestic and manufacturing wastes, constituting the field of sewage-disposal, depends wholly upon the efficiency of the water-supply.

147. Amount of Public Water-supply. — The first question confronting an engineer in the design of public water-supply is the amount which should be provided, usually stated on the basis of an estimated quantity per head of population. This is not in all cases completely rational, but it is by far the best basis available. If the water-supply is designed for a small city or town previously supplied by wells or other individual sources, the first year's consumption will be low per head of population for the reason that many people will retain their own sources instead of taking a share of the public supply. As time elapses that portion of population decreases quite rapidly in numbers, and in a comparatively few years practically the whole population will use the public supply. In communities, therefore, where public systems have long existed and it is desired either to add to the old supply or to install new ones, the only safe basis of estimate is the entire population.

148. Increase of Daily Consumption and the Division of that Consumption.—The amount of water required per head of population might naturally be assumed identical with the past consumption, but that would frequently be incorrect. It is one of the most prominent features of the history of public water-supplies in this country that the consumption per head of population has increased with great rapidity from the early years of the installation of the different systems, for reasons both legitimate

and illegitimate. The daily average consumption of water from the Cochituate Works of the Boston supply increased from 42 gallons per head of population in 1850 to 107 gallons in 1893, and in the Mystic Works of the same supply the increase was from 27 gallons in 1865 to 89 gallons in 1894. Again, the daily average consumption in Chicago rose from 43 gallons per head per day in 1860 to 147 gallons in 1893, while in Philadelphia during the same period the increase was from 36 gallons per head per day to 150 gallons. In Cambridge, Mass., the increase in daily average consumption per head of population was from 44 gallons in 1870 to 70 gallons in 1894. These instances are sufficient to show that, under existing conditions, the daily consumption was increased at a rapid rate in the cities named, and they have been selected as fairly representative of the whole field. Civil engineers have made extended studies in connection with this question in a great number of cities, for it bears upon one of the most important lines of public works. It is absolutely essential to the health and business prosperity of every city that the water-supply should be abundant, safe, and adapted to the industrial and commercial pursuits of its population. It is imperative, therefore, that the division of the daily supply should be carefully analyzed. For this purpose the water-supply of a city may be, and frequently is, divided into four parts:

(1) That used for domestic purposes;

(2) That used for commercial and industrial purposes;

(3) That used for public purposes;

(4) That part of the supply which is wasted.

1. That portion of the supply consumed for domestic purposes includes not only the water used in private residences, but in those branches of consumption which may be considered of a household character found in hotels, clubs, stores, markets, laundries, and stables, or for any other residential service. As might be expected, this branch of consumption varies largely from one city to another. The results of one of the most interesting and suggestive studies ever made in connection with this subject are given by Mr. Dexter Brackett, M. Am. Soc. C. E., in

the Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers for 1895. In Boston the purely domestic consumption varied in different houses and apartments from 59 gallons per head per day in costly apartments down to 16.6 gallons per head per day in the poorest class of apartment. In Brookline, one of the finest suburbs of Boston, the quantity was 44.3 gallons per day. In some other cities of Massachusetts, as Newton, Fall River, and Worcester, this class of consumption varied from 6.6 gallons to 26.5 gallons per day, the latter quantity being found at Newton in some of the best residences, and the former at houses also in Newton having but one faucet each. In Yonkers, N. Y., where the system was metered, the amount was 21.4 gallons per head of population per day, while in portions of London, England, it varied from 18.6 to 25.5 gallons per head per day. The average of these figures gives a result of 18.2 gallons per head per day, which, in round numbers, may be put at 20 gallons.

2. It is obvious that the rate of consumption for commercial and industrial purposes in any city must vary far more than that for domestic purposes, for the reason that some cities may be essentially residential in character while others may be essentially manufacturing. At the same time, it is to be remembered that many manufacturing establishments may have their own water-supply. The city of Fall River, Mass., is eminently a manufacturing city, yet Mr. Brackett found that the manufacturing demand on the public water-supply amounted to 2 gallons only per inhabitant per day, as the manufacturers draw the most of their supply from the river, but that where the manufacturers depend upon the public supply for all their water the amount rises to a value between 20 and 30 gallons per inhabitant. In Boston in 1892 the water consumed for all manufacturing and industrial purposes, including railroads, gas-works, elevators, breweries, etc., amounted to 9.24 gallons per head of population per day, while in Yonkers in 1897 the total consumption for commercial purposes was 27.4 gallons per head per day. In the city of New York, as nearly as can be estimated, the consumption for commercial purposes is probably not far from 25 gallons

per inhabitant per day. Reviewing all these results, it may be stated that the water consumption for commercial and industrial purposes will generally range from 10 to 30 gallons per inhabitant per day.

3. The consumption of water for public purposes is a smaller amount than either of the two preceding. It covers such uses as public buildings, schools, street-sprinkling, sewer-flushing, fountains, fires, and other miscellaneous objects, more or less similar to those just named. The total use of this character was 3.75 gallons per inhabitant per day for Boston in 1892, and 5.57 gallons per inhabitant per day for Fall River in 1899. A few other cities give the following results: Minneapolis in 1897, 5 gallons; Indianapolis, 3 gallons; Rochester, N. Y., 3 gallons; Newton, Mass., 4 gallons; Madison, Wis., 10 gallons. In Paris it is estimated that not far from 2.5 gallons per head of population per day are used. It is probable, therefore, that an amount of 5 gallons per day per inhabitant will cover this particular line of consumption.

4. A substantial portion of the water-supply of every city fails to serve any useful purpose, for the reason that it runs to waste either by intention or by neglect. The sources of this waste are defective plumbing, including leaky faucets and cocks; deliberate omission to close faucets and cocks, constituting wilful waste; defective or broken mains, including leaky joints; and waste to prevent freezing.

149. Waste of Public Water. — All these wastes except the last are inexcusable. There is no difficulty in detecting defective plumbing, and its existence is generally known to the householder; but if the wasted water is not measured and paid for, it is far too frequently considered more economical to continue the waste than to pay for the plumber's services. In a multitude of cases cocks are left open indefinitely for all sorts of insignificant reasons; in closets, under the erroneous impression that the continuous running of the stream will materially aid in a more effective cleansing of soil- and sewer-pipes, failing completely to appreciate that a far more powerful stream is required for that purpose; sometimes in sinks, for refrigerating purposes, and in many other

inexcusably wrong ways. These sources of wilful waste lead to large losses and constitute one of the most unsatisfactory phases of administration of a public water system. Such losses result in a vicious waste of public money. The amount of water flowing from leaky joints and from leaks in pipes and mains is necessarily indeterminate because it escapes without evidence at the surface except in rare cases. In every instance where examinations have been made and a careful record kept of the amount of water supplied to a city, it has been found that the aggregate of the measured amounts consumed fail nearly to equal the total supply. There are probable errors both in the measurement of the quantities supplied and in the quantities consumed, but the large discrepancy cannot be accounted for in this manner. In many cases consumed water has even been carefully measured by meters, as at Yonkers, New York, Newton, Milton, and Fall River, Mass., Madison, Wis., and at other places, but yet the discrepancy appears to be nearly as wide as ever. Again, in 1893 observations were carefully made on the consumption of the water received by the Mystic supply of the Boston system at *all* hours of the twenty-four. Obviously between 1 and 4 A.M. the useful consumption should be nearly nothing, but, on the contrary, it was found to be nearly 60 per cent of the average hourly consumption for the entire twenty-four hours. The waste at Buffalo, N. Y., in 1894 was estimated at 70 per cent of the total supply. Similar observations in other places have given practically the same results. It has also been found that, in a number of instances, where old watercourses have been completely obliterated by considerable depths of filling required by the adopted grades of city streets and lots, and excavations for buildings have subsequently been opened practically the full volume of the former streams are flowing along the original but filled channel. This result has been observed under a practically impervious paved city surface. It is difficult to imagine the source of such a supply except from defective pipe systems or sewers. A flow of a least 100,000 gallons per day from a broken pipe which found its way into a sewer has also been discovered without surface evidence. These and many other results of experience conclusively demonstrate that much water

flows to waste unobserved from leaky joints and defective or broken pipes.

Inasmuch as cast-iron water-pipes are produced in lengths which net 12 feet as laid, there will be at least 440 joints per mile. Furthermore, as leaky joints and broken pipes are as likely to occur at one place as another, it seems reasonable to estimate leakage through them as proportionate to the length of the pipe-line in a system; and that conventional law is frequently assumed. New pipe-lines have sometimes shown a leakage of 500 to 1200 gallons per mile of line per day. Civil engineers have sometimes specified the maximum permissible leakage of a new pipe-line at 60 to 80 gallons per mile of line per day for each inch in diameter of pipe, thus permitting 600 to 800 gallons to escape from a 10-inch pipe. In 1888 the late Mr. Chas. B. Brush reported a leakage of about 6400 gallons per mile per day from a practically new 24-inch cast-iron main, 11 miles long, of the Hackensack Water Company, the pressure being 110 pounds per square inch. Tests of water-pipes in German and Dutch cities have been reported as showing less waste than 300 gallons per mile per day, but such low results, unless for very low pressures and short lines, may reasonably be doubted. Obviously losses of this character will probably increase with the age of the pipe. By a very ingenious procedure based upon his own experience, Mr. Emil Kuichling of Rochester, N. Y., reaches the conclusion that a reasonable allowance for the waste from leaky joints and defective pipes is 2500 to 3000 gallons per mile of cast-iron pipe-line per day. If, as is frequently the case, the population per mile of pipe ranges from 300 to 1000, the preceding allowance amounts to 3 to 10 gallons per head of population per day. The loss or waste due to running cocks or faucets to prevent freezing cannot be estimated with sufficient accuracy to receive a definite valuation, but it must be considered an element of the total item of waste.

150. Analysis of Reasonable Daily Supply per Head of Population.—It has repeatedly been found that the losses or wastes set forth in the preceding statements amount apparently to quantities varying from 30 to 50 per cent of the total supply; or, to put it a little differently, the water unaccounted for in even the best

systems now constructed apparently may reach one third to one half of the total supply. This is an exceedingly wasteful and unbusinesslike showing. It is probable that the statement is, to some extent at least, an exaggeration. It is practically certain that either the amount supplied or the amounts consumed, or both, are never measured with the greatest accuracy, and that the errors are such as generally swell the apparent quantity wasted. After making judicious use of the data thus afforded by experience, it is probable that the following tabular statement given by Messrs. Turneaure and Russell represents limits within which should be found the daily average supply of water in a well-constructed and well-administered system.

Use.	Gallons per Head per Day.		
	Minimum.	Average.	Maximum.
Domestic	15	25	40
Industrial and commercial	5	20	35
Public	3	5	10
Waste	15	25	30
Total	38	75	115

The values given in the preceding table are reasonable and sufficient to supply the legitimate needs of any community, but, as will be shown in the succeeding table, there are cities in this country whose average consumption is more than twice the maximum rate given above.

151. Actual Daily Consumption in Cities of the United States.— The following table exhibits the average daily consumption of water throughout the entire year for the cities given, as determined for the years indicated in the table.

The city of Buffalo shows a daily consumption of 271 gallons per inhabitant, and Allegheny, Pa., 247 gallons per inhabitant. There are a considerable number showing an average daily consumption per inhabitant of 160 gallons or more. All such high averages exhibit extravagant use of water, or otherwise inefficient administration of the water-supply. The reduction of such high rates of consumption is one of the most difficult problems confronting the administration of public works. The use

TABLE I.

	Population. 1890.	Population per Tap. 1890.	Per Cent of Taps Metered 1890.	Consumption per Inhabitant Daily, Gallons. 1890.	Per Cent of Taps Metered 1895.	Consumption per Inhabitant Daily, Gallons. 1895.	Consumption per Inhabitant Daily, Gallons. 1900.
New York	1,515,301	13.9	20.2	79	27.0	100	115
Chicago	1,099,850	7.1	2.5	140	2.8	139	190
Philadelphia	1,046,964	6.1	0.3	132	0.74	162	229
Brooklyn	838,547	8.7	2.5	72	1.9	89	
St. Louis	451,770	11.8	8.2	72	7.4	98	111
Boston	448,477	6.6	5.0	80	5.2	100	143
Cincinnati	305,891	8.5	4.1	112	6.5	35	121
San Francisco	298,997	9.9	41.4	61	28.0	63	73
Cleveland	270,055	8.7	5.8	103	4.5	142	175
Buffalo	255,664	6.3	0.2	186	0.85	271	262
New Orleans	242,039	54.0	0.4	37	.....	35	48
Washington	230,392	6.5	0.3	158	1.5	200	174
Montreal	216,000	5.3	1.7	67	1.6	83	
Detroit	205,876	5.1	2.1	161	8.2	152	156
Milwaukee	204,468	11.1	31.9	110	51.0	101	84
Toronto	181,000	4.0	4.1	100	3.7	100	
Minneapolis	164,738	16.5	6.3	75	16.0	88	93
Louisville	161,129	11.9	5.9	74	6.6	97	
Rochester	133,896	5.4	11.4	66	18.0	71	83
St. Paul	133,156	12.7	4.2	60	1.7	60	51
Providence	132,146	9.4	62.4	48	74.0	57	54
Indianapolis	105,436	35.6	7.6	71	7.1	74	79
Allegheny	105,287	7.0	0	238	7.1	247	
Columbus	88,150	11.5	6.4	78	9.3	127	183
Worcester	84,655	8.9	89.4	59	90.0	66	67
Toledo	81,434	18.6	9.4	72	35.0	70	59
Lowell	77,696	9.2	22.9	66	33.0	82	83
Nashville	76,168	14.9	0.8	146	24.0	139	140
Fall River	74,398	14.9	74.6	29	82.0	35	35
Atlanta	65,533	20.0	89.6	36	99.0	42	61
Memphis	64,495	11.9	3.7	124	4.6	100	98
Quebec	63,000	10.4	0	160	0	170	
Dayton, O	61,220	20.0	3.8	47	24.0	50	62
Camden, N. J	58,313	.....	.....	131	0	200	185
Des Moines, Ia	50,093	20.0	60.0	55	42.6	43	48
Ottawa, Ont	44,000	4.2	0	130	0	200	
Yonkers, N. Y	32,033	12.0	82.4	68	99.8	100	76
Newton, Mass	24,379	5.5	67.4	40	77.3	65	62
Madison, Wis	13,426	11.0	31.0	40	61.0	52	44
Albany, N. Y	98,000	.....	0.4	162	12.3	.....	192
New Bedford, Mass	55,000	.....	.....	99	15.4	.....	101
Springfield, Mass	49,299	.....	.....	87	31.9	.....	88
Holyoke, Mass	40,000	.....	.....	77	5.82	.....	103*

* Estimated.

of the meter has proved most efficient in preventing wastes or other extravagant consumption, as in that case every consumer pays a prescribed rate for the amount which he takes.

152. Actual Daily Consumption in Foreign Cities.—It has been for a long time a well-recognized fact that the daily use of water in American municipalities is far greater per inhabitant than in European cities. It is difficult to explain the marked

TABLE II.

City.	Estimated Population.	Consumption per Capita Daily, Gallons.
England, 1896–97:*		
London	5,700,000	42
Manchester	849,093	40
Liverpool	790,000	34
Birmingham	680,140	28
Bradford	436,260	31
Leeds	420,000	43
Sheffield	415,000	21
Nottingham	272,781	24
Brighton	165,000	43
Plymouth	98,575	59
Germany, 1890 (Lueger):		
Berlin	1,427,200	18
Breslau	330,000	20
Cologne	281,700	34
Dresden	276,500	21
Düsseldorf	144,600	25
Stuttgart	139,800	26
Dortmund	89,700	78
Wiesbaden	62,000	20
France, 1892 (Bechmann):		
Paris	2,500,000	53
Marseilles	406,919	202
Lyons	401,930	31
Bordeaux	252,654	58
Toulouse	148,220	26
Nantes	125,000	13
Rouen	107,000	32
Brest	70,778	3
Grenoble	60,855	264
Other countries, 1892–96 (Bechmann):		
Naples	481,500	53
Rome	437,419	264
Florence	192,000	21
Venice	130,000	11
Zurich	80,000	60
Geneva	70,000	61
Amsterdam	515,000	20
Rotterdam	240,000	53
Brussels	489,500	20
Vienna	1,365,000	20
St. Petersburg	960,000	40
Bombay	810,000	61
Sidney	423,600	38
Buenos Ayres	680,000	34

* Compiled, except the figures for London, by Hazen. *Engineering News*, 1899, XLI. p. 111.

difference, but it is probably due in large part to the more extravagant general habits of the American people. Examinations in a number of cases have shown that the actual domestic use of water, at least in some of the American cities, is not very different from that found in corresponding foreign cities. Table II exhibits the consumption of water in European cities, as compiled from various sources and given by Turneaure and Russell.

These foreign averages, with three exceptions, represent reasonable quantities of water used, and they have been confirmed as reasonable by many special investigations made in this country.

153. Variations in Rate of Daily Consumption.—The preceding observations are all based upon an average total consumption found by dividing the total annual consumption by the number of days in the year. This is obviously sufficient in a determination of the total supply needed, but it is not sufficient in those matters which involve a rate of supply during the different hours of the day, or the amount of the supply for the summer months as compared with those of the winter. As a general rule the greatest supply will be required during the hot summer months when lawn- and street-sprinkling is most active. It appears from observations made in a considerable number of the large cities of the United States that the maximum monthly average consumption may run from about 110 to nearly 140 per cent of the monthly average throughout the year. As an approximate value only, it may be assumed for ordinary purposes that the maximum monthly demand will be 125 per cent of the average.

The daily rate taken throughout the year is considerably more variable than the monthly. There are days in some portions of the year when consumption by hotels and industrial activities is at a minimum. On the other hand, there are other days when those activities are at a maximum and the total draft will be correspondingly high. Experience has shown that the maximum total draft may vary from about 115 to nearly 200 per cent of the average. It is permissible, therefore, to take approximately for general purposes the maximum total daily consumption as 150 per cent of the average. Manifestly any total

consumption will have an hourly rate which may vary greatly from the early morning hours, when the draft should be almost nothing, to the forenoon hours on certain days of the week, when the draft is a maximum. These variations have frequently been investigated, and it has been shown that the maximum rate per hour of a maximum day may sometimes rise higher than 300 per cent of the average hourly rate for the year. These considerations obviously attain their greatest importance in connection with the capacity of the plant, either power or gravity, from which the city directly draws its supply. The hourly capacity of the pumps or steam-plant furnishing the supply need not necessarily be equal to the maximum, since storage-reservoirs may be and usually are used; but the capacity of the pipe system leading from such storage-reservoirs must be equal to the maximum hourly rate required.

154. Supply of Fire-streams.—The draft on a water-supply for fire-extinguishing purposes may have an important influence upon the hourly rate of consumption. These observations are particularly pertinent in connection with the water-supply of small cities where the draft of fire-engines may be considered a large percentage of the total hourly consumption. It is obviously impossible to assign precisely the number of fire-streams which may be required simultaneously in a city having a given population, but experiences of a considerable number of civil engineers furnish reasonable bases on which such estimates may be made. Table III exhibits such estimates as made by the civil engineers indicated. It is given by Mr. Emil Kuichling in the Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers for December, 1897. Probably no more reasonable estimate can be now presented.

The discharge of each fire-stream will of course vary with its diameter and the pressure at the fire-engine, but as an average it is reasonable to assume that each stream will discharge 250 gallons per minute. The quantity of water required, therefore, to supply the estimated number of streams given in Table III is found by simply multiplying the number of those streams by 250, to ascertain the total number of gallons consumed per minute. If x is the number of thousand inhabitants in any city, and if y represents the required number of streams, then

TABLE III.

TABLE EXHIBITING ESTIMATED NUMBER OF FIRE-STREAMS REQUIRED SIMULTANEOUSLY IN AMERICAN CITIES OF VARIOUS MAGNITUDES.

Population of Community.	Number of Fire-streams Required Simultaneously.			
	1 Freeman.	2 Shedd	3 Fanning.	4 Kuichling.
1,000	2 to 3	.....	.....	3
4,000	.....	.....	7	6
5,000	4 to 8	5	.....	6
10,000	6 to 12	7	10	9
20,000	8 to 15	10	.....	12
40,000	12 to 18	14	.....	18
50,000	.....	.....	14	20
60,000	15 to 22	17	.....	22
100,000	20 to 30	22	18	23
150,000	.....	.....	25	34
180,000	.....	30	.....	38
200,000	30 to 50	.....	.....	40
250,000	.....	.....	.....	44
300,000	.....	.....	.....	48

Mr. Kuichling deduces the following formulæ for y by the use of the preceding tables, i.e., these formulæ express the results given in the preceding table as nearly as simple forms of formulæ permit.

"For Freeman's data: $\left\{\begin{array}{l} y \text{ min.} = 1.7\sqrt{x} + 0.03x, \\ y \text{ max.} = \dfrac{x}{5} + 10. \end{array}\right\}$ . . . (1)

For Shedd's data: $y = \sqrt{5x} = 2.24\sqrt{x}$. . . . (2)

For Fanning's data: $y = \dfrac{x}{10} + 9$. . . . . (3)

For the author's data: $y = 2.8\sqrt{x}$. . . . . (4)

While for the average ordinary consumption of water, expressed in gallons per head and day, q, Mr. Coffin's formula, as given in his paper previously cited, may be taken

$$q = 40x^{0.14}." \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (5)$$

By combining equation (5) with equation (4), remembering that the maximum rate of consumption is usually about 1.5 times the average, the total draft in gallons per minute upon

the discharging system at the time of a conflagration will become as follows:

$$Q = 250(2.8\sqrt{x}) + \frac{3}{2}\frac{40 \times 1000}{1440} x^{1.14}$$

$$= 250\left(2.8\sqrt{x} + \frac{x^{1.14}}{6}\right). \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (6)$$

This maximum rate of consumption during a conflagration does not affect the total supply of a large city like New York, Boston, or Chicago, but it may become of relatively great importance in a small city or town. In a large city this draft may and frequently does tax the capacity of a small district of the discharging system. In designing such systems, therefore, even for large cities, it is necessary to insure all districts against a small local supply when a large one may pressingly be needed.

CHAPTER XV.

155. Waste of Water, Particularly in the City of New York.— The quantity of water involved in designing a water-supply for cities and towns is much larger than that which is actually needed. The experience of civil engineers in many cities, both in this country and in Europe, shows conclusively that the portion of water actually wasted or running away without serving any purpose will usually run from 30 to 50 per cent of the total amount brought to the distributing system. In the city of New York there is strong reason to believe that the wastage is not less than two thirds of the total quantity supplied. It is frequently assumed that both the quantities supplied and the quantities uselessly wasted in New York are larger than in other places. As a matter of fact those quantities are actually smaller than in some other large cities. While the supply per inhabitant in New York City is much larger than should be required, the use of water by its citizens is not extravagant when gauged by the criterion of use in other large cities. This question was most carefully and exhaustively investigated in 1899 and the early part of 1900 by Mr. John R. Freeman of Boston, acting for the comptroller of the city of New York.

The usual wastes of a water-supply system may be distributed under six principal heads. First, leaky house-plumbing; second, and "possibly first in order of magnitude," leaky service-pipes connecting the house pipe system with street-mains; third, leaving water-cocks open unnecessarily; fourth, leaky joints in street-mains or pipes; fifth, possibly pervious beds and banks of distributing-reservoirs; sixth, stealing or "unlawful diversion" of water through surreptitious connections.

The sixth item is probably an extremely small one in New

York, although instances of that kind of waste have been found. It is an old wastage known as far back in time as the ancient Roman water-supply. The second and third items probably constitute the bulk of the wastage in this city.

156. Division of Daily Consumption in the City of New York.— In the course of his search for the various sources of consumption, Mr. Freeman concluded from his examinations and from the use of the various means placed at his command for measuring the daily consumption between December 2d and December 5th, 1899, and December 8th and December 15th, 1899, that the average daily consumption could be divided as follows:

	Gallons per Inhabitant per Day.	
Probable average amount really used....	40	
Assumed incurable waste.....	10	75
Curable waste, probably.....	65	
Daily uniform rate of delivery by Croton Aqueduct.....	115	

In his investigations Mr. Freeman had the elevation of water in the Central Park reservoir carefully observed every six minutes throughout the twenty-four hours. At the same time the uniform flow through the new Croton Aqueduct was known as accurately as the flow through such a conduit can be gauged at the present time. Knowing, therefore, the concurrent variation of volume in the Central Park reservoir supplied by the new Croton Aqueduct and the rate of flow in that aqueduct, the consumption of water per twenty-four hours would be known with the same degree of accuracy with which the flow in the aqueduct is measured. It was found by these means that the actual consumption between the hours of 2 and 4 A.M. was at the rate of 94 gallons per inhabitant per day, although the actual use at that time was as near zero as it is possible to approach during the whole twenty-four hours. Nearly all of that rate of consumption represents waste.

Summing up the whole matter in the light of his investigations, Mr. Freeman made the following as his nearest estimate

to the actual consumption of the daily supply of water of New York City:

	Gallons per Inhabitant per Day.
ACTUAL USE:	
Domestic (average)	12 –20
Manufacturing and commercial	20 –30
City buildings, etc.	2 – 4
Fires, street flushing and sprinkling	0.4– 0.7
Total	34 –55
INCURABLE WASTE (probabilities):	
Leaks in mains	1– 2
Leaks in old and abandoned service-pipes	1– 2
Poor plumbing, all taps metered and closely inspected	2– 3
Careless and wilful wastes	1– 2
Under-registry of meters	1– 1
Total incurable waste and under-registry	6–10
Minimum use and waste	40–65
NEEDLESS WASTE:	
Leaks in street-mains (a guess)	15–10
Leaks in service-pipes between houses and street-mains (a guess)	15–10
Defective plumbing (a guess)	25–15
Careless and wilful opening of cocks (a guess)	17–14
To prevent freezing in winter and for cooling in summer	3– 1
Total needless waste	75–50
Total consumption	115–115

157. Daily Domestic Consumption. — The quantity assigned in the preceding statement to domestic use is confirmed by the abundant experience in other cities where services are carefully metered, as in Fall River, Lawrence, and Worcester, Mass., and in Woonsocket, R. I., where measurements by meters show that the domestic consumption has varied from 11.2 to 16.3 gallons per inhabitant per day. Furthermore, annual reports of the former Department of Public Works and the present Department of Water-supply for the City of New York show that during the years 1890 to 1898 such meters as have been used in the territory supplied by the Croton and the Bronx aqueducts indicate a daily consumption varying from 13.8 to 24.2 gallons per inhabitant per day. The same character of confirmatory evidence can be applied to the quantities assigned to manufacturing and commercial uses, city buildings and fires, street flushing and sprinkling.

158. Incurable and Curable Wastes. — The items composing incurable waste, unfortunately, cannot be so definitely treated. It is perfectly well known, however, among civil engineers, that a large amount of leakage takes place from corporation cocks, which are those inserted in the street-mains to form the connection between the latter and the house service-pipes. Again, many of these service-pipes are abandoned and insufficiently closed, or not closed at all, leaving constantly running streams whose continuous subsurface discharges escape detection and frequently find their way into sewers. Water-pipes which have been laid many years frequently become so deeply corroded as to afford many leaks and sometimes cracks. Doubtless there are many portions of a great distributing system, like that in New York City, which need replacing and afford many large leaks, but undiscoverable from the surface. Many lead joints of street-mains also become leaky with age, while others are leaky when first laid in spite of inspection during construction. Just how much these items of waste would aggregate it is impossible accurately to state, but from careful observations made in other places 5 to 10 gallons per day per head of population seems reasonable. A three-year-old cast-iron fire-protection pipe 5.57 miles long and mainly 16 inches in diameter, under an average pressure of 114 pounds per square inch, was tested in Providence in 1900 and showed a leakage at lead joints only of 446 gallons per mile per twenty-four hours, which was equivalent to .22 gallon per foot of lead joint per twenty-four hours. Further tests in 1900 of seven lines of new pipe laid by the Metropolitan Board of Boston, and tested under pressures varying from 50 to 150 pounds per square inch by Mr. F. P. Stearns, chief engineer, and Mr. Dexter Brackett, engineer of Distribution Department, and having an aggregate length of 51.4 miles with diameters ranging from 16 to 48 inches, gave an average leakage per lineal foot of pipe in gallons per twenty-four hours ranging from .6 to 3.7 gallons (average 2.47 gallons), equivalent to an average leakage of 3 gallons per twenty-four hours per lineal foot of lead joint. The possible rates of leakage from street-mains are to be applied to a total length of pipe-lines of 833 miles for the boroughs of Manhattan and the Bronx. The borough of Brooklyn has somewhat

over 600 miles of street-mains, but they are not to be considered in connection with the Croton and Bronx water-supply.

All these considerations either confirm or make reasonable the estimates of the various items of actual use and waste set forth by Mr. Freeman.

159. Needless and Incurable Waste in City of New York.— Concisely summing up his conclusions, it may be stated that in the year 1899 the average consumption per inhabitant of the boroughs of Manhattan and the Bronx was 115 gallons; of these 115 gallons the needless average waste may be 65 gallons, while the incurable or necessary waste may probably be taken at 10 gallons per inhabitant per day. It is further probable that the total underground leakage in New York City is to be placed somewhere between 20 to 35 gallons per inhabitant per day.

160. Increase in Population. — The total volume of daily supply to any community is determined by the population; but the population is as a whole constantly increasing. It becomes necessary, therefore, to estimate the capacity of a water-supply system in view of the future population of the city to be supplied. No definite rule can be set as to the future period for which the capacity of any desired system is to be estimated. It may be stated that no shorter period of time than probably ten years should be considered, indeed it is frequently prudent to provide for a period of not less than twenty years, and it may sometimes be necessary or advisable to consider a possible source of supply for even fifty years. Provision must be made not only for the present population, but for the increase during those periods of time, or at least for the possible development that may be needed.

The increase in population of cities will obviously vary for different locations with the character of the occupations followed and with the development of such important factors of industrial life as railroad connections, facilities for marine commerce, the capacity for development of the surrounding country, and other influences which aid in the increase of commerce and industrial activity and the growth of population. It has been observed, as a matter of experience, that large cities generally reach a point where their subsequent increase of population is represented by a practically constant percentage, the value of that percentage

depending upon local considerations. In 1893, when it was desired to estimate the future population of London for as much as forty years, it was found that the increase for the ten years from 1881 to 1891 was 18.2 per cent, with an average of about 20 per cent for several previous decades. It could, therefore, be reasonably estimated for the city of London that its population at the end of any ten-year period would be 18.2 per cent greater than its population at the beginning of that period. In Appendix 1 of the report of the Massachusetts State Board of Health upon the Metropolitan water-supply for the city of Boston made in 1895, the increases for the two ten-year periods 1870–1880 and 1880–1890 were 6 per cent and 9.6 per cent respectively for the city proper, but for the population within a ten-mile radius from the centre of the city they were 28.7 per cent and 33.7 per cent respectively. The corresponding percentages for the cities of New York, Philadelphia, and Chicago for the same periods are as shown in the following tabular statement:

	Population.			Percentages of Increase.	
	1870.	1880.	1890.	1870–80.	1880–90.
New York.....	1,626,119	2,131,051	2,821,802	31	32
Philadelphia.....	726,247	921,458	1,162,577	27	26
Chicago.....	310,996	550,618	1,075,158	77	95*

* Includes added territory.

Obviously every estimate of this kind must be made upon the merits of the case under consideration. The probable increase of population for any particular city is sometimes estimated by considering the circumstances of growth of some other city of practically the same size, and if possible with the same commercial industries or residential environment, or making suitable allowances for variations in these respects. Since it is imperative to secure as accurate estimates as practicable, both methods or other suitable methods should be employed, in order that the results may be confirmed or modified by comparison. In every case the supply system should be designed to meet reasonable estimated requirements for the longest practicable future period, preferably not less than twenty years.

161. Sources of Public Water-supplies.—One of the most important features of a proposed water-supply is its source, since not only the potable qualities are largely affected by it, but frequently the amount also. The two general classes into which potable waters are divided in respect to their sources are surface-waters and ground-waters. Surface-waters include rain-water collected as it falls, water from rivers or smaller streams, and water from natural lakes; they are collected in reservoirs and lakes or impounding reservoirs. Ground-waters are those collected from springs, from ordinary or shallow wells, from deep or artesian wells, and from horizontal galleries, like those sometimes constructed near and parallel to subsurface streams or in subsurface bodies of water, affording opportunity for filtration from the latter through sand or other open materials to them.

The quality of water will obviously be affected by the kind of material through which it percolates or flows. Surface-waters, flowing over the surface of the ground or percolating but a short distance below the surface, naturally have contact with vegetable matter, unless they are collected in a country where the soil is sandy and where the vegetation is scarce. If such waters flow through swamps or over beds of peat or other similar vegetable mould or soil, they may become so impregnated with organic matter or so deeply colored by it that they are not available for potable purposes. Ground-waters, on the other hand, possess the advantage of having flowed through comparatively great depths of sand or other earthy material essentially free of organic matter. They may, however, in some locations, carry prejudicial amounts of objectionable salts in solution, rendering them unfit for use. As a rule, ground-waters are apt to be of better quality than surface-waters, but they do not generally stand storage in reservoirs as well as surface potable waters. It is advisable to store them in covered reservoirs from which the light is excluded, rather than in open reservoirs. They are sometimes impregnated with salts of iron to such an extent as to make it necessary to resort to suitable processes for their removal, and they are also occasionally found so hard as to require the employment of methods of softening them.

Both sources of supply are much used in the United States.

Table IV shows the percentages of the various classes of supplies as found in this country during the year 1897; the total number of supplies having been at that time nearly 4000.

TABLE IV.

WATER-SUPPLIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

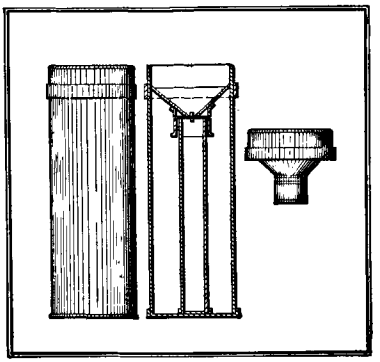
Source.		Per Cent of Total.	
Surface-waters:	Rivers	25	
	Lakes	7	
	Impounding reservoirs	6	
	Combinations	.5	
			38.5
Ground-waters:	Shallow wells	26	
	Artesian wells	10	
	Springs	15	
	Galleries and tunnels	1	
	Combinations	2	
			54
Surface- and ground-waters:	Rivers and ground-waters	6	
	Lakes and ground-waters	1	
	Impounding-reservoirs and ground-waters	.5	
			7.5
Total			100.0

It will be observed that a little more than one half of the supplies are from ground-waters. The practice in connection with European public water-supplies is different in that a considerably larger percentage of the total is taken from ground-waters.

The original source of essentially all the water available for public water-supplies is the rainfall. It becomes of the greatest necessity, therefore, to secure all possible information regarding rainfall wherever it may be necessary to construct a public water-supply. Civil engineers and other observers have for many years maintained continuous records of rainfall observations at various points throughout the country, but it is within only a comparatively short time that the number of those points has been large. Through the extension of the work of the Weather Bureau, points of rainfall observation are now scattered quite generally throughout all States of the Union. The oldest observations are naturally found in connection with stations located in the Eastern States, where the rainfall is more uniformly distributed than in many other portions of the country. Obviously

rainfall records become of the greatest importance in those localities like the semiarid regions of the far West where long periods of no rain occur.

162. Rain-gauges and their Records. — The instrument used for the collection of rain in order to determine the amount falling in a given time is the rain-gauge, which may be fitted with such appliances as to give a continuous record of the rate of rainfall. It has been found that the location of the rain-gauge

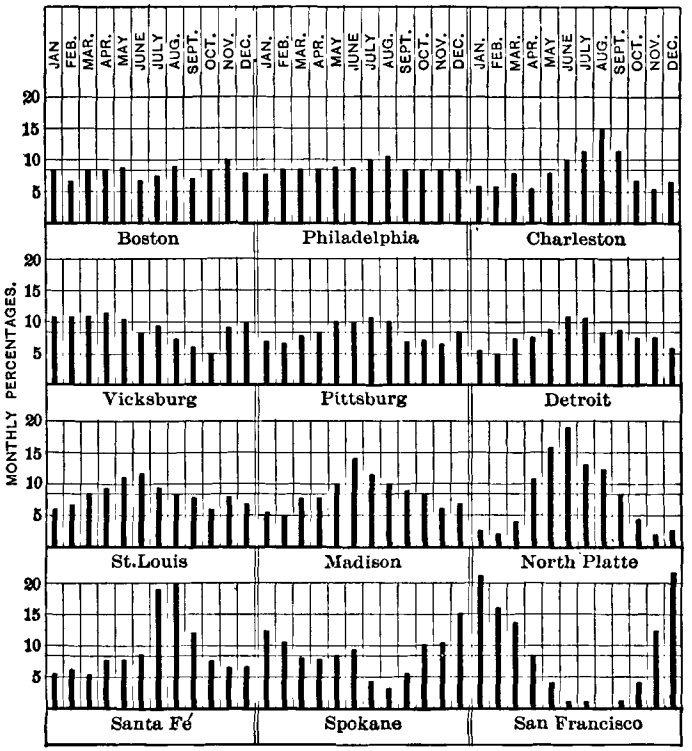


Ordinary Rain-gauge.

has a very important influence upon the amount of rain which it collects. It should be placed where wind currents around high structures in its vicinity cannot affect its record. The top of a large flat-roofed building is a good location in a city, although the elevation above the surface of the ground, as is well known, affects the quantity of water collected by the gauge. The collection will be greater at a low elevation than at a high one, in consequence of the greater wind currents at the higher point, it being well known that less rain will be collected where there is the most wind, other things being equal.

163. Elements of Annual and Monthly Rainfall. — In consequence of the great variations in the rate of rainfall, not only for different portions of the country, but at different times during the same storm, it becomes necessary to determine various quantities such as the maximum, minimum, and mean annual rainfall, the actual monthly rainfall for different months of the year, and

the maximum and minimum monthly rainfall for as long a period as possible. The minimum monthly rainfall and the minimum annual rainfall are of special importance in connection with public water-supply and water-power questions, since those minima will, in connection with the area of a given watershed, determine the greatest amount of water which can be made available for use.



MONTHLY VARIATIONS IN RAINFALL.

FIG. 1.

In entering upon the consideration of such questions, therefore, civil engineers must inform themselves with the greatest detail as to the characteristics of the monthly and the annual rainfall of the locality in which their works are to be located.

The diagram Fig. 1 and Table V are constructed from data given in the bulletins of the Weather Bureau and exhibit some

TABLE V.

GENERAL RAINFALL STATISTICS FOR THE UNITED STATES.

Station.	Mean Yearly Rainfall.	Per Cent of Summer and Autumn Rain to Mean Yearly.	Per Cent Driest Year to Mean Year.	Per Cent Two Driest Years.	Per Cent Three Driest Years.	Number of Years' Record.
North Atlantic:						
Boston	45.4	50	60	70	80	79
New York	44.7	52	62	77	80	61
Philadelphia	42.3	52	70	75	80	72
Washington	42.9	51	69	71	74	45
South Atlantic:						
Wilmington	53.7	61	75	80	81	26
Charleston	49.1	61	48	55	62	89
Augusta	48.0	50	81	88	87	27
Jacksonville	54.1	65	74	77	83	27
Key West	38.2	70	54	61	73	49
Gulf and Lower Mississippi:						
Montgomery	52.5	42	76	80	83	24
Mobile	62.6	51	68	75	78	26
New Orleans	60.3	52	64	75	77	26
Galveston	47.7	58	50	65	72	26
Nashville	50.2	46	67	73	83	32
Ohio Valley:						
Pittsburg	36.6	53	70	78	85	54
Cincinnati	42.1	50	60	72	71	62
Indianapolis	42.2	51	59	76	82	27
Cairo	42.6	47	62	75	81	25
Louisville	47.2	48	74	81	85	25
Lake Region:						
Detroit	32.5	56	65	72	79	46
Cleveland	36.6	54	71	74	81	41
Duluth	30.7	63	65	81	88	26
Upper Mississippi Valley:						
St. Louis	40.8	52	55	65	75	60
Chicago	34.0	54	66	80	86	30
Milwaukee	31.0	55	66	74	73	53
Madison	33.2	58	39	58	68	28
St. Paul	28.2	63	53	54	75	39
The Plains:						
Omaha	31.4	63	57	63	70	27
North Platte	18.1	61	56	67	72	22
Denver	14.3	48	59	71	77	27
Cheyenne	12.7	55	39	62	75	27
The Plateau:						
Tucson	11.7	65	44	79	80	19
Santa Fé	14.6	69	53	63	66	37
Salt Lake City	18.8	39	55	64	74	29
Walla Walla	15.4	38	46	81	86	27
Pacific Coast:						
Astoria	77.0	33	64	68	77	34
Portland	46.2	31	67	76	79	27
Sacramento	19.9	16	42	67	84	47
San Francisco	23.4	17	51	73	78	47
Los Angeles	17.2	15	33	48	59	24
San Diego	9 7	18	30	54	61	47

of the general features of the rainfall for different points throughout this country. The heavy lines of the diagram show the average monthly precipitation at the points indicated, for periods of a considerable number of years, as shown in the table. It will be observed that the rainfall is comparatively uniform in the North Atlantic States but quite variable on the Pacific coast, as well as in the Mississippi and Missouri valleys and west of those valleys.

164. Hourly or Less Rates of Rainfall.—Although not often of great importance in connection with public water-supply systems, it is sometimes necessary to possess data regarding maximum hourly (or less) rates of precipitation in connection with sewer or drainage work. The earlier records give exaggerated reports of maximum rates of rainfall, although that rate varies rapidly with the time. Throughout a rain-storm the rate of precipitation is constantly varying and the maximum rate seldom if ever extends over a period equal to a half-hour; usually it lasts but a few minutes only. In this country an average rate of 1 inch per hour, extending throughout one hour, is phenomenal, although that rare amount is sometimes exceeded. A maximum rate of about 4 inches per hour, lasting 15 to 30 minutes, is, roughly speaking, about as high as any precipitation of which we have reliable records. The wasteways or other provisions for the discharge of surplus or flood waters of the Metropolitan Water-supply of Boston are designed to afford relief for a total precipitation of 6 inches in twenty-four hours. It is safe to state that an excess of that accommodation will probably never be required.

165. Extent of Heavy Rain-storms.—In all engineering questions necessitating the consideration of these great rain-storms it is necessary to remember that their extent is frequently much greater than the areas of watersheds usually contemplated in connection with water-supply work. The late Mr. James B. Francis found in the great storm of October, 1869, which had its maximum intensity in Connecticut, that the area over which 6 inches or more of rain fell exceeded 24,000 square miles, and that the area over which a depth of 10 inches or more fell was 519 miles. Again, in the New England storm of February,

1886, 6 inches or more of rain fell over an area of at least 3000 square miles. Storm records show that as much as 8 or 10 inches in depth have fallen over areas ranging from 1800 to 500 square miles, respectively, in a single storm.

166. Provision for Low Rainfall Years.—The capacity of any public water-supply must evidently be sufficient to meet not only the general exigencies of the year of lowest rainfall, but also the conditions resulting from the driest periods of that year. It is customary among civil engineers to consider months as the smaller units of a dry year. It is necessary, therefore, to examine not only the annual rainfalls but the monthly rates of precipitation during critical years, i.e., usually during dry years.

It is impossible to determine absolutely the year of least rainfall which may be expected, but evidently the longer the period over which observations have extended the nearer that end will be attained. It is sometimes assumed that the lowest annual rainfall likely to be expected in a long period of years is 80 per cent of the average annual rainfall for the same period. Or, it is sometimes assumed that the average rainfall for the lowest two or three consecutive years will be 80 per cent of the average for the entire period, and that the year of minimum rainfall may be expected to yield two thirds of the annual average precipitation. Such features will necessarily vary with the location

TABLE VI.

	Mean Monthly Rainfall, Inches.		Respective Ratios.		Probable Depth in Inches of Actual Rainfall.
January	4	×	1.65	=	6.6
February	4	×	1.50	=	6.0
March	4	×	1.65	=	6.6
April	4	×	1.45	=	5.8
May	4	×	.85	=	3.4
June	4	×	.75	=	3.0
July	4	×	.35	=	1 4
August	4	×	.25	=	1.0
September	4	×	.30	=	1.2
October	4	×	.45	=	1.8
November	4	×	1.20	=	4.8
December	4	×	1.60	=	6.4

of the district considered. Conclusions which may be true for the New England or northern Atlantic States probably will not hold for the south Atlantic and Gulf States. Data for such conclusions must be obtained from the rainfall of the locality considered. Table VI exhibits the comparative monthly rainfall which J. T. Fanning suggests may be used approximately for the average Atlantic coast districts.

If the average monthly rainfall throughout the year were one inch, the values of the ratios would show the actual monthly precipitation. In general the table would be used by dividing the total yearly rainfall by 12, and then multiplying that monthly average by the proper ratio taken from the table opposite the month required. Such tables should only be used for approximate purposes and when actual rainfall records are not available for the district considered.

167. Available Portion of Rainfall or Run-off of Watersheds. —If the public water-supply is to be drawn from a stream where the desired rainfall records exist, it is necessary to know what portion of the rainfall, either in the driest or in other years, may be available. This is one of the departments of the hydraulics of streams for which much data yet remain to be secured. The watersheds or areas drained by some streams, like the Sudbury River of the Boston, and the Croton of the New York water-supply, have, however, been studied with sufficient care to give reliable data. The amount of water flowing in a stream from any watershed for a given period, as a year, is called the annual "run-off" of the watershed, and it is usually expressed as a certain percentage of the total rainfall on the area drained. For certain purposes it is sometimes more convenient to express the run-off from the watershed as the number of cubic feet of water per second per square mile of area. Table VII, taken from Turneaure and Russell, exhibits run-off data for a considerable number of streams in connection with both average and minimum rainfalls.

The information to be drawn from this table is sufficient to give clear and general relations between the recorded precipitation and run-off. The percentage of run-off is seen to vary quite widely, but as a rule it is materially less for the year of minimum

TABLE VII..

STATISTICS OF THE FLOW OF STREAMS.

Stream.	Area Drained, Square Miles.	Years.	Average Yearly.			Year of Minimum Flow.		
			Rain, Inches.	Flow, Inches.	Per Cent.	Rain, Inches.	Flow, Inches.	Per Cent.
Sudbury	75.2	1875–97	45.77	22.22	48.6	32.78	11.19	34.1
Cochituate	18.87	1863–96	47.08	20.33	43.2	31.20	9.76	31.3
Mystic	26.9	1878–96	43.79	19.96	45.6	31.22	9.32	29.8
Connecticut	10,234	1871–85	44.69	25.25	56.5	40.02	18.25	45.6
Croton	338	1870–94	48.38	24.57	50.8	38.52	14.54	37.8
Upper Hudson	4,500	1888–96	39.70	23.36	59.0	33.49	17.46	52.2
Genesee	1,060	1894–96	39.82	12.95	32.5	31.00	6.67	21.5
Passaic	822	1877–93	47.08	25.44	54.0	35.64	15.23	42.7
Upper Mississippi	3,265	1885–99	26.57	4.90	18.4	22.86	1.62	7.1

Stream.	Area Drained, Square Miles.	Years.	Average for December to May.			Average for June to November.		
			Rain, Inches.	Flow, Inches.	Per Cent.	Rain, Inches.	Flow, Inches.	Per Cent.
Sudbury	75.2	1875–97	22.98	17.52	76.0	22.61	4.70	20.8
Cochituate	18.87	1863–96	22.97	14.87	64.7	24.10	5.46	22.7
Mystic	26.9	1878–96	22.11	15.12	68.4	21.66	4.84	22.4
Connecticut	10,234	1871–85	20.13	17.95	89.1	24.56	7.30	29.7
Croton	338	1870–94	23.39	17.81	76.1	24.99	6.76	27.0
Upper Hudson	4,500	1888–96	18.20	16.23	89.0	21.50	7.13	33.0
Genesee	1,060	1894–96	19.58	10.20	52.2	20.24	2.75	13.6
Passaic	822	1877–93	22.47	18.22	81.1	24.39	7.19	29.5

flow than for the average year. That feature of the table is an expression of the general law, other things being equal, that the smaller the precipitation the less will be the percentage of run-off. A number of influences act to produce that result. During a year of great precipitation the earth is more nearly saturated the greater part of the time, and hence when rain falls less of it will percolate into the ground and more of it will run off. Again, if the ground is absolutely dry, a certain amount of rain would have to fall before any run-off would take place. The area and shape of a watershed will also affect to some extent the flow of the stream which drains it. A larger run-off would reasonably be expected from a long narrow watershed than from one more nearly circular in outline. The greater the massing of the water-

shed, so to speak, the more opportunity there is for the water to be held by the ground and the less would be the run-off.

TABLE VIII.

AVERAGE YIELD OF SUDBURY WATERSHED, 1875–1899, INCLUSIVE, VARIOUSLY EXPRESSED.

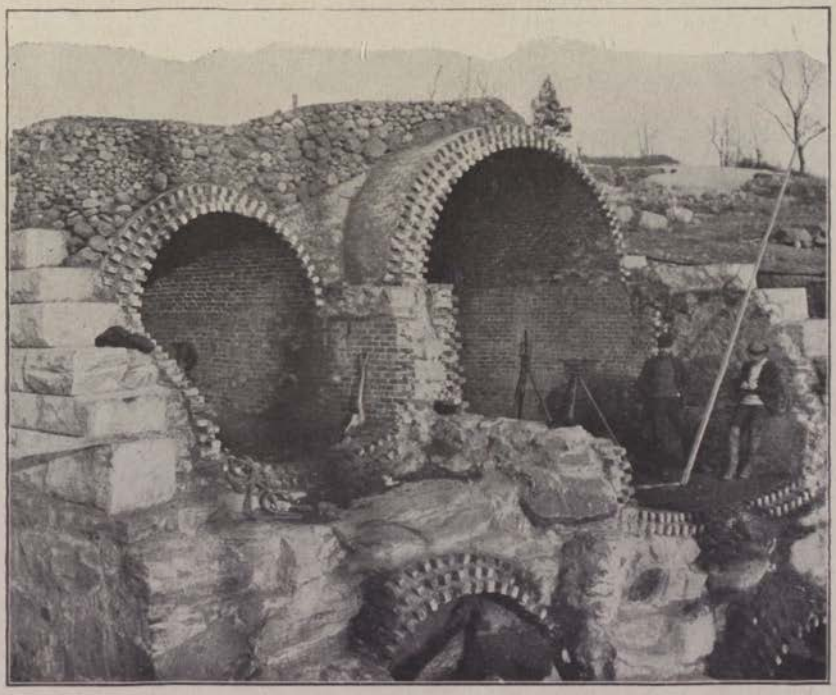
(Area of watershed, 75.2 square miles.)

Month.	A Square Mile.		Rainfall.		
	Cubic Feet per Second.	Million Gallons per Day.	Collected, Inches.	Per Cent Collected.	Total, Inches.
January	1.937	1.252	2.233	51.6	4.33
February	2.904	1.877	3.050	71.7	4.26
March	4.489	2.901	5.175	117.4	4.41
April	3.124	2.019	3.485	107.5	3.24
May	1.680	1.086	1.936	58.1	3.33
June	.735	.475	.821	28.0	2.93
July	.305	.197	.352	9.3	3.77
August	.478	.309	.551	13.3	4.16
September	.376	.243	.419	13.0	3.23
October	.829	.536	.956	21.9	4.37
November	1.474	.953	1.645	39.0	4.22
December	1.612	1.042	1.859	51.9	3.58
Year	1.655	1.070	22.482	49.1	45.83

168. Run-off of Sudbury Watershed.—Table VIII has been given by Mr. Charles W. Sherman, as representing the average yield of the Sudbury watershed for the period 1875 to 1899, inclusive, expressed in several different ways. The average rainfall was 45.83 inches, and the percentage which represents the run-off is 49.1 per cent of the total. The average monthly run-off varies from .305 cubic foot (for July) to 4.489 cubic feet (for March) per second per square mile. As a general rule it may be stated that the average run-off from the drainage areas of New England streams amounts very closely to 1,000,000 gallons per square mile per day. The area of the Sudbury watershed is 75.2 square miles, with 6.5 per cent of that total area occupied by the surface of lakes or reservoirs. As will presently be seen, the amount of exposed water surface in any watershed has an appreciable influence upon its run-off.

169. Run-off of Croton Watershed.—The total area of the Croton watershed, from which New York City draws its supply,

i.e., the area up-stream from the new Croton Dam, is 360.4 square miles, of which 16.1 square miles, or 4.47 per cent, of its total area is water surface. Mr. John R. Freeman found in the investigations covered by his report to the comptroller of the city of New York in 1900 that the average annual rainfall on that area for the thirty-two years beginning 1868 and ending 1899 was 48.07 inches, and that the average run-off for the same period was 47.7 per cent of the total average rainfall, equivalent to a depth of 22.93 inches.



Aqueducts near Jerome Park Reservoir, New York City.

Table IX gives the main elements of the rainfall and run-off for the Croton watershed during the thirty-two year period, for the averages just given.

The table shows that the least annual rainfall was 36.92 inches for 1880, and that the run-off represented a depth of 12.63 inches only, or 34.21 per cent of the total annual precipitation.

TABLE IX.

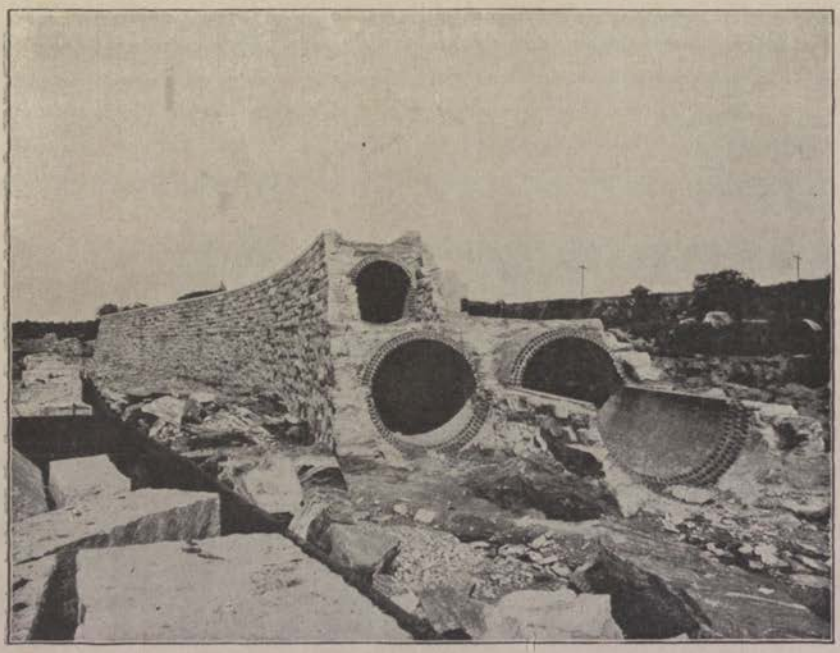
RAINFALL ON CROTON WATERSHED IN TOTAL INCHES—1868-1898. NATURAL FLOW OF CROTON RIVER AT OLD CROTON DAM, IN EQUIVALENT INCHES. PERCENTAGE OF RUN-OFF TO RAINFALL FOR EACH YEAR.

Year.	Total Rainfall.	Total Run-off.	Per Cent.	Year.	Total Rainfall.	Total Run-off.	Per Cent.
1868	50.33	33.33	66.22	1885	43.67	17.71	40.55
1869	48.36	23.61	48.82	1886	47.74	20.10	42.10
1870	44.63	19.20	43.02	1887	57.29	26.61	46.45
1871	48.94	19.46	39.76	1888	60.69	35.27	58.12
1872	40.74	16.92	41.53	1889	55.70	31.39	56.36
1873	43.87	25.02	57.03	1890	54.05	25.95	48.01
1874	42.37	25.10	59.24	1891	47.20	23.48	49.75
1875	43.66	24.77	56.73	1892	44.28	17.68	39.93
1876	40.68	21.09	51.84	1893	54.87	29.05	52.94
1877	48.23	20.22	41.92	1894	47.33	20.56	43.44
1878	55.70	27.17	48.78	1895	40.58	15.95	39.31
1879	47.04	19.65	41.77	1896	45.85	23.26	50.73
1880	36.92	12.63	34.21	1897	53.12	25.59	48.17
1881	46.69	19.25	41.23	1898	57.40	29.72	51.77
1882	52.35	24.28	46.38	1899	44.67	22.28	49.88
1883	42.70	13.33	31.22	Average for 32 years.	48.07	22.93	47.70
1884	51.28	24.08	46.96				

As a rule the same feature of a low percentage of run-off will be found belonging to the years of low rainfall, although there are many irregularities in the results. On the other hand, the high percentages of run-off are for the years 1868, 1888, and 1889, and they will generally be found belonging to years of relatively great precipitation. A low percentage of run-off will also be lower if the year to which it belongs follows a dry year or a dry cycle of two or three years. Similarly the high percentages of run-off will, as a rule, be higher if they follow years of high precipitation; that is, if they belong to a cycle of relatively great rainfall.

170. Evaporation from Reservoirs.—If it is contemplated to build reservoirs on a watershed the capacity of which is being estimated on the basis of either the driest year or the driest two- or three-year cycle, it is necessary to make a deduction from the rainfall for the evaporation which will take place from the surface of the proposed reservoir. In order that that deduction may be made as a proper allowance for added water surface in a drainage area, it is necessary that the amount of evaporation be determined for the district considered. The rate of evaporation is dependent upon the area of water surface, upon the wind, and upon the temperature both of the water and air above it. Numerous

evaporation observations have been made both in this and other countries, and extensive evaporation tables have been prepared by the Weather Bureau, from which a reasonable estimate of the monthly evaporation for all months in the year may be made for almost any point in the United States. Particularly available



Aqueduct Division Wall of Jerome Park Reservoir, New York City.

observations have been made by Mr. Desmond Fitzgerald of Boston on the Chestnut Hill reservoirs of the Boston Water-supply, and by Mr. Emil Kuichling, engineer of the Rochester Water-works, on the Mount Hope reservoir of the Rochester supply. Table X exhibits the results of the observations of both these civil engineers.

As would be anticipated, the period from May to September, both inclusive, shows by far the greatest evaporation of the whole year, while December, January, and February are the months of least evaporation. The total annual evaporation at Boston was 39.2 inches and 34.54 inches at Rochester.

TABLE X.

MEAN MONTHLY EVAPORATIONS.

Month.	Chestnut Hill Reservoir, Boston, Mass.		Mount Hope Reservoir, Rochester, N. Y.	
	Evaporation, Inches.	Per Cent of Yearly Evaporation.	Evaporation, Inches.	Per Cent of Yearly Evaporation.
January	0.96	2.4	0.52	1.5
February	1.05	2.7	0.54	1.6
March	1.70	4.3	1.33	3.9
April	2.97	7.6	2.62	7.6
May	4.46	11.4	3.93	11.4
June	5.54	14.2	4.94	14.3
July	5.98	15.2	5.47	15.8
August	5.50	14.0	5.30	15.4
September	4.12	10.4	4.15	12.0
October	3.16	8.1	3.16	9.1
November	2.25	5.7	1.45	4.2
December	1.51	3.9	1.13	3.2
Total for year	39.20		34.54	
Mean temperature	48°.6		47°.8	

A reference to data of the Weather Bureau will show that annual evaporation as high as 100 inches, or even more, may be expected on the plateaux of Arizona and New Mexico. Other portions of the arid country in the western part of the United States will indicate annual evaporations running anywhere from 50 to 90 inches per year, while on the north Pacific coast it will fall as low as 18 to 40 inches.

171. Evaporation from the Earth's Surface.—Data are lacking for anything like a reasonably accurate estimate of evaporation from the earth's surface. It is well known that the loss of water from that source is considerable in soils like those of swamps, particularly when exposed to the warm sun, but no reliable estimate can be obtained for the exact amount. Nor is this necessary for the usual water-supply problems, since it is included in the difference between the total rainfall of any district and the observed run-off in the streams. Indeed evaporation from reservoirs is similarly included for reservoirs existing when the run-off observations are made.

CHAPTER XVI.

172. Application of Fitzgerald's Results to the Croton Watershed.—The evaporation data determined by Messrs. Fitzgerald and Kuichling are sufficient for all ordinary purposes in the North Atlantic States. In the discussion of the capacity of the Croton watershed Mr. Fitzgerald's results will be taken, as the conditions of the Croton watershed in respect to temperature and atmosphere are affected by the proximity to the ocean, and other features of the case make it more nearly like the Metropolitan drainage area near Boston than the more elevated inland district near Rochester.

If the monthly amounts of evaporation be taken from the preceding table, and if it further be observed that a volume of water 1 square mile in area and 1 inch thick contains 17,377,536 gallons, the following table (Table XI) of amounts of evaporation from the reservoirs in the Croton watershed, including the new Croton Lake, will result, since the total area of water surface of all these reservoirs is 16.1 square miles.

TABLE XI.

Jan.	0.96 × 16.1 ×	17,377,536 =	268,600,000	gallons.
Feb.	1.05 × " ×	" =	293,800,000	"
Mar.	1.70 × " ×	" =	475,700,000	"
April	2.97 × " ×	" =	831,000,000	"
May	4.46 × " ×	" =	1,247,900,000	"
June	5.54 × " ×	" =	1,550,100,000	"
July	5.98 × " ×	" =	1,673,200,000	"
Aug.	5.50 × " ×	" =	1,538,900,000	"
Sept.	4.12 × " ×	" =	1,152,800,000	"
Oct.	3.16 × " ×	" =	884,200,000	"
Nov.	2.25 × " ×	" =	629,600,000	"
Dec.	1.51 × " ×	" =	422,500,000	"
	39.20	Total	= 10,968,300,000	"

It will be seen from this table that the total annual evaporation from all the reservoir surfaces of the Croton watershed, as it will exist when the new Croton Lake is completed, will be nearly 11,000,000,000 gallons, enough to supply the boroughs of Bronx and Manhattan at the present rate of consumption for about forty days.

173. The Capacity of the Croton Watershed.—The use of the preceding figures and numbers can be well illustrated by considering the capacity of the Croton watershed in its relations to the present water needs of the boroughs of Bronx and Manhattan which that watershed is designed to supply. The total area of the Croton watershed is 360.4 square miles, of which 16.1 square miles, as has already been observed, is water surface. As a matter of fact the run-off observations from that watershed have been maintained or computed for the thirty-two-year period from 1868 to 1899, inclusive, covering the evaporation from the reservoirs and lake surfaces as they have existed during that period. The later observations, therefore, include the effects of evaporation from the more lately constructed reservoirs, but none of these data cover evaporation from the entire surface of the new Croton Lake, whose excess over that of the old reservoir is nearly one third of the total water surface of the entire shed. As a margin of safety and for the purpose of simplification, separate allowance will be made for the evaporation from all the reservoir and lake surfaces of the entire watershed as it will exist on the completion of the new Croton Lake, as a deduction from the run-off. The preceding table (Table XI) exhibits those deductions for evaporation as they will be made in the next table.

In Table IX the year 1880 yields the lowest run-off of the entire thirty-two-year period. The total precipitation was 36.92 inches, and only 34.21 per cent of it was available as run-off. The first column in Table XII gives the amount of monthly rainfall for the entire year, the sum of which aggregates 36.92 inches. Each of these monthly quantities multiplied by .3421 will give the amount of rainfall available for run-off, and the latter quantity multiplied by the number of square miles in the watershed (360.4) will show the total depth of available water concentrated

upon a single square mile. If the latter quantity be multiplied by 17,378,000, the total number of gallons available for the entire month will result, from which must be subtracted the evaporation for the same month. Carrying out these operations for each month in the year, the monthly available quantities for water-supply will be found, as shown in the last column.

TABLE XII.

(Jan.	3.43	×	.3421	= 1.173)	×	360.4	× 17,378,000	−	268,600,000	= 7,077,700,000
(Feb.	3.40	×	"	= 1.163)	×	"	× "	−	293,800,000	= 6,989,900,000
(Mar.	3.90	×	"	= 1.334)	×	"	× "	−	475,700,000	= 7,879,000,000
(April	3.57	×	"	= 1.221)	×	"	× "	−	831,000,000	= 6,816,000,000
(May	1.04	×	"	= .356)	×	"	× "	−	1,247,900,000	= 982,000,000
(June	1.40	×	"	= .479)	×	"	× "	−	1,550,100,000	= 1,449,800,000
(July	5.86	×	"	= 2.005)	×	"	× "	−	1,673,200,000	= 10,890,000,000
(Aug.	4.16	×	"	= 1.423)	×	"	× "	−	1,538,900,000	= 7,373,100,000
(Sept.	2.42	×	"	= .828)	×	"	× "	−	1,152,800,000	= 4,032,900,000
(Oct.	2.83	×	"	= .968)	×	"	× "	−	884,200,000	= 5,178,500,000
(Nov.	2.32	×	"	= .794)	×	"	× "	−	629,600,000	= 4,343,100,000
(Dec.	2.59	×	"	= .886)	×	"	× "	−	422,500,000	= 5,126,300,000
	36.92									

The sum of the twelve monthly available quantities will give the total number of gallons per year applicable to meeting the water demands of the boroughs of Bronx and Manhattan.

174. Necessary Storage for New York Supply to Compensate for Deficiency.—At the present time the average daily consumption per inhabitant of those two boroughs is 115 gallons, and if the total population be taken at 2,200,000, the total daily consumption will be 2,200 000 × 115 = 253,000,000 gallons. If the latter quantity be multiplied by 30.5, the latter being taken as the average number of days in the month throughout the year, the average monthly draft of water for the two boroughs in question will be 7,716,500,000 gallons. The subtraction of the latter quantity from the monthly results in the preceding table will exhibit a deficiency which must be met by storage or a surplus available for storage. Table XIII exhibits the twelve monthly differences of that character.

It is seen from this table that the total monthly deficiencies aggregate 27,795,700,000 gallons and that there are only two months in which the run-off exceeds the consumption, the surplus for those two months being only 3,336,000,000 gallons.

TABLE XIII.

7,077,700,000 −	7,716,500,000 =	− 638,800,000	
6,989,900,000 −	" =	− 726,600,000	
7,879,000,000 −	" =		+ 162,500,000
6,816,000,000 −	" =	− 900,500,000	
982,000,000 −	" =	− 6,734,500,000	
1,449,800,000 −	" =	− 6,266,700,000	
10,890,000,000 −	" =		+ 3,173,500,000
7,373,100,000 −	" =	− 343,400,000	
4,032,900,000 −	" =	− 3,683,600,000	
5,178,500,000 −	" =	− 2,538,000,000	
4,343,100,000 −	" =	− 3,373,400,000	
5,126,300,000 −	" =	− 2,590,200,000	
		−27,795,700,000	+3,336,000,000
		+ 3,336,000,000	
		−24,459,700,000	

The total deficiency for the year is therefore 24,459,700,000 gallons. Dividing the latter quantity by the average daily draft of 253,000,000 gallons, there will result a period of 97 days, or more than one quarter of a year, during which the minimum annual rainfall would fail to supply any water to the city at all. These results show that in case of a low rainfall year, like that of 1880, the precipitation upon the Croton watershed would supply sufficient water for the boroughs of Bronx and Manhattan at the present rate of consumption for three fourths of the year only. A distressingly serious water famine would result unless the year were begun by sufficient available storage in the reservoirs of the basin at least equal to 24,459,700,000 gallons. Should such a low rainfall year or one nearly approaching it be one of a two- or three-year low rainfall cycle, such a reserve storage would be impossible and the resulting conditions would be most serious for the city. If an average year, for which the total rainfall would be about 48 inches preceded such a year of low rainfall, the conditions would be less serious. The figures would stand as follows:

Total run-off =

$$17{,}377{,}536 \times 360.4 \times 22.93 - 17{,}377{,}536 \times 16.1 \times 39.2$$

$$= 132{,}640{,}000{,}000 \text{ gallons.}$$

Total annual consumption.....	= 92,345,000,000	"
Available for storage.....	= 40,295,000,000	"
Deficiency.....	= 24,459,700,000	"
Surplus.....	= 15,835,300,000	"

The average year would, therefore, yield enough run-off water if stored to more than make up the deficiency of the least rainfall year by nearly 16,000,000,000 gallons. In order to secure the desired volume it would therefore be necessary to have storage capacity at least equal to 24,459,700,000 gallons; indeed, in order to meet all the exigencies of a public water-supply it would be necessary to have far more than that amount. As a matter of fact there are in the Croton watershed seven artificial reservoirs with a total storage capacity of nearly 41,000,000,000 gallons, besides a number of small ponds in addition to the new Croton Lake which with water surface at the masonry crest of the dam has a total additional storage capacity of 23,700,000,000 gallons. The storage capacity of the new Croton Lake may be increased by the use of flash-boards 4 feet high placed along its crest, so that with its water surface at grade 200 its total capacity will be increased to 26,500,000,000 gallons. After the new Croton reservoir is in use the total storage capacity of all the reservoirs and ponds in the Croton watershed will be raised to 70,245,000,000 gallons, which can be further augmented by the Jerome Park reservoir when completed by an amount equal to 1,900,000,000 gallons. This is equivalent, at the present rate of consumption, to a storage supply for 285 days for the boroughs of Manhattan and the Bronx.

175. No Exact Rule for Storage Capacity.—This question of the amount of storage capacity to be provided in connection with public water-supplies is one which cannot be reduced to an exact rule. Obviously if the continuous flow afforded from any source is always greater per day than any draft that can ever be made upon it, no storage-reservoirs at all would be needed, although they might be necessary for the purpose of sedimentation. On the other hand, as in the case of New York City, if the demand upon the supply has reached its capacity or exceeded it for low rainfall years, it may be necessary to provide storage capacity sufficient to collect all the run-off of the watershed. The civil engineer must from his experience and from the data before him determine what capacity between those limits is to be secured. When the question of volume or capacity of storage is settled the mode of distribution of that volume or capacity

in reservoirs is to be determined, and that affects to some extent the potability of the water. If there is a large area of shallow storage, the vegetable matter of the soil may affect the water in a number of ways. Again, it is advisable in this connection to consider certain reservoir effects as to color and contained organic matter in general.

176. The Color of Water.—The potability* of water collected from any watershed is materially affected by its color. Although iron may produce a brownish tinge, by far the greater amount of color is produced by dissolved vegetable matter. Repeated examinations of colored water have shown that discoloration is in many cases at least a measure of the vegetable matter contained in it. While this may not indicate that the water is materially unwholesome, it shows conclusively the existence of conditions which are usually productive of minute lower forms of vegetation from which both bad taste and odors are likely to arise.

There are two periods in the year of maximum intensity of

* What is generally known as the "Michigan standard of the purity of drinking-water," as specified by the Michigan State Laboratory of Hygiene, is here given:

"1. The total residue should not exceed 500 parts per million.

"2. The inorganic residue may constitute the total residue.

"3. The smaller amount of organic residue the better the water.

"4. The amount of earthy bases should not exceed 200 parts per million.

"5. The amount of sodium chloride should not exceed 20 parts per million (i.e., 'chlorine' 12.1 parts per million).

"6. The amount of sulphates should not exceed 100 parts per million.

"7. The organic matter in 1,000,000 parts of the water should not reduce more than 8 parts of potassium permanganate (i.e., 'required oxygen' 2.2 parts per million).

"8. The amount of free ammonia should not exceed 0.05 part per million.

"9. The amount of albuminoid ammonia should not exceed 0.15 part per million.

"10. The amount of nitric acid should not exceed 3.5 parts per million (i.e., 'N as nitrate' .9 part per million).

"11. The best water contains no nitrous acid, and any water which contains this substance in quantity sufficient to be estimated should not be regarded as a safe drinking-water.

"12. The water must contain no toxicogenic germs as demonstrated by tests upon animals.

"The water must be clear and transparent, free from smell, and without either alkaline or acid taste, and not above 5 French standard of hardness."

This standard is too high to be attained ordinarily in natural waters.

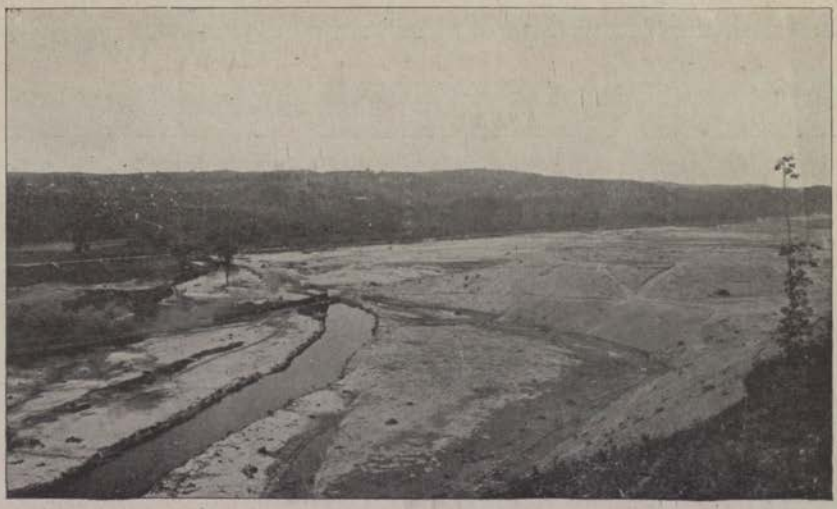
color, one occurring in June and the other in November. The former is due to the abundant drainage of peaty or other excessively vegetable soils from the spring rains. After June the sun bleaches the water to a material extent until the autumn, when the dying vegetation imparts more or less coloring to the water falling upon it. This last agency produces its maximum effect in the month of November.

There are various arbitrary scales employed by which colors may be measured and discolored waters compared. Among others, dilute solutions of platinum and cobalt are used, in which the relative proportions of those substances are varied so as to resemble closely the colors of the water. The amount of platinum used is a measure of the color, one unit of which corresponds to one part of the metal in 10,000 parts of water. Again, the depth at which a platinum wire 1 mm. (.039 inch) in diameter and 1 inch long can be seen in the water is also taken as a measure of the color, the amount of the latter being inversely as the depth. This method has found extended and satisfactory use in connection with the Metropolitan Water-supply of Boston, the Cochituate water having a degree of color represented by .25 to .30, while the Sudbury water has somewhat more than twice as much. The Cochituate water is practically colorless.

The origin of the color of water is chiefly the swamps which drain into the water-supply, or the vegetation remaining upon a new reservoir site when the surface soil has not been removed before the filling of the reservoir. The drainage of swamps should not, as a rule, be permitted to flow into a public water-supply, as it is naturally heavily charged with vegetable matter and is correspondingly discolored. This matter, like many others connected with the sanitation of potable public waters, has been most carefully investigated by the State Board of Health of Massachusetts in connection with the Boston water-supply. Its work has shown the strong advisability of diverting the drainage of large swamps from a public supply as carrying too much vegetable matter even when highly diluted by clear water conforming to desirable sanitary standards.

177. Stripping Reservoir Sites.—The question of stripping or cleaning reservoir sites of soil is also one which has been care-

fully studied by the Massachusetts State Board of Health. As a consequence large amounts of money have been expended by the city of Boston in stripping the soil from reservoir sites to the average depth in some cases of 9 inches for wooded land and 12½ inches for meadow land. This was done in the case of the Nashua River reservoir having a superficial area of 6.56 square miles at a cost of nearly $2,910,000, or about $700 per acre. It has been found that the beneficial effect of this stripping is fully secured if the black loam in which vegetation flourishes is removed.



Wachusetts Reservoir, showing Stripping of Soil.

This stripping of soil is indicative of the great care taken to secure a high quality of water for the city of Boston, but later investigations show that this is usually not necessary. It has not been done for the New York water supply and the results have not been unsatisfactory, even for the new Croton reservoir. Mr. F. P. Stearns, chief engineer of the Metropolitan water supply of Boston, states that in some cases the effects of filling reservoirs without removing the soil and vegetable matter have "continued for twenty years or more without apparent diminution." On the other hand, water discolored by vegetable

matter becomes bleached to some extent at least by standing in reservoirs whose sites have been stripped of soil.

178. Average Depth of Reservoirs should be as Great as Practicable.—In the selection of reservoir locations those are preferable where the average depths will be greatest and where shallow margins are reduced to a minimum. It may sometimes be necessary to excavate marginal portions which would otherwise be shallow with a full reservoir. There should be as little water as possible of a less low-water depth than 10 or 12 feet, otherwise there may be a tendency to aquatic vegetable growth. The following table exhibits the areas, average depths, capacity, and other features of a number of prominent storage-reservoirs.

COMPARATIVE TABLE OF AREAS, DEPTHS, AND CAPACITIES OF STORAGE RESERVOIRS WITH HEIGHTS AND LENGTHS OF DAMS.

Name and Location of Reservoir.	Area, Square Miles.	Average Depth, Feet.	Maximum Height of Dam.		Length of Dam, Feet.	Capacity, Million Gallons.
			Above Ground.	Above Rock.		
Swift River, Mass	36.96	53	144	.....	2,470	406,000
Nashua River, Mass	6.56	46	129	158	1,250	63,068
Nira, near Poona, India	7.25	27	100	.....	3,000	41,143
Tansa, Bombay, India	5.50	33	127	131	8,770	37,500
Khadakvasla, Poona, India	5.50	32	100	107	5,080	36,737
New Croton, N. Y.	.....	.....	157	225	1,270	32,000
Elan and Claerwen, Birmingham, Eng., water-works (total for six reservoirs)	2.34	43	98–128	.....	4,460	20,838
All Boston water-works reservoirs combined	5.82	14	14–65	.....	.....	15,867
Vyrnwy, Liverpool, Eng.	1.75	.....	84	129	1,350	14,560
Ware River, Mass.	1.62	33	71	.....	785	11,190
Sodom, N. Y.	.....	.....	72	89	500	9,500
Reservoir No. 5, Boston water-works	1.91	19	65	70	1,865	7,438
Titicus, N. Y.	.....	.....	105	115	.....	7,000
Hobbs Brook, Cambridge water-works	1.00	12	23	.....	.....	2,500
Cochituate, Boston water-works	1.35	8	.....	.....	.....	2,160
Reservoir No. 6, Boston water-works	0.29	25	52	.....	1,500	1,500

179. Overturn of Contents of Reservoirs Due to Seasonal Changes of Temperature.—It will be noticed that the average depth is less than about 20 feet in few cases only. If the water is

deep, its mean temperature throughout the year will be lower than if shallow. During the warmer portion of the year the upper layers of the water are obviously of a higher temperature than the lower portions, since the latter receive much less immediate effect from the sun's rays. As the upper portions of the water are of higher temperature, they are also lighter and hence remain at or near the top. For the same reason the water at the bottom of the reservoir remains there throughout the warm season and until the cool weather of the autumn begins. The top layers of water then continue to fall in temperature until it is lower than that of the water at the bottom, when the surface-water becomes the heaviest and sinks. It displaces subsurface-water lighter than itself, the latter coming to the surface to be cooled in turn.

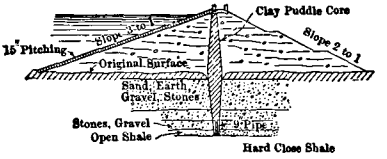
This operation produces a complete overturning of the entire reservoir volume as the late autumn or early winter approaches. It thus brings to the surface water which has been lying at the bottom of the reservoir all summer in contact with what vegetable matter may have been there. The depleted oxygen of the bottom water is thus replenished with a corresponding betterment of condition. It is the great sanitary effort of nature to improve the quality of stored water entrusted to its care, and it continues until the surface is cooled to a temperature perhaps lower than that of the greatest density of water.

Another great turn-over in the water of a lake or reservoir covered with ice during the winter occurs in the spring. When the ice melts, the resulting water rises a little in temperature until it reaches possibly its greatest density at 39°.2 Fahr., and then sinks, displacing subsurface water. This goes on until all the ice is melted and until all water cooled by it, near the surface, below 39°.2 Fahr. has been raised to that temperature. The period of summer stagnation then follows.

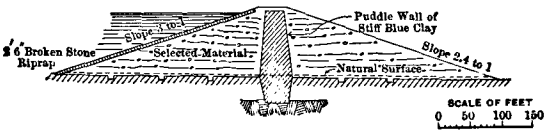
180. The Construction of Reservoirs.—The natural topography and sometimes the geology of the locality determines the location of the reservoir. The first requirement obviously is tightness. If for any reason whatever, such as leaky banks or bottom, porous subsurface material, or for any other defect, the water cannot be retained in the reservoir, it is useless. Some very

perplexing questions in this connection have arisen. Indeed reservoirs have been completed only to be found incapable of holding their contents. Such results are evidently not creditable to the engineers who are responsible for them, and they should be avoided.

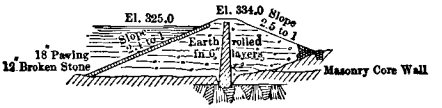
YARROW RESERVOIR, LIVERPOOL WATER SUPPLY



SAN LEANDRO DAM, SAN FRANCISCO WATER WORKS



TITICUS DAM, NEW YORK WATER SUPPLY



In order that the bottom of the reservoir may be water-tight it must be so well supported by firm underlying material that it will not be injured by the weight of water above it, which in artificial reservoirs may reach 30 to 100 feet or more in depth. The subsurface material at the site of any proposed structure of this character must, therefore, be carefully examined so as to avoid all porous material, crevasses in rocks, or other open places where water might escape. Objectionable material may frequently be removed and replaced with that which is more suitable, and rock crevices and other open places may sometimes be filled with concrete and made satisfactory. Whatever may be the conditions existing, the finished bottom of the reservoir should be placed only on well-compacted, firm, unyielding material.

The character of the reservoir bottom will depend somewhat upon the cost of suitable material of which to construct it. If

a bottom of natural earth cannot be used, a pavement of stone, brick, or concrete may be employed from 8 inches to a foot or a foot and a half in thickness. The reservoir banks must be placed upon carefully prepared foundations, sometimes with masonry core walls. They are frequently composed of clayey and gravelly material mixed in proper proportions and called puddle, although that term is more generally applied to a mixture of clay and gravel designed to form a truly impervious wall in the centre of the reservoir embankment. Some engineers require the core-wall, as it is called, to be constructed of masonry, with the earth or gravelly material carried up each side of this wall in layers 6 to 9 inches thick, well moistened and each layer thoroughly rolled with a grooved roller, or treated in some equivalent manner in order that the whole mass may not be in strata but essentially continuous and as nearly impervious as possible. The masonry core-wall should be founded on bed-rock or its equivalent. Its thickness will depend upon the height of the embankment. If the latter is not more than 20 or 25 feet high, the core-wall need not be more than 4 to 6 feet thick, but if the embankment reaches a height of 75 feet or even 100 feet, it must be made 15 to 20 feet thick, or possibly more, at the base. Its top should be not less than 4 or 6 feet thick, imbedded in the earth and carried well above the highest surface of water in the reservoir.

The thickness of the clay puddle-wall employed as the central core of the reservoir embankment is usually made much thicker than that of masonry. As a rough rule it may be made twice as thick as the masonry core at the deepest point and not less than about 6 feet at the top. The thickness of the puddle core is sometimes varied to meet the requirements of the natural material in which it is embedded at different depths.

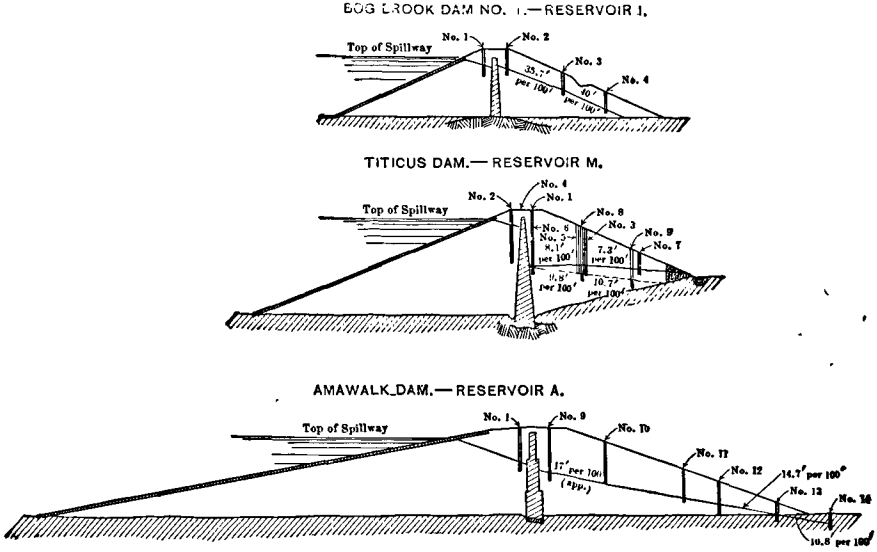
Frequently, when embankments are under about 20 feet high, the core-walls may be omitted, excavation having been made at the base of the embankment down to rock or other impervious material, and if the entire bank is carried up with well-selected and puddled material.

The interior slopes of reservoir embankments are usually covered with roughly dressed stone pavement 12 to 18 inches

thick, laid upon a broken-stone foundation 8 to 12 inches thick, for a protection against the wash of waves, the pavement in any case being placed upon the bank slope after having been thoroughly and firmly compacted. The sloping and bottom pavements, of whatever material they may be composed, should be made continuous with each other so as to offer no escape for the water. In some cases where it has been found difficult to make the interior surfaces of reservoirs water-tight, asphalt or other similar water-tight layers have been used with excellent results.

The care necessary to be exercised in the construction of storage or other reservoirs when earth dams or embankments are used can better be appreciated when it is realized that almost all such banks, even when properly provided with masonry or clay-puddle core-walls, are saturated with water, even on the down-stream side, at least throughout their lower portions. A board of engineers appointed by the commissioners of the Croton Aqueduct in the summer of 1901 made a large number of examinations in the earth embankments in the Croton watershed, and found that with scarcely an exception those embankments were saturated throughout the lower portions of their masses, although in every case a masonry core-wall had been built. The results of those investigations showed that the water had percolated through the earth portion of the embankments and even through the core-walls, which had been carried down to bed-rock. This induced saturation, more or less, of the material on the down-stream slopes of the embankments. When material is thus filled with water, unless it is suitably selected, it is apt to become soft and unstable, so that any superincumbent weight resting upon it might produce failure. The fact that such embankments may become saturated with water fixes limits to their heights, since the surface of saturation in the interior of the bank has generally a flatter slope than that of the exterior surface. The height of the embankment therefore should be such that the exterior slope cannot cut into the saturated material at its foot, at least to any great extent. From what precedes it is evident that the height of an earth embankment will depend largely upon the slope of the exterior surface. This slope is made 1 vertical to 2, 2½, or 3 horizontal. The more gradual slope is sometimes preferable.

It is advisable also to introduce terraces and to encourage the growth of sod so as to protect the surface from wash. The inner paved slope may be as steep as 1 vertical to $1\frac{1}{2}$ or 2 horizontal.



Earth Dams in Croton Watershed, showing Slopes of Saturation.

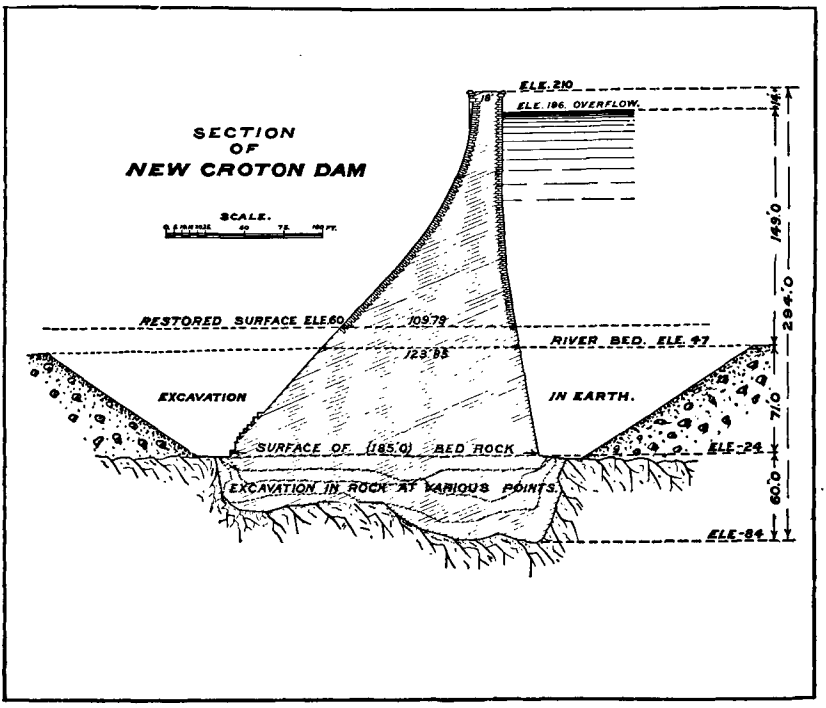
181. Gate-houses, and Pipe-lines in Embankments. — It is necessary to construct the requisite pipe-lines and conduits leading from the storage-reservoirs to the points of consumption, and sometimes such lines bring the water to the reservoir. Wherever such pipes-line or conduits either enter or leave a reservoir gates and valves must be provided so as properly to control the admission and outflow of the water. These gate-houses, as they are called, because they contain the gates or valves and such other appurtenances or details as are requisite for operation and maintenance, are usually built of substantial masonry. They are the special outward features of every reservoir construction, and their architecture should be characteristic and suitable to the functions which they perform. Where the pipes are carried through embankments it is necessary to use special precautions to prevent the water from flowing along their exterior surfaces. Many reservoirs have been constructed under defective design in this respect, and their embankments have failed. Frequently

small masonry walls are built around the pipes and imbedded in the bank, so as to form stops for any initial streams of water that might find their way along the pipe. In short, every care and resource known to the civil engineer must be employed in reservoir construction to make its bottom and its banks proof against leakage and to secure permanence and stability in every feature.

182. High Masonry Dams.—The greatest depths of water impounded in reservoirs are found usually where it is necessary to construct a high dam across the course of a river, as at the new Croton dam. In such cases it is not uncommon to require a dam over 75 to 100 feet high above the original bed of the river, which is usually constructed of masonry with foundations carried down to bed-rock in order to secure suitable stability and prevent flow or leakage beneath the structure. It is necessary to secure that result not only along the foundation-bed of the dam, but around its ends, and special care is taken in those portions of the work.

The new Croton dam is the highest masonry structure of its class yet built. The crest of its masonry overflow-weir is 149 feet above the original river-bed, with the extreme top of the masonry work of the remaining portion of the dam carried 14 feet higher. A depth of earth and rock excavation of 131 feet below the river-bed was necessary in order to secure a suitable foundation on bed-rock. The total maximum height, therefore, of the new Croton dam, from the lowest foundation-point to the extreme top, is 294 feet, and the depth of water at the up-stream face of the dam will be 136 feet when the overflow is just beginning, or 140 feet if 4 feet additional head be secured by the use of flash-boards. In the prosecution of this class of work it is necessary not only to reach bed-rock, but to remove all soft portions of it down to sound hard material, to clean out all crevices and fissures of sensible size, refilling them with hydraulic cement mortar or concrete, and to shape the exposed rock surfaces so as to make them at least approximately normal to the resultant loads upon them, to secure a complete and as nearly as possible water-tight bond with the superimposed masonry. If any streams or other small watercourses should

be encountered, they must either be stopped or led off where they will not affect the work, or, as is sometimes done, the water issuing from them may be carried safely through the masonry



Cross-section of New Croton Dam.

mass in small pipes. The object is to keep as much water out of the foundation-bed as possible, so as to eliminate upward pressure underneath the dam caused by the head of water in the subsequently full reservoir. It is a question how much dependence can be placed upon the exclusion of water from the foundation-bed. In the best class of work undoubtedly the bond can be good enough to exclude more or less water, but it is probably only safe and prudent so to design the dam as to be stable even though water be not fully excluded.

The stability of the masonry dam must be secured both for the reservoir full and empty. With a full reservoir the horizontal pressure of water on the up-stream face tends to overturn

the dam down-stream. When the water is entirely withdrawn the pressure under the up-stream edge of the foundation becomes much greater, so that safety and stability under both extreme conditions must be assured. There are a number of systems of computation to which engineers resort in order to secure a design which shall certainly be stable under all conditions. That which is commonly employed in this country is based upon two fundamental propositions, under one of which the pressure at any point in the entire masonry mass must not exceed a certain safe amount per square foot, while the other is of a more technical character, requiring that the centre of pressure shall, in every horizontal plane of the dam, approach nowhere nearer than one third the horizontal thickness of the masonry to one edge of it. A further condition is also prescribed which prevents any portion of the dam from slipping or sliding over that below it. As a matter of fact when the first two conditions are assured the third is usually fulfilled concurrently. Obviously there will be great advantage accruing to a dam if the entire mass of masonry is essentially monolithic. In order that that may be the case either concrete or rubble is usually employed for the great mass of the masonry structure, the exterior surfaces frequently being composed of a shell of cut stone, so as to provide a neat and tasteful finish. This exterior skin or layer of cut masonry need not average more than $1\frac{1}{2}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet thick.

The pressures prescribed for safety in the construction of masonry dams vary from about 16,000 to 28,000 or 30,000 pounds per square foot. Sometimes, as in the masonry dams found in the Croton watershed, limits of 16,000 to 20,000 pounds per square foot are prescribed for the upper portions of the dams and a gradually increasing pressure up to 30,000 pounds per square foot in passing downward to the foundation-bed. There are reasons of a purely technical character why the prescribed safe working pressure must be taken less on the down-stream or front side of the dam than on the up-stream or rear face.

The section of a masonry dam designed under the conditions outlined will secure stability through the weight of the structure alone, hence it is called a gravity section. In some cases the rock bed and sides of a ravine in which the stream must be

dammed will permit a curved structure to be built, the curvature being so placed as to be convex up-stream or against the water pressure. In such a case the dam really becomes a hori-

Foundation Masonry of New Croton Dam.

zontal arch and, if the curvature is sufficiently sharp, it may be designed as an arch horizontally pressed. The cross-section then has much less thickness (and hence less area) than if designed on a straight line so as to produce a gravity section. A number of such dams have been built, and one very remarkable example of its kind is the Bear Valley dam in California; it was built as a part of the irrigation system.

CHAPTER XVII.

183. Gravity Supplies.—When investigation has shown that a sufficient quantity of water may be obtained for a required public supply from any of the sources to which reference has been made, and that a sufficient storage capacity may be provided to meet the exigencies of low rainfall years, it will be evident if the water can be delivered to the points of consumption by gravity, or whether pumping must be employed, or recourse be made to both agencies.

If the elevation of the source of supply is sufficiently great to permit the water to flow by gravity either to storage-reservoirs or to service-reservoirs and thence to the points of consumption, a proper pipe-line or conduit must be designed to afford a suitable channel. If the topography permits, a conduit may be laid which does not run full, but which has sufficient grade or slope to induce the water to flow in it as if it were an open channel. This is the character of such great closed masonry channels as the new and old Croton aqueducts of the New York water-supply and the Sudbury and Wachusetts aqueducts of the Boston supply. These conduits are of brick masonry backed with concrete carried sometimes on embankments and sometimes through rock tunnels. When they act like open channels a very small slope is employed, 0.7 of a foot per mile being a ruling gradient for the new Croton aqueduct, and 1 foot per mile for the Sudbury. Where these conduits cross depressions and follow approximately the surface, or where they pass under rivers, their construction must be changed so that they will not only run full, but under greater or less pressure, as the case may be.

184. Masonry Conduits.—In general the conduits employed to bring water from the watersheds to reservoirs at or near places

of consumption may be divided into two classes, masonry and metal, although timber-stave pipes of large diameter are much used in the western portion of the country. The masonry conduits obviously cannot be permitted to run full, meaning under pressure, for the reason that masonry is not adapted to resist the tension which would be created under the head or pressure of water induced in the full pipe. They must rather be so employed as to permit the water to flow with its upper surface exposed to the atmosphere, although masonry conduits are always closed at the top. In other words, they must be permitted to run partially full, the natural grade or slope of the water surface in them inducing the necessary velocity of flow or current. Evidently the velocity in such masonry conduits is comparatively small, seldom exceeding about 3 feet per second. The new and old Croton aqueducts, the Sudbury and Wachusetts aqueducts of the Metropolitan Water-supply of Boston, are excellent types of such conveyors of water. They are sometimes of circular shape, but more frequently of the horseshoe outline for the sides and top, with an inverted arch at the bottom for the purpose of some concentration of flow when a small amount of water is being discharged and for structural reasons.

The interiors of these conduits are either constructed of brick or they may be of concrete or other masonry affording smooth surfaces. In the latest construction Portland-cement concrete or that concrete reinforced with light rods of iron or steel is much used. Bricks, if employed, should be of good quality and laid accurately to the outline desired with about $\frac{1}{4}$-inch joints, so as to offer as smooth a surface as possible for the water to flow over. In special cases the interiors of these conduits may be finished with a smooth coating of Portland-cement mortar. If conduits are supported on embankments, great care must be exercised in constructing their foundation supports, since any sensible settlement would be likely to form cracks through which much water might easily escape. When carried through tunnels they are frequently made circular in outline. They must occasionally be cleaned, especially in view of the fact that low orders of vegetable growths appear on their sides and so obstruct the free flow of water.

185. Metal Conduits.—Metal conduits have been much used within the past fifteen or twenty years. Among the most prominent of these are the Hemlock Lake aqueduct of the Rochester Water-works, and that of the East Jersey Water Company through which the water-supply of the city of Newark, N. J., flows. When these metal conduits or pipes equal 24 to 30 or more inches in diameter they are usually made of steel plates, the latter being of such thickness as is required to resist the pressure acting within them. The riveted sections of these pipes may be of cylindrical shape, each alternate section being sufficiently small in diameter just to enter the other alternate sections of little larger diameter, the interior diameter of the larger sections obviously being equal to the interior diameter of the smaller sections plus twice the thickness of the plate. Each section may also be slightly conical in shape, the larger ends having a diameter just large enough to pass sufficiently over the smaller end of the next section to form a joint. Large cast-iron pipes are also sometimes used to form these metal conduits up to an interior diameter of 48 inches. The selection of the type of conduit within the limits of diameter adapted to both metals is usually made a matter of economy. The interior of the cast-iron pipe is smoother than that of the riveted steel, although this is not a serious matter in deciding upon the type of pipe to be used.

Steel-plate conduits have been manufactured and used up to a diameter of 9 feet. In this case the pipe was used in connection with water-power purposes and with a length of 153 feet only, the plates being $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick. The steel-plate conduits of the East Jersey Water Company's pipes are as follows:

Diameter.	Thickness.	Length.
48 inches	$\frac{1}{4}$ inch	
48 "	$\frac{5}{16}$ "	.... 21 miles.
48 "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "	
36 "	$\frac{1}{4}$ "	..... 5 "

The diameters and lengths of the metal pipes or conduits of

the Hemlock Lake conduit of the Rochester Water-works are as follows:

36-inch wrought-iron pipe..	9.60	miles.
24 " " " ..	2.96	"
24 " cast-iron pipe.....	15.82	"
Total.....	28.39	"

All metal conduits or pipes are carefully coated with a suitable asphalt or tar preparation or varnish applied hot and sometimes baked before being put in place. This is for the purpose of protecting the metal against corrosion. Cast-iron pipes have been used longer and much more extensively than wrought iron or steel, but an experience extending over thirty to forty years has shown that the latter class of pipes possesses satisfactory durability and may be used to advantage whenever economical considerations may be served.

186. General Formula for Discharge of Conduits — Chezy's Formula.—It is imperative in designing aqueducts of either masonry or metal to determine their discharging capacity, which in general will depend largely upon the slope of channel or head of water and the resistance offered by the bed or interior of the pipe to the flow of water. The resistance of liquid friction is so much more than all others in this class of water-conveyors that it is usually the only one considered. There is a certain formula much used by civil engineers for this purpose; it is known as Chezy's formula, for the reason that it was first established by the French engineer Antoine Chezy about the year 1775, although it is an open question whether the beginnings of the formula were not made twenty or more years prior to that date. Its demonstration involves the general consideration of the resistance which a liquid meets in flowing over any surface, such as that of the interior of a pipe or conduit, or the bed and banks of a stream.

The force of liquid friction is found to be proportional to the heaviness of the liquid (i.e., to the weight of a cubic unit, such as a cubic foot), to the area of wetted surface over which the liquid flows, and nearly to the square of the velocity with which the

liquid moves. Hence if l' is the length of channel, p the wetted portion of the perimeter of the cross-section, w the weight of a cubic unit of the liquid, and v the velocity, the total force of liquid friction for the length l' of channel will be $F = \zeta w p l' v^2$, ζ being the coefficient of liquid friction. The path of the force

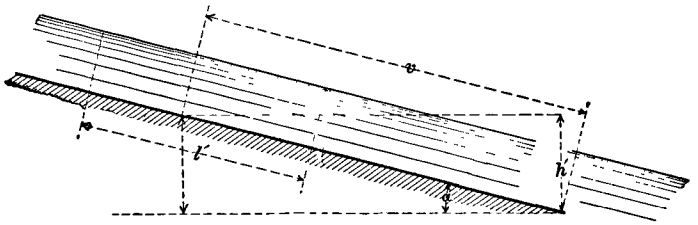


FIG. 2.

F for a unit of time is v, and the work W which it performs in that unit of time is equal to the weight wal' falling through the height h', a being the area of the cross-section of the stream.

Hence
$$W = \zeta w p l' v^2 . v = wal'h'. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (7)$$

$$\zeta v^2 v = \frac{a}{p} h', \quad v = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\zeta} \frac{a}{p} \frac{h'}{v}} = c\sqrt{rs}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (8)$$

In this equation

$$c = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\zeta}}; \quad r = \frac{a}{p} = \text{hydraulic mean radius};$$
$$s = \frac{h'}{v} = \text{sine of inclination of stream's bed.}$$

As the motion of the water is assumed to be uniform, the head lost by friction for the total length of channel l is the total fall h, and by equation (8), since $\frac{h'}{v} = s = \frac{h}{l}$,

$$h = \frac{v^2}{c^2} \frac{l}{\frac{a}{p}}. \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (9)$$

If, as in the case of the ordinary cast-iron water-pipes of a public supply system, the cross-section a is circular,

$$\frac{a}{p} = \frac{\pi \frac{d^2}{4}}{\pi d} = \frac{d}{4},$$

and

$$h = \frac{4.2g}{c^2} \frac{l}{d} \frac{v^2}{2g} = f \frac{l}{d} \frac{v^2}{2g}, \quad \ldots\ldots (10)$$

in which $f = 8g \div c^2$.

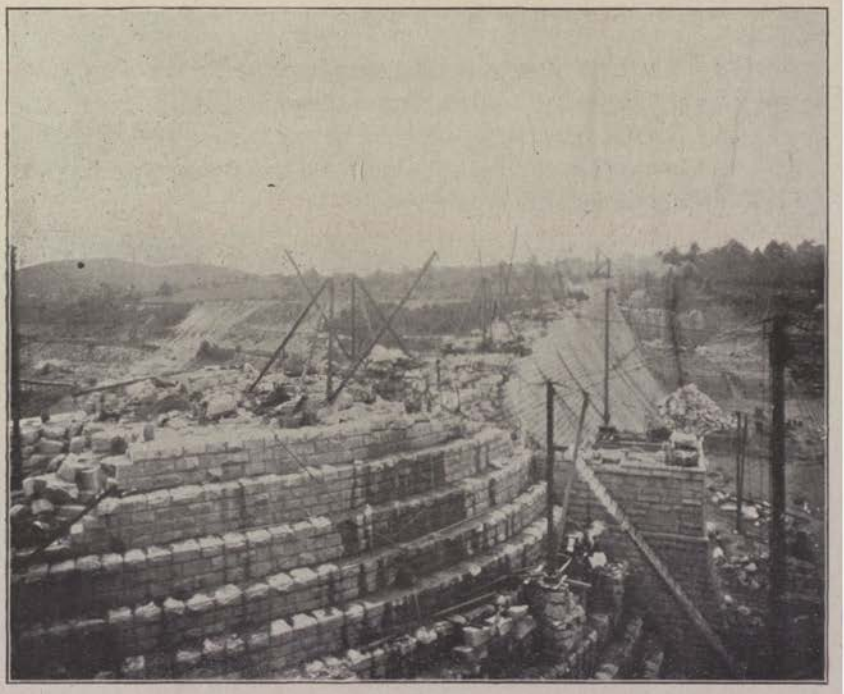
The quantity f is sometimes called the "friction factor." For smooth, new pipes from 4 feet down to 3 inches in diameter its value may be taken from .015 to .03. An approximate mean value may be taken at .02.

The last member of equation (8) is Chezy's formula, and it is one of the most used expressions in hydraulic engineering. Some values for the coefficient c will presently be given. The quantity r found by dividing the area of the cross-section of the stream by the wetted portion of its perimeter is called the "hydraulic mean radius," or simply the "mean radius." The other quantity, s, appearing in the formula is, as shown by the figure, the sine of the inclination of the bed of the stream.

In order to determine the discharge of any pipe, conduit, or open channel carrying a known depth of water, it is only necessary to compute r and s from known data and select such a value of the coefficient c as may best fit the circumstances of the particular case in question. The substitution of those quantities in Chezy's formula, i.e., equation (8), will give the mean velocity v of the water which, when multiplied by the area of cross-section of the stream, will give the discharge of the latter per second of time. It is customary to compute r in feet. The coefficient c is always determined so as to give velocity in feet per second of time. Hence if the area of the cross-section of the stream, a, is taken in square feet, as is ordinarily the case, the discharge av will be in cubic feet per second.

187. Kutter's Formula.—The coefficient c in Chezy's formula is not a constant quantity, but it varies with the mean radus r, with the sine of inclination s, and with the character of the bottom

and sides of the open channel, i.e., with the roughness of the interior surface of the closed pipe. Many efforts have been made and much labor expended in order to find an expression for this coefficient which may accurately fit various streams and pipes. These efforts have met with only a moderate degree of success.



Progress View of Construction of New Croton Dam.

The form of expression for c which is used most among engineers is that known as Kutter's formula, as it was established by the Swiss engineer W. R. Kutter. This formula is as follows:

$$c = \frac{\sqrt{r}}{n}\left(\frac{\frac{1.811}{n} + 41.65 + \frac{.00281}{s}}{\frac{\sqrt{r}}{n} + 41.65 + \frac{.00281}{s}}\right).$$

The quantity n in this formula is called the "coefficient of roughness," since its value depends upon the character of the surface

over which the water flows. It has the following set of values for the surfaces indicated:

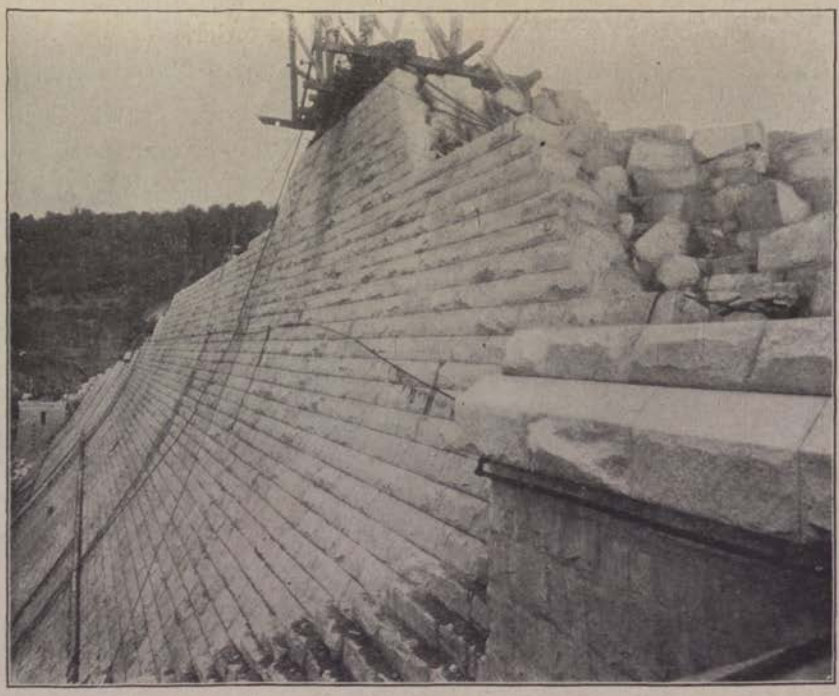
$n = 0.009$ for well-planed timber;
$n = 0.010$ for neat cement;
$n = 0.011$ for cement with one third sand;
$n = 0.012$ for unplaned timber;
$n = 0.013$ for ashlar and brickwork;
$n = 0.015$ for unclean surfaces in sewers and conduits;
$n = 0.017$ for rubble masonry;
$n = 0.020$ for canals in very firm gravel;
$n = 0.025$ for canals and rivers free from stones and weeds;
$n = 0.030$ for canals and rivers with some stones and weeds;
$n = 0.035$ for canals and rivers in bad order.

188. Hydraulic Gradient. — Before illustrating the use of Chezy's formula in connection with masonry and metal conduits, of which mention has already been made, it is best to define another quantity constantly used in connection with closed iron or steel pipes. This quantity is called the "hydraulic gradient." If a closed iron or steel pipe is running full of water and under pressure and if small vertical tubes be inserted in the top of the pipe with their lower ends bent so as to be at right angles to its axis, the water will rise to heights in the tubes depending upon the pressures of water in the pipe or conduit at the points of insertion. Such tubes with the water columns in them are called piezometers. They are constantly used in connection with water-pipes in order to show the pressures at the points where they are inserted. A number of such pipes being inserted along an iron pipe or conduit, a line may be imagined to be drawn through the upper surfaces of the columns of water, and that line is called the "hydraulic gradient." It represents the upper surface of water in an open channel discharging with the same velocity existing in the closed pipe.

In case Chezy's formula is used to determine the velocity of discharge in a closed pipe running under pressure, the sine of inclination s must be that of the hydraulic gradient and not the sine of inclination of the axis of the closed pipe. In the determination of this quantity s by the use of piezometer tubes, if a

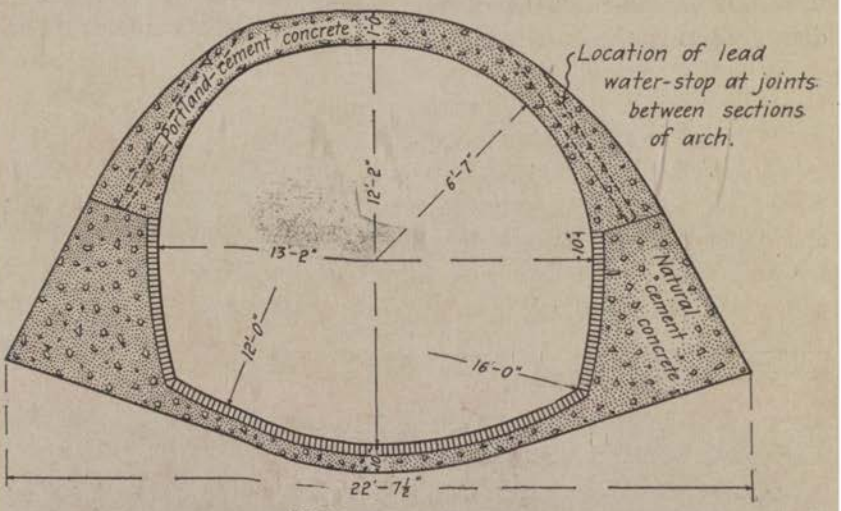
straight pipe remains of constant section between any two points, it is only necessary to insert the tubes at those points and observe the difference in levels of the water columns in them. That difference of levels or elevations will represent the height which is to be divided by the length of pipe or conduit between the same two points in order to determine the sine *s*.

The hydraulic gradient plays a very important part in the construction of a long pipe-line or conduit. If any part of the pipe should rise above the hydraulic gradient, the discharge would no longer be full below that point. It is necessary, therefore, always to lay the pipe or the closed conduit so that all parts of

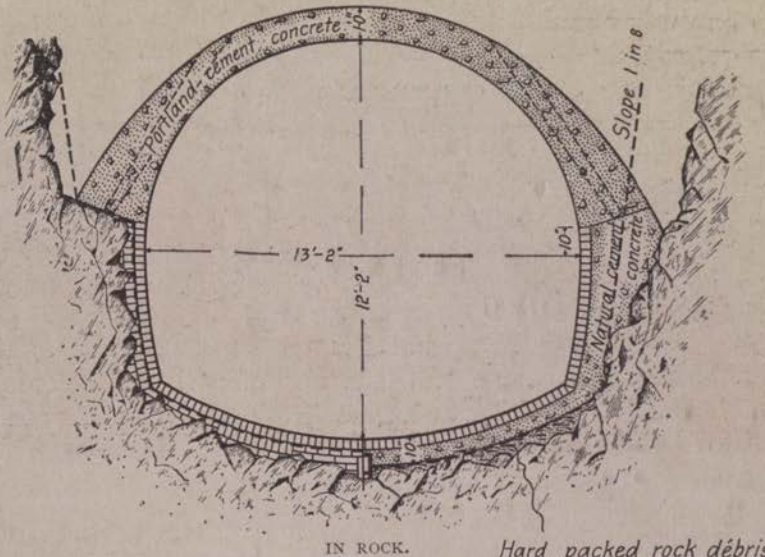


Progress View of Construction of New Croton Dam.

it shall be below the hydraulic gradient. Caution is obviously necessary to lay a pipe carrying water deep enough below the surface of the ground in cold climates to protect the water against freezing. At the same time if the pipe-line is a long one it must follow the surface of the ground approximately in order to save



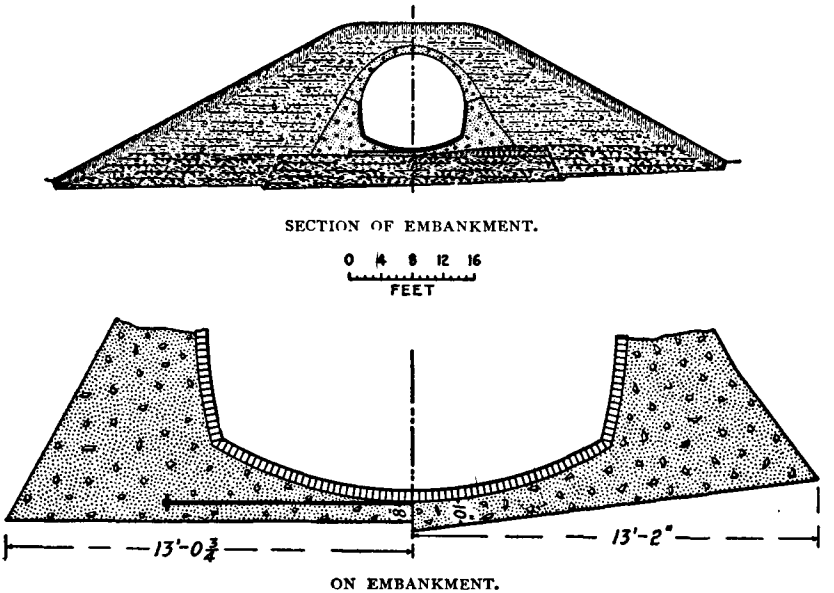
IN LOOSE EARTH.



IN ROCK.

Weston Aqueduct. Sections of Aqueduct and Embankment.

expensive cutting. There will, therefore, generally be summits in pipe-lines, and inasmuch as all potable water carries some air dissolved in it, that air is liable to accumulate at the high points



Weston Aqueduct. Sections of Aqueduct and Embankment. Gradient, 1 in 5000.

or summits. If that accumulation goes on long enough, it will seriously trench upon the carrying capacity of the pipe and decrease its flow. It is therefore necessary to provide at summits what are called blow-off cocks to let the air escape. At the low points of the pipe-line, on the contrary, the solid matter, such as sand and dirt, carried by the water is liable to accumulate, and it is customary to arrange blow-offs also at such points, so as to enable some of the water to escape and carry with it the sand and dirt.

189. Flow of Water in Large Masonry Conduits.—In order to apply Chezy's formula first to the flow of the masonry aqueducts of the New York and Boston water-supplies, it is necessary to have the outlines of those conduits so that the wetted perimeter and hence the mean radius may be determined for any depth of water in them.

The figure shows the desired cross-sections drawn carefully to scale. Table XIV has been computed and arranged from data taken from various official sources so as to show the depth,

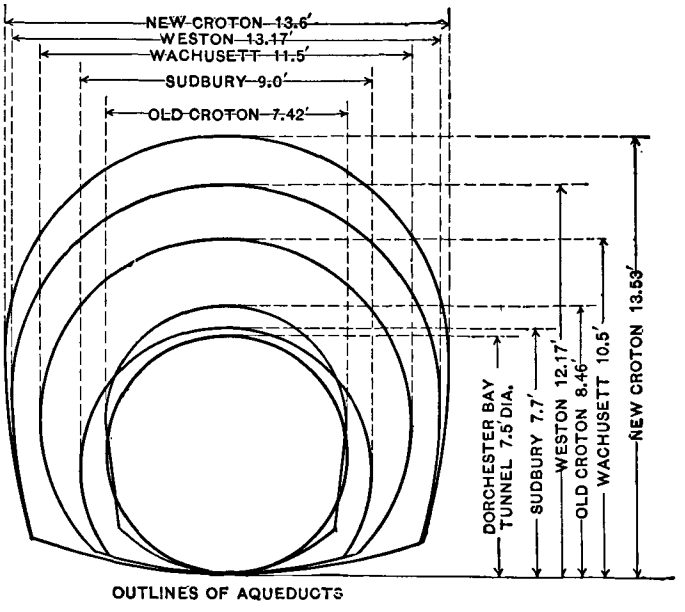


FIG. 3.

mean velocity, discharge per second and per twenty-four hours, and the coefficient used in Chezy's formula, together with the coefficient of roughness n in Kutter's formula for the conduits shown in the figure.

This table exhibits in a concise and clear manner the use of Chezy's formula in this class of hydraulic work.

190. Flow of Water through Large Closed Pipes. — The masonry conduits to which consideration has been given in the preceding paragraphs carry water precisely as in an open canal, but the closed conduits or pipes of steel plates and cast iron, like the Hemlock Lake conduit at Rochester and the East Jersey conduit of the Newark Water-works, are of an entirely different

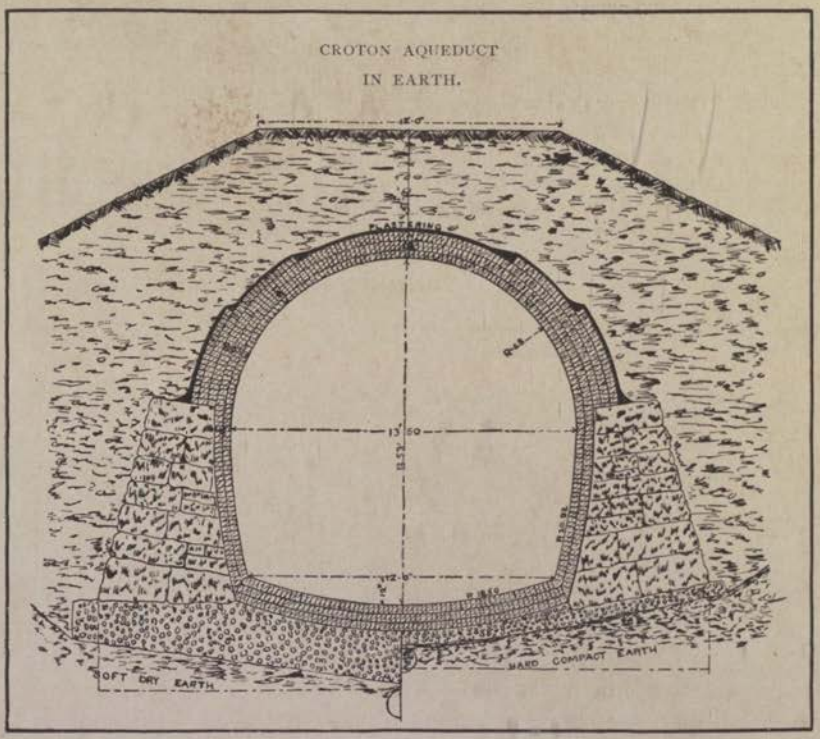
TABLE XIV.

Aqueducts.	Depth, in Feet.	Hydraulic Radius r, Feet.	Grade s.	Coefficient c.	Mean Velocity, Feet.	Discharge.		n in Kutter's Formula.
						Cubic Feet per Second.	Gallons per 24 Hours.	
* New Croton (1899).....	8.42	3.974	.0001326	153.3	3.52	371.6	240,200,000	
* " " (after two years' use)	.....	2.338	"	131.3	2.312	.....	.....	.0133
† " "	.....	1	"	119.3	1.374			
† " "	.....	1.5	"	126.3	1.781			
† " "	.....	2	"	129.8	2.114			
† " "	.....	2.5	"	132	2.404			
† " "	.....	3	"	133.4	2.661			
† " "	.....	3.5	"	134	2.887			
† " "	.....	4	"	134.4	3.095			
Old Croton (1899) clean.....	6	2.338	.....	133.4	2.958	122.8	79,400,000	.0133
" " ordinary condition; not clean	6	2.338	.....	123.2	.....	.....	73,300,000	
" " not clean.....	7.33	2.368	.....	118.2	.....	.....	85,600,000	
Dorchester Bay tunnel.....	.....	1.875	.....	119				
" "	.....	2.338	.....	125.0	.....	.....	.....	.014
Wachusetts, new; probably clean (approx.)...	.....	.....	.....	144.9				
Sudbury, clean.....	.....	.5	.000189	116.9	1.14			
" "	.....	1.0	"	127.0	1.74			
" "	.....	1.5	"	133.3	2.24			
" "	.....	2.0	"	137.8	2.68			
" "	.....	2.5	"	140.4	3.04			

* From report by J. R. Freeman to B. S. Coler, 1899.
† From report of New York Aqueduct Commission.

type, as they carry water under pressure. Hence the slope or sine of inclination s belongs to the hydraulic gradient rather than to the grade of the pipe itself. Where the pipe-line is a long one its average grade frequently does not differ much from the hydraulic gradient, but the latter quantity must always be used. As in the case of the masonry conduits, the coefficient c in Chezy's formula will vary considerably with the degree of roughness of the interior surface of the pipe, with the slope s, and with the mean radius r. An important distinction must be made between riveted steel pipes and those of cast iron, for the reason that the rivet-heads on the inside of the former exert an appreciable influence upon the coefficient c. The rivet-heads add to the roughness or unevenness of the interior of the pipe. Table XV gives the elements of the flow or discharge in the two pipe-lines which have been taken as types, as determined by actual meas-

urements; it also exhibits similar elements for timber-stave pipes, to which reference will be made later.



As would be expected, the velocity of flow in these pipes may be and generally is considerably higher than the velocity of movement in masonry channels. Both Tables XV and XVI give considerable range of coefficients computed and arranged from authoritative sources, and the coefficients c for Chezy's formula represent the best hydraulic practice in connection with such works at the present time. In using the formula for any special case, great care must be taken to select a value for c which has been established for conditions as closely as possible to those in question. This is essential in order that the results of estimated discharges may not be disappointing, as they sometimes have been where that condition so necessary to accuracy has not been fulfilled.

TABLE XV.

VALUES OF COEFFICIENT *c*.

Pipe-line.	Diameter.	Hydraulic Radius *r*.	Hydraulic Gradient.	Mean Velocity.
Hemlock Lake	36″ wrought iron	9″	.000411	1.532
" "	24″ wr't and cast	6″	.00239	3.448
Rush Lake to Mt. Hope	24″ cast iron	6″	.00255	3.448
Sudbury aqueduct	48″ " "	12″	.....	3.738
" "	48″ " "	12″	.....	4.965
" "	48″ " "	12″	.....	6.195
" "	48″ " "	12″	.....	3.738
" "	48″ " "	12″	.....	4.965
" "	48″ " "	12″	.....	6.195
East Jersey Water Co.	48″ steel riveted pipe	12″	.002	4.62
Timber-stave pipe, Ogden, Utah	72″.5	.....	.....	.5
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	1.0
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	1.5
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	2.
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	2.5
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	3.0
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	3.5
" " " " "	72″.5	.....	.....	4.0

Pipe-line.	Coefficient *c*.	Discharge.		Remarks.
		Cubic Feet per Second.	Gallons per 24 Hours.	
Hemlock Lake	87.3	10.83124	7,000,000	
" "	99.7	10.83124	7,000,000	1892.
Rush Lake to Mt. Hope	96.5	10.83124	7,000,000	
Sudbury aqueduct	140.14	.....	.....	Pipe new 1880.
" "	142.11	.....	.....	
" "	144.09	.....	.....	
" "	139.94*	.....	.....	After cleaning, 1894–95.
" "	141.74*	.....	.....	
" "	143.16*	.....	.....	Before cleaning, $c = 108$
East Jersey Water Co.	103.3	58.02	37,500,000	1891.
Timber-stave pipe, Ogden, Utah	72	.....	.....	1897.
" " "	96			
" " "	109			
" " "	115			
" " "	119			
" " "	122			
" " "	124			
" " "	126			

* These values correspond to the formula $c = 131.88v^{0.045}$.

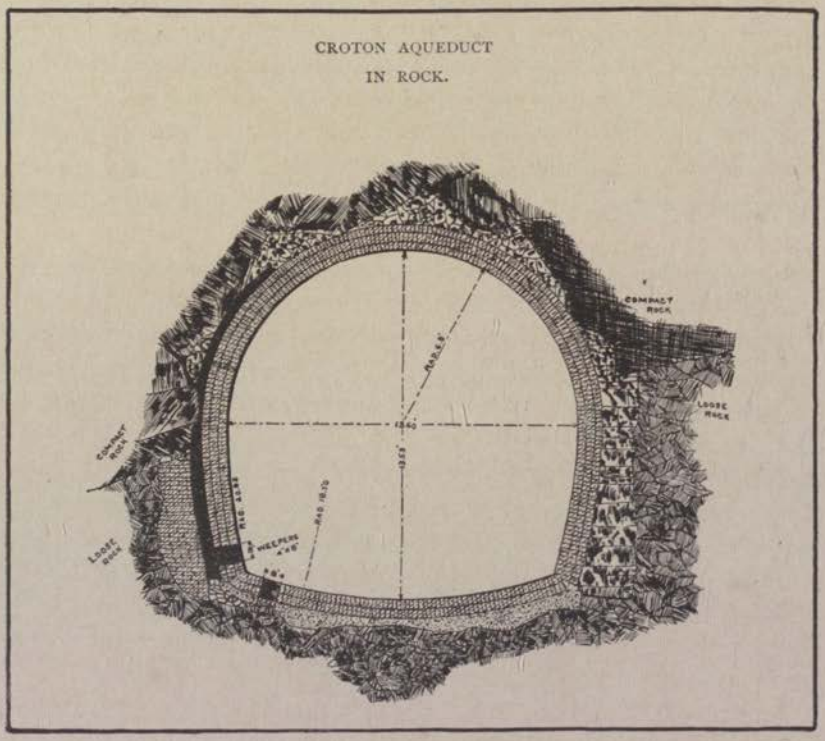
TABLE XVI.

VALUES OF c IN $v = c\sqrt{rs}$.

	No...	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
	Age...	New	4 Years	New	New	New	New	New	New	4 Years	4 Years	New	New	5 Years
Velocity, Feet per sec.	Diam. Inches.	36	36	38	38	42	42	42	48	48	48	48	72	103
0.5	c in $v = c\sqrt{rs}$.	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	110	126.5
1		86	.....	.....	.....	.....	96	101	101.2	78	97.2	97.1	110	116.6
1.48														
1.5		90.6	.....	.....	.....	.....	103	102.8	105.4	84.6	100.8	98.7	111	112.7
2 0		95.2					107.9	104.3	108.8	89.6	103.3	100.3	110	110.3
2.44		.....	.....	.....	.....	115.9								
2.5		99.4	.....	.....	.....	.....	111	105.5	111.2	92.4	104.9	101.6	108	108.8
3		103.3	.....	.....	.....	.....	112.6	106.4	111.8	93	105.3	102.2	108	107.7
3.23		.....	.....	114										
3.27		.....	.....	116.6										
3.32														
3.5		107	.....	.....	.....	.....	113	107.2	113.4	93.2	104.8	103.6	110	106.9
3.52														
3.9		.....	.....	.....	109.2									
3.96														
4		110.6	.....	.....	.....	.....	112.8	107.8	113.2	94	104	104.2	111	106.2
4.5		114	.....	.....	.....	.....	111.8	108.2	112.4	94.2	103.7	104.7	.....	105.6
4.93		.....	106.3											
5		117.2	.....	.....	.....	.....	110.8	108.4	112	94.4	103.7	105.1		
5.5		120.4	.....	.....	.....	.....	110.2	108.5	111.7	94.7	103.7	105.2		
6		123.6	.....	.....	.....	.....	110	108.5	111.6	94.9	103.7	105.2		
12.6														
Kutter's n = coefficient of roughness		.014	.013	.013	.013	.013	.013	.013	.013	.016	.014	.014	.014	.015

Exp. Nos. 1–2. Clemens Herschel, 1892. East Jersey Conduit, cylindrical joints.
Nos. 3–4. E. Kuichling, 1895. New Rochester conduit, cylindrical joints.
No. 5. I. W. Smith, 1896. Portland, Oregon, water-works.
Nos. 6–7. Clemens Herschel, 1896. East Jersey conduit, taper joints.
No. 8. Clemens Herschel, 1892. East Jersey conduit, cylindrical joints.
Nos. 9–10. Clemens Herschel, 1896. East Jersey conduit, cylindrical joints.
No. 11. Clemens Herschel, 1896. East Jersey conduit, taper joints.
No. 12. Marx, Wing, Hoskins, 1897. Pioneer El. Power Co., Ogden, Utah.
No. 13. Clemens Herschel, 1887. Holyoke, Mass., testing flume.

191. Change of Hydraulic Gradient by Changing Diameter of Pipe.—It has already been seen, in the case of closed pipes or conduits, that the hydraulic gradient with slope s governs the velocity of flow, and also that all parts of the pipe-line must be kept below that gradient. It is sometimes desirable, in order to



meet conditions either of topography or of flow, to raise or lower the hydraulic gradient over the whole or some portion of the pipe-line. This can easily be done to any needed extent by varying the diameter of the pipe. An increase in diameter will in general decrease the velocity of the water and increase its pressure, thus increasing correspondingly the height of the columns of water in the piezometer-tubes. As the top surface of the latter determines the hydraulic gradient, it is seen that increasing the diameter of a portion of the pipe-line will correspondingly raise the gradient over the same portion. Thus by

a proper relative variation of diameters the hydraulic gradient of a given pipe-line may readily be controlled within sufficient limits to meet any ordinary requirements of this character.

192. Control of Flow by Gates at Upper End of Pipe-line. — Obviously, if the pressure in the pipe-line is diminished, less thickness of metal will be required to resist it, and a corresponding degree of economy may be reached by a decrease in the quantity of metal. In the 21 miles of 48-inch steel-plate pipe of the East Jersey Water Company there is a fall of 340 feet; if, therefore, the flow through that pipe were regulated by a gate or gates at its lower end, the lower portion of the line would be subjected to great intensity of pressure. If, however, the flow through the pipe is controlled by a gate or gates at its upper end, enough water only may be admitted to enable it to flow full with the velocity due to the hydraulic gradient. By such a procedure the pressure upon the pipe over and above that which is necessary to produce the gradient is avoided. This condition is not only judicious in the reduction of the amount of metal required, but also in reducing both the leakage and the tendency to further leakage, which is largely increased by high pressures. This feature of control of pressure in a long pipe-line with considerable fall is always worthy of most careful consideration.

193. Flow in Old and New Cast-iron Pipes—Tubercles.—The velocity of flow through cast-iron mains or conduits or through the cast-iron pipes of a distribution system of public water-supply depends largely upon the condition of the interior surface of the pipes as affected by age. All cast-iron pipes before being shipped from the foundry where they are manufactured are immersed in a hot bath of suitable coal-tar pitch composition in order to protect them from corrosion. After having been in use a few years this coating on the interior of the pipes is worn off in spots and corrosion at once begins. The iron oxide produced under these circumstances forms projections, or tubercles as they are called, of greatly exaggerated volume and out of all proportion to the actual weight of oxide of iron. When the pipes are emptied these tubercles are readily removed by scraping, but before their removal they greatly obstruct the flow of water through the pipes. Indeed this obstruction is so great

that the discharging capacity of cast-iron mains must be treated in view of its depreciation from this source.

Table XVII exhibits the value of the coefficient c to be used in Chezy's formula for all cast-iron pipes having been in use for the periods shown.

TABLE XVII.

TABLE OF VALUES OF f AND c.

Authority.	Pipe-line.	Diameter, Inches.	Hydraulic Radius r, Inches.	Velocity, Feet per Second.	Coefficient c.	Coefficient f.
Darcy	New pipe	3.22	.8	0.29	78.5	.0418
				10.71	100.0	.0257
Darcy	Old cast-iron pipe lined with deposit	9.63	2.41	1.00	72.5	.0489
				12.42	74.0	.0468
Darcy	Pipe above cleaned.....	9.63	2.41	0.91	90.0	.0316
				14.75	98.0	.0269
Brush	Cast-iron pipe tar-coated and in service 5 years.	20	5	2.00	114.0	.0197
				3.00	110.0	.0214
Darrach	Cast-iron pipe in service 11 years	20	5	2.71	67.5	.0568
				5.11	83.0	.0376
Darrach	Cast-iron pipe in service 7 years	36	9	1.58	60.0	.0716
				2.37	66.0	0586

Obviously it is not possible to clean the smaller pipes of a distribution system, but large cast-iron conduits may be emptied at suitable periods and have their interior surfaces cleaned of tubercles or other accumulations. At the same time, if necessary, a new coal-tar coating can be applied.

Table XVIII exhibits the values of the coefficient c to be used in Chezy's formula for new and clean coated cast-iron pipes. It represents the results of actual hydraulic experience and is taken from Hamilton Smith's "Hydraulics." A comparison between this table and that which precedes will show how serious the effect of tubercles may be on the discharging capacity of a cast-iron pipe.

In using Chezy's formula, $v = c\sqrt{rs}$, in connection with either Table XVII or XVIII, the slope or sine of inclination s of the hydraulic gradient may be readily computed by equation (10), which gives the head lost by friction in a closed circular pipe as

TABLE XVIII.

VALUES OF c IN FORMULA: $v = c\sqrt{rs}$.

Velocity v, Feet per Second.	Diameters in Feet ($d = 4r$).												
	.05	.1	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	5	6	7	8
1	.....	80.0	96.1	102.8	108.8	112.7	116.7	120.2	123.0	127.8	131.8	134.8	137.5
2	77.8	88.9	104.0	110.9	116.2	120.3	123.8	127.0	129.9	134.3	138.0	141.0	143.3
3	82.4	93.7	108.7	115.6	120.8	124.8	128.3	131.4	134.2	138.6	142.3	145.4	147.6
4	85.6	97.0	112.0	118.9	124.0	128.1	131.5	134.6	137.4	141.9	145.5	148.6	151.0
5	87.6	99.3	114.4	121.3	126.5	130.6	134.1	137.1	140.0	144.7	148.1	151.2	153.6
6	89.1	101.0	116.3	123.2	128.6	132.6	136.3	139.4	142.3	146.9	150.5	153.5	
7	90.0	102.4	118.0	125.0	130.4	134.6	138.2	141.5	144.5	149.0	152.7		
8	90.6	103.3	119.3	126.4	132.0	136.3	140.0	143.3	146.3	151.0	154.9		
9	90.7	104.0	120.4	127.7	133.3	137.7	141.6	145.0	148.1	152.8	156.7		
10	90.8	104.5	121.4	128.8	134.5	139.0	142.9	146.4	149.7	154.6			
11	90.9	104.7	122.0	129.7	135.6	140.2	144.2	147.7	151.0				
12	91.0	104.8	122.5	130.4	136.4	141.1	145.2	148.8	152.3				
13	91.0	105.0	122.9	131.0	137.1	141.9	146.1	149.8	153.2				
14	91.0	105.0	123.2	131.5	137.6	142.5	146.7	150.5	154.0				
15	91.0	105.0	123.5	131.8	138.0	142.9	147.2	151.1	154.6				
20(?)	.....	.....	123.9	132.9									

$h = f\frac{l}{d}\frac{v^2}{2g}$. It is only necessary in a straight pipe or one nearly straight to compute the quantity $s = \frac{h}{l} = \frac{f}{d}\frac{v^2}{2g}$.

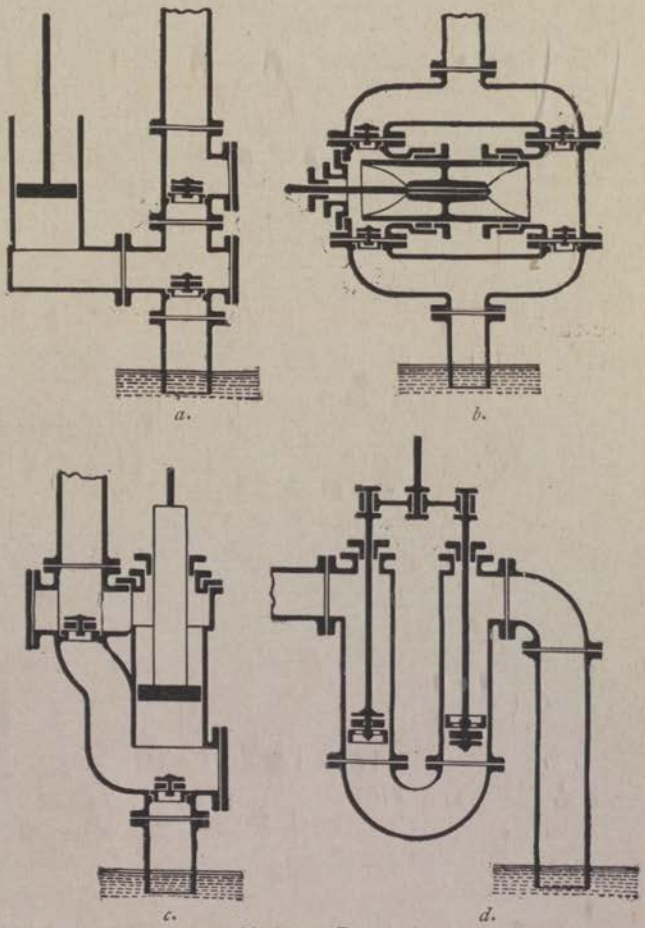
194. Timber-stave Pipes.—In the western part of the country long conduits or pipe-lines are frequently constructed of timber called redwood. Staves of suitable thickness, sometimes $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches, are accurately shaped and finished with smooth surfaces so as to form large pipes of any desired diameter. These staves are held rigidly in place with steel bands drawn tight with nuts on screw-ends, so as to close tightly the joints between them. Such wooden conduits are rapidly and cheaply built and are very durable. They have the further advantage of requiring no interior coating, as the timber surface remains indefinitely unaffected by the water flowing over it. The latter part of Table XV shows coefficients for Chezy's formula which may be used for such a class of timber conduits. As the interior surfaces of such closed conduits are always very smooth, the coefficients are seen to be relatively large, and such pipes are, therefore, well adapted to maintain unimpaired discharging capacity for great lengths of time.

CHAPTER XVIII.

195. Pumping and Pumps.—When it is impossible to secure water at sufficient elevation to be delivered to the points of consumption by gravity, it is necessary to resort to pumping in order to raise it to the desired level. Indeed it is sometimes necessary to resort to pumping in connection with a gravity supply in order to deliver water to the higher parts of the distribution system, the lower points being supplied by gravity. This combination of gravity supply with pumping is not unusual. That part of New York north of Thirty-fourth Street between Lexington and Fifth avenues, north of Thirty-fifth Street between Fifth and Sixth avenues, north of Fifty-first Street between Sixth and Ninth avenues, north of Fifty-fifth Street between Ninth and Tenth avenues, north of Fifty-eighth Street between Tenth and Eleventh avenues, and north of Seventy-second Street between Eleventh Avenue and the North River, with elevation of 60 feet or more above mean high tide-water, is supplied from the high-service reservoir near High Bridge, the water being elevated to it from the Croton supply by the pumping-station at the westerly end of the bridge. The elevation of the water surface in the High Bridge reservoir is 208 feet, and that of the large reservoir in Central Park 115 feet, above mean high tide-water. Some specially high points on the northern part of Manhattan Island are supplied from the High Bridge tower, whose water surface is 316 feet above mean high tide.

The pumps employed for the purpose of elevating water to distributing-reservoirs are among the finest pieces of machinery built by engineers at the present time. They are usually actuated by steam as a motive power, the steam being supplied from suitable boilers or batteries of boilers in which coal is generally used as fuel. The modern pumping-engine is in reality a combination

of three classes of machinery, the boilers, the steam-engines, and the pumps. There are various types of boilers as well as of engines and pumps, all, when judiciously designed and arranged, well adapted to the pumping-engine process. The pumps are



Skeleton Pumps.

generally what are called displacement pumps; that is, the water in the pump-cylinder is displaced by the reciprocating motion of a piston or plunger. These pumps may be either double-acting or single-acting; in the former case, as the piston or plunger moves in one direction it forces the water ahead of it into the

main or pipe leading up to the reservoir into which the water is to be delivered, while the water rising from the pump-well follows back of the piston or plunger to the end of its stroke. When the motion is reversed the latter water is forced on its way upward through the main, while the water rises from the pump-well into the other end of the water-cylinder. In the case of single-acting pumps water is drawn up into the water-cylinder from the pump-well during one stroke and forced up through the main during the next stroke, one operation only being performed at one time. The pump-well is a well or tank, usually of masonry, into which the water runs by gravity and from which the pump raises it to the reservoir. For the purposes of accessibility and convenience in repairing, the pump is always placed at an elevation above the water in the pump-well, the pressure of the atmosphere on the water in the well forcing the latter up into the pump-cylinder as the piston recedes in its stroke. The height of a column of water 1 square inch in section representing the pressure of the atmosphere per square inch is about 34 feet, but a pump-cylinder should not be placed more than about 18 feet above the surface of the water in the pump-well in order that the water may rise readily as it follows the stroke of the plunger.

In the operation of the ordinary pump the direction of the water as it flows into and out of the pump-cylinder must necessarily be reversed, and this is true also with the type of pump called the differential plunger-pump, which is really a single-acting pump designed so as to act in driving the water into the main like a double-acting pump, i.e., both motions of the plunger force water through the main, but only one draws water from the pump-well into the pump-cylinder. Valves may be so arranged in the pump-piston as to make the progress of the water through the pump continuous in one direction and so avoid the irregularities and shocks which necessarily arise to some extent from a reversal of the motion of the water.

The steam is used in the steam-cylinders of a pumping-engine precisely as in every other type of steam-engine. At the present time compound or triple-expansion engines are generally used, among the well-known types being the Worthington duplex direct-acting pump without crank or fly-wheel, the Gaskill crank and

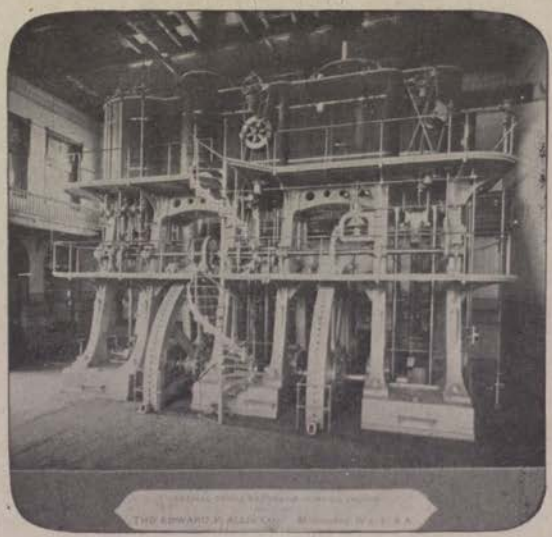
fly-wheel pumping-engine, the Allis and the Leavitt pumping-engines, both of the latter employing the crank and fly-wheel and both may be used as single- or double-acting pumps, usually as the latter. The characteristic feature of the well-known Worthington pumping-engine is the movement of the valves of each of the two engines by the other for the purpose of securing a quiet seating of the valves and smooth working.

One of the most important details of the pumping-engine is the system of valves in the water-cylinder, and much ingenuity has been successfully expended in the design of proper valve systems. These pump-valves must, among other things, meet the following requirements as efficiently as possible: they must close promptly and tightly, so that no water may pass through them to create slip or leakage; they should have a small lift, so as to allow prompt closing, and large waterways, to permit a free flow through them with little resistance; they must also be easily operated, so as to require little power, and, like all details of machinery, they should be simple and easily accessible for repairing when necessary.

As steam is always used expansively, its force impelling the plunger will have a constant value during the early portion of the stroke only, and a much less value, due to the expansion of the steam, at and near the end of the stroke, while the head of water against which the pump operates is practically constant. There is, therefore, an excess of effort during the first part of the stroke and a deficiency during the latter part. Unless there should be some means of taking up or cushioning this difference, the operation of the pump would be irregular during the stroke and productive of water-hammer or blows to the engine. Two means are employed to remove this undesirable effect, i.e., the fly-wheel and the air-chamber, or both. In the one case the excess of work performed by the steam in the early part of the stroke is stored up as energy in the accelerated motion of the fly-wheel and given out by the latter near the end of the stroke, thus producing the desired equalization. The air-chamber is a large reservoir containing air, attached to and freely communicating with the force main or pipe near its connection with the pumps. In this case the excess of work performed at the begin-

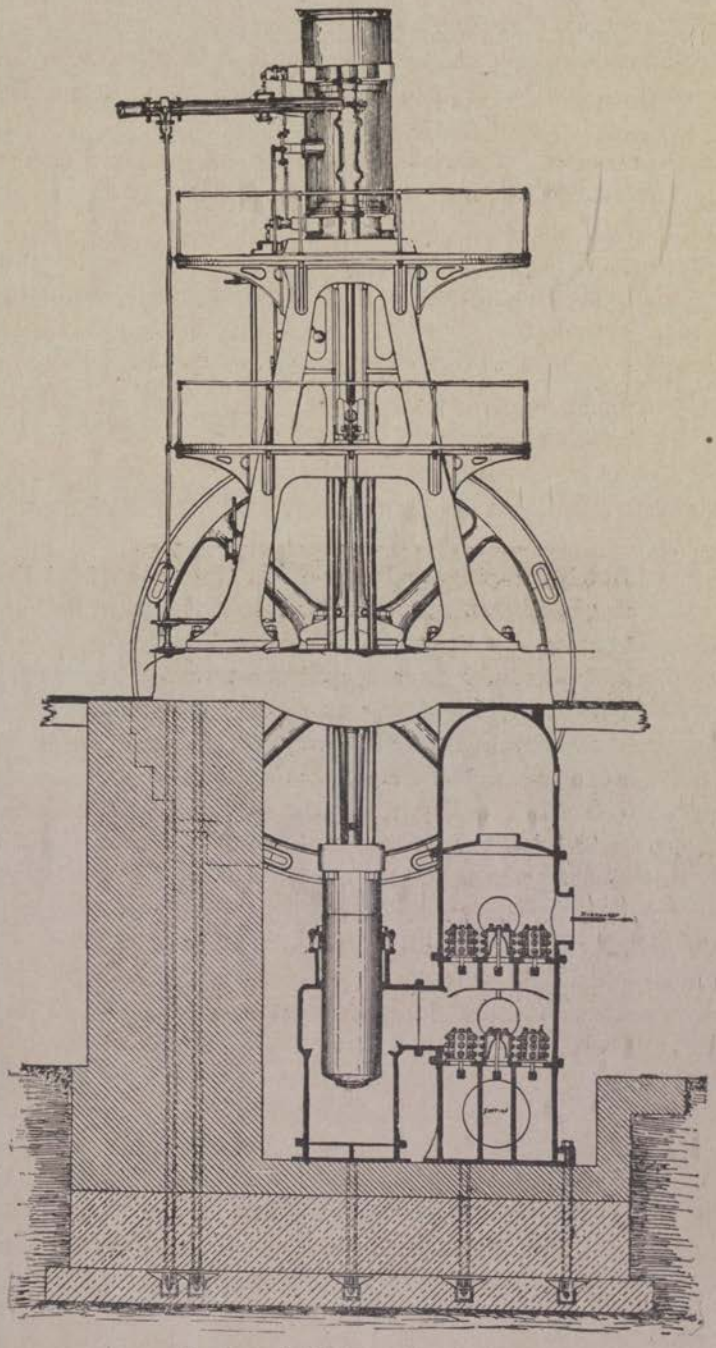
ning of the stroke is used in compressing the air in the air-chamber, sufficient water entering to accomplish that purpose. This compressed air acts as a cushion, expanding again at the end of the stroke and reinforcing the decreasing effort of the steam.

196. Resistances of Pumps and Main—Dynamic Head.—Obviously the water flowing through the pipes, pump-cylinders, and pump-valves will experience some resistance, and it is one purpose in good pumping-engine design to make the progress of the water through the pump so direct and free as to reduce these losses to a minimum. Similarly the large pipe or main, called the force-main, leading from the pump up to the reservoir into which the water is delivered, sometimes several thousand feet long, will afford a resistance of friction to the water flowing through it. The head which measures this frictional loss is given by equation (10) on page 239. All these resistances will increase



Allis Pump.

rapidly with the velocity with which the water flows through the pipes and other passages, as do all hydraulic losses. It is obviously advisable, therefore, to make this velocity as low as practicable without unduly increasing the diameter of the force-main. This velocity seldom exceeds about 3 feet per second.



Section of Allis Pumping Engine.

The static head against which the pumping-engine operates is the vertical height or elevation between the water surfaces in the pump-well and the reservoir. The head which represents the resistances of the passages through the pump and force-main, when added to the sum of the static head and the head due to the velocity in the force-main, gives what is called the dynamic head; it represents the total head against which the pump acts. If h represents the static head, h' the head due to all the resistances, and h'' the head due to the velocity in the force-main, then the dynamic head will be $H = h + h' + h'' = h + f\frac{l}{d}\frac{v^2}{2g} + n\frac{v^2}{2g} + \frac{v^2}{2g}$, in which f has a value of about .015 and n is a coefficient which when multiplied by the velocity head will represent the loss of head incurred by the water in passing through the pump-cylinder and valves. The latter quantity is variable in value; but it is seldom more than a few feet.

197. Duty of Pumping-engines.—It is thus seen that the collective machines and force-main forming the pumping system afford opportunity for a number of serious losses of energy found chiefly in the boiler, the engine, and the pump. The excellence of a pumping-plant, including the boilers, may obviously be measured by the amount of useful work performed by a standard quantity, as 100 pounds of coal. Sixty or more years ago, in the days of the old Cornish pumping-engine, the standard of excellence or "duty" was the number of foot-pounds of work, i.e., the number of pounds lifted one foot high, performed by one bushel of coal. As early as 1843 the Cornish pumping-engine reached a duty, per bushel of coal, of 107,500,000 foot-pounds. These pumping-engines were single-acting, the steam raising a weight the descent of which forced the water up the delivery-pipe.

At a later date and until about ten years ago the usual standard or criterion applied to pumping-engines for city water-works was the amount of work performed in lifting water for each 100 pounds of coal consumed; this result was also called the "duty" of the engine. In order to determine the duty of a pumping-engine it was thus only necessary to observe carefully for a given period of time, i.e., twenty-four hours or some other arbitrary

period, the amount of coal consumed, the condition of the furnace-fires at the beginning and end of the test being as nearly the same as possible, and measure at the same time the total amount of water discharged into the reservoir. The total weight of water raised multiplied by the total number of feet of elevation from the water surface in the pump-well to that in the reservoir would give the total number of foot-pounds of useful work performed. This quantity divided by the number of hundred pounds of coal consumed would then give what is called the "duty" of the pumping-engine.

198. Data to be Observed in Pumping-engine Tests.—Obviously it is necessary to observe a considerable number of data with care. No pump works with absolute perfection. A little water will run back through the valves before they are seated, and there will be a little leakage either through the valves or through the packing around the piston or plunger, or both sources of leakage may exist. That leakage and back-flow represent the amount of slip or water which escapes to the back of the plunger after having been in front of it. In well-constructed machinery this slip or leakage is now very small and may be but a small fraction of one per cent. Inasmuch as the amount of work performed by the steam will be the same whether this slip or leakage exists or not, the latter is now frequently ignored in estimating the duty of pumping-engines, the displacement of the piston or plunger itself being taken as the volume of water pumped at each stroke.

Again, in discussing the efficiency of the steam portion of the machinery the amount of partial vacuum maintained in the vacuum-pump, which is used to move the water of the condensed steam, is affected by atmospheric pressure, as is the work which is performed. Hence in complete engine tests it is necessary to observe the height of the barometer during the test. It is also necessary to observe the temperature of feed-water supplied to the boiler, and to use accurate appliances for ascertaining with the greatest exactness practicable the weight of dry steam used in the steam-cylinders and the amount of water which it carries. It is not necessary for the present purpose to discuss with minuteness these details, but it is evident from the preceding observa-

tions that the complete test of a pumping-engine involves the accurate observation of many data and their careful use in computations. The determination of the duty alone is but a simple part of those computations, and the duty is all that is now in question.

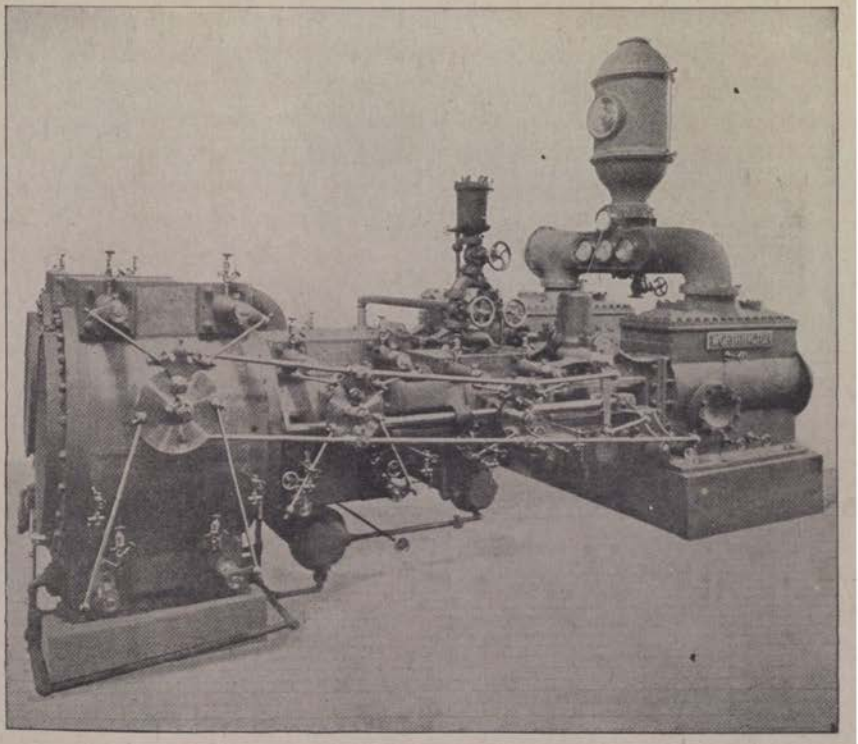
199. Basis of Computations for Duty.—It was formerly necessary in giving the duty of a pumping-engine to state whether the 100 pounds of coal was actually coal as shovelled into the furnace, or whether it was that coal less the weight of ash remaining after combustion. It was also necessary to specify the quality of coal used, because the heating capacity of different coals may vary materially. For these different reasons the statement of the duty of a pumping-engine in terms of a given weight of coal consumed involved considerable uncertainty, hence in 1891 a committee of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, appointed for the purpose, took into consideration the best method of determining and stating the duty of a pumping-engine. The report of that committee may be found in vol. XII of the Transactions of that Society. The committee recommended that in a duty test 1,000,000 heat-units (called British Thermal Units or, as abbreviated, frequently B.T.U.) should be substituted for 100 pounds of coal. In other words, that the following should be the expression for the duty:

$$\text{Duty} = \frac{\text{foot-pounds of work done}}{\text{total number of heat-units consumed}} \times 1{,}000{,}000.$$

For some grades of coal in which 1,000,000 heat-units would be available for every 100 pounds the numerical value of the duty expressed in the new terms would be unchanged, but for other grades of coal the new expression of the duty might be considerably different.

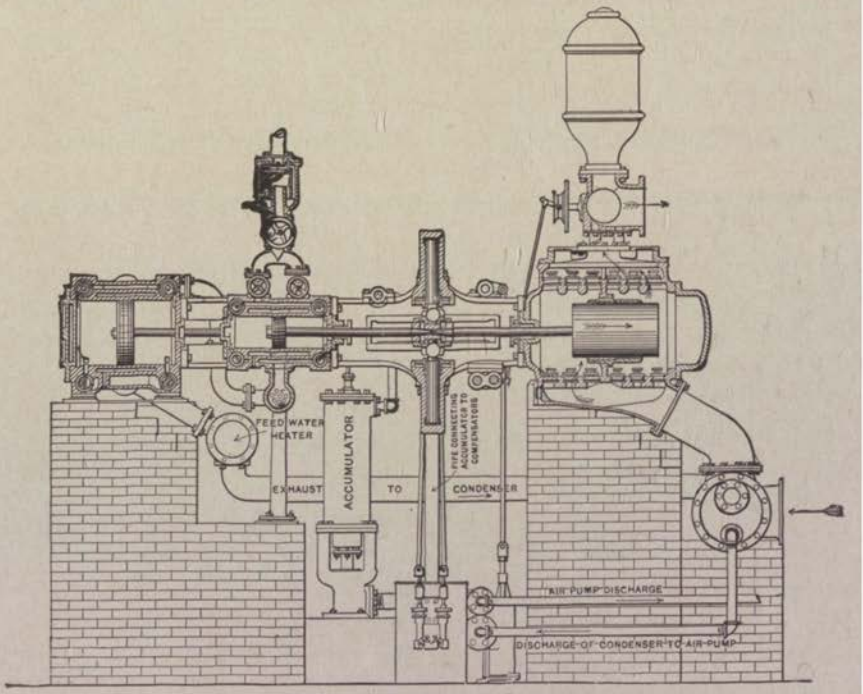
200. Heat-units and Ash in 100 Pounds of Coal, and Amount of Work Equivalent to a Heat-unit.—The following table exhibits results determined by Mr. George H. Barrus (Trans. A. S. M. E., vol. XIV. page 816), giving an approximate idea of the total number of heat-units which are made available by the combustion of 100 pounds of coal of the kinds indicated:

	Percentage of Ash.
Semibituminous:	
George's Creek Cumberland, 1,287,400 to 1,421,700	6.1 to 8.6
Pocahontas, 1,360,800 to 1,460,300	3.2 to 6.2
New River, 1,385,800 to 1,392,200	3.5 to 5.7
Bituminous:	
Youghiogheny, Pa., lump, 1,294,100	5.9
Youghiogheny, Pa., slack, 1,166,400	10.2
Frontenac, Kan., 1,050,600	17.7
Cape Breton Caledonia, 1,242,000	8.7
Anthracite: 1,152,100 to 1,318,900	9.1 to 10.5



Worthington Pump.

Each unit or B.T.U. represents the amount of heat required to raise one pound of water at 32° Fahr. 1° Fahr., and it is equal to 778 foot-pounds of work. In other words, 778 foot-pounds of work is said to be the mechanical equivalent of one heat-unit. The amount of work, therefore, which one pound of dry steam is capable of performing at any given pressure and at the corresponding temperature may readily be found by multiplying the number of available heat-units which it contains, and which may be readily



Section of Worthington Pump.

computed if not already known, by 778, or as in a pumping-engine duty trial, knowing by observation the number of pounds of steam at a given pressure and temperature supplied through the steam-cylinders, the number of heat-units supplied in that steam is at once known or may easily be computed. Then observing or computing the total weight of water raised by the pumping-engine, as well as the total head (the dynamic head) against which the pumping-engine has worked, the total number of foot-pounds of work performed can be at once deduced. This latter quantity divided by the number of million heat-units will give the desired duty.

201. Three Methods of Estimating Duty.—At the present time it is frequently, and perhaps usually, customary to give the duty in terms of 100 pounds of coal consumed, as well as in terms of 1,000,000 heat-units. Frequently, also, the duty is expressed in terms of 1000 pounds of dry steam containing about 1,000,000 heat-units. As has sometimes been written, the duty unit is 100 for coal, 1000 for steam, and 1,000,000 for heat-units.

202. Trial Test and Duty of Allis Pumping-engine.—The following data are taken from a duty test of an Allis pumping-engine at Hackensack, N. J., in 1899 by Prof. James E. Denton. This pumping-engine was built to give a duty not less than 145,000,000 foot-pounds for each "1000 pounds of dry steam consumed by the engine, assuming the weight of water delivered to be that of the number of cubic feet displaced by the plungers on their inward stroke, i.e., to be 145,000,000 foot-pounds at a steam pressure of 175 pounds gauge." The capacity of the engine was to be 12,000,000 gallons per twenty-four hours at a piston speed not exceeding 217 feet per minute. The engine was of the vertical triple-expansion type with cylinders 25.5 inches, 47 inches, and 73 inches in diameter with a stroke of $42\frac{1}{16}$ inches, the single-acting plunger being 25.524 inches in diameter. The following data and figures illustrate the manner of computing the duty:

DUTY PER 1000 POUNDS OF DRY STEAM BY PLUNGER DISPLACEMENT.

1. Circumference of plungers, Cl ..... 80.1875 ins.
2. Length of stroke, 7 ..... 42.0625 ins.
3. Number of plungers (single-acting) 3
4. Aggregate displacement of plunger per revolution = $\frac{3C^2l}{4\pi} = d$ ..... 64,4557.1 cu. ins.
5. Revolutions during 24 hours, N 43,337
6. Weight of one cubic foot of water, w ..... 62.42 lbs.
7. Total head pumped against, H ..... 266.61 ft.
8. Total feed-water per 24 hours, W ..... 160,354 lbs.
9. Duty per 1000 lbs. of feed-water $= \frac{d \times w}{1728} \times \frac{H \times N \times 1000}{W}$

$= 2,331,976 \times \frac{266.61 \times 43,337 \times 1000}{160,354} =$ 168,027,200 ft.-lbs.

10. Percentage of moisture in steam at engine-throttle valve ..... 0.3 per cent.
11. Duty per 1000 lbs. of dry steam, $\frac{168,027,200}{0.997} =$ 168,532,800 ft.-lbs.

DUTY PER MILLION HEAT-UNITS.

12.	Average steam pressure at throttle above atmosphere.	173 lbs.
13.	Average feed-water temperature	78°.5 Fahr.
14.	Total heat in one pound of steam containing 0.3 per cent. of moisture above 32° Fahr	1,194.2 B. T. U.
15.	Heat per lb. of feed-water above 32° Fahr	46.5 "
16.	Heat supplied per lb. of feed-water above 32° Fahr	1,147.7 "
17.	Duty per lb. of feed-water	168,027.2 ft.-lbs.
18.	Duty per million B. T. U.	146,403,614 "

203. Conditions Affecting Duty of Pumping-engines.—Manifestly the duty of a pumping-engine by whatever standard it may be measured will vary with the conditions under which it is made. A new engine running under the favoring circumstances of a short-time test may be expected to give a higher duty than when running under the ordinary conditions of usage one month after another. Hence it can scarcely be expected that the monthly performance, and much less the yearly performance, of an engine will show as high results as when tested for a day or two or for less time.

204. Speeds and Duties of Modern Pumping-engines.—The following table gives the piston or plunger speeds of a number of the best modern pumping-engines, and the corresponding duties, with the standards by which those duties are measured.

Engine.	Piston Speed in Feet per Minute.	Duty in Foot-pounds.	Expressed in
Ridgewood Station, Brooklyn, Worthington engine	164.0	137,953,585	1000 lbs. of dry steam
14th St. pumping-station, Chicago; built by Lake Erie Engine Works	210.54	133,445,000	Million B. T. U.
Allis engine at Hackensack, N. J.	210.65	146,403,416	" "
Snow pump at Indianapolis	214.6	150,100,000	" "
Leavitt pump at Chestnut Hill	.....	144,499,032	" "
Nordberg at Wildwood	256.0	162,132,517	" "
Allis at Chestnut Hill, tested May 1, 1900	192.5	157,002,500	Million B. T. U.
Allis at St. Louis, tested February 26, 1900	197.16	158,077,324	" "
Barr at Waltham, Mass.	194.28	128,865,000	1000 lbs. of dry steam
Allis at St. Paul, Minn.	189.0	144,463,000	" " " "
Lake Erie Engine Works at Buffalo	207.7	135,403,745	Million B. T. U.

These results show that material advances have been made in pumping-engine designs within a comparatively few years.

CHAPTER XIX.

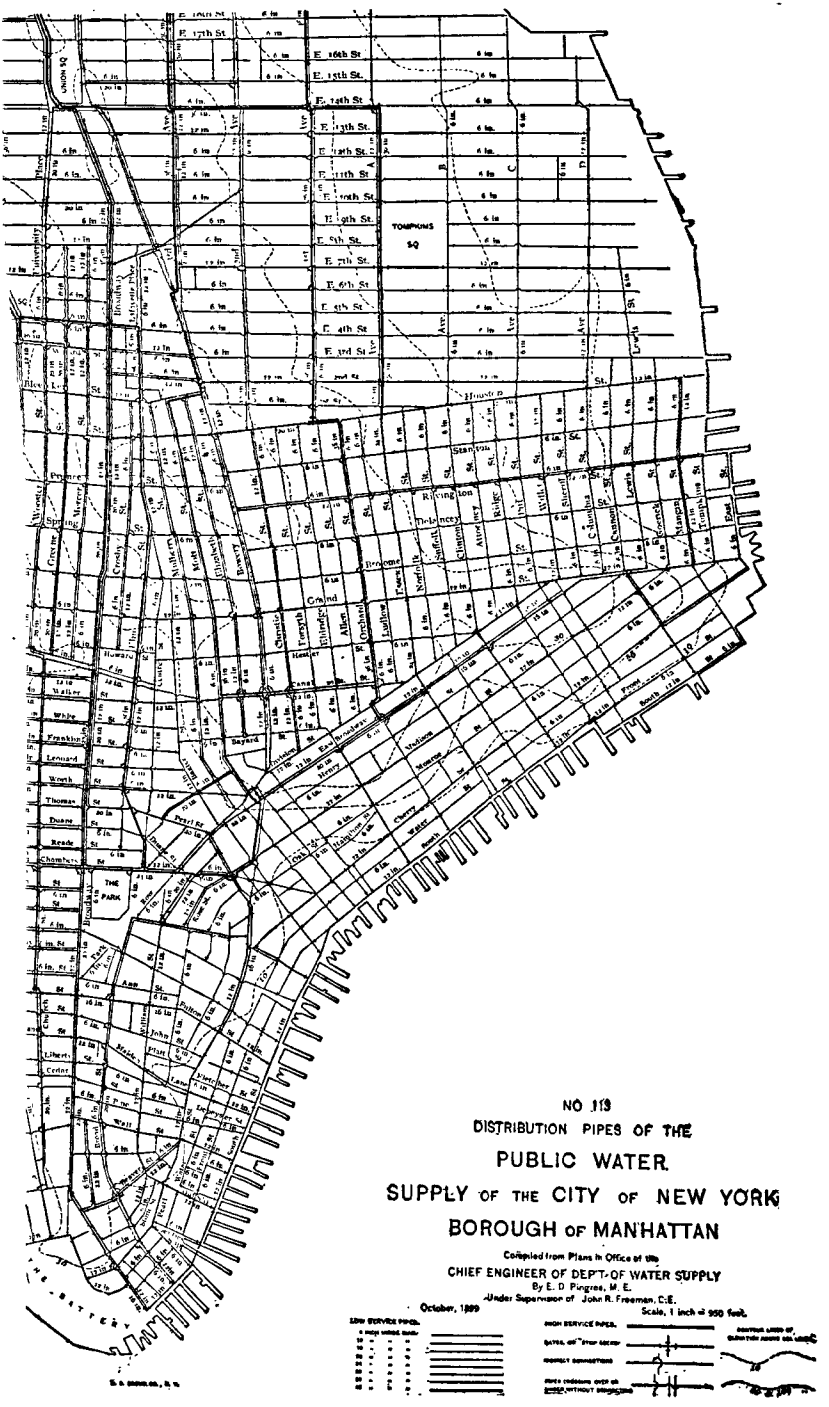
205. Distributing-reservoirs and their Capacities.—The water of a public supply seldom runs from the storage-reservoir directly into the distributing system or is pumped directly into it, although such practices may in some cases be permissible for small towns or cities. Generally distributing-reservoirs are provided either in or immediately adjacent to the distributing system of pipes, meaning the water-pipes large and small which are laid through the streets of a city or town, and the service-pipes leadnig from the latter directly to the consumers.

The capacity ordinarily given to these distributing-reservoirs is not controlled by any rigid rule, but depends upon the local circumstances of each case. If they are of masonry and covered with masonry arches, as required for the reception of some filtered waters, they are made as small as practicable on account of their costs. If, on the contrary, they are open and formed of suitably constructed embankments, like the distributing-reservoirs of New York City in Central Park and at High Bridge, they are and should be of much greater capacity. The storage volume of the High Bridge reservoir amounts to 11,000,000 gallons, while that of the Central Park reservoir is 1,000,000,000 gallons. Again, the capacity of the old receiving-basin in Central Park is 200,000,000 gallons. These reservoirs act also as equalizers against the varying draft on the system during the different portions of the day and furnish all desired storage for the demands of fire-streams, which, while it lasts, may be a demand at a high rate. It may be approximately stated under ordinary circumstances that the capacity of distributing-reservoirs for a given system should equal from two or three to eight or ten days'

supply. It is advantageous to approach the upper of those limits when practicable. The volume of water retained in these reservoirs acts in some cases as a needed storage, while repairs of pumping-machinery or other exigencies may temporarily stop the flow into them. The larger their capacity the more effectively will such exigencies be met.

206. System of Distributing Mains and Pipes. — Gate-houses must be placed at the distributing-reservoirs within which are found and operated the requisite gates controlling the supply into the reservoir and the outflow from it into the distributing system. The latter begins at the distributing-reservoir where there may be one or two or more large mains, usually of cast iron. These mains conduct the water into the branching system of pipes which forms a network over the entire city or town. A few lines of large pipes are laid so as to divide the total area to be supplied into convenient portions served by pipes of smaller diameter leading from the larger, so that practically every street shall carry its line or lines of piping from which every resident or user may draw the desired supply. Obviously, as a rule, the further the beginning of the distributing system is departed from in following out the ramifications of the various lines the smaller will the diameter of pipe become. The smallest cast-iron pipe of a distributing system is seldom less than 3 inches, and sometimes not less than 4 or 6 inches. There should be no dead ends in any distributing system. By a dead end is meant the end of a line of pipes, which is closed so that no water circulates through it. Whenever a branch pipe ceases it should be extended so as to connect with some other pipe in the system in order to induce circulation. The entire distributing system should therefore, in its extreme as well as central portions, constitute an interlaced system and not a series of closed ends. This is essential for the purity and potability of the water-supply. A circulation in all parts of the entire system is essential and it should be everywhere secured.

The diagram shows a portion of the distributing system of the city of New York. It will be noticed that there is a complete connection of the outlying portions, so as to make the inter-



w York City Distributing System.

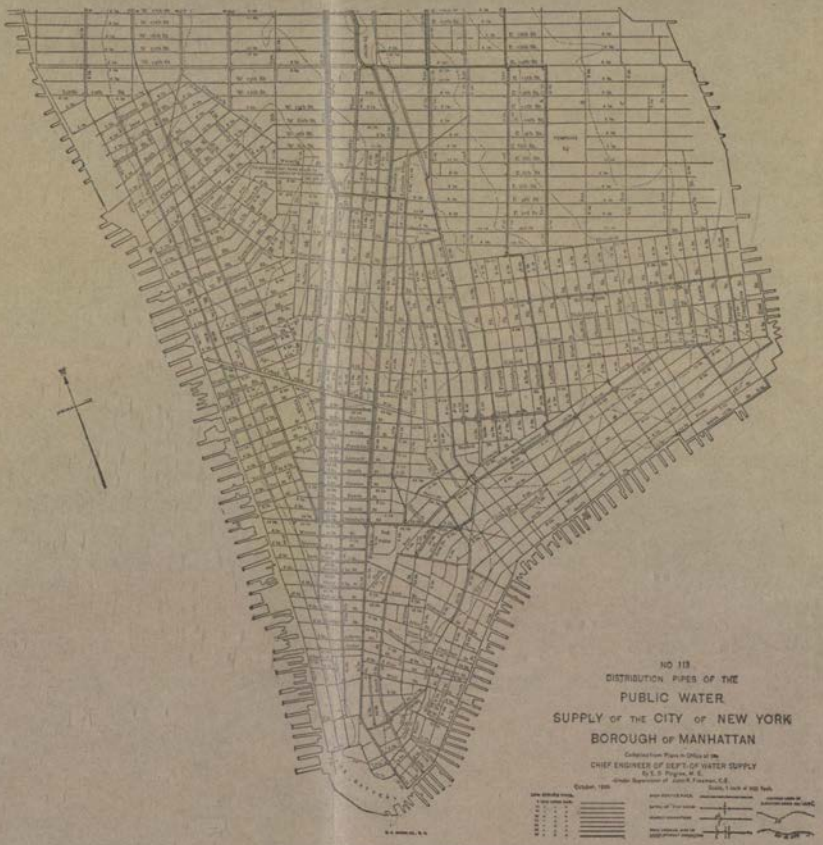

NO 118
DISTRIBUTION PIPES OF THE
PUBLIC WATER
SUPPLY OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK
BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN
CHIEF ENGINEER OF DEPT. OF WATER SUPPLY

FIG. 4.—New York City Distributing System.

lacing and corresponding circulation as complete and active as possible.

207. Diameters of and Velocities in Distributing Mains and Pipes.—In laying out a distributing system it will not be possible to base the diameters at different points on close computations for velocity or discharges based upon considerations of friction or other resistances, as the conditions under which the pipes are found are too complicated to make such a method workable. Approximate estimates may be made as to the number of consumers to be supplied at a given section of a main pipe, and consequently what the diameter should be to pass the required daily supply so that the velocity may not exceed certain maximum limits known to be advisable. Such estimates may be made at a considerable number of what may be termed critical points of the system, and the diameters may be ascertained in that manner with sufficient accuracy. In this field of hydraulics a sound engineering judgment, based upon experience, is a very important element, as it is in a great many other engineering operations.

It will follow from these considerations that as a rule the larger diameters of pipe in a given distributing system will belong to the greater lengths, and it will be found that the velocities of water in the various parts of a system will seldom exceed the following limits, which, although stated with some precision, are to be regarded only as approximate:

For	4-inch	pipe	.....	23	feet	per	second.
"	6	"	.....	23	"	"	"
"	8	"	.....	17	"	"	"
"	11	"	.....	12	"	"	"
"	12	"	.....	12	"	"	"
"	16	"	.....	9	"	"	"
"	20	"	.....	8	"	"	"
"	24	"	.....	7	"	"	"
"	30	"	.....	7	"	"	"
"	36	"	.....	7	"	"	"
"	48	"	.....	7	"	"	"
"	60	"	.....	7	"	"	"

208. Required Pressures in Mains and Pipes.—In designing distributing systems it is very essential so to apportion the pipes as to secure the requisite pressure at the various street services. Like many other features of a water-supply system no exact rules can be given, but it may be stated that at the street-level a pressure of at least 20 to 30 pounds should be found in resident districts, and from 30 to 35 or 40 pounds in business districts. The character and height of buildings affect these pressures to a large extent. Old pipe systems usually have many weak points, and while pressures requisite to carry water to the top of three- or four-story buildings are needed, any great excess above that would be apt to cause breaks and result in serious leakages. If the distributing system is one in which the pressure for fire-streams is to be found at the hydrants, then greater pressures than those named must be provided. In such cases the pressures in pipes at the hydrants should range from 60 to 100 pounds.

209. Fire-hydrants.—Fire-hydrants must be placed usually at street corners, if the blocks are not too long, and so distributed as to control with facility the entire district in which they are found. Unless fire-engines are used to create their own pressure, the lower the pressure at the hydrant the nearer together the hydrants must be placed. It is obvious, however, that when the pressure of the system is depended upon for fire-streams it is desirable to have the pressure comparatively high, so far as the hydrants are concerned, as under those conditions they may be placed farther apart and a less number will be required.

210. Elements of Distributing Systems.—The following table gives a number of statistics, exhibiting the elements of the distributing system of a considerable number of cities, including some pumping and meter data pertinent to the costs of pumping on the one hand and the extension of the use of meters on the other.

It contains information of no little practical value in connection with the administration of the distributing systems and the consumption of water in it. This table has been compiled by Mr. Chas. W. Sherman of the New England Water-works Association, and was published in the proceedings of that association for September, 1901. The service-pipes, varying from ½ to 10

inches in diameter, are of cast iron, wrought iron, lead, galvanized iron, tin-lined, rubber-lined, cement-lined, enamelled and tarred, the practice varying widely not only from one city to another, but in the same city.

TABLE

Name of City or Town.	Kind of Pipe.	Size of Pipe. Ins.	Total Length in Use Miles.	Cost of Repairs per Mile.	Total Number of Hydrants in Use.
Albany, N. Y.	.....	.....	129.7	.....	808
Atlantic City, N. J.	C.I.	4–20	47.6	.....	519
Boston, Mass.	C.I.	2–48	713.4	27.09	7606
Burlington, Vt.	C.L. C.I. W.I.	4–30	38.0	4.61	213
Cambridge, Mass	.....	.....	.....	.....	968
Chelsea, Mass.	C.I.	6–16	37.8	.....	253
Concord, N. H	C.I. C.L.	4–30	60.2	.....	267
Fall River, Mass.	C.I.	6–24	87.3	.....	954
Fitchburg, Mass.	C.I.	2–20	66.6	.....	499
Holyoke, Mass.	C.I. W.I.	½–30	81.6	5.14	860
Lowell, Mass.	.....	.....	127.8	.....	1098
Lynn, Mass.	W.I. C.L. C.I.	2–20	129.4	.....	952
Madison, Wis.	C.I.	4–16	34.3	.....	169
Manchester, N. H.	C.L. C.I.	4–20	96.9	.....	743
Metropolitan Water-works — Owned by	C.I. C.L.	6–60	69.8	.....	.....
Metropolitan Water-works — Tot. Sup. by	C.I. C.L. Kal.	4–60	1360.3	.....	11913
Minneapolis, Minn.	C.I. Steel.	1¼–50	269.2	.....	3172
New Bedford, Mass.	C.I.	4–36	92.7	24.00	738
New London, Conn	W.I. C.L. C.I.	4–24	50.5	18.71	258
Newton, Mass.	C.I.	4–20	136.6	6.43	935
Providence, R. I.	C.I.	6–36	324.6	0.56	1886
" H.P. Fire System	C.I.	12–24	5.6	.....	92
Quincy, Mass	W.I. C.I. C.L.	1–36	144.7	5.50	955*
Springfield, Mass	C.I. Kal.	2–20	84.1	.....	539
Woonsocket, R. I.	C.I.	4–20	45.8	3.57	548
Yonkers, N. Y	.....	.....	74.1	.....	771
Worcester, Mass.	.....	2–40	173.5	.....	1763

* Public hydrants only.

XIX.

Total Number of Gates in Use.	Range of Pressure on Mains at Centre, Pounds.	Size of Service-pipe in Inches.	Total Number of Service-taps in Use.	Total Number of Meters in Use.	Total Pumpage for the Year in Gallons.	Average Static Head against which Pumps Work. Feet.
803	.....	.....	.....	2030	.....	.....
.....	.....	½–4	4,249	3298	{ 955,726,046 { 148,662,947	81.7 119.5
8910	40–90	½–8	87,525	4516	.....	.....
618	70–85	½–6	3,350	2311	312,896,525	289
.....	.....	.....	14,207	860	2,651,277 240	.....
309	48–50	⅝–2	6,146	104	.....	.....
757	.....	.....	3,340	1010	142,772,165	.....
940	80	½–2	6,943	6,544	1,388.776,336	186.2
554	{ 75 L.S. { 155 H.S.	¾–8	4,432	2.427	.....	.....
734	80–100	⅝–4	3,610	210	.....	.....
1188	.....	.....	10,634	5,586	2,042,066,140	156.1
966	45–60	¼–4	13,504	2,571	378,782,675 1,330,784,875	....
234	.....	.....	2,758	2,586	306,637.454	223.8
910	.....	½–6	5,513	3,667	.....	.....
268	.....	.....	134,496	10,385	15,027,410,000(*a*)	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	9,431,140,000(*b*)	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2,015,130,000(*c*)	.....
2195	.....	⅝–1	20,064	5,030	6,863,135,200	.....
1065	28–64	½–10	9,280	1,429	2,307 429,372	167.2
318	40–48	½–4	3,088	229	.....	.....
801	84	½–6	7,087	6,001	762,876,073	234
3399	64–73	½–10	21,566	17,813	3,833,243,445 34,401,038	171.6 172.4
31	114	.....	.....	.....	578,940,480	111.2
1889	{ 30–35 H.S. { 100–120 L.S.*	1–6	9,764	3,122	.....	.....
1001	78–85	⅝–3	4,330	122	.....	.....
456	50–120	¾–6	2,103	1,889	340,849,628	237.6
498	.....	¼–8	4,968	4,852	1,323,696,099	.....
2432	{ 70 L.S. { 150 H.S.*	.....	13,292	12,529	.....	.....

TABLE

Name of City or Town.	Kind of Pipe.	Size of Pipe.	Average Dynamic Head against which Pumps Work, Feet.	Duty in Foot-pounds per 100 Pounds of Coal. No Deductions.
Albany, N. Y.	.....	.....	.....	.....
Atlantic City, N. J.	C.I.	4–20	123.3 119.5	36,501,217 15,518,455
Boston, Mass.	C.I.	2–48	.....	.....
Burlington, Vt.	C.L. C.I. W.I.	4–30	316	.....
Cambridge Mass.	.....	.....	.....	.....
Chelsea, Mass.	C.I.	6–16	.....	.....
Concord, N. H	C I C.L.	4–30	.....	.....
Fall River, Mass.	C.I.	6–24	.....	.....
Fitchburg, Mass.	C.I.	2–20	.....	.....
Holyoke, Mass.	C.I. W.I.	½–30	.....	.....
Lowell, Mass	.....	.....	163.9	93,489,048
Lynn, Mass.	W.I. C.L. C.I.	2–20	167 167	88,780,036 87,265,319
Madison, Wis.	C.I.	4–16	242.4	47,530,839
Manchester, N. H.	C.L. C.I.	4–20	.....	.....
Metropolitan Water-works — Owned by....	C.I. C.L	6–60	96.5	121,800,000
Metropolitan Water-works — Tot. Sup. by....	C.I. C.L. Kal.	4–60	51.8 125.6	109,380,000 80,400,000
Minneapolis, Minn.	C I. Steel.	1¼–50	.....	68,016,609
New Bedford, Mass.	C.I.	4–36	192	130,336,508
New London, Conn.	W.I. C.L. C.I.	4–24	.....	.....
Newton, Mass.	C.I.	4–20	254	72,500,000
Providence, R. I.	C.I.	6–36	176.9 177.7 124.7	101,301,600 69,329,100 68,533,300
" H.P. Fire-system.	C.I.	12–24	.....	.....
Quincy, Mass	C.I. Kal.	2–20	.....	.....
Springfield, Mass.	W.I. C.I. C.L.	1–36	.....	.....
Woonsocket, R. I.	C.I.	4–20	239.5	51,024,641
Yonkers, N. Y	.....	.....	.....	.....
Worcester, Mass.	.....	2–40	.....	.....

XIX.—*Continued.*

Cost per Million Gallons raised 1 Foot High. Figured on Pumping-station Expenses.	Cost per Million Gallons Raised 1 Foot High. Figured on Total Maintenance.	Net Cost of Works to Date.	Bonded Debt at Date.	Value of Sinking Fund at Date.	Rate of Interest, Per Cent.
.....	$0.264	$916,723.59	$892,000	$100,407.01	4½–5
.....	.....	23,054,387.81	11,960,272	10,144,647.08	3½–6
0.08	0.366	468,039.73	248,000	64,076.40	3½–4
.....	.....	5,670,229.52	3,302,100	604,326.58	
.....	.....	483,335.52	300,000	50,921	4
.....	.....	857,440.98	650,000		
.....	.....	1,937,862.93	1,920,000	581,647.78	5.1
.....	.....	452,091.09	648,000	195,908.91	
.....	.....	1,244,742.23	300,000	37,403.46	4
0.0399	.....	.....	1,274,700	287,226.20	
0.042	0.51	2,472,821.85	1,800,300	524,027.50	3½–5
0.159	.....	337,630.13			
.....	.....	1,513,012.79	900,000	159,466.83	4–6
0.0314 0.032 0.043					
0.033					
0.0259	0.2867	1,820,107.73	558,000	148,793.77	av. 4.44
.....	.....	706,978.44	410,000	.....	3.5–4
0.05	0.59	2,034,808.07	2,075,000	849,115.40	av. 4.7
.....	L.S.=0.0259	6,470,093.35	5,920,000	713,431.62	av. 3.7
.....	H.S.=0.1134				
.....	.....	.....	720,500	.....	4
.....	.....	2,128,559.56	1,500,000	461,861.90	av. 5.9
0.061	0.37	390,841.78			
.....	.....	1,577,105.15	1,475,000	310,700	3.5–7

C.L. = cement-lined.
(*a*) = Chestnut Hill high service.
(*b*) = Chestnut Hill low service.
(*c*) = Spot Pond Pumping-station.

CHAPTER XX.

211. Sanitary Improvement of Public Water-supplies. — In the preceding consideration of a public water-supply it has been virtually assumed that the water will reach consumers in the proper sanitary condition; but this is not always the case. With great increase of population and corresponding increase of manufacturing and other industries there arise many sources of contamination, so that pure spring- or river-water for public supplies becomes less available and at the present time in this country it is rarely to be had.

The legal responsibility of parties who allow sewage, manufacturing wastes, or other contaminating matter to flow into streams is already clearly recognized, and many cities and towns are required to dispose of their sewage and other wastes in such manner as to avoid polluting streams of water flowing past sewer outfalls or manufacturing establishments; but even these restraints are not sufficient. If a stream has once been polluted it can scarcely be considered safe as a supply for potable water for public or private purposes. There are certain diseases whose bacilli are water-borne and which are conveyed by drinking-water containing them; prominent among such diseases are typhoid fever and cholera. Experience has many times shown that these bacilli or disease germs may find their way from isolated country houses as well as from the sewage of cities into water that would otherwise be potable. Besides such considerations as these it is equally well known from engineering experience that many waters of otherwise fair quality carry the remains of organic matter in one shape or another which operate prejudicially to the physical condition of those who drink such water. It is therefore becoming more and more the conviction of civil engineers and sanitarians that there are few sources of

potable water so free from some degree of pollution that the supplies drawn from them do not require treatment in order to put them into good condition for drinking. It is not intended in this observation to state that there are no streams or springs from which natural waters may not be immediately used for domestic purposes without improving them by artificial means, but it may be stated even at the present time that no water of a public water-supply should be used without treatment, unless the most thorough bacteriological examinations show that its sanitary condition is eminently satisfactory.

It is the common experience of many public water-supplies in this country that during certain seasons of the year, extending through the summer and autumn months, certain low forms of vegetation flourish, causing sometimes discoloration and always offensive tastes and odors. While such waters are usually not dangerous, they certainly are not desirable and may cause the human system to become receptive in respect to pathogenic bacilli. The tendency at the present time, therefore, is to consider the improvement of any water-supply that may be contemplated for any city or town.

212. Improvement by Sedimentation.—The two broad methods of improving the water of a public supply at the present time are sedimentation and filtration, the latter generally through clean sand, although sometimes other fine granular material or porous mass is used. The operation of sedimentation is carried on when water is allowed to stand absolutely at rest or to move through a series of basins with such small velocity that the greater portion of the solid material held in suspension is given an opportunity to settle to the bottom. All water which is taken from natural sources, whether surface or underground, carries some solid matter. Some waters, like spring-water or from an underground supply, are so clear as to be very nearly free from solid matter in suspension, but, on the other hand, there are waters, like those from silt-bearing rivers, which carry large amounts. Observations upon the Mississippi River at St. Louis have shown that the suspended matter may reach as much as 1000 parts in one million, although the quantity held in suspension is usually much less than that. Similar observations have been made upon other

silt-bearing streams. Such large proportions of suspended solid matter are not usually found in streams used for potable purposes, but there are few surface sources of water-supply the water from which will not be sensibly improved by sedimentation in settling-basins or reservoirs.

The process of sedimentation is usually preliminary to that of filtration. If raw water, i.e., as it comes from its natural source, is conducted directly to filtration-beds, the amount of solid matter is frequently so great that the surface of the filter would be too quickly clogged; hence it is advisable in almost every case to subject to sedimentation any water which is designed to be treated subsequently by filtration.

The degree of turbidity is usually measured by means similar to those employed in gauging discoloration from vegetable matter. One method devised by Mr. Allen Hazen, to which allusion will again be made, is that in which the depth in inches is observed at which a platinum wire 1 mm. in diameter and 1 inch long can be seen. The degree of turbidity is then represented by the reciprocal of that distance. The permissible turbidity estimated in this manner is taken by different authorities at different values running from .025 to .2. Water of this degree of turbidity appears, when seen through a glass, to be practically clear.

The rapidity with which sedimentation can be performed depends greatly upon the character and degree of comminution of the solid material. If it is coarse, comparatively speaking, it will quickly fall to the bottom; if the solid matter is clay of fine texture, it is dissipated through the water in an excessively high degree of diffusion and will remain obstinately suspended. This has been found to be the case at some points with the Ohio River water. Ordinarily sufficient sedimentation can be accomplished where the water remains at rest from twenty-four to forty-eight hours; in general, observations as to this matter, however, must be applied very cautiously . Water of the Mississippi River at St. Louis has been found to deposit nearly all of its sediment within twenty-four hours. At Cincinnati, on the other hand, the Ohio River water carries so fine a sediment that on an average not more than 75 per cent of it will be deposited in three days by unaided subsidence. Again, at Omaha the

water of the Missouri River has been found to be turbid at the end of seventy-two hours. In some cases, as with the waters of the Delaware and Schuylkill at Philadelphia, a greater amount of subsidence has been found to exist at times at the end of twenty-four hours than after forty-eight hours. It is obvious that some special conditions must have produced such results that would not ordinarily occur in connection with the operation of sedimentation.

213. Sedimentation Aided by Chemicals.—In cases where simple unaided subsidence proceeds too slowly it can be accelerated by the introduction of suitable chemicals. At Cincinnati, for instance, it was found advantageous to introduce into the water before flowing into the settling-basins a small amount of alum or sulphate of alumina, depending upon the degree of turbidity, the average being about 1.6 grains per gallon, rising to perhaps 4 grains in floods. By these means a few hours of aided sedimentation would produce more subsidence than could be obtained in several days without the chemicals. A similar recommendation has been made for the purpose of improving the water-supply for the city of Washington, D. C., from the Potomac River. In other cases between 5 and 6 grains of lime per gallon have produced effective results.

214. Amount of Solid Matter Removed by Sedimentation.—Under adverse conditions, or with sediment which remains obstinately suspended, not more than 25 to 50 per cent of the solid material will be removed by sedimentation, but when the process is working satisfactorily, sometimes by the aid of chemicals acting as coagulants, 90 to 99 per cent even of the solid material may be removed. The operation of sedimentation has another beneficial effect in that the solid matter when being deposited carries down with it large numbers of bacteria, which, in some cases, have been observed to be 80 or 90 per cent of the total contents of the water. In other words, the subsidence of the solid matter clears the water of a large portion of the bacteria.

215. Two Methods of Operating Sedimentation-basins.—Sedimentation is carried on in two ways, one being the "fill-and-draw" method and the other the "continuous" method. In the former method a basin or reservoir is first filled with water

and then allowed to stand while the subsidence goes on for perhaps twenty-four hours. The clear water is then drawn off, after which the reservoir is again filled. In the continuous method, on the other hand, water is allowed to flow into a single reservoir or series of reservoirs through which it passes at an extremely low velocity, so that its contents will not entirely change within perhaps twenty-four hours or more. In this method the clear water is continuously discharging at a comparatively low rate, the velocity in the reservoir being so small that the solid matter may be deposited as in the fill-and-draw method. Both of these methods are used, and both are effective. The choice will be dependent upon local conditions. In the continuous method the solid matter is largely deposited nearer the point of entrance into the reservoir, but more generally over the bottom in the fill-and-draw method. The velocity of flow in the reservoirs of the continuous method generally ranges between 0.5 inch and 2.5 inches per minute. Occasionally the velocity may be slightly less than the least of these values, and sometimes one or two inches more than the maximum value.

216. Sizes and Construction of Settling-basins.—The sizes of the settling-basins will obviously depend to a considerable extent upon the daily consumption of water. There is no general rule to be followed, but the capacity of storage volume of those actually in use run from less than 1 to possibly 14 or 15 days' supply. Under ordinary circumstances their volumes may usually be taken from 5 to 6 or 8 days' supply. Their shape should be such as to allow the greatest economy in the construction of embankments and bottoms. They may generally be made rectangular. Their depths is also a matter, to some extent, of constructive economy. The depth of water will usually be found between about 10 and 16 feet, it being supposed that possibly 2 or 3 feet of depth will be required for the collection of sediment. These basins must be water-tight. The bottom surfaces may be covered with concrete 6 to 9 inches thick, with water-tight firm puddle 12 to 18 inches thick underneath, resting on firm compacted earth. The inner embankment surfaces or slopes may be paved with 10- or 12-inch riprap resting on about 18 inches of broken stone over a layer of puddle of equal thick-

ness with the bottom and continuous with it. Occasionally the bottom and sides may be simply puddled with clay and lined with brick or riprap pavement, laid on gravel, or broken stone. It is only necessary that the sides and bottoms shall be tight and of such degree of hardness and continuity as to admit of thorough cleaning.

The bottoms of sedimentation-basins may advantageously not be made level. In order to facilitate cleaning away the solid matter settling on them, a valley or depression may be formed along the centre line to which the two portions of the bottom slope. A grade in this channel or central valley of 1 in 500 with slopes on either side of 1 in 200 or 1 in 300 will be effective in the disposition of the solid matter. At the lowest end of the central valley there should be suitable gates through which the accumulated sediment can be moved out of the basin. This sedimentary matter will in many cases be soft mud, but its movement will always be facilitated by the use of suitable streams of water. The frequency of cleaning will depend upon the amount of sediment carried by the water and upon its accumulation in the basin. Whenever its depth ranges from 1 to 2 or 3 feet it is removed.

Complete control of the entrance of the water to and its exit from the basin must evidently be secured by suitable gates or valves and other appliances required for the satisfactory operation of the basin. In some cases the cost of sedimentation-reservoirs with concrete bottoms and sides has risen as high as $9000 per million gallons of capacity; but where the cheaper lining has been used, as in the case of reservoirs at Philadelphia, the range has been from about $3300 to about $4300.

217. Two Methods of Filtration.—After the process of sedimentation is completed there will necessarily always be found the remains of organic matter and certain other polluting material which should be removed before the water is allowed to enter the distributing system. This removal is accomplished usually by filtration through clean sand, but occasionally through porous material, such as concrete slabs, porcelain, or other similar material. The latter processes are not much used at the present time, and they will not be further considered.

The filtration of water through sand is carried on by two distinct methods, one called slow sand filtration and the other rapid sand filtration. In the first method the water is simply allowed to filter slowly through beds of sand from 2 to 3 or 5 feet thick and suitably arranged for the purpose. In the second method special appliances and conditions are employed in such manner as to cause the water to flow through the sand at a much more rapid rate. The method of slow sand filtration will first receive attention.

218. Conditions Necessary for Reduction of Organic Matter.— The most objectionable class of polluting materials includes organic matter which from one source or another finds its way into natural waters. Such material has originally constituted or formed a part of living organisms and chemically consists of varying proportions of carbon, oxygen, hydrogen, and nitrogen. As found in public water-supplies it is usually in some stage of decomposition. The chemical operations taking place in these decompositions are more or less complicated, but in a general way it may be said that the first step is the oxidizing of the carbon which may produce either carbon monoxide or carbon dioxide and a combination of nitrogen with hydrogen as ammonia. When the conditions are favorable, i.e., when free oxygen is present, the ammonia may be oxidized by it, thus producing nitric acid and water. If, as is generally the case, suitable other substances, as alkalis, are present, the nitric acid combines with them, forming nitrates more or less soluble and essentially innocuous. It is therefore seen that the complete result is a chemical change from the original organic matter, offensive and possibly dangerously polluting, to gaseous and solid matter, the former escaping from the water and the latter either passing off unobjectionably in a soluble state or precipitating to the bottom as inert mineral matter. In order that these processes may be completely effective, two or three conditions are necessary, i.e., sunlight, free oxygen, and certain species of that minute and low class of organisms known as bacteria, the nature and conditions of existence of which have been scientifically known and studied within a period extending scarcely farther back than ten or fifteen years. The precise nature of their operations and their relations to the

presence of the necessary oxygen, or just the parts which they play in the process of decomposition, are not completely known, although much progress has been made in their determination. It is positively known that their presence and that of uncombined oxygen are essential. Certain species of these bacteria will live and work only in the presence of sunlight and oxygen; these are known as aerobic bacteria. Other species, forming a class known as anaerobic bacteria, live and effect their operations in the absence of sunlight and oxygen in that offensive mode of decomposition which takes place in cesspools and other closed receptacles for sewage and waste matter. They play an essential part in what promises to be one of the most valuable methods of sewage-disposal in which the septic tank is a main feature.

219. Slow Filtration through Sand—Intermittent Filtration.—In the slow sand-filtration method of purifying the water of a water-supply the aerobic bacteria only act. In order that their operations may be completed, free oxygen and sunlight are essential requisites, and the first of these is found in every natural water which can be considered potable. Any water which does not contain sufficient free oxygen for this purpose is to be regarded with suspicion, and generally cannot be considered suitable for domestic purposes. The amount of uncombined oxygen contained in any potable natural water is greatly variable and changes much with the period of exposure in a quiet state, as well as with pressure and temperature. In the river Seine it has averaged nearly 11 parts in a million throughout the year, being lowest in July and August and highest in December and January. It has been found in the experimental work of the Massachusetts State Board of Health that free or dissolved oxygen in potable water may vary from 8.1 parts at 80° Fahr. to 14.7 parts by weight at 32° Fahr. in 1,000,000 at atmospheric pressure.

In some cases where liability to dangerous contamination exists it may be advisable to increase the available supply of oxygen in the water by using a slow sand filter intermittently, as has been done at Lawrence, Mass. Instead of permitting a continuous flow of water through the sand, that flow is allowed

for a period of 6 to 12 hours only, after which the filter rests and is drained for perhaps an equal period. During this intermis-

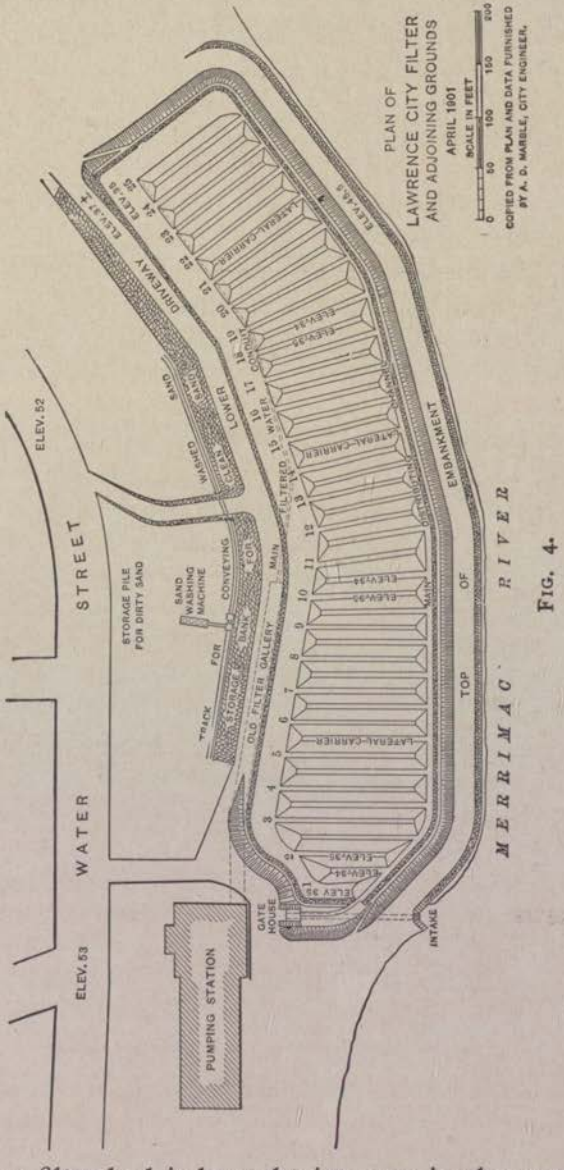
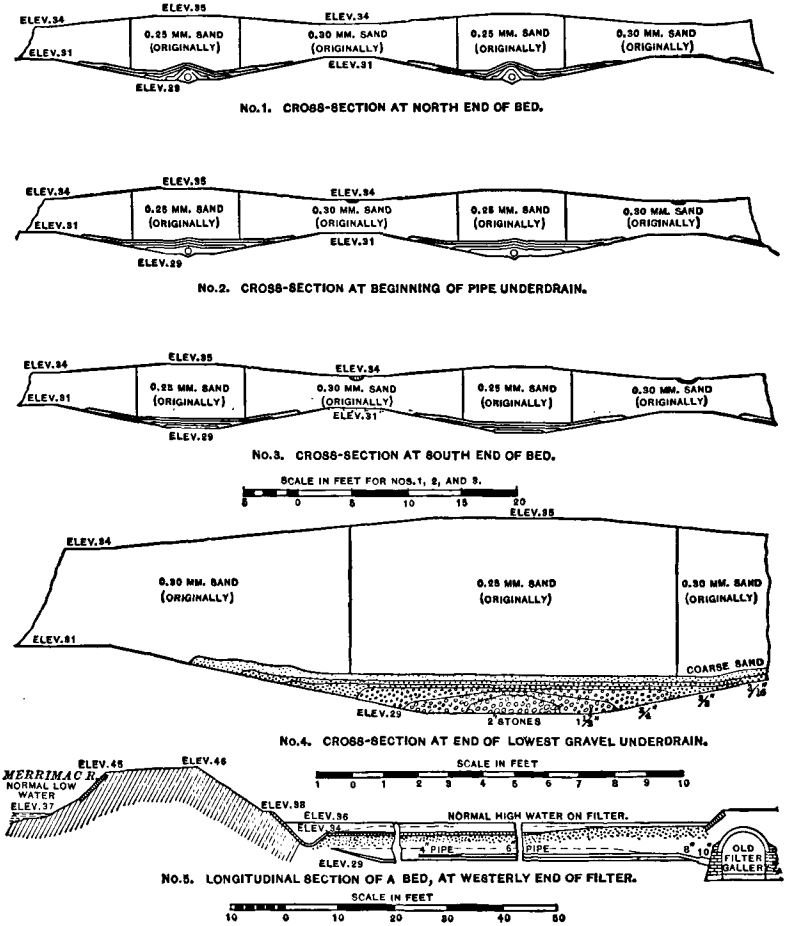


FIG. 4.

sion another filter-bed is brought into use in the same manner. Alternating thus between two or more filters, the flow in any

one is intermittent. In this manner the oxygen of the air finds its way into the sand voids of each drained filter in turn and thus becomes available in the presence of suitable species of bacteria



TYPICAL SECTIONS OF UNIT BEDS IN LAWRENCE CITY FILTER.
APRIL, 1901.
COPIED FROM PLAN FURNISHED BY A. D. MARBLE, CITY ENGINEER.

for reducing the organic matter in the water next passing through the filter. Intermittent filters operated in this manner are not much used, but the most prominent instance is that at Lawrence, Mass. At that place the water after being filtered is pumped to a higher elevation for use in the distribution system. The

pumps have been run nineteen hours out of the twenty-four, and the water is shut off from the filters five hours before the pumps stop. The gate admitting water to the filter is open one hour before they start. Nine hours of each day the filter does not receive water, and rests absolutely about four hours.

220. Removal of Bacteria in the Filter. — The grains of the sand at and near the surface of a slow sand filter, within a short time after its operation is begun, acquire a gelatinous coating, densest at the surface and decreasing rapidly as the mass of sand is entered. This gelatinous coating of the grains is organic in character and probably largely made up of numerous colonies of bacteria whose presence is necessary for the reduction of the organic matter. It is necessary to distinguish between these species of bacteria and those which are pathogenic and characteristic of such diseases as typhoid fever, cholera, and others that are water-borne. Every potable surface-water and possibly all rain-water carry bacteria which are not pathogenic and which apparently accumulate in dense masses at and near the surface of the slow sand filter. As the water finds its way through the sand it loses its organic matter and its bacteria, both those of a pathogenic and non-pathogenic character. Potable water, therefore, is purified and rendered innocuous by the removal in the filter of all its bacteria, including both the harmless and dangerous.

221. Preliminary Treatment — Sizes of Sand Grains.—In designing filtration-works consideration must be given to the character of water involved. There are waters which when standing in open reservoirs exposed to the sunlight will develop disagreeable tastes and odors, and it may be necessary to give them preliminary treatment especially for the removal of such objectionable constituents.

The character and coarseness of the sand employed are both elements affecting its efficiency as a filtering material. It should not be calcareous, for then masses of it may be cemented together and injure or partially destroy the working capacity. Again, if it is too coarse and approaches the size of gravel, water may run freely through it without experiencing any purification. Much labor has been expended, especially by the State Board

of Health of Massachusetts, in investigating the characteristics of sand and the sizes of grains best adapted to filter purposes. In that work it has become necessary to classify sands according to degrees of fineness or coarseness. The diameter of a grain of sand in the system of classification employed means the cube root of the product of the greatest and least diameters of a grain multiplied by a third diameter at right angles to the greatest and least. The "effective" size of any given mass of sand means the greatest diameter of the finest 10 per cent of the total mass. There is also a term called the "uniformity coefficient." The uniformity coefficient is the quotient arising from dividing the greatest diameter of the finest 60 per cent of the mass by the greatest diameter of the finest 10 per cent of the same mass. These are arbitrary terms which have been reached by experience as convenient for use in classifying sands. Evidently absolute uniformity in size will be indicated by a uniformity coefficient of 1, and the greater the variety in size the greater will be the uniformity coefficient. Sands taken from different vicinities and sometimes even from the same bed will exhibit a great range in size of grain.

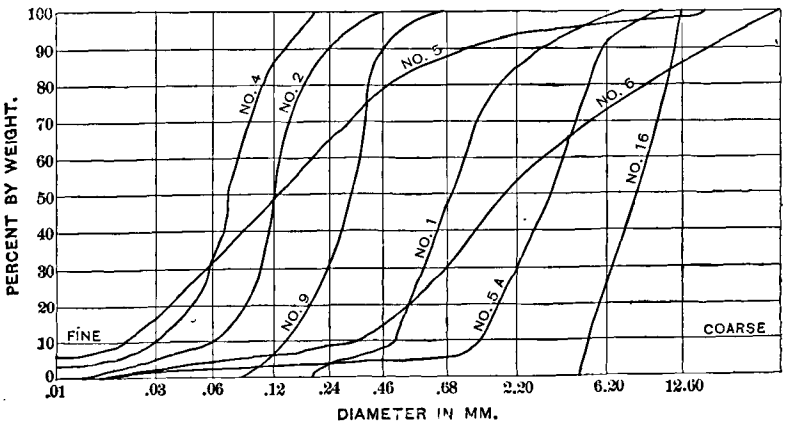


FIG. 5,—Sizes of Grain or Fineness of Sand.

Fig. 5 represents the actual variety of size of grain as found in eight lots of sand among others examined in the laboratory of the Massachusetts State Board of Health. The vertical scale

shows the per cent by weight of portions having the maximum grains less in diameter than shown on the horizontal line. The more slope, like No. 5 or 6, the greater is the variety in size of grain. Those lines more nearly vertical belong to sands more nearly uniform in size of grain.

222. Most Effective Sizes of Sand Grains.—Investigations by the Massachusetts State Board of Health indicate that a sand whose effective diameter of grain is .2 mm. (.008 inch) is perhaps the most efficient in removing organic matter and bacteria from natural potable waters. At the same time wide experience with the operation of actual filters seems to indicate that no particular advantage attaches to any special size of grain, so long as it is not too fine to permit the desired rate of filtration or so coarse as to allow the water to flow through it too freely. Experiments have shown that effective sizes of sand from .14 to .38 mm. in diameter possess practically the same efficiency in a slow sand filter. The action of the filter is apparently a partial straining out of both organic material and bacteria, but chiefly the reduction of organic matter in the manner already described and probably the destruction to a large extent of the bacteria, especially those of a pathogenic nature, although at the present time it is impossible to state the precise extent of either mode of action.

223. Air and Water Capacities.—Another important physical feature of filter-sands, especially in connection with intermittent filtration, is the amount of voids between the grains. When the intermittent filter is allowed to drain, so that the only water remaining in it is that held between the grains by capillary attraction, generally at the bottom of the filter unless the sand is very fine, the volume of the water which remains in the voids is called the water capacity of the sand. The remaining volume between the grains is called the air capacity of the same sand. It is evident that the air capacity added to the water capacity will make the total voids between the sand grains.

Fig. 6 shows the amount of air and water capacities of the same sands whose sizes of grains are exhibited in Fig. 5. The depth of the sand is supposed to be 60 inches, as shown on the vertical line at the left of the diagram, while the percentages of the total volume representing the amounts of voids is shown on

the horizontal line at the bottom of the diagram. Both air and water capacities for each sand are shown by the various numbered lines partially vertical and partially inclined. It will be observed that the fine sands No. 2 and No. 4 have large water capacities, the water capacity being shown by

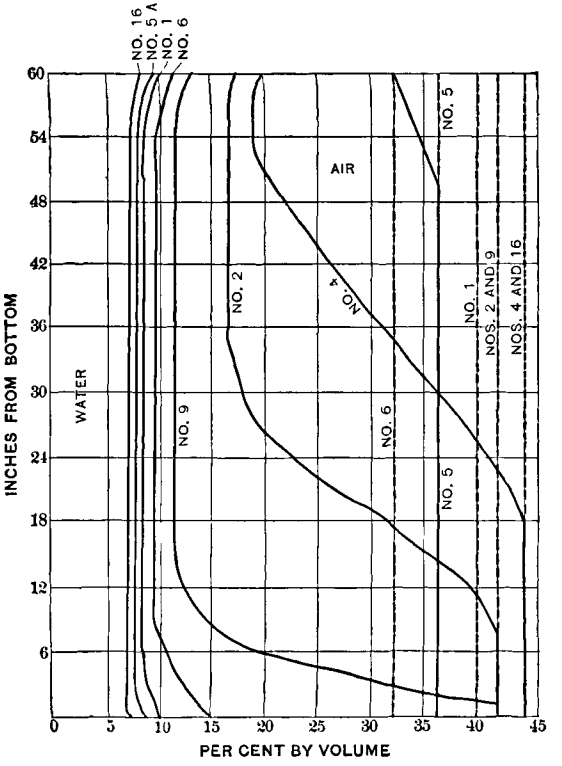


FIG. 6.

that part of the diagram lying below and to the left of each line. It will be noticed that No. 5 sand is made up of approximately equal portions of fine and coarse grains, the former largely filling the voids between the latter. This mixture, as shown by the No. 5 line, gives a very high water capacity and a correspondingly low air capacity. Obviously a sand with a high water capacity has a correspondingly low air capacity, and in general would not be a very good sand for an intermittent filter, since it is the purpose of the latter to secure in the voids

between the sand grains as much oxygen as practicable whenever the filter may be at rest.

224. Bacterial Efficiency and Purification—Hygienic Efficiency.—As the function of a filter is to remove as far as possible the organic matter and bacteria of the applied water, there must be some criterion by which its efficiency in the performance of those functions can be expressed. The bacterial efficiency is represented by the ratio found by dividing the number of bacteria after filtration in a prescribed cubic unit, as a cubic centimeter, by the number which the same volume of raw water held before being applied to the filter. This is a rather misleading ratio, for the reason that the effluent water may contain bacteria of certain species which grow in the lower portions of a filter or in the drains which conduct the effluent from it. It is possible, therefore, that bacteria may be found in a filter effluent when all of the bacteria originally held in the water have been removed. Hence the ratio expressing what is called the bacterial purification arises from dividing the number of bacteria actually removed from a cubic centimeter of water by the filter by the number originally held by a cubic centimeter of raw water. The smaller the first of these ratios the higher the degree of efficiency. Extended experience, both in the filters of such laboratories as that of the Massachusetts State Board of Health and with actual filters of public water-supplies, show that under attainable conditions of operation 98 to 100 per cent of all the bacteria originally found in the water may be removed.

There is also used the term hygienic efficiency which is used in connection with slow sand filters. This means simply the per cent of pathogenic bacteria removed by the filter, and there is good reason to believe that it is at least as high as the bacterial purification.

225. Bacterial Activity near Top of Filter.—The work of removal of bacteria and organic matter has been found by extended investigations to be performed almost entirely within 6 or 8 inches of the top surface of the sand; indeed the most active part of that operation is probably concentrated within less than 3 inches of the surface. At any rate the retained bacteria and nitrogenous matter are found to decrease very rapidly within a

foot from the upper surface, below which stratum the quantity is relatively very small and its rate of decrease necessarily slow. A little of this nitrogenous or gelatinous matter is found to surround to a slight extent the sand grains found at the bottom of the filter. Some authorities have considered that the more steady uniform efficiency of the deeper filters is due to this effect.

226. Rate of Filtration. — The rate at which water can be made to flow through a slow sand filter is of economical importance, for the reason that the higher the rate the less will be the area required to purify a given quantity per day. Foreign engineers and other sanitary authorities advocate generally slower rates of filtration than American engineers are inclined to favor. The usual rate in Europe is not far from 1.6 to 2.5 million gallons per acre per day. There is also considerable range in this country, and the rate may reach 3 million gallons per acre per day. Indeed a considerable number of tests have shown that for short periods of time, at least, some waters may be efficiently filtered at rates as high as 7 to 8 million gallons per acre per day, but probably no American engineer is ready to introduce such high rates as yet. As a matter of fact the rate will depend considerably upon the character of water used. Clear water from mountain lakes and streams uncontaminated and carrying little solid material may be filtered safely and properly at much higher rates of filtration than river or other waters carrying more sediment and more organic matter. This principle is recognized both in Europe and in this country. It would appear from experience that slow sand filters at the present time with rates of 2.5 to 3 million gallons per acre per day may be employed for practically any water that may be considered suitable for a public supply, and that with these rates high degrees of both bacterial purification and hygienic efficiency may be reached.

227. Effective Head on Filter. — Inasmuch as the depth of sand ranges from perhaps 3 to 5 feet the water will experience considerable resistance in flowing through it. The distance in elevation between the water surface over the filter and that of the water as it leaves the filter measures the loss of head experienced in passing through the sand and the drainage-passages under it. It has been maintained by some foreign

authorities that this loss of head should be not more than 24 to 30 inches; that a greater head would force the water through the sand at such a rate as to render desired purification impossible. Experience both in the laboratory and with public filters in this country does not appear to sustain that view of the matter; considerably greater heads than 30 inches have been used with entirely satisfactory results both as to the removal of organic matter and bacteria. It appears to be best so to arrange the flow of water through the sand and the underdrains as to avoid in either a pressure below the atmosphere, as in that case some of the dissolved air in the water escapes and produces undesirable disturbances in the sand, resulting in reduced efficiency. No precise rule can be given in respect to this feature of filtration, but it seems probable that satisfactory results may be obtained under proper working of filters with a loss of head not greater than the depth of water on the filter added to the depth of sand in it, although that maximum limit would ordinarily not be reached. The depth of water on the filter may be taken from 3 to 5 feet. In this country it is seldom less than the least of these limits, and perhaps not often equal to the greater limit.

228. Constant Rate of Filtration Necessary.—Care should be taken in the operation of filters to avoid any sudden change in the texture or degree of compactness of the sand. At the times when workmen must necessarily walk over the surface they should be provided with special broad-based footwear, so as to produce as little effect of this kind as possible where they step. Sudden changes in the degree of compactness cause correspondingly sudden changes in the rate of filtration, and such changes produce a deterioration of efficiency. This may be due to two or three reasons. Possibly such changes may open small channels through which water finds its way too freely; or the breaking of the gelatinous bond between the grains of sand may operate prejudicially. At any rate it is essential to avoid such sudden changes and maintain as nearly uniform a rate of filtration over the entire filter as possible. Again, the age of a filter affects to some extent its efficiency. A month or two of time is required, when a new filter is started, to attain what may be called its normal efficiency. Even after that length of time the filter gains

in its power to retain and destroy bacteria. This action is particularly characteristic of filters formed of comparatively coarse sand.

229. Scraping of Filters.—More or less solid inert as well as organic matter accumulates on the surfaces of the slow sand filters, so that at the end of proper periods of time, depending upon the character of the water filtered, this surface accumulation must be scraped off and removed together with the sand into which it has penetrated. In scraping the filter it is impossible to remove less than .25 or .5 inch of sand, and at least .5 to .75 inch is removed whenever a filter is scraped. Sometimes 1 or 2 inches may be removed. This sand may be washed and again placed upon the filter for use. The operation of scraping exhibits a fresh sand surface to the applied water. It has been held, particularly by foreign authorities, that this operation of scraping militates against the efficiency of the filter for the time being. The investigations of the Massachusetts State Board of Health and other experiences in this country do not confirm that view which is based on the assumption that the top nitrogenous film is essential to efficiency. These investigations have shown that this film is not necessary in intermittent filters; that in many instances no diminution of efficiency has resulted from a removal of the film to a depth of .3 inch; that even the presence of that film has not given efficiency to coarse sand when the coating was thick enough to completely clog the filter; and, further, that the material of this nitrogenous film is found at a depth of several inches below the surface. It is practically certain that the scraping to depths not exceeding 1 inch have no sensible effect upon the efficiency under proper management and operation of the filters. This is particularly true if the thickness of sand is from 3 to 5 feet. It is undoubtedly true that with very shallow sand filters from 1 to 2 feet in depth the scraping of the surface may have some effect upon bacterial efficiency.

It has been the custom in connection with some European filters to waste the water which first passes through after cleaning, but the usual practice in this country is to fill slowly the filter with filtered water from below and, after the sand is submerged, to permit it to stand a little while before use. Care taken in

this manner will insure an efficiency to a freshly scraped filter sufficient to avoid any wastage.

230. Introduction of Water to Intermittent Filters.—Where intermittent filters are used it is of the greatest importance to conduct the water to them so as not to disturb the sand on their surfaces. This can readily be done in a number of ways. If the shape of the filter is not oblong, it will be advisable to form a number of main drains or passages in the sand from which smaller depressions or passages near together may lead the water to all parts of the surface. The flowing of the first water through these depressions will permit the entire surface to be covered so gradually as not to disturb the sand grains, and it is essential that such means or their equivalent be employed. If the filter is long and narrow in shape, the main ditch along one of the longer sides, with depressions at right angles to it or across the filter and near together, will be sufficient to accomplish the desired purpose. Obviously when filters are not intermittently used such precautions are not needed.

231. Effect of Low Temperature.—In the early days of the use of sand filters in this country it was frequently supposed that the low temperature of the winter caused decreased bacterial purification and a decrease in power to reduce organic material. It now appears that such is not the case. The effects of low temperature, such as is experienced in winters of this climate, may be overcome by temporarily covering the filters so that heavy ice cannot form and produce disturbances in one way or another prejudicial to efficiency of operation. The agencies which operate to reduce efficiency in cold weather are no longer believed to be those due to low temperature. They are rather indirect and mechanical, and may be readily overcome by the prevention of the formation of ice.

232. Choice of Intermittent or Continuous Filtration.—The process of slow sand filtration when continuous has been shown by experience to be entirely effective for ordinary potable waters, but in those cases where the amount of dissolved oxygen may be low and where the amount of organic matter is relatively high it may be advisable to resort to intermittent filtration. Neither method, however, can be depended upon to render potable a

water which has been robbed of its free oxygen by an excessive amount of contaminated organic matter. Nor can these processes be expected to remove coloring matter produced by peaty soils or other conditions in which large amounts of vegetable matter have been absorbed by the water. The methods, therefore, have their limitations, although their field of application is sufficiently wide to cover nearly all classes of potable water.

233. Size and Arrangement of Slow Sand Filters. — Among the first questions to arise in the design of slow sand filters are their size and arrangement. The total area will be determined by the total daily draft and the rate of filtration. Rates of filtration running from 2.5 to 3 million gallons per acre per day, or even more, have been found satisfactory and are customary in this country. Having given, therefore, the total daily quantity required, it is only necessary to divide that by the rate of filtration per acre and the result will be the number of acres required for the total filter-bed surface. This net area, however, is not sufficient. Unless there is requisite storage of filtered water to meet the variation in the hourly draft for the day, the capacity of the filters must be sufficient to meet the greatest hourly rate, which must be taken at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the average hourly demand during the day; indeed this is only prudent in any case.

Again, it is necessary to divide the total filter surface into small portions called beds, so that one or more of them may be withdrawn from use for cleaning or repairs, while a sufficient filter-area remains in operation to supply the greatest hourly draft. This surplus area will usually run from 5 to 20 per cent of the total area of the filter-beds, although for small towns and cities it may be much more. The sizes of the filter-beds will depend upon the local circumstances of each case. It is evident that as each single bed must have its individual set of appliances and its separating walls, the purpose of economy will be best served by making the beds as large as practicable. At the same time they must not be made too large, for in that case the portion out of use might form so large a percentage of the total area as to increase unduly the cost of the entire plant. A size of bed varying between .5 and 1.5 acres is frequently and perhaps generally found in foreign filtering-plants. If filter-beds range in

area from .5 acre to 2 acres, the latter for large plants, the purposes of economy and convenience in administration will probably be well served. The grouping of the beds is an important consideration and will depend somewhat, at least, upon the shape of the plot of ground taken for the filters. It is advisable that the inlets to the different beds should, as far as possible, discharge from a single inlet-pipe or main. This will generally be most conveniently accomplished by making the beds rectangular in shape, grouped on each side of the supply-main, with their longest dimensions at right angles to it. This arrangement is illustrated by the grouping of the filter-beds in the Albany plant, shown in Fig. 7. In the case of a single oblong bed, like that at Lawrence, Mass., shown in Fig. 4, page 284, its relatively great length and small width makes it possible to run the main supply along one side, from which branch depressions with concrete bottoms enable the water to be distributed uniformly over its surface in the manner shown in the figure. It is further necessary to group the filter-beds, pumps, sand-cleaning appliances, and other portions of the plant, so that the ends of economy and efficient administration may be served in the highest degree. It is always necessary that these features of the whole filtration system should be carefully kept in view in laying out the entire plant.

234. Design of Filter-beds.—The preparation of the site for a group of filtration-beds also involves the consideration of a number of principal questions. In the first place, the depth required for the sand and underdrains will not be far from 5 feet, and there must be a suitable bottom prepared below the collecting-drains. Again, the depth of water above the sand may vary from 3 to 5 feet, making the total depth, including the bottom, of the filter proper about 10 or 11 feet, and this may represent the depth of excavation to be made. If the material on which the filter to be built is soft, it may be necessary to drive piles to support the superincumbent weight. The bottom must be made watertight. This can be done either by the use of a layer of well rammed or packed clay, 1 to 2 feet in thickness, carrying 6 or 8 inches of concrete, or by a surface of paved brick or stone. If the sides of the filter-beds are of embankments with surface slopes, the latter may be protected in the same manner. If the

sides are of walls of masonry, concrete is an excellent material to be used for the purpose.

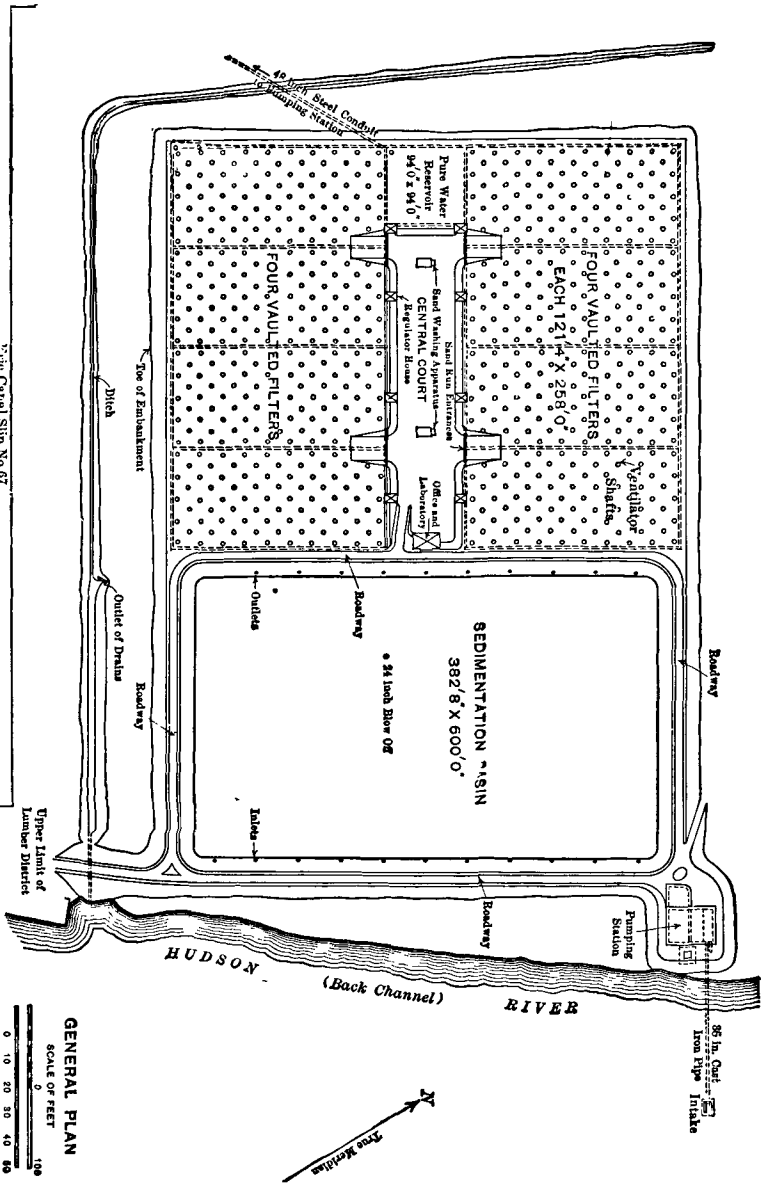
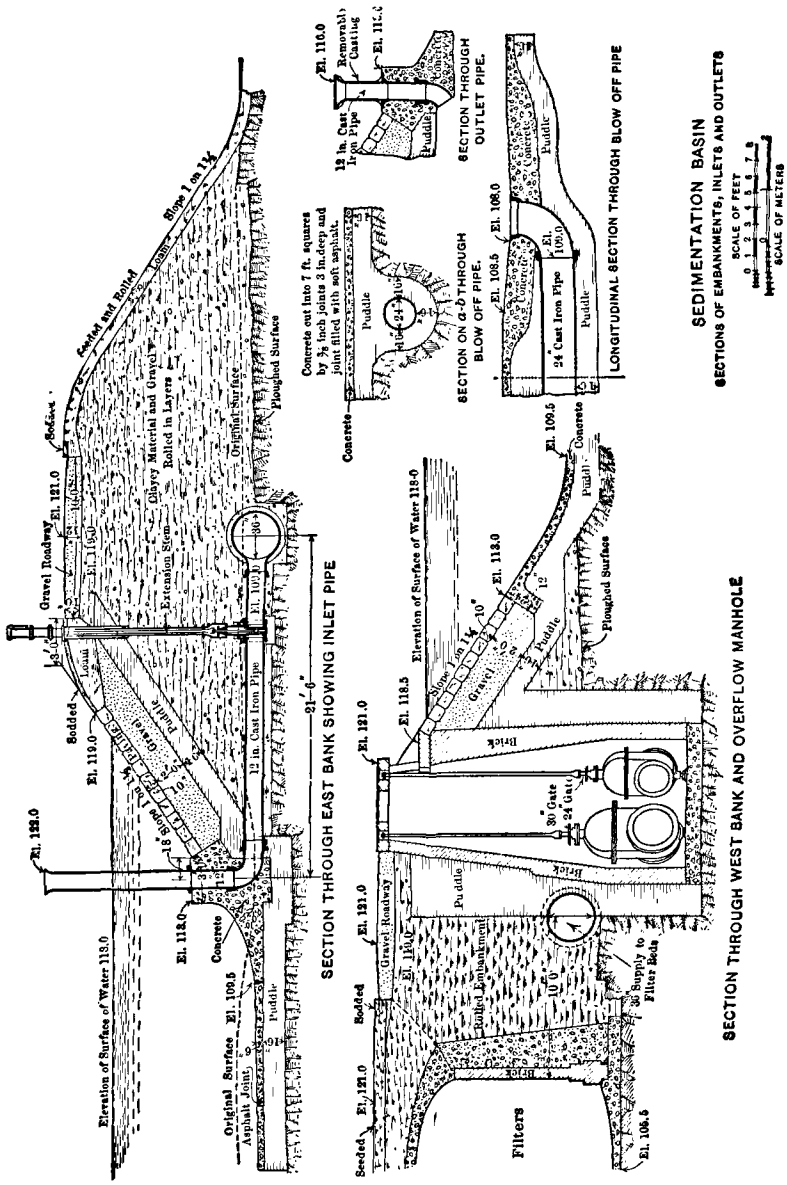


FIG. 7.—Sedimentation-basin and Filter-beds at Albany, N. Y.

In designing the sides of filters or of the piers projecting up through the sand for the support of the roof, in case there is one,

it is imperative that care be taken to prevent water from flowing down through the joints between the sand and the sides of piers



Filtration-plant at Albany, N. Y.

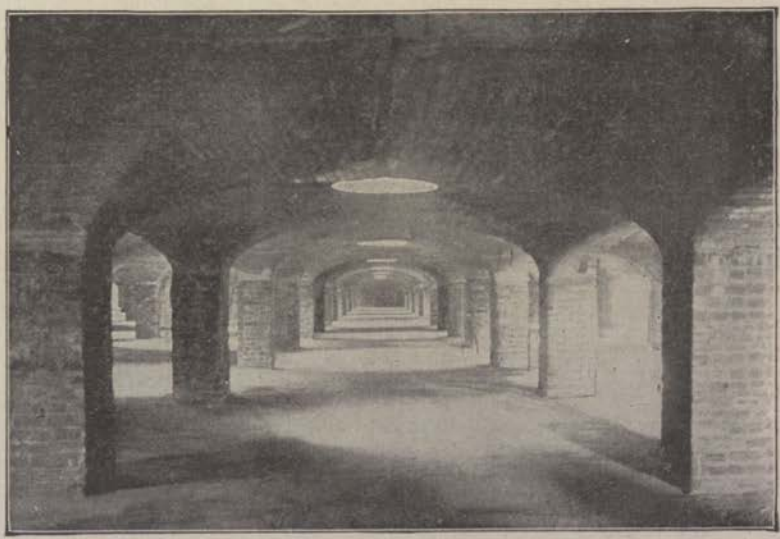
or the masonry sides of the filter-beds. There should be no vertical joint of that character, but the faces of masonry in con-

tact with the sand should both slope and be made in steps, so that any settlement of the sand will tend to close the joint, while the steps will prevent flow. Nor should there be angles in which sand is to be packed; filleted corners are far preferable and should be used.

235. Covered Filters.—It has become the custom where the best results are expected in cold climates, if not in all cases, to cover filters with masonry roofs of domes and cylindrical or groined arches supported on masonry columns. Such roofs are usually covered with earth to a depth of 1 to 2 or 3 feet. They prevent any injurious action on the sides of the filters produced by thick ice or the effects of such ice upon the upper portions of the sand. In summer they also protect against the baking and cracking of the upper surface of the sand when exposed to the sun and prevent, to a considerable extent, the growth of algæ in different portions of the beds. They are expensive, filters with masonry covers costing once and a half to twice as much as open filters, but they enhance the sanitary value of the water. The height of the masonry roof must be about 2 to 3 feet above the upper surface of the water and high enough to offer convenient access to the sand when it is to be cleaned and renewed. The length of span for the arches or domes is seldom more than 12 or 15 feet.

236. Clear-water Drain-pipes of Filters.—After the water has passed through the sand it must be withdrawn from the bottom of the filter with as little resistance as practicable. This necessitates, in the first place, the bottom of the filter to be so shaped as to induce the flow of the filtered water toward the lines of drain-pipes which are laid to receive it. These pipes consist of the main members and the branches, the main members being laid along the centres of the beds and the branches running from them. The bottoms of the filters, therefore, should be formed with depressions in which the main pipes are laid, and with such grades as to expedite the movement of the water flowing through the branches. If the bottoms are of concrete, they can advantageously be made of inverted arches or domes, the drain-pipes being laid along the lines of greatest depression. In such cases the loads produced by the weight of the roof are more nearly uniformly distributed over the bottom. The sizes of the drains will

be dependent upon the areas from which they withdraw water. It is advisable to make them rather large, in order that the water may flow through them more freely. They seldom need exceed 6 or 8 inches. They are preferably made of salt-glazed vitrified pipes laid with open joints, around and in the vicinity of which are placed gravel or broken stone, the largest pieces with a maximum diameter of 1 to 2 inches. The largest broken stone or coarsest gravel is near the pipe and should decrease in size as



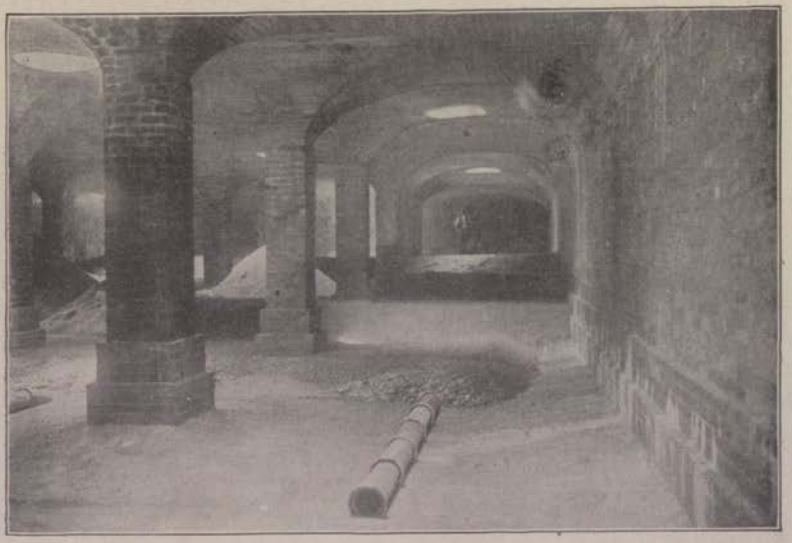
Interior of Covered Filter at Ashland, Wis.

the drain-pipe is receded from, so that the final portions of the gravel farthest removed from the drains will not permit the filter-sand to pass into it. When properly designed and arranged, the loss of head in passing from the farthest points of a filter-bed to the point of exit from the filter will not exceed about .01 to .02 of a foot.

237. Arrangement of the Sand at Lawrence and Albany.—Above this gravel is placed the filtering-sand, about 4 feet thick in the Albany filter and 3 to 4 feet thick in the filter at Lawrence, Mass. The sand in the Albany filter was specified to have not "more than 10 per cent less than .27 mm." in diameter and "at least 10 per

cent by weight shall be less than .36 mm." in diameter. Over the entire floor was spread not more than 12 inches of gravel or broken stone, the lower 7 inches consisting of broken stone or gravel with greatest diameter varying from 1 inch to 2 inches; the remaining 5 inches of the lower 1 foot was composed of broken stone or gravel decreasing from 1 inch in greatest diameter to a grain a little coarser than that of the sand above it. In all cases, sand for the filter-bed should be free from everything that can be classed as dirt, including clay, loam, and vegetable matter. Furthermore, it should be free from any mineral matter which might change the character of the water and render it less fit for use.

This filtering-sand is usually placed in position with a horizontal surface. At Lawrence, however, it was placed with



Partially Filled Covered Sand Filter showing Drain pipe.

a wavy surface, the horizontal distance between the crests of two consecutive waves being 30 feet, the concrete gutter for admitting the water being half-way between, all as shown in the illustrations. The sand of this filter was of two grades, the coarser sand having an effective size of 0.3 mm. (.118 inch) and the finer an effective size of 0.25 mm. (098 inch). The two dif-

ferent sizes of sand are seen not to be arranged in horizontal layers, but so that the finer is over the drains and the coarser between. The No. 70 sand is capable of passing 70 million gallons per acre per day with a head on it equal to the depth of sand, while the No. 50 sand can pass 50 million gallons per acre per day with a head on it equal to its depth. There appears to be no special advantage in placing the sand in filters other than in horizontal layers with an effective size practically uniform.

238. Velocity of Flow through Sand.—The velocity with which water will flow through a given depth of sand with a known depth or head above the surface of the latter has been carefully investigated by the Massachusetts State Board of Health with the following results:

v = the velocity at which a solid column of water, whose section equals in area that of the bed of sand, moves downward through the sand in meters per day; this is practically the number of million gallons passing through the sand per acre per day.

c = a constant, having the value of 1000 for clean sand, and 800 for filter-sand after having been some time in use.

d = the effective size of the sand-grain in millimeters.

h = the head lost by the water in passing through the sand at the rate v; this is the effective head of water producing motion through the sand.

l = the thickness of the sand bed.

t = the temperature of the water in degrees Fahr.

The velocity v, as determined by experiment, takes the following form:

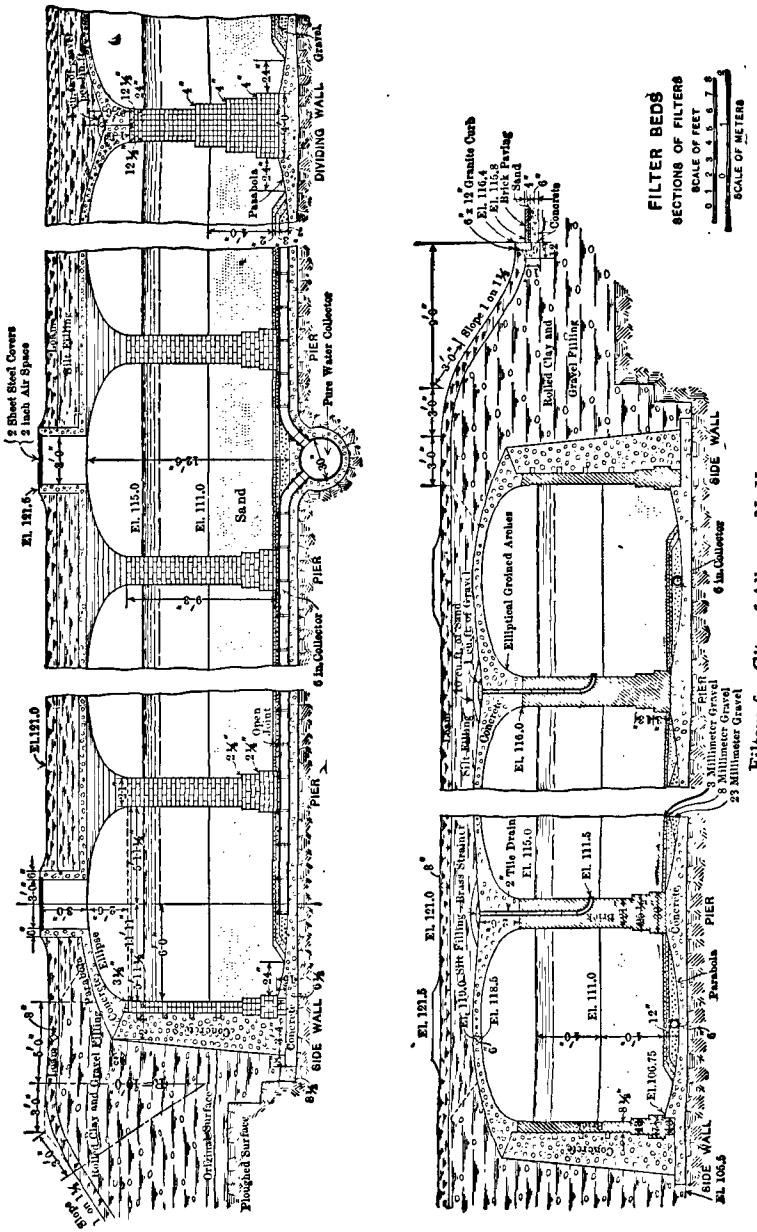
$$v = cd^2 \frac{h}{l} \left(\frac{t + 10}{60} \right).$$

This formula cannot be used for the flow of water through all sands of all thicknesses and under all circumstances. It is limited to effective diameters of sand between .1 and 3 mm., having a uniformity coefficient not greater than 5. h and l may be taken in any unit as long as both are expressed in the same unit, since the ratio of the two quantities will then not be affected.

If the effective head of water on the filter or the head lost is equal to the thickness of the bed of sand, the ratio of h divided by l will be 1. In case the formula is used to express the quantity of water flowing through the sand per acre per day, it must be remembered that v will be the number of million gallons and not the total number of gallons. The formula can only be used when the sand is well compacted and where the voids of the sand are entirely filled with water.

239. Frequency of Scraping and Amount Filtered between Scrapings.—The frequency of the scraping of filters will depend upon the amount of organic matter in the water and upon the rate of filtration. Between the years 1893 and 1900 the periods between scrapings of the Lawrence filter ranged generally from 20 to 32 days, although periods as small as 13 or 19 are found in the records. The quantity of water passed between scrapings varies generally from 67 million to 90 million gallons, although it fell as low as 49 millions and rose as high as 109 millions. In the case of the Albany filter-plant, up to the end of the year 1900 the shortest period between scrapings was about 15 days and the longest about 42 days, the smallest quantity of water passing through any filter between scrapings being 26,735,000 gallons and the largest 76,982,000 gallons. The operation of the Albany filters for the year 1901 shows that the average run of a bed was 26 days between scrapings, with a total of 70,000,000 gallons per acre for that period. These figures represent about the usual workings of slow sand filters at the present time, the period between scrapings running usually between 15 and 30 days, and the quantity from 30 million gallons per acre to 100 million gallons per acre.

240. Cleaning the Clogged Sand.—The clogged sand scraped from the top of the filters at the periods of cleaning is removed to a convenient point where appliances and machinery are available for washing it. This is an item of some importance in the administration of filters, as the sand which is removed and washed is at a later period replaced upon the filter-bed. Various methods have been tried for the purpose of cleaning sand efficiently and economically. The continuous ejector sand-washer, one set of which is used at Albany, is probably as efficient as any



Filters for City of Albany, N. Y.

machine yet devised. It is shown in Fig. 8. It will be observed that the dirty sand is fed to the machine at one end into a hopper-shaped receptacle. In the bottom of this hopper is a nozzle through which water is discharged from a pipe running along the entire bottom of the machine. This jet of water forces the sand upward through a suitable pipe into a reservoir which discharges the sand and water into another hopper, and so on through the series of five. Evidently there may be any number of hoppers in the series, a jet of water being provided at the bottom of each. In this manner the sand and water are thoroughly mixed together and compelled to flow upward from each hopper to the next, the dirty water overflowing also from each hopper into a tank underneath, whence it runs to waste. The clean sand and water flow out of the machine at the end opposite to that at which they entered. After the washed sand is dried it is ready to be replaced in the filter.

241. Controlling or Regulating Apparatus. — It is essential to the proper working of a slow sand filter that the amount of water admitted to and passing through it shall be as nearly uniform as practicable. This necessitates controlling or regulating apparatus, of which there are two general classes, the one automatic and the other worked by hand. There are a considerable number of appliances of both classes. The filtered water flows from the end of the drains to one or two small tanks formed by suitable masonry walls immediately outside of the filter-beds and rises to a level determined by the loss of head in passing through the filter. The difference in elevation between the water surface over the sand and that in the filtered water-tanks shows the effective head which causes the water to flow through the sand. The object of the controlling or regulating appliances is to keep that head as nearly constant as possible. Both the hand and automatic appliances preserve the value of that head by maintaining constant discharges through either vertical or horizontal orifices, the orifices themselves being movable. They may be rectangular or other orifices with horizontal lips or crests. If the control is automatic it is accomplished usually by a float which raises and lowers the orifice in such a way as to maintain a constant difference of level between the filtered and the unfiltered

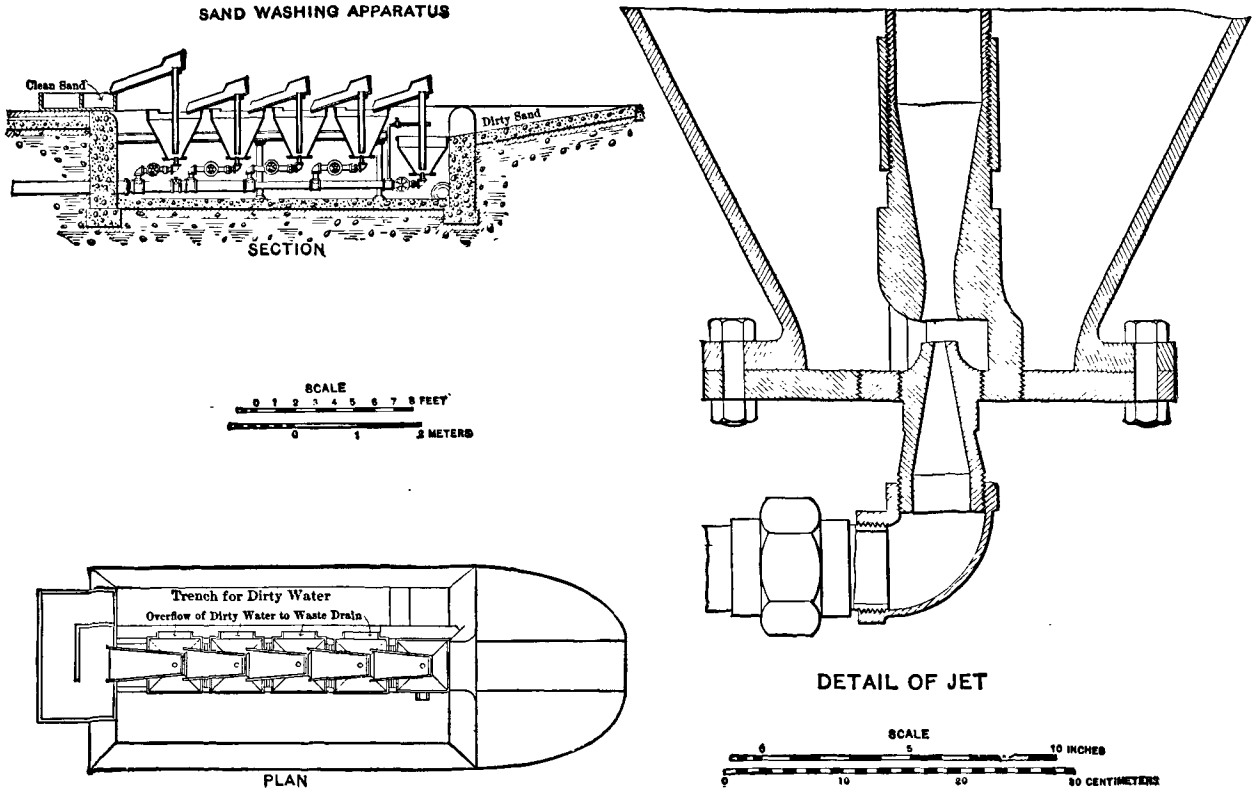


FIG. 8.—Ejector Sand-washer.

water. The figures illustrate both types of regulating appliances, the actions of which will be readily understood.

242. Cost of Slow Sand Filters.—The cost of both the open and covered slow sand filters will obviously vary according to the cost of labor and materials at their sites. The original cost of the Lawrence filter, about 2.44 acres in total area, was nearly $25,000 per acre. The cost of covered filters, so far as constructed in this country, varies from about $44,000 to nearly $51,000 per

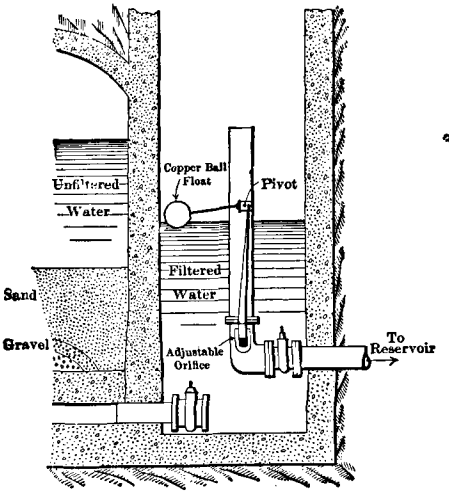


FIG. 9.—Ball-float Regulator of Rate of Filtration.

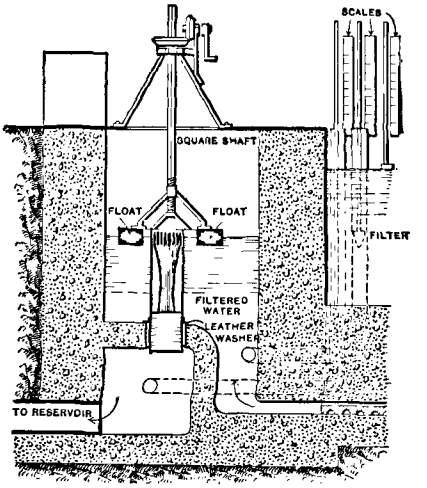


FIG. 10.—Regulator in Use in Zurich, Switzerland. M. Peter, Engineer.

acre excluding the pipe, pumping plants, and sedimentation-basins. The Albany covered filters cost about $38,000 per acre including filtering materials, but excluding excavation, pumps, buildings, sedimentation-basins, piping, and sand-washing machinery, or nearly $46,000 per acre including those items except pumps and sedimentation-basins. The roof, included in the preceding estimate, cost about $14,000 per acre. The smaller the filters the greater the cost per acre, as a rule, as would be expected. A single open filter at Poughkeepsie and three open filter-beds at Berwyn, Pa., cost respectively $42,000 and $36,000 per acre, the former being little less than .7 acre in area and the

latter having an aggregate area of a little more than one-half acre. A covered filter at Ashland, Wis., consisting of three beds of one-sixth acre each, cost at the rate of about $70,000 per acre.

243. Cost of Operation of Albany Filter.—The cost of operating the Albany filter, including only the costs of scraping, remov-

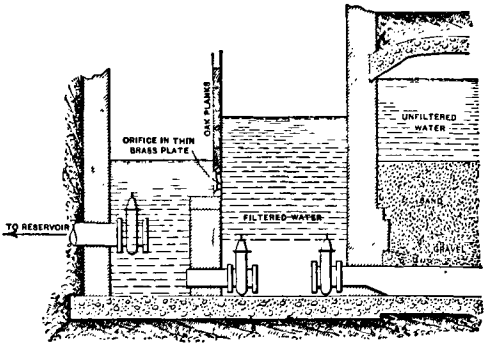


FIG. 11.—Regulating Apparatus Designed by Allen Hazen for the Albany Filters.

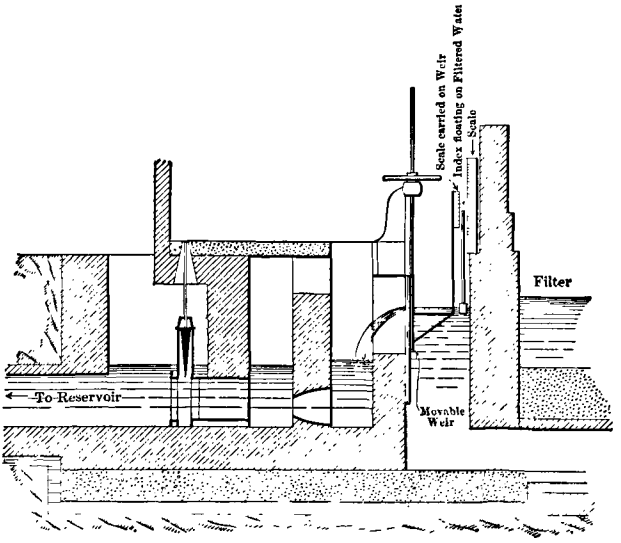


FIG. 12.—Regulator of Rate of Filtration.

ing sand, refilling, incidentals, lost time, and washing the sand during seventeen months ending December 29, 1900, was $1.66 per million gallons filtered. The cost of removing the sand (ex-

cluding scraping), washing, and refilling was $1.21 per cubic yard. The total cost of operating the entire filter-plant, including all items, for the year 1900 was $4.52 per million gallons filtered. This covers all expenses, including pumping, superintendence, and laboratory, which can be charged to the operation of the filter-plant. The average removal of albuminoid ammonia at Albany for the year 1900 was 49 per cent and of the free am-

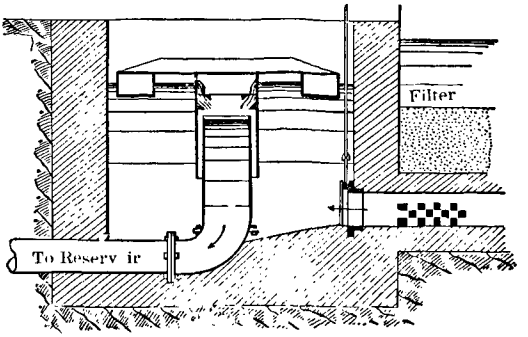


FIG. 13.—Regulator Designed by W. H. Lindley for the Filters at Warsaw, Poland.

monia 78 per cent of that in the raw water, while the average bacterial removal was over 99 per cent, running from 98.3 per cent to 99.6 per cent. The volume of water used in washing the sand was about twelve and a half times the volume of the sand. Each cubic yard of sand washed, therefore, required twelve and a half cubic yards of water.

244. Operation and Cost of Operation of Lawrence Filter.—It was originally intended that the Lawrence filter should be worked intermittently. The Merrimac River water, which is used by the city of Lawrence, was known to carry at certain periods of the year sufficient typhoid germs received from the city of Lowell to produce at least mild epidemics. The intermittent operation was considered necessary to furnish the filter with the requisite oxygen to destroy beyond a doubt all pathogenic bacteria. The increasing demands of water consumption during the years that have elapsed since filtration began in 1894 have seriously modified these conditions, so that the intermittent feature of operation of the filter is no longer very prominent. During 1898, for instance, the filter was drained only four to thirteen times per

month, with an average of eight monthly drainings. In 1899 the drainings were more frequent, varying from five to fourteen per month and averaging eleven times. Finally, in 1900, the monthly drainings ranged from three to thirteen, with an average of eight. It may be considered, therefore, that the Lawrence filter occupies a kind of intermediate position between intermittent and continuous operation.

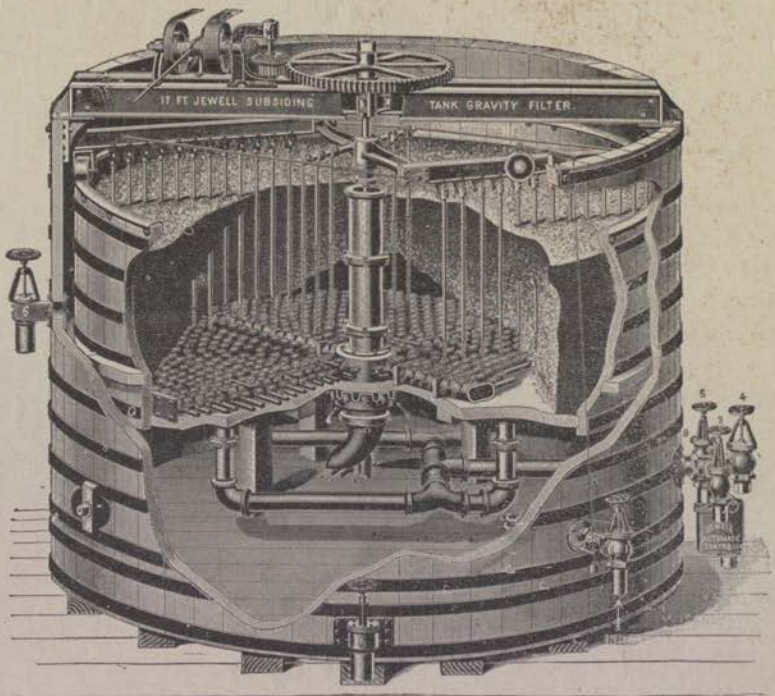
The total cost of operating the filter at Lawrence, including scraping and washing of sand, refilling, removal of snow and ice, and general items in the period from 1895 to 1900, both inclusive, varied from a minimum of $7.70 per million gallons to $9.00 per million gallons. If the removal of snow and ice be omitted, these amounts will be reduced to $5.10 and $6.90 respectively. The cost of washing the sand only in the Lawrence filter during the same period varied from 45 to 67 cents per cubic yard. The volume of water required for that washing varied from ten to fourteen times the volume of sand.

245. Sanitary Results of Operation of Lawrence and Albany Filters.—The average number of bacteria in the Merrimac River water applied to the filter during the period 1894 to 1899, both inclusive, varied from about 1900 per cubic centimeter to 34,900, and the percentage of reduction attained by passing the water through the filter varied in the same period generally from 97 to 99.8 per cent, with an average of about 99.1 per cent.

In the city of Lawrence the average number of cases of typhoid fever per 10,000 of population has been about one third, since the introduction of filtered water, of the number of cases which existed prior to the installation of the filters, and less than one fourth as many deaths. A large number of the cases of typhoid occurring after the installation of the filter have been traced to the use of unfiltered water, and it is probable that all or nearly all could be similarly accounted for.

In the city of Albany the experience had been quite similar. The average number of deaths per year from typhoid fever for ten years before the introduction of filtered water was 84, while in 1900, with the filter in operation, the total number of deaths was 39. These figures are sufficient to show the marked beneficial effect of filtered water on the public health.

246. Rapid Filtration with Coagulants.—It has been seen that the rate of filtration through open sand filters does not usually exceed 2 to 4 million gallons per acre per day under ordinary circumstances. Much greater rates would clog the sand and produce less efficient results. Experience has also shown that such methods cannot be depended upon to remove from water coloring matter of a vegetable origin or very finely divided sediment. In order to accomplish these ends it is necessary to



Jewell Filter.

employ suitable chemicals which, acting as coagulants, may accomplish results impracticable in the open filter. Resort has therefore been made first to the adoption of suitable coagulants and then to such increased heads or pressures as to force the water through the sand at rates from 25 to 30 or even 50 times as great as practicable in slow sand filtration. These rapid sand filters are called mechanical filters. If the water is forced through

them under pressure, they consist of closed tanks in which sand is placed so as to leave sufficient volume above it for the influent water and, supported upon a platform carrying perforated pipes, strainers, or equivalent details through which the filtered water may flow into a suitable system of effluent pipes in the lower part of the filter. If water is forced through the sand by the required head, the upper part of the filter may be open, but of sufficient height to accommodate it. The same filtering material, clean sand, is used as in the slow filters; the only differences, aside from the higher rate of filtration, are the greater head and the introduction of a coagulant to the water. The depth of sand used may vary from 2 to 4 feet. The thickness of a relatively fine sand may be less than that of a coarser sand.

247. Operation of Coagulants.—The coagulant which has been found to give the best results is ordinary alum or sulphate of aluminum. If sulphate of aluminum is dissolved in water containing a little lime or magnesia, aluminum hydrate and sulphuric acid are formed. The aluminum hydrate is a sticky gelatinous substance which gathers together in a flocculent mass the particles of suspended matter in the water, and it also adheres to the grains of sand when those masses have settled to the bottom. This flocculent, gelatinous mass covers the sand and passes into its voids. As the water is forced through it the bacteria and suspended matter are held, leaving a clear effluent to pass through. Other coagulants are used, such as the hydrate of iron, but it costs more than alum and is not so effective in removing color, although it is an excellent coagulant for removing turbidity. Physicians have made objection to the use of alum for this purpose, on the ground that any excess might pass into distribution-pipes and so be consumed by the water-users to the detriment of health. While it is possible that further experience may show that there is material ground for this objection, it has thus far not been found to be so. It is, however, essential that only the necessary amount of alum should be used and that there may be a sufficient amount of alkali to combine with the sulphuric acid. Otherwise the acidulated water may attack the iron and lead pipes and so injure the water and produce serious trouble. It can only be stated that the method and operation of these mechanical filters

have thus far been sufficiently successful to avoid any of these difficulties.

248. Principal Parts of Mechanical Filter-plant—Coagulation and Subsidence.—The principal parts of a complete mechanical filter-plant in the order of their succession are a solution-tank, a measuring-tank, a sedimentation-basin, and a filter. In case of great turbidity the sedimentation may be completed in two

The Jewell Filter-plant at Norristown, Penn.

stages, the first in a settling-basin prior to receiving the coagulant, and the second in another basin subsequent to the coagulation. The tanks are usually of wood, although they may be of steel. The solution-tank is a comparatively small vessel in which the alum is dissolved. The solution is then run into the measuring-tank, from which it flows into the water at a constant rate maintained by suitable regulating apparatus. It is imperative for the successful working of the mechanical filter-plant that the coagulant be introduced to the water at a uniform rate. This

rate will obviously depend upon the character of the water. The coagulating solution runs from the measuring-tank into the pipe through which the water to be filtered flows and in which it first receives the alum. The water and the coagulating solution are thus thoroughly mixed and flow into the sedimentation-basin. The subsidence which is provided for in this basin may be omitted in very clear waters which carry little solid matter, but the operation of the filter itself will be more satisfactorily accomplished if as much work as feasible is done before reaching it. The mixture must remain in this basin a sufficient length of time to allow such subsidence as can reasonably be attained.

It appears from experience in this part of the work that it is not well to introduce the coagulant too long before the water enters the filter, especially if the water be fairly clear. In the case of the presence of finely divided solid matter, however, sufficient time must be permitted for the necessary settlement. A period ranging in length from $\frac{1}{2}$ hour to 6 or 8 hours may be advantageously assigned to this part of the operation, the shorter period for clear waters and the longer for very turbid waters. It has been suggested that two applications of the coagulant might be beneficial, the principal portion being given to the water before entering the sedimentation-basin and the other just before the waters enters the filter. The work of the filter, especially with turbid waters, may be much reduced by simple subsidence for a period of perhaps 24 hours before receiving the coagulant, the secondary subsidence taking place in the settling-basin in the manner already described. Duplicate solution- and measuring-tanks will be required in order that the process may be continuous while one set is out of use. In this process it is absolutely essential also that the coagulant should be of the best quality, inferior grades having been found to be unsatisfactory in their operation.

249. Amount of Coagulant—Advantageous Effect of Alum on Organic Matter.—The amount of sulphate of alumina will vary largely with the quality of water. In the investigation made by Mr. Fuller in connection with the Ohio River supply for the city of Cincinnati, he found that with very slight turbidity only $\frac{3}{4}$ grain was required per gallon of water, but that a high degree of

turbidity required as much as 4.4 grains per gallon, with intermediate amounts for intermediate degrees of turbidity. It was estimated that these quantities would correspond to an average annual amount of about 1.6 grains per gallon. In case there should be a period of three days of subsidence preliminary to filtration, he estimated that for the greater part of the time the amount of alum would vary from 1 to 3 grains per gallon. Occasionally more and sometimes less would be required.

Alum has some specially valuable qualities in connection with this class of purification work. It combines with coloring matter, particularly that which has been acquired from contact of the water with vegetation, and precipitates it. It seems to combine also, to some extent, with the organic matter carried by the water and thus enhances the efficiency of filtration.

250. High Heads and Rates for Rapid Filtration.—The principal work of investigation of filtration in mechanical or pressure filters has been made for the cities of Pittsburg, Cincinnati, Louisville, and Providence, R. I. In the experimental work of those investigations rates of filtration ranging from 46 million to 170 million gallons per acre per day have been employed with essentially the same efficiency. This is a practical result of great importance, particularly if in the continued use of these filters on a large scale a satisfactorily high efficiency can be reached and maintained. It was observed that the number of bacteria in the effluent varied with that in the raw water. It was also noticed that similarly to the operation of slow sand filters the rate of filtration should not be changed suddenly, as that is likely to cause breaks in the sand and militate against continued efficiency.

In his experimental work at Cincinnati Mr. Fuller found that with fine sand an available head on the filter of 12 feet gave economical results. He also states that "high rates are more economical than low ones, and that the full head which can be economically used should be provided. Just where the economical limit of the rate of filtration is can only be determined from practical experience with a wider range of conditions than exist here, but there seem to be no indications that the capacity of a plant originally constructed on a medium rate basis (100 million to 125 million gallons per acre daily) could not readily and eco-

nomically be increased, as the consumption demanded, to rates at least as high as the highest tried here (170 million gallons per acre daily), provided the full economical increase in loss of head could be obtained."

251. Types and General Arrangement of Mechanical Filters.— These mechanical or pressure (by gravity) filters have until lately been constructed by companies owning patents either on the process or on the different parts of the filters. The fundamental patent, however, protecting rapid sand filters with the continuous application of a coagulant has expired and the city of Louisville, Ky., is now constructing rapid sand filters different in design from those heretofore used. The types that have been most common heretofore are the Jewell subsidence gravity filter, the Continental gravity filter, the New York sectional-wash gravity filter, and others. They all possess the main feature of accelerating the rate of filtration by pressure, either in a closed tank (rarely) with comparatively small water volume above the sand or by an open filter with sufficient head of water above the sand to accomplish the high rate desired. This latter method is that now generally used, as by it the requisite steadiness of head or pressure can be secured. The closed type is subject to objectionable sudden changes of pressure which prevent or break uniform rates of filtration. The sand is supported upon a platform with a suitable system of pipes fitted with valves or gates for the withdrawal of the filtered water, the space below the platform forming a small sedimentation-chamber. They are usually constructed in comparatively small circular units, so that one or more of a group may be withdrawn from operation for the purposes of cleaning or repairs without interfering with the operation of the others. This system of small units, gives some marked practical advantages, as housing is readily accomplished, and if necessary the plant may be easily removed from one point to another.

It is obvious that with the large amount of water forced through a given area of filter-bed the sand will become clogged within a comparatively short time, requiring washing and replacing. Mr. Fuller found at Cincinnati that the periods between washings when fine sand was used in the filters ranged from 8 to

24 hours, with an average of 15, but with coarse sand the average became 20, with a range of from 6 to 36 hours. The time required for washing the sand at Cincinnati was 20 minutes for coarse or 30 minutes for fine. At Providence Mr. Weston found that the average time of washing was about 11 minutes. The cleaning is accomplished partially by stirring the sand with revolving arms, as shown in the accompanying figures, but generally by

Continental Filter.

forcing the water in a reverse direction through the sand and allowing the wash-water either to run to waste or to be again purified. The filters are designed for the purpose of cleaning by the reversal of the direction of the flow of water. Latterly the sand has been cleaned by forcing compressed air at a low pressure through it and the superimposed water. The passage of the air or water upward through the sand produces such a commotion among the grains that they rub against each other and

clean themselves of the adhering material, allowing it to be carried off by the water above the sand. Both methods are much used and are satisfactorily effective for the purpose.

It was found at Cincinnati that 4 to 9 per cent, with an average of 5 per cent, of filtered water was required for washing the fine sand, and only 2 to 6 per cent, with an average of 3 per cent, for the coarse sand of the mechanical filters used in Mr. Fuller's experiments. Mr. Weston has found about the same figures in his experimental work at Providence. The wash-water need not be wasted at all if it is pumped back into the subsidence-tanks.

It has been found in some cases that the efficiency of the filters after washing is not quite normal, and that possibly 2 or 3 per cent of the water must be wasted unless it is allowed to run back into the subsidence-tanks and again pass through the filter. Under such circumstances it has required 20 to 30 minutes of operation of the filter after washing to regain its normal efficiency.

252. Cost of Mechanical Filters.—The cost of these mechanical filters has been found to range as high as a rate of $500,000 per acre, which is probably about ten times as much as the rate of cost for the slow sand filters. On the other hand, the efficiency of the mechanical filters may be as high as the other class, with a rate of filtration from thirty to fifty times as great, and with a cost of operation less than that of the slow sand filters. The cost of the filters per million gallons of filtered water may, therefore, be reduced to perhaps one fourth of that of the slow sand type.

253. Relative Features of Slow and Rapid Filtration.—It is premature, even unnecessary, to make a comparison between the slow and rapid sand filters. The former are well adapted to a large class of potable waters in which there is not too much or too finely divided solid matter and in which the coloring from organic origin is not serious. They have the advantage of requiring no chemicals and are capable of attaining a high degree of efficiency. The average rate of filtration may be taken about 3,000,000 gallons per acre per day. The rapid sand filter, on the contrary, requires the application of a coagulant, but has thirty to fifty times the capacity of the other class. It is better adapted

to the removal of turbidity and color, and when properly operated it gives a high efficiency. A sufficiently extended experience has not yet, however, been attained to enable a complete statement to be made as to the entire field to which they may be adapted. They have certainly been shown to possess valuable qualities in a number of respects, and they are undoubtedly destined to play an important part in the purification of waters.

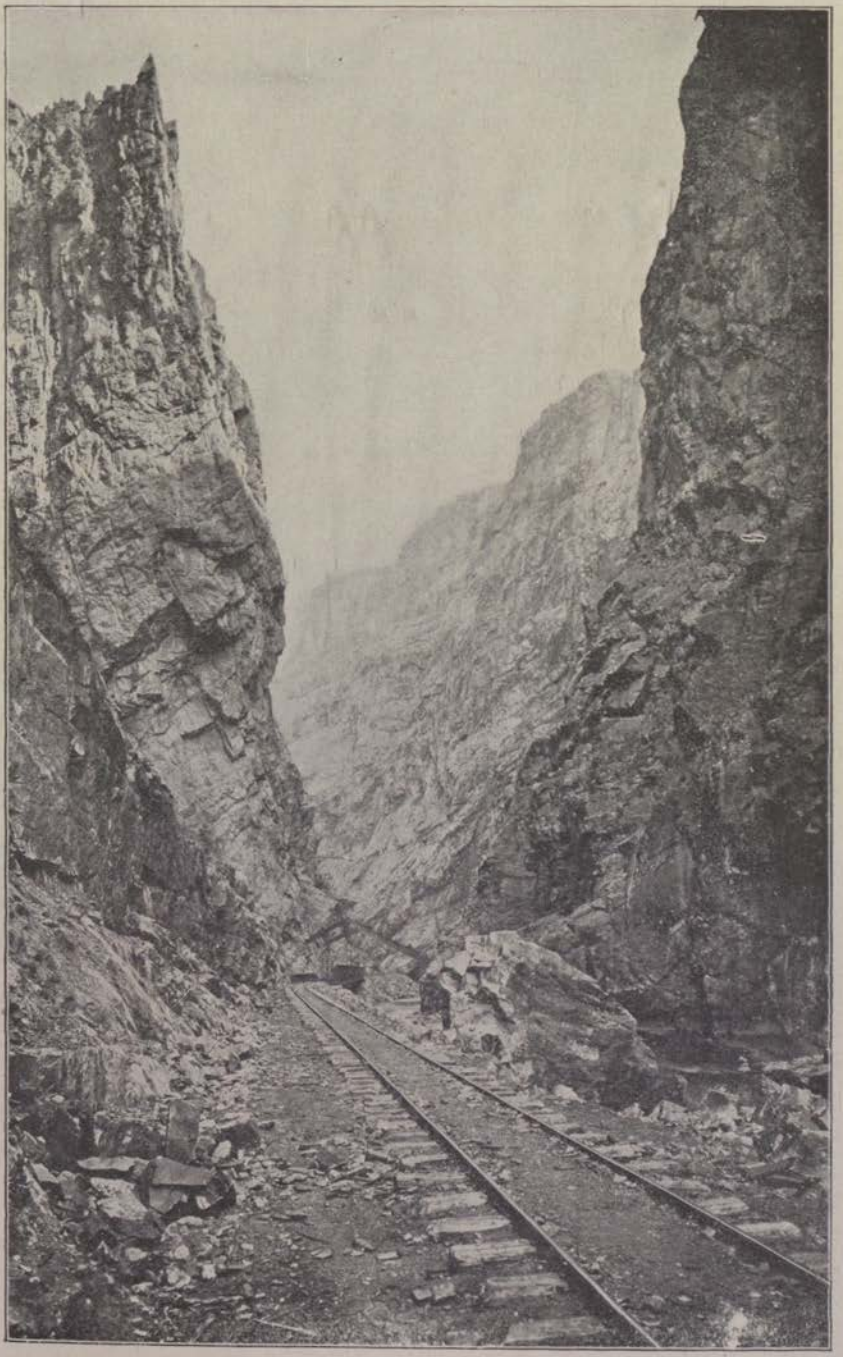
PART IV.

SOME FEATURES OF RAILROAD ENGINEERING.

CHAPTER XXI.

254. Introductory.—The first step toward the construction of a railroad is the location of the line, which requires as an initiative a careful ocular examination of the general vicinity of the proposed road, supplemented by simple and approximate instrumental work rapidly performed. Following this reconnaissance, as it is called, more complete surveys and examinations are made both in the field and on the maps plotted from the data of the field-work. The prosecution of this series of operations produces the final location, together with the accumulation of such maps, profiles, and other data as may be required in the construction of the road-bed, bridges, and other structures constituting the complete railroad line with its ballast and track in place ready for traffic.

The ultimate purpose of any railroad line is the transportation of passengers and freight under conditions, including those of a physical natu e connected with the road as well as the rates received, leading to profitable returns. Competition or other circumstances attending the traffic of a given road will fix the maximum rates to be charged for transportation. It is the business, first, of the civil engineer so to locate and design the road and, second, of the manager so to conduct the transportation as to make the margin of profits the greatest possible. It will be the purpose of this lecture to consider in a general way only



The Royal Gorge.

some of the features of a railroad and its operation which are related directly to civil engineering.

255. Train Resistances.—It is a fact confirmed by constant daily experience that, however nicely the machine impelling the railroad train or the tracks supporting the cars may be built, considerable frictional and other resistance is offered to the movement of the train when the latter passes over a perfectly level and straight track.

A considerable portion of the cost of transportation is expended in overcoming this resistance. When the line fails to be either level or straight other resistances of magnitude are developed; they are called the resistances of grades and curves: and it is the business of the civil engineer so to design the railroad as to reduce these two classes of resistance to an absolute minimum, in view of certain other conditions which must be concurrently maintained.

256. Grades.—The grade of a railroad is expressed usually in this country by the number of feet through which 100 feet of length of line rises or falls, or by some expression equivalent to that. If, for instance, the line rises 1.5 or 2 feet in 100, it is said to have an ascending grade of 1.5 or 2 per cent. Or if the line falls the same amount in the same length, it is said to have a descending grade of 1.5 or 2 per cent. It is evident that a grade which descends in one direction would be an ascending grade for trains moving in the opposite direction, so that grades favoring traffic in one direction oppose it in the other. Hence, other things being equal, that road is the most advantageous for the movement of trains which has the least grade. The grades of railroads seldom exceed 2 or 2.5 per cent, although, as will presently be shown, there are some striking exceptions to that general observation. The actual angles of inclination of railroad tracks from a horizontal line are therefore as angles very small, but their disadvantages for traffic increase rapidly.

A simple principle in mechanics shows that if the railroad train with a weight W moves up a 2 per cent grade, one component of the train weight acts directly against the tractive force of the locomotive or other motive power. If a is the angle of

inclination of the track to a horizontal line, this opposing component will have the value $W \sin a$. When angles are small their sines are essentially equal to their tangents. Hence, in this case, sin a would have the value .02 or 1/50 of the train weight. If the weight of the train were 500 tons, which is a rather light train for the present time, this opposing force would be 10 tons, or 20,000 pounds, which, as we shall see later on, is more than one half of the total tractive force of any but the heaviest locomotives built at the present day. This simple instance shows the advantage of keeping railroad grades down to the lowest practicable values.

One of the most economical freight-carrying roads in the United States is the Lake Shore and Michigan Southern of the New York Central system, running from Buffalo to Chicago. Its maximum grade is 0.4 of 1 per cent. The maximum grade of the N. Y. C. & H. R. R. R. is 0.75 of 1 per cent between New York City and Albany and between Albany and Buffalo, 1.74 per cent at Albany, 1.12 per cent at Schenectady, and 1 per cent at Batavia. Pushers or assistant locomotives are used for heavy trains at the three latter points. The maximum grade of the Pennsylvania R. R. on the famous Horseshoe Curve between Altoona and Cresson is 1.8 per cent. It is advantageous, whereever practicable, to concentrate heavy grades within a short distance, as in the case of the New York Central at Albany, and use auxiliary engines, called pushers or assistants. Some of the heaviest grades used in this country are found on the trans-continental lines where they pass the summits of the Rocky Mountains or the Sierras. In one portion of its line over a stretch of 25.4 miles the Southern Pacific R. R. rises 2674 feet with a maximum grade of 2.2 per cent; also approaching the Tehacipi Pass in California the maximum grade is about 2.4 per cent. At the Marshall Pass on the Denver & Rio Grande R. R. there is a rise of 3675 feet in 25 miles with a maximum grade of 4 per cent. The Central Pacific R. R. (now a part of the Southern Pacific system) rises 992 feet in 13 miles with a maximum grade of 2 per cent. The Northern Pacific R. R. rises at one place 1668 feet in an air-line distance of 13 miles with a maximum grade of 2.2 per cent. Probably the heaviest grade in the world on an

ordinary steam railroad is that of the Calumet Mine branch of the Denver & Rio Grande R. R., which makes an elevation of 2700 feet in 7 miles on an 8 per cent grade and with 25° curves as maximum curvature. These instances are sufficient to illustrate maximum railroad grades found in the United States.

257. Curves.—Civil engineers in different parts of the world have rather peculiar classifications of curves. In this country the railroad curve is indicated by the number of degrees in it which subtend a chord 100 feet in length. Evidently the smaller the radius or the sharper the curvature the greater will be the number of degrees between the radii drawn from the centre of a circle to the extremities of a 100-feet chord. American civil engineers use this system for the reason that the usual tape or chain used in railroad surveying is 100 feet long. A very simple and elementary trigonometric analysis shows that under this system the radius of any curve will be equal to 50 divided by the sine of one half of the angle between the two radii drawn to the extremities of the 100-feet chord. In other words, it is equal to 50 divided by the sine of one half the degree of curvature. The application of this simple formula will give the following tabular values of the radii for the curves indicated:

Curve.	Radius in Feet.
1°	5729.65
2°	2864.93
3°	1910.08
4°	1432.69
5°	1146.28
6°	955.36
7°	819.02
8°	716.78
9°	637.27
10°	573.69
12°	478.74
15°	383.06
20°	287.91

258. Resistance of Curves and Compensation in Grades.—Inasmuch as the resistance offered to hauling the train around a

curve increases quite rapidly as the radius of curvature decreases, it is obvious that in constructing a railroad the degree of each curve should be kept as low as practicable, and that there should be no more curves than necessary. While no definite rule can be given as to such matters, curves as sharp as 10° (573.69 feet radius) should be avoided wherever practicable. It is not advisable to run trains at the highest attainable speeds around such curves, nor is it done. Inasmuch as curve resistance has considerable magnitude, as well as the resistance of grades, it is natural that wherever curves occur grades should be less than would be permissible on straight lines or, as they are called, tangents. If a maximum gradient is prescribed in the construction of a railroad, that gradient will determine the maximum weight of train which can be hauled on the straight portions or tangents of the road. If one of these grades should occur on a curve, a less weight of train could be handled by the same engine than on a tangent. Hence it is customary to reduce grades by a small amount for each degree of curvature of a curve. This operation of modifying the grades on curves so as to enable a locomotive to haul the same train around them as up the maximum grade on a tangent is called compensating the curves for grade. There is no regular rule prescribed for this purpose, because the combination may necessarily vary between rather wide limits in view of speed, condition of track, and other influencing elements. The compensation, however, has perhaps frequently been taken as lying between .03 and .05 per cent of grade for each degree of curvature. In other words, for a 5° curve the grade would be .15 to .25 per cent less than on a tangent. This compensation for grades is carefully considered in each case by civil engineers in view of experience and such data as special investigations and general railroad operation have shown to be expedient.

259. Transition Curves.—High speeds for which modern railroads are constructed have made it necessary not only to protect road-beds, but also to make the passage from tangents to curves as easy and smooth as possible. This is accomplished by introducing between the curve and the tangent at each end what is called a "transition" curve. This is a compound curve, i.e., a curve with varying radius. At the point where the tangent or

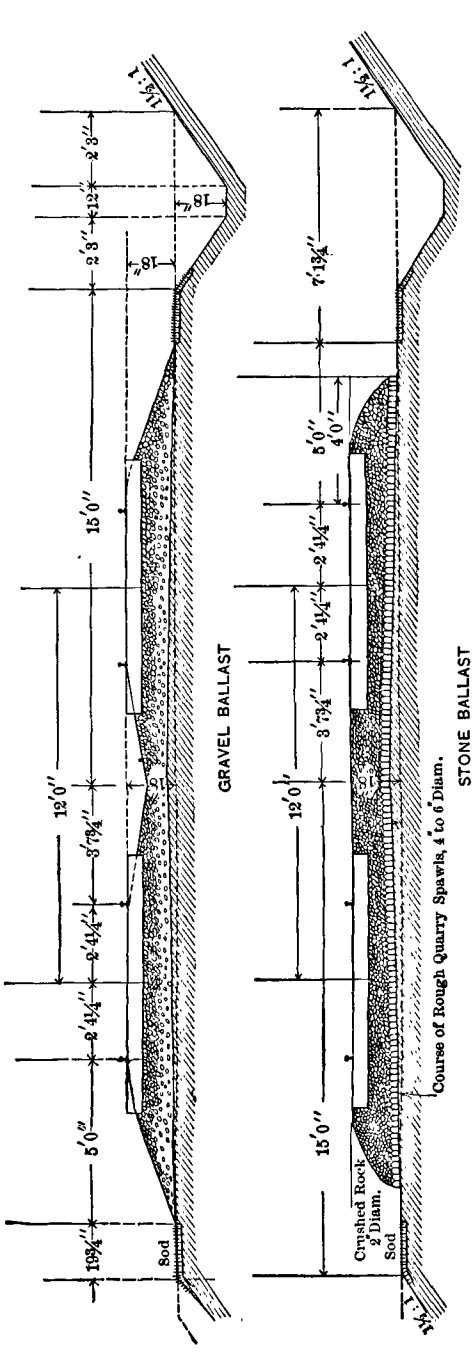
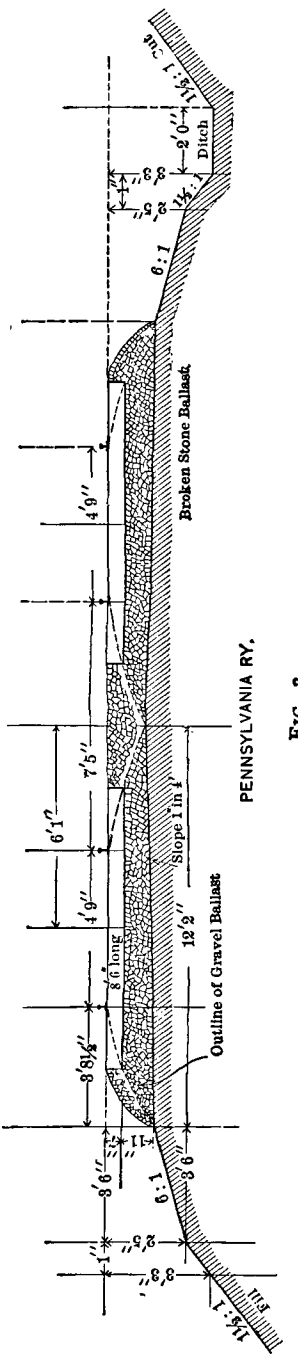


FIG. 1.

STONE BALLAST
NEW YORK CENTRAL & HUDSON RIVER RY.

FIG. 2.



PENNSYLVANIA RY.

FIG. 3.

straight line ceases the radius of the transition curve is infinitely great, and it is gradually reduced to the radius of the actual curve at the point where it meets the latter. By means of such gradual change of curvature the trucks of a rapidly moving train do not suddenly pass from the tangent to the curve proper, but they pass gradually from motion in a straight line to the sharpest curvature over the transition curve. The rate of transition is fixed by the character of the curves, which have been subjected to careful analysis by civil engineers, and they can be found fully discussed in standard works on railroad location.

260. Road-bed, including Ties.—Not only the high rates of speed of modern railroad trains but the great weights of locomotives and cars have demanded a remarkable degree of perfection in the construction of the road-bed and in the manufacture of rails. The favorite ballast at the present time for the best types of road-beds is generally broken stone, although gravel is used. The first requisites are a solid foundation and perfect drainage whether in cuts or fills. Figs. 1, 2, 3, and 4 show two or three types of road-bed used by the New York Central and Hudson River R. R., the Pennsylvania R. R., and a special type adopted by the B. & O. for the belt-line tunnel at Baltimore. These sections show all main dimensions and the provision made for drainage. The general depth of ballast is about 18 inches, including the drainage layer at the bottom. The total width of road-bed for a double-track line varies frequently between 24 and 25 feet, while the width of a single-track line may be found between 13 and 14 feet. In the cross-sections shown the requirements for drainage

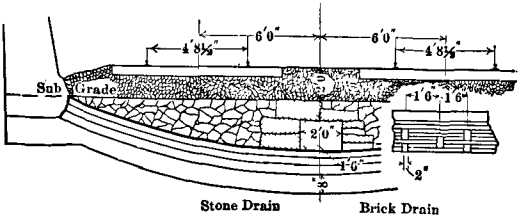


FIG. 4.—Baltimore Belt-line Tunnel, B. & O. Ry.

are found to be admirably met. Timber ties are almost invariably used at the present time in this country, although some experimental steel ties have been laid at various points. Fig. 5 shows

the steel tie adopted for experiment on the N. Y. C. & H. R. R. R. within the city limits of New York. The time will undoubtedly come when some substitute for timber must be found, but the

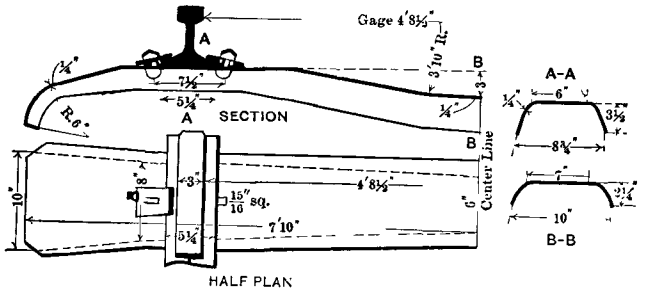


FIG. 5.

additional cost of steel ties at the present time does not indicate their early adoption.

261. Mountain Locations of Railroad Lines.—The skill of the civil engineer is sometimes seve ely taxed in making mountain locations of railroads. Probably no more skilful engineering

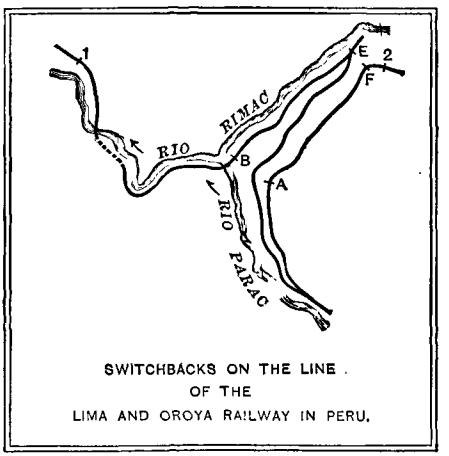


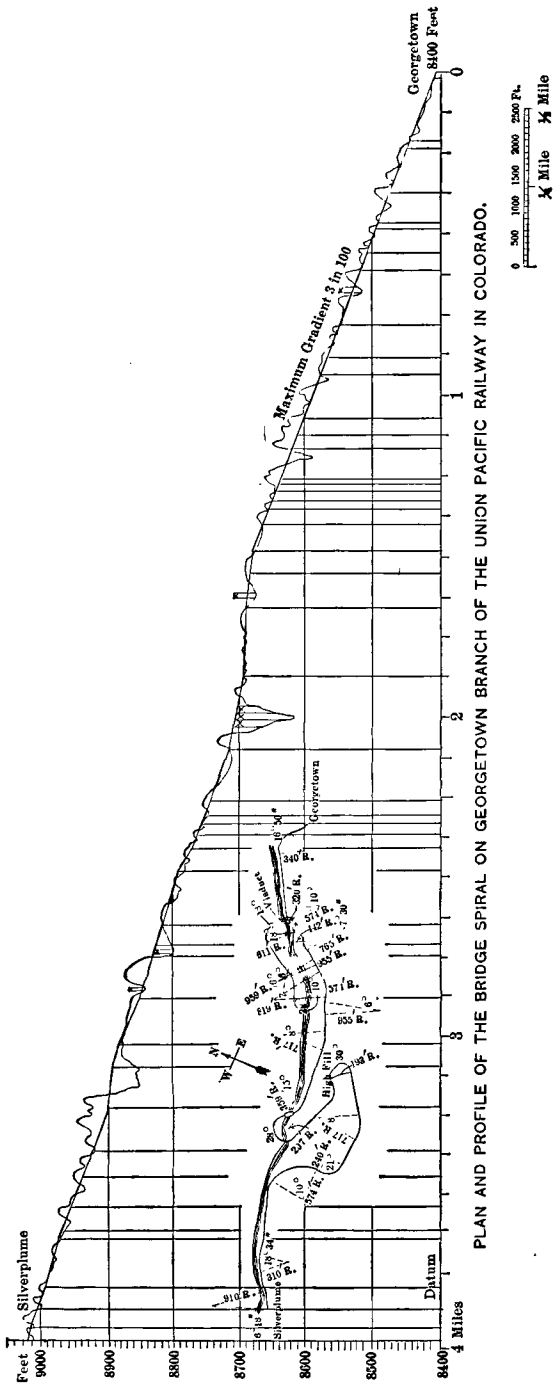
FIG. 6.

work of this kind has ever been done than in the crossings of the Rocky Mountains and the Sierras in this country by trans-continental railroad lines, although more striking examples of railroad location for short distances may perhaps be found in Europe or other countries. The main problem in such cases is the making

of distance in order to attain a desired elevation without exceeding maximum grades, such as those which have already been given. Most interesting engineering expedients must sometimes be resorted to. One of the oldest of these is the switchback plan shown in Fig. 6. This is probably the simplest procedure in order to make distance in attaining elevation. The line is

Cañon of the Rio Las Animas, near Rockwood.

run up the side of a mountain at its maximum grade as far in one direction as it may be desirable to go. It then runs back on itself a short distance before being diverted so as to pass up another grade in the reverse direction. This zigzagging of alignment may obviously be made to attain any desired elevation and so overcome the summit of a mountain range. The old switchback coal road near Mauch Chunk, Pa., is one of the oldest and more famous instances of the method, which has many times been employed in other locations.



PLAN AND PROFILE OF THE BRIDGE SPIRAL ON GEORGETOWN BRANCH OF THE UNION PACIFIC RAILWAY IN COLORADO.

FIG. 7.

A more striking method, perhaps, is that of loops by which the direction of a line or motion of a train on it is continuous. Distance is made by a judicious use of the topography of the locality so as to run the line as far up the side of the valley as practicable and then turn as much as a semicircle or more, sometimes over a bridge structure and sometimes in tunnel, so as to give further elevation by running either on the opposite side of the valley or on the same. A succession of loops or other curves suitably located will give the distance desired in order to reach the summit.

262. The Georgetown Loop.—Fig. 7 shows one of these spiral or loop locations on the Georgetown branch of the Union Pacific Railroad in Colorado. It is a well-known and prominent instance of railroad location of this kind. On the higher portion of this loop system included in the figure there is a viaduct on a curve which crosses the line 75 feet above the rail below it and 90 feet above the water. This location is a specimen of excellent railroad engineering. The length of line shown in the figure, including the spiral, is $8\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and it cost $265,000 per mile exclusive of the bridges.

263. Tunnel-loop Location, Rhætian Railways, Switzerland.—In Figs. 8 and 9 are shown two portions of the Albula branch of the Rhætian Railways, Canton Graubünden, southeastern Switzerland. The line connects the valleys of the Albula and the Inn, the former being one of the branches of the Rhine and the latter of the Danube; it therefore cuts the divide between the watersheds of those two rivers. It is a 3.28-feet gauge single-track road, and is built largely for tourist traffic, as the scenic properties of the line are remarkable.

The maximum grade on this line is 3.5 per cent. Over one portion of the line 7.8 miles long one third of that distance is in tunnel and 15 per cent of it on viaducts. The radii of the centre lines of the tunnels are 460 and 394 feet, while the lengths of the tunnels range from 1591 to 2250 feet, with a maximum grade in them of 3 per cent. The weight of rails used is 50 pounds per yard on grades of 2.5 per cent or less, but for heavier grades 55-pound rails are employed. The cross-ties are of mild steel and weigh 80 pounds each except in the long Albula tunnel, where

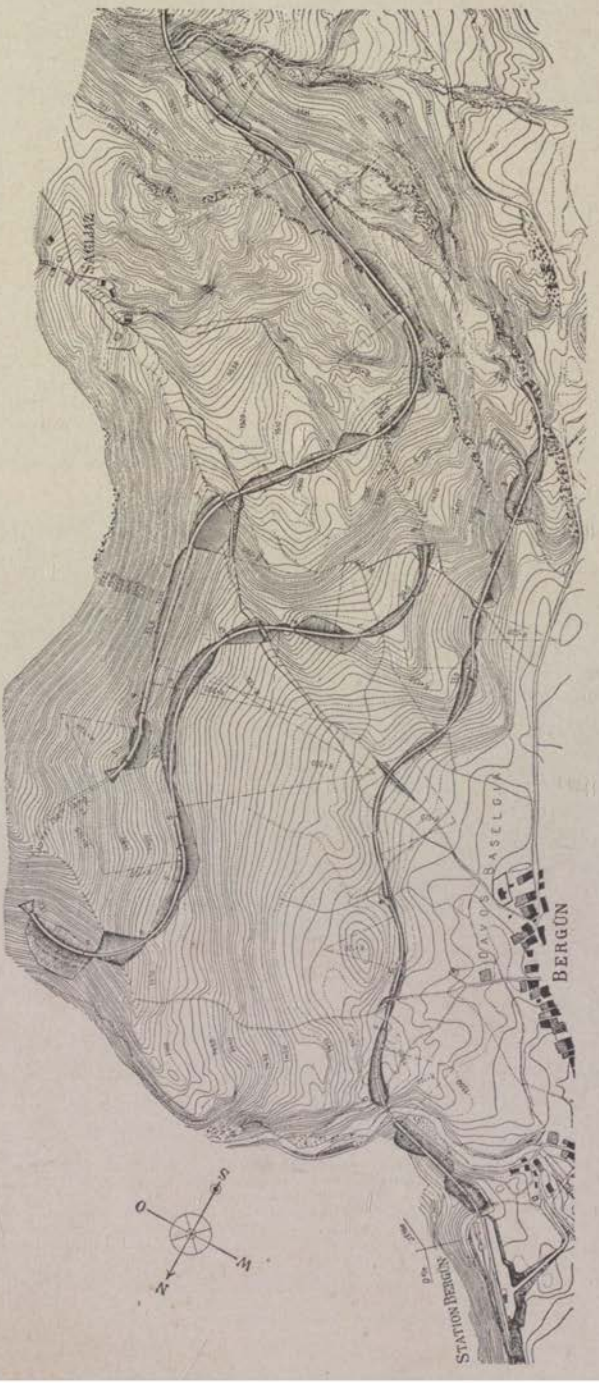


FIG. 8.

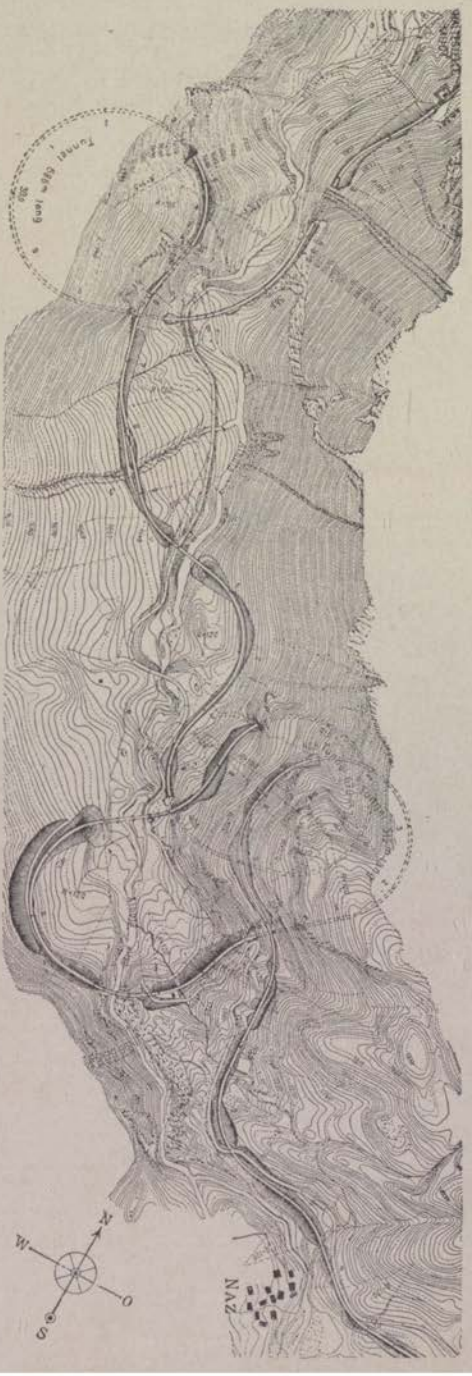


FIG. 9.

treated oak ties are used as being better adapted to the special conditions existing there. It will be observed that in each case the line rises from the left-hand portion of the figure toward the right.

The tunnels are represented by broken lines, and they are in every instance on circular curves. Fig. 9 represents the line running from a point on the east side of the Albula River through a heavy cut and then across the valley of the Albula into a tunnel 2250 feet long. The line then runs chiefly in cuts to a point where there are two tunnels, one over the other; indeed the line overlaps itself in loops and tunnels a number of times in that vicinity. That portion of the road shown in Fig. 8 is less remarkable than the other, although it exhibits extraordinary alignment. This example of railroad location is one of the most striking among those yet completed. It would appear to indicate that no topographical difficulties are too great to be overcome by the civil engineer in railroad location in a most rugged and precipitous country. Obviously such a line could not be economically operated for heavy freight traffic.

Railroad lines frequently lead through mountainous regions affording some of the grandest scenery in the world accessible to the travelling public. In this country the Canadian Pacific, the Northern Pacific, the Great Northern, and the Rio Grande Western probably exhibit the most remarkable instances of this kind.

CHAPTER XXII.

264. Railroad Signalling. — The birth of the art of railroad signalling was probably coexistent with that of the railroad. At the very outset of the movement of railroad trains it became imperative to insure to a given train the sole use of the single track at schedule periods. Both head-to-head and rear-end collisions were liable to occur on main tracks, as well as false meetings at branches and cross-overs.

265. The Pilot Guard.—One of the earliest if not the earliest of systematic procedures in England to accomplish the safe use of a railroad track involved the employment of the "pilot guard" on single-track roads. The pilot was an employé whose duty it was to accompany every tra n over a stated section of the line. The authority to start trains was lodged in him. When it became necessary to start two or three trains from the same point and in the same direction, it was also his duty to issue to each train conductor what was called a pilot ticke , equivalent to a modern train order to run the train over the section under his control. In that case he was obliged to accompany the last train to the other end of his section, and no more trains could move over that section in the same direction until his return to his first station. As no train could pass over the section without either him or his pilot ticket, it is clear that the system could prevent head-to-head collisions, but in itself it is not sufficient to eliminate rear-end collisions. This system is still employed in Great Britain on some short branch lines.

266. The Train Staff.—Another method nearly as old as the preceding is that of the train staff, used in an improved form at the present time on some single-track roads. No train under this system can pass over any given section of the line unless it carries the staff belonging to that section, the staff being a piece

of wood or metal 1 to 1¼ inches in diameter and 18 to 20 inches long. In order to cover the case of two or more trains starting in the same direction at one end of a section before running a train in the opposite direction, tickets were issued, the staff being taken by the last train. The proper operation of this method, like that of the preceding, would prevent head-to-head collisions, but is not sufficient in itself to prevent one train running into the rear of another while both are proceeding in the same direction in the same section.

267. First Basis of Railroad Signalling. — These and other similar systems answered fairly well the more simple requirements of early railroad operation. Strictly speaking they are not methods of signalling, although it may be said that each train is a signal in itself. With the development of railroad business it was found that other methods better adapted to a more efficient and rapid movement of trains were imperative. It was in response to the advancing requirements of the railroad business that the first approach to what is now so well known as the block system of signalling was made in 1842. An English engineer, subsequently, Sir W. F. Cooke, stated the following sound principles as to the basis of efficient railroad signalling:

"Every point of a line is a dangerous point which ought to be covered by signals. The whole distance ought to be divided into sections, and at the end as well as at the beginning of them there ought to be a signal, by means of which the entrance to the section is open to each train when we are sure that it is free. As these sections are too long to be worked by a traction rod, they ought to be worked by electricity."

The main features of railroad signalling, as thus set forth, have continued to characterize the development of the block system from that early day to the present. The electrical application to which reference is made in the preceding quotation was that of the needle, which by its varying position could indicate either "line clear" or "line blocked." In 1851 electric bells were used in railroad signalling on the Southeastern Railway of England. Various other developments were completed from time to time in Great Britain until the Sykes system of block signalling was patented in 1875. One of the main features of

the system, and perhaps the most prominent, was the control of the track signals at the entrance end of the block by the signalman at the advance end. He exerted this control by electrically operated locks. About 1876 the Pennsylvania Railroad introduced the block system into the United States, which has since been greatly developed in a number of different forms, and its use has been widely extended over many if not most of the great railroad systems of the country. It is not only used for the movement of trains, but also for the protection of such special danger-points as switches, cross-overs, junctions, drawbridges, heavy descending grades, sharp curves, and other points needing the protection which a well-designed block system affords.

268. Code of American Railway Association.—The code of the American Railway Association gives the following definitions among others pertaining to the block system:

Block.—A length of track of defined limits, the use of which by trains is controlled by block signals.

Block Station.—The office from which block signals are operated.

Block Signal.—A fixed signal controlling the use of a block.

Home Block Signal.—A fixed signal at the entrance of a block to control trains in entering and using said block.

Distant Block Signal.—A fixed signal of distinctive character used in connection with a home block signal to regulate the approach thereto.

Advance Block Signal.—A fixed signal placed in advance of a home block signal to provide a supplementary block between the home block signal and the advance block signal.

Block System.—A series of consecutive blocks controlled by block signals.

Telegraph Block System.—One in which the signals are operated manually upon telegraphic information.

Controlled Manual Block System.—One in which the signals are operated manually, and by its construction requires the cooperation of a signalman at both ends of the block to display a clear signal.

Automatic Block System.—One in which the signals are oper-

ated by electric, pneumatic, or other agency, actuated by a train or by certain conditions affecting the use of a block.

268a. The Block.—It is seen by these definitions that what may be called the unit in railroad signalling is the "block"; it may be of almost any length from a few hundred feet to 6 or 8 miles, or even more. On a single-track railroad it may evidently extend from one side track or passing-place to another. Over portions of lines carrying heavy traffic it may be a half-mile or less. The length of block will depend, then, upon the intensity and kind of traffic, the physical features of the line, such as curvature, grade, sidings, cross-overs, and other similar features, the location, whether in cities, towns, or open country, as well as upon other elements affecting conditions of operation which it is desirable to attain.

269. Three Classes of Railroad Signals — The Disc.—The signals used in railroad operation may mainly be divided into three classes: semaphores, banners, and discs. In general they may convey information by form, position, and color. The disc is used by causing it to appear and disappear before an aperture, usually a little larger than itself, in a case standing perhaps 10 or 12 feet high alongside the track, and is admirably typified in the Hall electric signal. On account of its shape, the case in which the disc is operated is frequently called the banjo, as it is quite similar in shape to that musical instrument placed in a vertical position, the key end resting on the ground.

270. The Banner Signal.—The banner signal is usually operated by rotation about a vertical axis, frequently in connection with switches. Its full face painted red, exposed with its plane at right angles to the track, indicates "danger" or "stop." With its face turned parallel to the track, showing only its edge to approaching trains, a "clear" lin or "safety" is indicated.

In the present development of railroad signalling the banner and disc patterns have a comparatively limited application, although, on the whole, they are largely used. The banner signal is mostly employed in the manual operation of switches, turn-outs, and cross-overs, and for other local purposes, particularly on lines of light traffic.

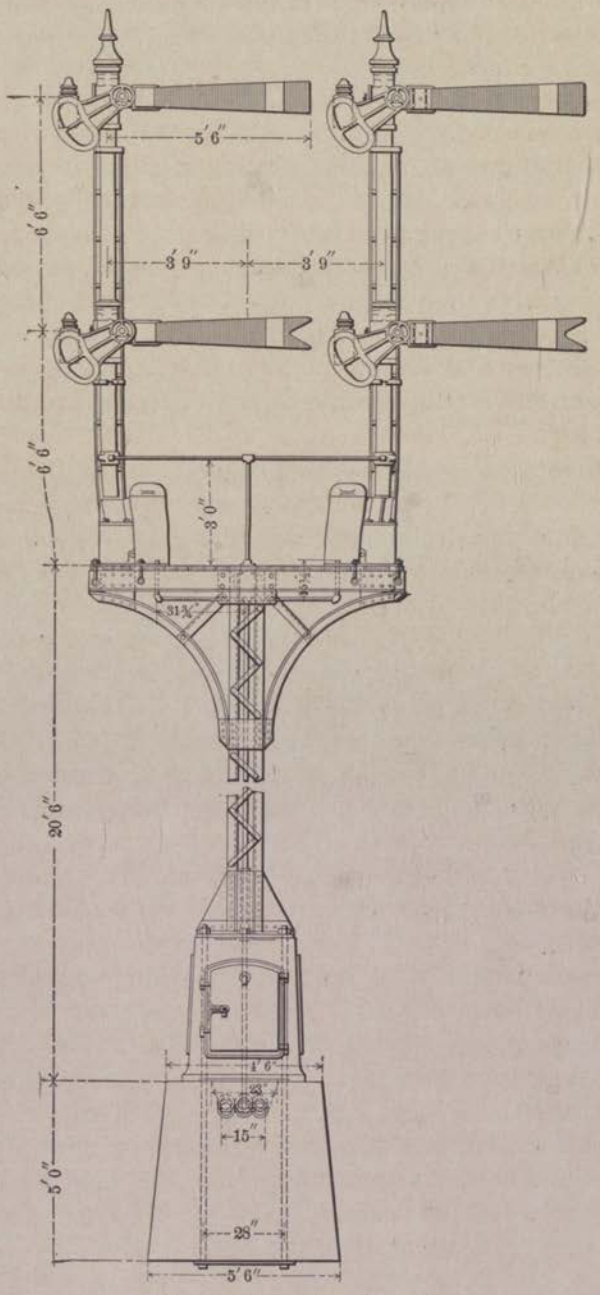
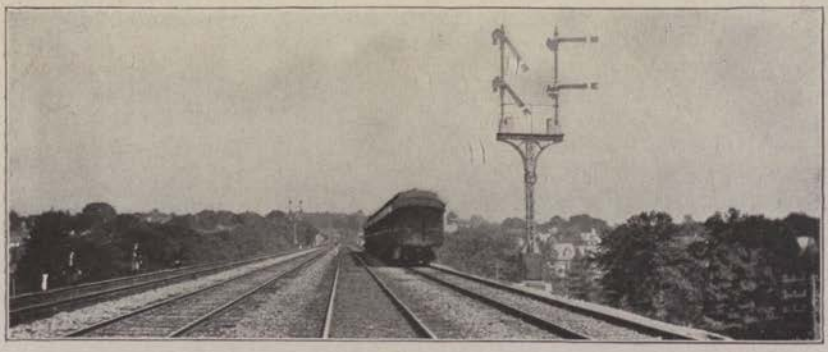


FIG. 10.—Semaphore Signals.

271. The Semaphore.—The semaphore is now mainly used in connection with block signalling. Like many other appliances in railroad signalling it was first used in England, by Mr. C. H. Gregory, about 1841. Its name is derived from the combination of two Greek words signifying a sign-bearer. It consists of a post varying in height from about 3 to 35 or 40 feet, carrying an arm at its top from 3 to 5 feet long, pivoted within a foot or 18 inches of one end, the long end suitably shaped and painted and the other arranged with a lens so that when operated at night in connection with a lamp it may exhibit a properly colored light. The post of the semaphore is placed alongside the track so as to be on the right-hand side of an approaching train, the long arm rising and falling as a signal away from the track and in a plane at right angles to it. The other arm of the semaphore signal



Semaphore on Pennsylvania Railroad.

may be connected by wires or rods and light chains running over pulleys with suitable levers and weights operated either in a near-by signal cabin or by a signalman stationed near the semaphore itself; or it may be operated by electric or pneumatic power, as in many of the later installations. The semaphore may, therefore, be operated at the post or by suitable appliances at a distance.

272. Colors for Signalling.—The colors used either for painted signals for daylight exposure or for coloring lenses for night signalling are red, white, and green, as ordinarily employed in this country; red signifying "danger" or "stop," white signify-

ing "safety" or "clear track," and green signifying "caution" or "proceed with train under control," indicating that a train may go forward cautiously, expecting to find an obstruction or occupied track. In England green is largely employed to indicate "safety" or "clear track," on the ground that a white light is so similar to any other in its vicinity that the latter may too easily be mistaken for a signal. While there is some diversity of views in this country on that point, the consensus of engineering opinion seems to favor the retention of the white for the track safety signal.

273. Indications of the Semaphore.—It is evident that a semaphore affords facilities of form, position, and color in its use for the purpose of signalling. The horizontal position is the most striking for the semaphore arm, as it then extends at right angles to the post and to the right or away from the track; this position is, therefore, taken to indicate "danger" or stop." No train may, therefore, proceed against a horizontal semaphore arm.

It might at first sight appear that the vertical position of the semaphore arm close against the post could be taken to indicate "safety" or "clear track" or "proceed," but experience has shown that such a position may be injudicious, except under special conditions where it has lately been employed to make that indication. If the semaphore arm should be knocked or blown from the ordinary post, the engineman of an approaching train probably would not be able to detect the actual condition of things and might accept the appearance of the semaphore as indicating a clear line, thus justifying himself in proceeding at full speed, while the signalman in his cabin might have placed the signal at "danger." A position of the semaphore arm, therefore, at an angle of 65° or 70° below the horizontal is usually taken as a safety signal. This position is in marked contrast to the horizontal arm and at the same time makes the absence of the semaphore arm impossible without immediate detection from an approaching locomotive. After dark the semaphore in a position of danger exhibits a red light through the lens in its short arm when the long arm is at the "danger" position or horizontal. Similarly, when the long arm is in the safety position a white light is exhibited through the lens in the shorter arm,

so that the respective conditions of clear or obstructed track are made evident to the engineman as well by night as by day on his approach to the semaphore.

In some of the latest signal work three positions of the semaphore arm on one post, known as three-position block signalling, have been employed. In this system a special post, frequently on a signal bridge over the track, permits the vertical position of the semaphore arm to indicate "clear track," while the diagonal or inclined position below the horizontal indicates "caution." In the Mozier three-position signal a diagonal or inclined position above the horizontal indicates "caution" an addition to the two usual positions of "stop" and "clear."

These are the elements, so to speak, of railroad signalling at the present day. They are combined with various appliances and in various sequences, so as to express all the varied conditions of the track structure which affect the operation of the road or the movement of trains upon it. These combinations and the appliances employed in them are more or less involved in their principal features and complicated in their details, although the main principles and salient points are simple and may easily be exhibited as to their mode of operation and general results. In this treatment of the subject it will only be possible to accomplish these general purposes without attempting to set forth the mechanical details by which the main purposes of railroad signalling are accomplished.

274. General Character of Block System.—It is evident from what has already been stated that the block system of signalling involves the use of fixed signals located so as to convey promptly to approaching trains certain information as to the condition of points of danger approached. Furthermore, this system of signals is designed and operated on the assumption that every point is to be considered as a danger-point until information is given that a condition of safety exists. The usual position of signals, or what may be called the normal position, is that of "danger," and no position of "safety" is to be given to any signal except to permit a train to pass into a block whose condition of safety or clear track is absolutely assured. These are the ground principles on which the signal systems to be con-

sidered are designed and operated, although there are some conditions under which the normal signal position may be that of safety.

275. Block Systems in Use.—The block systems now in general use are:

The Manual, in which the signals at each end of each block are wholly controlled and operated by the signalman at each signal point.

The Controlled-Manual, in which the signals at the entrance to each block are controlled either electrically or in some other manner by the signalman at the other extremity of that block, but are operated subject to that control by the signalman at the entrance of the block.

The Auto-Manual, in which the signals are generally operated and controlled as in the Manual or Controlled-Manual, except that they are automatically returned to the danger position as the rear car of a moving train passes them.

The Automatic, in which the operation of the signals is wholly automatic and generally by electricity, or by a combination of electric and pneumatic mechanism. In this system no signalmen are required.

The Machine, which is a controlled block system for single-track operation and in which machines operated electrically with detachable parts, as staffs, are employed in connection with other fixed signals alongside the track.

The main features of these various systems of blocking are, in respect to their signalling, the same, but the means for actuating or manipulating the signals and the conditions under which moving trains receive the necessary instructions are different. They all have the same main objects in view of improving railroad operation by enhancing both safety and facility of train movement.

"Absolute" blocking is that system of block signalling which absolutely prevents one train passing into a block until the preceding train is entirely out of it, or, in other words, until the block is absolutely clear.

"Permissive" blocking is, strictly speaking, the violation of the true block system of signalling, since under it a train may

under certain precautionary conditions enter a block before the preceding train has passed out of it.

276. Locations of Signals.—In proceeding to locate signals along a railroad line it is imperative to recognize the preceding purposes as controlling motives. Signals must be seen readily and clearly in order to be of the greatest service to the enginemen of approaching trains, and their positions must be selected with that end in view. Locations of switches, cross-overs, junctions, and other similar track features will control the locations of the signals which are to protect them. The main or home signal in these special cases may usually be placed from 50 to 200 feet from the point which is to be governed, the so-called "distant" signal being placed about 2000 feet for level track back of the main or home signal.

277. Home, Distant, and Advance Signals.—A complete system of signals employed in blocking includes first of all the so-called "home" signal at each extremity of a block, then at a distance of 2000 to 2500 feet back from the home signal is placed the "distant" signal. The latter is thus approached and passed before reaching the home signal. On the other side of the "home" signal at least a maximum train length into a block about to be entered by a moving train is placed the "advance" signal. The distance of the advance signal from the home signal may be 1500 to 2500 feet. As a moving train approaches the end of a block it first meets the distant signal, the purpose of which is to indicate what the engineman may expect to find at the home signal. If the distant signal is in the danger position, he will pass it with caution and place his train under control so as to be able to stop at the home signal. If he finds the distant signal in a safety position, indicating the same position of the home signal, he may approach the latter without reducing speed, confident that the next section is clear and ready for him. The advance signal forms a kind of secondary or supplementary block into which the train, under certain conditions, may enter when the block in which it is found is obstructed, but no train may pass the advance signal unless the entire block is clear except when, under permissive working, the train proceeds with caution, expecting to find the track either obstructed or occupied. This group

of three signals—the distant, the home, and the advance—taken in the order in which the moving train finds them, is located at each extremity of the block. Although the home signal is said to control the movement of trains in a block at the entrance to which it is found, as a matter of fact it appears that the advance signal in the final event holds that control.

278. Typical Working of Auto-Controlled Manual System.—The mode of employing these signals can be illustrated in a typical way by the diagrams, Figs. 11, 12, and 13, which exhibit in a skeleton manner Pattenall's improved Sykes system which belongs to the Auto-Controlled Manual class. In these figures the end of block 1, the whole of blocks 2 and 3, and the beginning of block 4 are shown. Stations A, B, and C indicate the extremities of blocks. The signals S, S', and S'' are the home signals, while D, D', and D'' indicate distant signals, and A, A', and A'' advance signals. As the diagrams indicate, the stretch of double-track road is represented with east- and west-bound tracks. In order to simplify the diagrams, signals and stations are shown for one track only; they would simply be duplicated for the other track. The signal cabin is supposed to be located at each station, and at that cabin are found the levers and other appliances for working the signals operated there, the signals themselves being exposed alongside the track. In each signal cabin there is an indicator, as shown at I, I', and I''. On the face of each indicator there are two slots, shown opposite the lines E and F. In the upper of these slots appears either the word "Clear" or "Blocked." In the lower slot appears either the word "Passed" or "On." The significance of these words will appear presently. On this indicator face at P, P', and P'' are located electric push-buttons called plungers. The operation of the levers indicated at L, the counterweights d, and the locking detail l are evident from an inspection of the figure, and need no special explanation. It is only necessary to state that the locking-device l holds the bar bc until it is released at the proper time, and that the counterweight may then return the lever from its extreme leftward position to that at the extreme right, at the same time placing the semaphore arm S in the position of danger. It is particularly important to bear in mind

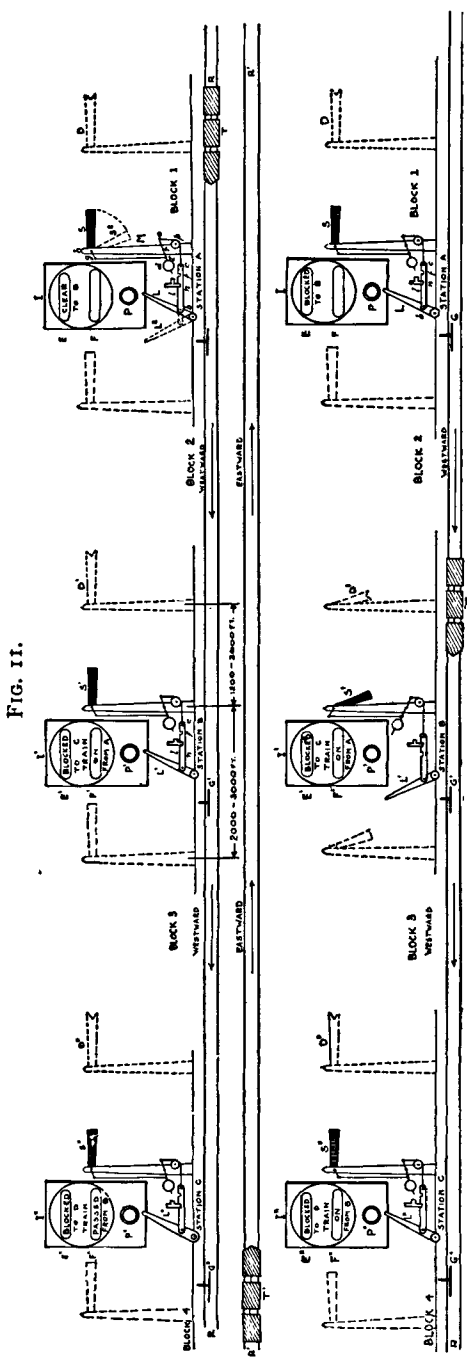


FIG. 11.

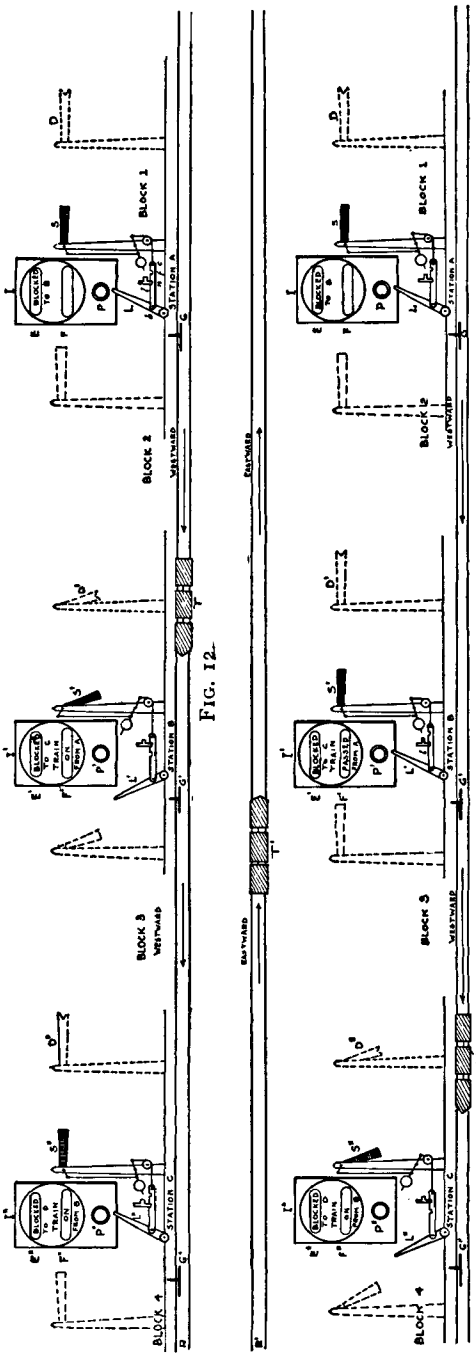


FIG. 12.

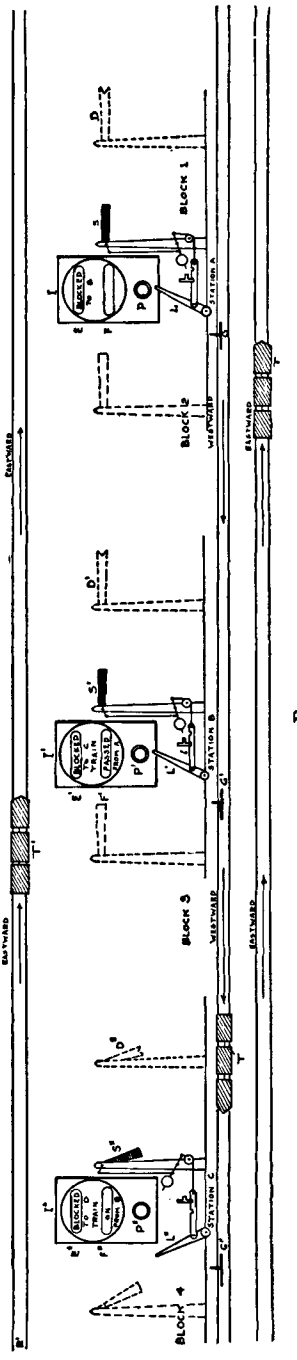


FIG. 13.

this last observation. The counterweight is the feature of the system which always holds the semaphore arm in the position of danger, making that its normal position, except when it is put to safety for the passing of a train.

If a westward train is represented in Fig. 11 at *T* as approaching station *A* to enter the block 2, both the distant signal *D* and the home signal *S* being at danger, the system is so arranged that the signalman at station *A* cannot change those signals, i.e., to a position of safety, until the signalman at station *B* permits him to do so. If the signalman at station *A* desires to open block 2 for the entrance of the train *T*, he asks the signalman at station *B* by wire to release the lock *l* to enable him to do so. If there is no train in block 2, the signalman at station *B* pushes the button *P'* or "plunges" it. This raises the lock *l* at station *A* and the signalman immediately pulls the lever *L* to its extreme leftward position, throwing both the signals *S* and *D* to the position of safety or clear, indicated by the dotted lines at S^2. At the same time the indicator *E* at station *A* shows the words "Clear to *B*," while the slot *F'* at *B* shows the words "On from *A*." The signals at stations *B* and *C* are supposed to be in their normal position of danger, and the indicator *E'* at station *B* shows the words "Blocked to *C*." The home and distant signals *S'* and *D'* are now at danger, but the train *T* may enter block 2 and proceeds to do so, it being remembered that the signalman at station *A* cannot move the lever *L*, as it has passed out of his control; not even the signalman at station *B* can give him power to do so. The train *T* now passes station *A* into block 2. As the last car passes over the point *G* its wheels strike what is called a track-treadle, an appliance having electrical connection with the lock *l*. The effect of the wheels of the last car of the train passing over the treadle at *G* is to release lock *l*, enabling the signalman at station *A* immediately to raise the arms *S* and *D* to the position of danger. It is to be observed that he cannot do this until the entire train has passed into block 2; nor, since his plunger is locked by the same treadle at *G*, can he signal "Safety" or "Clear" to the entrance of block 1. Hence no train can enter block 1 to collide with the rear end of the train just entering block 2. When the signalman at station *A* has raised his signal *S* to danger, it

again passes out of his control, indeed out of both his control and that of the signalman at B, until the last car of the train passes over the treadle G' at the entrance of block 3.

The train has now passed into block 2 and is approaching station B. The signalman at B asks C by wire to release the lever L', and if block 3 is clear, C plunges at P''.

C then throws his lever L' so as to place the home and distant signals S' and D' at safety. The condition of things will then be shown by Fig. 12. As soon as the last car of the train has passed over the treadle at G' his lever L' will be released and he can then throw the lever to the danger position, raising the home and distant signals S' and D' to the horizontal. After the danger position is assumed by the home signal S', as well as the distant signal D', he has no power over them until the signalman at station C confers it on him by plunging the button P''.

While the train has been in block 2, the indicator I' has shown "Blocked to C" and "Train on from A," but as the train passes B the indicator reads "Blocked to C" and "Train passed from A," while the indicator I'' at C reads "Blocked to D" and "Train on from B." This condition of the signals and trains is shown by Fig. 13. Also, when the last car passes over the treadle G', but not till then, B may permit A to admit a train to enter block 2 should A so desire. Finally, when the train approaches C, the signalman at that point asks D to enable him to permit the train to enter block 4, and C confers the power by plunging if that block is clear. Fig. 13 exhibits the corresponding signals at C.

This sequence of operations is typical of what takes place in this particular block-signal system at the limits of every successive block, and differs only in details characteristic of this system from those which are performed in any other block-signal system.

279. General Results.—It is seen first that no signalman can operate a signal until the condition in the block ahead of him is such as to make it proper for him to do so, and then he can only indicate what is necessary for the safe entrance of the train into that block. Furthermore, immediately on the passage of the train past his home signal he must put the latter to danger

or the counterweight may do it for him, the train itself when in a safe position having conferred the requisite power upon him. The signalman at the advance end of the block always knows when the train is about to enter it, for he is obliged to give his permission for that entrance. His indicator shows this result, and will continue to show it until the train passes out of the block. It is to be observed that the upper openings marked *E* on the indicator give information of the condition of the block in advance, while the lower openings give information of the block in the rear.

It is particularly important to notice that after the signalman at the advance end of a block has "plunged" his plunger remains locked and it cannot be released until the train admitted to the block covered by the plunger has completely passed out of that block, permitting the track-treadle at the entrance to the next block to unlock the plunger. This feature makes it impossible for one train to enter a block until the preceding train has passed out of it.

If the permissive system of using a block be employed, in which the train is permitted to enter that block before a preceding train leaves it, the treadle gives no protection against a rear-end collision with the first train. In such an exigency, other devices must be used or the following train must proceed cautiously, expecting to find the track occupied.

280. Distant Signals.—Thus far the distant signals have been treated incidentally only. They may be operated concurrently with or independently of the home signal in such a way that if danger is indicated, the distant signal gives its indication prior to that of the home signal. In this manner protection is given to the rear of a train approaching a block against the home signal set at "danger." After the obstruction is removed and the block cleared, the home signal is set at "safety" before the distant signal is cleared.

281. Function of Advance Signals.—The advance signals are used when for any purpose it is desired to form a short block in a regular block. If, for instance, block 3 in Fig. 11 were obstructed by a train stopped by some failure of a locomotive detail, a train approaching station *B* in section 2 against the home signal *S'*

set at "danger" would be obliged to stop before entering block 3. It might then be permitted to enter the latter block, to be stopped by the advance signal A' set at "danger" or under instructions to pass it cautiously, expecting to find the track obstructed. It is thus seen that the advance signal creates what may be called an emergency block, and in reality finally controls the movement of trains in the block in which it is located. It would never be cleared unless the home signal were first cleared, nor would it be set at "danger" unless the home signal gave the same indication.

The preceding operation of the block system of signalling controls the movement of trains along a double-track line.

282. Signalling at a Single-track Crossing.—A somewhat similar sequence of signal operations controls train movements at a crossing, whether single- or double-track. Fig. 14 illustrates the

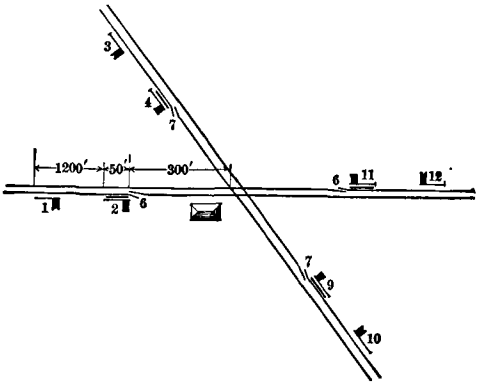


FIG. 14.

use of signals required for the safe movement of trains at a single-track railroad crossing, which is supposed to be that of a north-and-south line crossing obliquely an east-and-west line. Precisely the same arrangement of signals operated in the same manner would be required if the crossing were at the angle of 90°. The signal cabin is placed, as shown, as near as practicable to the actual intersection of tracks. Trains may pass in either direction on either track, but in every case they would be governed by the signals at the right-hand side of the track as seen by the engineman. There will therefore be a set of signals on both sides of each track, each set governing the movement of trains

in its own direction. Each home signal may be placed about 350 feet from the actual intersection, and each distant signal 1200 to 1500 feet from the home signal, or 1550 feet to 1800 feet from the intersection. Each advance signal must be at least as far in advance of the home signal as the maximum length of train, since it may be used to stop a train, the rear car of which should completely pass the home signal. In their normal positions every home signal should be set at "danger," carrying with them the distant signals giving the same indication. The advance signals must also indicate "danger" with the home signal. No train can then pass the crossing until the home and distant signals indicate a clear line for it, the other signals at the crossing, except possibly the advance signal, being set at "danger." If for any reason it is desired to hold the train after it is entirely free of the crossing, the advance signal would also indicate "danger."

It is thus seen that if the signals are properly set and obeyed, it is impossibl for two trains to attempt a crossing at the same time. It is not an uncommon occurrence, however, for an engineman to run his train against th danger signal, and in order to make it impossible for the train to reach the crossing even under these circumstances a derailing device is used. This derailing arrangement is shown in Fig. 14, about 300 feet from the crossing, although it may be placed from 300 to 500 feet from that point. Its purpose is to derail any train attempting to make the crossing against the danger signal. The operation of the derail is evident from the skeleton lines of the figure. When the home signal is at danger the movable part of the derailing device is at this point turned so as to catch the flanges of the wheels as they attempt to pass it. The train is thus thrown upon the cross-ties at such a distance from the crossing as will produce a stop before reaching it. When the home signal is at safety the derail operated with the signal is closed and the line is continuous. This combination of signals and derail coacting serves efficiently to prevent collisions at crossings, although trains may be occasionally derailed in accomplishing that end. The preceding explanations of the use of signals and derail apply to a train that may approach the crossing in either direction on either track, as is obvious from an inspection of the diagram itself.

283. Signalling at a Double-track Crossing.—In the case of a double-track crossing, the arrangement of signals and derails is precisely the same as for a single-track crossing, each set of signals shown in Fig. 15 covering one track. In other words,

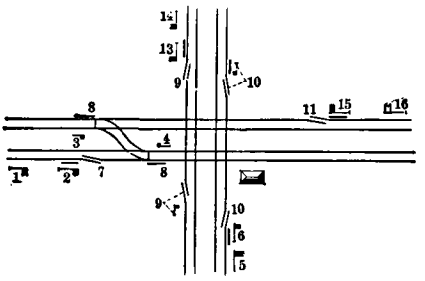


FIG. 15.

the line of single track is to take the place of each rail with its set of signals in that figure. There will be but four derails, one for each track only on the approach to the crossing. The working of the signals with the derails is precisely the same as has already been explained for the single-track crossing.

284. Signalling for Double-track Junction and Cross-over.—Fig. 16 represents a skeleton diagram of signals required for a junction of two double-track roads and a cross-over. This arrangement covers the use of switches. The location of signals

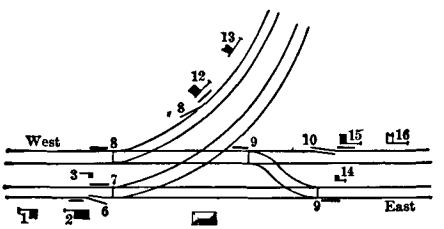


FIG. 16.

and signal cabin as shown is self-explanatory, after what has already been stated in connection with single- and double-track crossings. It will be observed that the home signals for both the west-bound main and branch tracks are identical in location, and are shown by the solid double flag, the distant signal being shown by its notched end at a considerable distance back

of the double home signal. It will, furthermore, be observed that at each home signal there is a derailing-switch interlocked, in the lock-and-block system presently to be explained, with the home signals operated simultaneously with them. If, therefore, an engineman attempts to run his train past a home signal set at danger, the result will be the derailment of his train, thus brought to rest before it can make any collision with another. It is obvious in this case that if the switches from the main to the branch tracks or at the extremities of the cross-over are worked independently, they must be operated directly in connection with the signals. For complete protection they should be interlocked with the signals so that it would be impossible to clear any signal without simultaneously setting the switches consistently with those signals. The diagram exhibits clearly the indications which must be made in order to effect any desired train movement at such a junction of tracks.

285. General Observations.—Similar arrangements of signals, derails, or switches must be made wherever switches, cross-overs, and junctions are found, the detailed variations of those signals and switches being made to meet the individual requirements of each local case. The combinations of switches and switch-signals frequently become very complicated in yards where the tracks are numerous and the combinations exceedingly varied, in order to meet the conditions created by the movement of trains into and out of the yard.

The preceding explanations are intended only to give a clear idea of the main features of signalling, in order to secure the highest degree of safety and facility in the movement of trains over a modern railroad. While they exhibit the external or apparent combinations of signals for that purpose, they do not touch in detail and scarcely in general upon the mechanical appliances found in the signal cabin and along the tracks required to accomplish the necessary signal movements. The considerations in detail of those appliances would cover extended examinations of purely mechanical, electrical, pneumatic, and electro-pneumatic combinations too involved to be set forth in any but the most extended and careful study. They have at the present time been brought to a wonderful degree of mechanical perfection

and afford a field of most interesting and profitable study, into which, however, it is not possible in these general statements of the subject to enter.

286. Interlocking-machines. — The earliest machine perfected for use in this department of railroad signalling was the Saxby

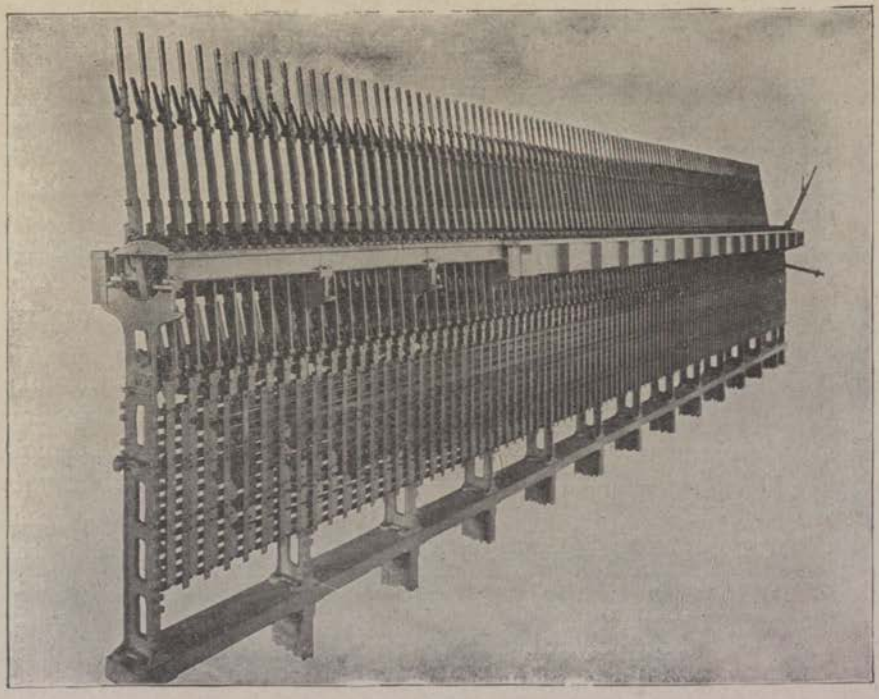


FIG. 17.

and Farmer interlocking-machine, first brought out in England and subsequently introduced in this country between 1874 and 1876. This machine has been much improved since and has been widely used. Other interlocking-machines have also been devised and used in this country in connection with the most improved systems of signalling, until at the present time a high degree of mechanical excellence has been reached.

The interlocking-machine in what is called the lock-and-block system of signalling is designed to operate signals, or signals in connection with switches, derailing-points, or other dangerous

track features, so as to make it impossible for a signalman to make a wrong combination, that is, a combination in which the signals will induce the engineman to run his train into danger. The signals and switches or other track details are so connected and interlocked with each other as to form certain desired combinations by the movement of designated levers in the signal cabin or tower. These combinations are predetermined in the design and connections of the appliances used, and they cannot be changed when once made except by design or by breakage of the parts; they cannot be deranged by any action of the signalman. He may delay trains by awkward or even wrong movement of levers, but he cannot actually clear his signals for the movement of a train without simultaneously giving that train a clear and safe track. As has been stated, he cannot organize an accident. Figs. 17 and 18 show banks or series of levers belonging to interlocking-machines. As is evident from these figures, the levers are numerous if the machine operates the switches and signals of a large yard, for the simple reason that a great many combinations must be made in order to meet the requirements of train movements in such a yard. The signalman, however, makes himself acquainted with the various combinations requisite for outgoing and incoming trains and the possible movements required for the shifting or hauling out of empty trains. He has before him diagrams showing in full the lever movements which must be made for the accomplishment of any or of all these movements, and he simply follows the directions of the diagrams and his instructions in the performance of his duty. He cannot derange the combinations, although he may be slow in reaching them. The locking-frame which compels him to make a clear track whenever his signals give a clear indication to the engineman lies below the lower end of the levers seen in the figures. The short arms of the levers carry tappets with notches in their edges into which fit pointed pieces of metal or dogs; the arrangement of these notches and dogs is such as to make the desired combinations and no others. It will be observed that a spring-latch handle projects from a point near the upper end of each lever where the latter is grasped in operating the machine. This spring-latch handle must be pressed

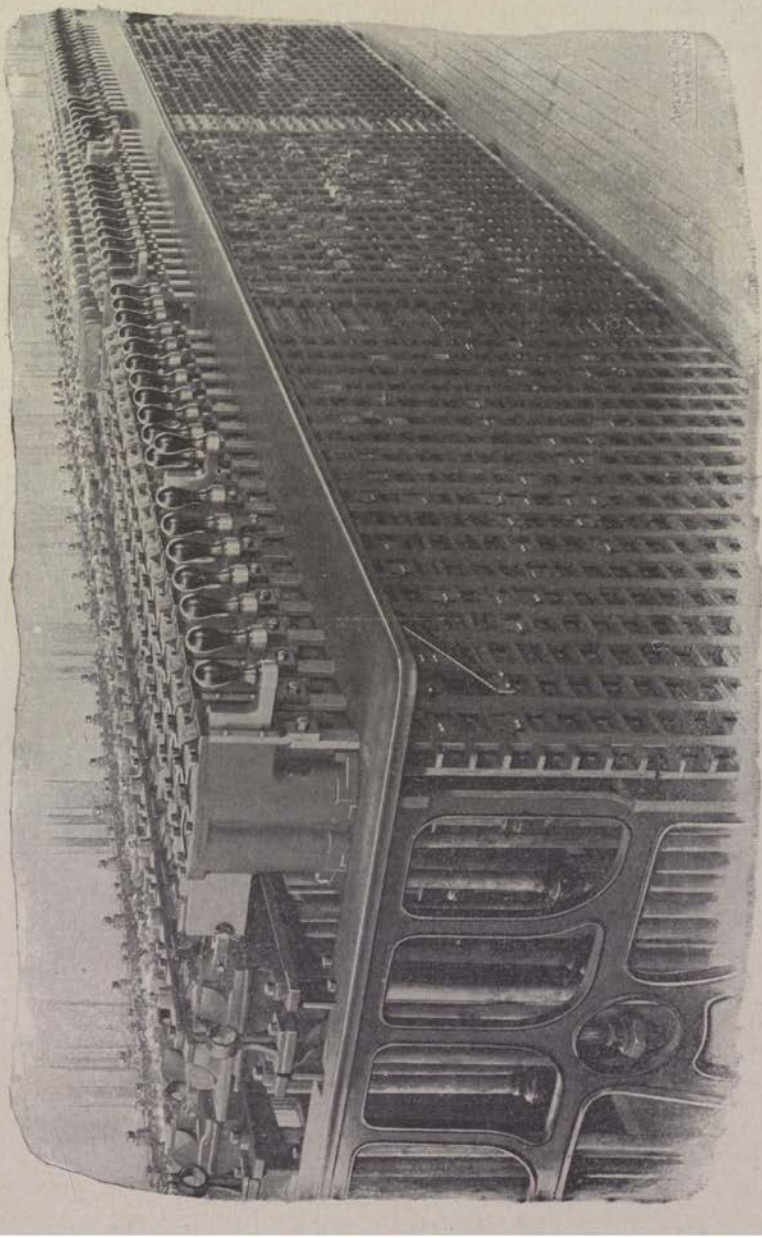


FIG. 18.

close to the lever before the latter can be moved. The pressing of the spring-latch handle against the lever effects a suitable train of unlocking before which the lever cannot be moved and after which it is thrown over to the full limit and locked there. The desired combination for the movement of the train through any number of switches may require a similar movement of a number of levers, but the entire movement of that set, as required, must be completely effected before the signals are cleared, and when they are so cleared the right combination forming a clear track for the train, and that one only, is secured. These meagre and superficial statements indicate in a general way, however imperfectly, the ends attained in a modern interlocking-machine. They secure for railroad traffic as nearly as possible an absolutely safe track. They eliminate, as far as it is possible to do so, the inefficiency of human nature, the erratic, indifferent, or wilfully negligent features of human agency, and substitute therefor the certainty of efficient mechanical appliances. In some and perhaps many States grade crossings are required by statute to adopt measures that are equivalent to the most advanced lock-and-block system of signalling. So vast has become railroad traffic upon the great trunk lines of the country that it would be impossible to operate them at all without the perfected modern systems of railroad signalling. They constitute the means by which all train movements are controlled, and without such systems great modern railroads could not be operated.

The swiftly moving "limited" express passenger trains, equipped with practically every luxury of modern life, speed their way so swiftly and smoothly over many hundreds of miles without the incident of an interruption, and in such a regular and matter-of-fact way, that the suggestion of an intricate system of signalling governing its movements is never thought of. Yet such a train moves not a yard over its track without the saving authority of its block signals. If the engineman were to neglect even for a mile the indication of the semaphore, he would place in fatal peril the safety of his train and of every life in it.

287. Methods of Applying Power in Systems of Signalling.— The mechanical appliances used in accomplishing these ends are among the most efficient in character and delicate yet certain in

motive power which engineering science has yet produced. The electric circuit formed by the rails of the track plays a most important part, particularly in securing the safety of the rear of the train in making it absolutely certain whether even rear cars that may have broken away have either passed out of the block or are still in it. The electric circuit in one application or another was among the earliest means used in railroad signalling. Electric power is also used in connection with compressed air for the working of signals. Among the latest and perhaps the most advanced types of lock-and-block signalling is that which is actuated by low-pressure compressed air, the maximum pressure being 15 pounds only per square inch. The compressed air is supplied by a simple compressor, and it is communicated from the signal cabin to the most remote signal or switch by pipes and suitable cylinders fitted with pistons controlled by valves, thus effecting the final signal or switch movements. It has been successfully applied at the yard of the Grand Central Station in New York City and at many other similar points. In this connection it is interesting to observe that while the original Saxby and Farmer interlocking-machine was installed from England in this country, as has already been observed, about 1875, American engineers have within a year reciprocated the favor by furnishing and putting in place most successfully in one of the great railroad yards of London the first low-pressure pneumatic lock-and-block system * found in Great Britain.

288. Train-staff Signalling.—The lock-and-block system gives the highest degree of security attainable at the present time for double-track railroad traffic, but the simpler character of the single-track railroad business can be advantageously controlled by a somewhat simpler and less expensive system, which is a modification of the old train-staff method. It is one of the "machine" methods of signalling. The type which has been used widely in England, Australia and India, and to some extent in this country is called the Webb and Thompson train-staff machine, shown in Fig. 19. It will be observed that the machine contains ten staffs (18 to 20 inches long and 1 to $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches in diameter), but as many as fifteen are sometimes used. These staffs can be

* By Standard Railroad Signal Company of Troy, N. Y.

removed from the machine at one end of a section of the road at which a train is to enter, only by permission from the operator at the farther end of the section. If the station at the entrance to that section is called *A*, and the station at the farther end *X*, the following description of the operation of the instrument is given by Mr. Charles Hansel in a very concise and excellent manner:

"When a train is ready to move from *A* to *X* the operator at *A* presses down the lever which is seen at the bottom of the right-hand dial, sounding one bell at *X*, which is for the purpose of calling the attention of the operator at *X* to the fact that *A* desires to send a train forward. The operator at *X* acknowledges the call by pressing the lever on his instrument, sounding a bell in the tower at *A*. The operator at *A* then asks permission from *X* to withdraw staff by pressing down the lever before mentioned three times, giving three rings on the bell at *X*, and immediately turns his right-hand pointer to the left, leaving it in the horizontal position pointing to the words 'For staff,' indicating that he desires operator at *X* to release his instrument so that he can take a staff or train order from it. If there is no train or any portion of a train between *A* and *X*, the holding down of the lever at *X* closes the circuit in the lock magnets at *A*, which enables the operator at *A* to withdraw a staff. As soon as this staff is removed from *A*, *A* turns the left-hand pointer to the words 'Staff out,' and in removing this staff from the instrument *A* the galvanometer needle which is seen in the centre of the instrument between the two dials vibrates, indicating to the operator

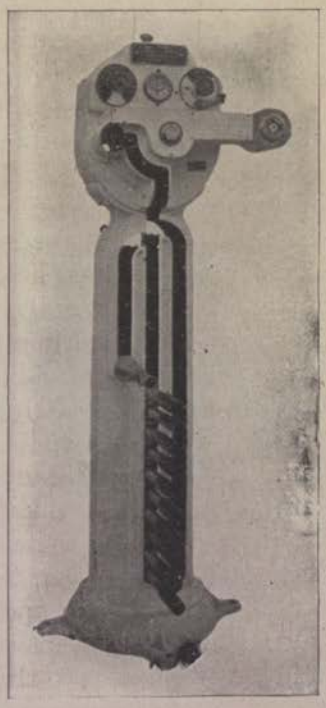


FIG. 19.—Webb and Thompson Train-staff Machine.

at X that A has withdrawn his staff. X then releases the lever which he has held down in order that A might withdraw a staff and turns his left-hand indicator to 'Staff out,' and with this position of the instrument a staff cannot be withdrawn from either one.

"The first method of delivering this staff to the engineer as a train order was to place it in a staff-crane, which crane was located on the platform outside of the block station. With the staff in this position it has been found in actual practice that the engineman can pick it up while his train is running at a speed of 30 miles per hour. A second staff cannot be removed from A nor a staff removed from X until this staff which was taken by the engineman in going from A to X is placed in the staff instrument at X; consequently the delivering of a staff from A to the engineman gives him absolute control of the section between A and X.

"This train-order staff also controls all switches leading from the main line between A and X, for with the style of switch-stand which we have designed for the purpose the trainman cannot open the switch until he has secured the staff from the engineman and inserted it in the switch-stand, and as soon as he throws the switch-lever and opens the switch he fastens the train-staff in the switch-stand, and it cannot be removed until the switchman has closed and locked the switch for the main line. When this is done he may remove the train-staff and return it to the engineman. It will thus be seen that this train order, in the shape of a staff, gives the engineman absolute control over the section, and also insures that all switches from the main line are set properly before he can deliver the train-staff to the instrument at X.

"In order that the operator at X may be assured that the entire train has passed his station, we may divide the staff in two and deliver one half to the engineman and the other half to the trainman on the caboose or rear end of the train, and it will be necessary for the operator at X to have the two halves so that he may complete the staff in order to insert it into the staff instrumen at X, as it is impossible to insert a portion of the staff; it must be entirely complete before it can be returned to the staff instrument."

Instead of using the entire staff as a whole or in two parts,

Mr. Hansel suggests that one or more rings on the body of the staff be removed from the latter and given to the engineman or other trainman to be placed upon a corresponding staff at the extreme end of the section. This would answer the purpose, for no staff can be inserted in a machine unless all the rings are in their proper positions. These rings can be taken up by a train moving at any speed from a suitable crane at any point alongside the track.

For a rapid movement of trains on a single-track railroad under this staff system an engineman must know before he approaches the end of the section whether the staff is ready for delivery to him. In order to accomplish that purpose the usual distant and home signals may readily be employed. The distant signal would show him what to expect, so that he would approach the entrance to the section either at full speed or with his train under control according to the indication. Similarly, electric circuits may be employed in connection with the staff or rings in the control of signals which it may be desired to employ.

The electric train-staff may also be used in a permissive block system, the section of the track between stations A and X constituting the block. In Fig. 19, showing the machine, a horizontal arm is seen to extend across its face and to the right. This is the permissive attachment which must be operated by the special staff shown on the left half of the machine about midway of its height. If it is desired to run two or three trains or two or three sections of the same train from A before admitting a train at X in the opposite direction, the operator at A so advises the operator at X. The latter then permits A to remove the special staff with which the extreme right-hand end of the permissive attachment is unlocked and a tablet taken out. This tablet is equivalent to a train order and is given to the train immediately starting from A. A second tablet is given in a similar manner to the second section or train, and a third to the third section. The last section of train or train itself starting from A takes all the remaining tablets and the special staff for insertion in the machine at X. In this manner head-to-head collisions are prevented when a number of trains are passing through the block in the same direction before the entrance of a

train in the opposite direction. This system has been found to work satisfactorily where it has been used in this country, although its use has been quite limited. Evidently, in itself, it is not sufficient to prevent rear-end collisions in a block between trains moving in the same direction. In order to avoid such collisions where a train falls behind its schedule time or for any reason is stopped in a block, prompt use must be made of rear flagmen or other means to stop or to control the movement of the first following train.

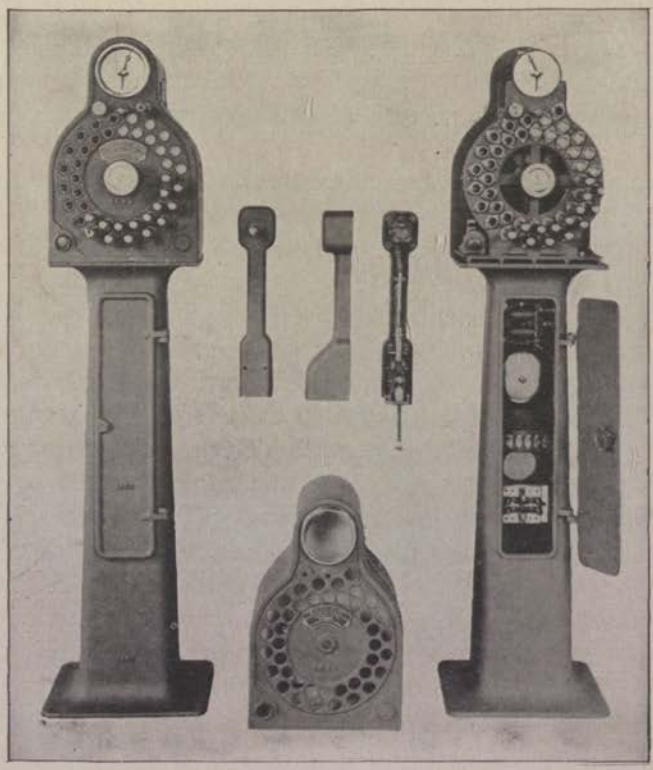


FIG. 20.

The most improved form of high-speed train-staff machine is shown in Fig. 20, as made and installed by the Union Switch and Signal Company and used by a number of the largest railroad systems of the United States. In these machines the staffs are but a few ounces in weight.

CHAPTER XXIII.

289. Evolution of the Locomotive. — The evolution of the steam locomotive may be called the most spectacular portion of the development of railroad engineering. The enormous engines used at the present time for hauling both heavy freight and fast passenger trains possess little in common, in respect of their principal features, with the crude machines, awkward in appearance and of little hauling capacity, which were used in the early part of the nineteenth century in the beginning of railroad operation. The primitive and ill-proportioned machine, ungainly in the highest degree, designed and built by Trevithick as far back as 1803, was a true progenitor of the modern locomotive, although the family resemblance is not at first very evident. Several such locomotive machines were designed and operated between 1800 and 1829 when Stevenson's Rocket was brought out. The water was carried in a boiler on a wagon immediately behind the engine, and the steam-cylinder in those early machines was placed almost anywhere but where it now seems to belong. The Rocket has some general features of resemblance to the machines built seventy years later, but when placed side by side it might easily be supposed that seven hundred years rather than seventy had elapsed between the two productions of the shop.

After the famous locomotive trial in which Robert Stevenson distanced his competitors, the design of the locomotive advanced rapidly, and it was but a few years later when the modern locomotive began to be accurately foreshadowed in the machines then constructed. This was true both in England and the United States.

The first steam locomotive in this country is believed to be the machine built by John Stevens at Hoboken, N. J., in 1825 and operated in 1825–27. This locomotive has practically the

arrangement of boiler and cylinder which is found upon the modern contractors' engines used for pile-driving, hoisting, and similar operations. It would certainly be difficult to imagine that it had any relation to the great express and freight locomotives of the present day. The rectilinear motions of the piston were transformed into the rotary motion of the wheels by means of gearing consisting of a simple arrangement of cog-wheels. About the same time a model of an English locomotive called the Stockton and Darlington No. 1 was brought to the United States by Mr. William Strickland of Philadelphia. The next important step in American locomotive development was the construction of the locomotive "John Bull" for the Camden and Amboy Railroad Company in the English shops of Stevenson & Company in the years 1830–31. This machine has the general features, although not the large dimensions, of many modern locomotives. The cow-catcher is a little more elaborate in design and far-reaching in its proportions than the similar appendage of the present day, but the general arrangement of the fire-box and boiler, the steam-cylinders, the driving-wheels and smoke-stack is quite similar to a modern American locomotive. This machine, "John Bull," and train made the trip from New York City to Chicago and return under its own steam in 1893. It was one of the prominent features of the World's Columbian Exposition. It rests in the National Museum at Washington, where it is one of the most interesting early remains of mechanical engineering in this country. One of the cars used in this train was the original used on the Camden and Amboy Road about 1836. Its body was used as a chicken-coop at South Amboy, N. J., for many years, and was rescued from this condition of degradation for the purpose of the Exposition trip in 1893. The original driving-wheels had locust spokes and felloes, the hubs and tires being of iron.

The locomotive "George Washington" was built, as a considerable number have been since, with one driving-axle, and was designed to be used on heavy grades. This machine was built by William Norris & Sons of Philadelphia, who were the progenitors of the present great establishment of the Baldwin Locomotive Works. While the development of the locomotive was sub-

jected to many vicissitudes in principles, general arrangement, and size in order to meet the varying requirements of different roads as well as the fancies or more rational ideas of the designers, its advance was rapid. As early as 1846 we find practically the modern consolidation type, followed in 1851 by the ordinary eight-wheel engine of which thousands have been constructed within the pa t fifty years. The first Mogul built by the Baldwin Locomotive Works was almost if not quite as early in the field. Both these types of machines carry the principal portion of their weight upon the driving-wheels and were calculated to yield a high tractive capacity, especially as the weights of the engines increased. The weight of the little "John Bull" was but 22,425 pounds, while that of the great modern machine may be as much as 267,800 pounds, with 53,500 pounds on a single driving-axle.

290. Increase of Locomotive Weight and Rate of Combustion of Fuel.—The development of railroad business in the United States has been so rapid as to create rigorous exactions of every feature of a locomotive calculated to increase its tractive force. Any enhancement of train-load without increasing the costs of the train force or other cost of movement will obviously lead to economy in transportation. In order that the locomotive may yield the correspondingly augmented tractive force the weight resting upon the drivers must be increased, which means a greater machine and at the same time higher working pressures of steam. This demands grea er boiler capacity and strength and a proportionately increased rate of combustion, so as to move the locomotive and train by the stored-up energy of the fuel transformed in the engine through steam pressure The higher that pressure the gr ater the amount of energy stored up in a unit of weight of the steam and the greater will be the capacity of a given amount of water to perform the work of hauling a train. The greater the weight of train moved and the greater its speed the more energy must be supplied by the steam, and, again, that can only be done with a correspondingly greater consumption of fuel. In the early days of the small and crude machines to which allusion has already been made the simplest fuel was sufficiently effective. As the duties performed by the locomotive became more intense a higher grade of fuel,

i.e., one in which a greater amount of heat energy is stored per unit of weight, was required. Both anthracite and bituminous coal have admirably filled these requirements. The movement of a great modern locomotive and its train at an average rate of 30 to 60 miles per hour requires the combustion of fuel at a high rate and the rapid evapo ation of steam at pressures of 180 to 225 or more pounds per square inch. The consumption of coal by such a locomotive may reach 100 pounds per minute, and two barrels of water may be evaporated in the same time. This latter rate would require over a gallon of water per second to be ejected through the stack as exhaust steam. Some of the most marked improvements in locomotive practice have been made practically within the past six or seven years in order to meet these exacting requirements.

While the operations of locomotives will obviously depend largely upon quality of fuel, speed, and other conditions, the investigations of Prof. W. F. M. Goss and others appear to indicate that 12 to 14 pounds of water per hour may be evaporated by a good locomotive boiler per square foot of heating surface, and that 25 to 30 pounds of steam will be required per indicated horse-power per hour.

291. Principal Parts of a Modern Locomotive.—The principal features of a modern locomotive are the boiler with the smoke-stack placed on the front end and the fire-box or furnace at the rear, the tubes, about 2 inches in diameter, through which the hot gases of combustion pass from the furnace to the smoke-stack, the steam-cylinders with their fittings of valves and valve movements, and the driving-wheels. These features must all be designed more or less in reference to each other, and whatever improvements have been made are indicated almost entirely by the relative or absolute dimensions of those main features. The boiler must be of sufficient size so that the water contained in it may afford a free steam production, requiring in turn a corresponding furnace capacity with the resulting heating surface. The latter is that aggregate surface of the interior chambers of the boiler through which the heat produced by combustion finds its way to the water evaporated in steam; it is composed almost entirely of the surfaces of the

steel plates of the fire-box and of the numerous tubes running through the boiler and parallel to its centre, exposed to the hot gases of combustion and in contact with the water on the opposite sides of those plates. Evidently an increase in size of the fire-box with the correspondingly increased combustion will furnish a proportionally larger amount of steam at the desired high pressure, but an increase in the size of the fire-box is limited both in length and in width. It is found that it is essentially impracticable for a fireman to serve a fire-box more than about 10 feet in length. The maximum width of the locomotive limits the width of the fire-box.

292. The Wootten Fire-box and Boiler.—As the demand arose for an enlarged furnace the width of the latter was restricted by the width between the driving-wheel tires, less than 4 feet 6 inches. That difficulty was overcome by what is known as the Wootten fire-box, which was brought out by John E. Wootten of the Phila-

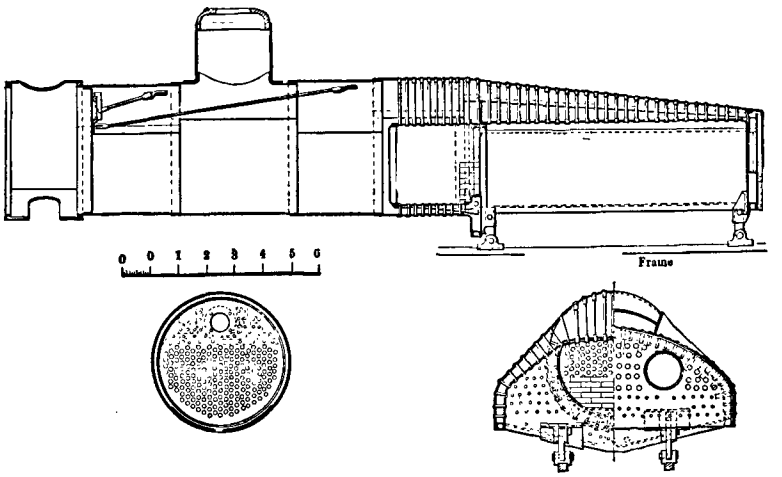


FIG. 21.

delphia and Reading Railroad about 1877, and has since been developed and greatly improved by others. The Wootten boiler with its sloping top and great width extending out over the rear driving-wheels presented a rather curious appearance and was a distinct departure in locomotive-boiler design. Fig. 21 shows an elevation and two sections of the original Wootten

type of boiler. It will be noticed that in front of the fire-box there is a combustion-chamber of considerable length, 2½ to 3 feet long. This boiler was first designed to burn the poorer grades of fuel, such as coal-slack, in which the combustion-chamber to complete the combustion of the fuel was thought essential. By Wootten's device, i.e., extending the boiler out over the driving-wheels, a much greater width of fire-box was secured, but the height of the locomotive was considerably increased. It cannot be definitely stated just how high the centre of the locomotive boiler may be placed above the track without prejudice to safety in running at high speeds, but it has not generally been thought best to lift that centre more than about 9½ feet above the tops of rails, and this matter has been held clearly in view in the development of the wide fire-box type of locomotive boilers.

Like every other new form of machine, the Wootten boiler developed some weak features, although there was no disappointment in its steaming capacity. It will be noticed in the figure that the plates forming that part of the boiler over the fire-box show abrupt changes in curvature which induced ruptures of the stay-bolts and resulted in other weaknesses. This boiler passed through various stages of development, till at the present time Figs. 22 and 23 show its most advanced form, which is satisfactory in almost or quite every detail. The sudden changes in direction of the plates in the first Wootten example have been displaced by more gradual and easy shapes. Indeed there are few features other than those which characterize simple and easy boiler construction. The enormous grate area is evident from the horizontal dimensions of the fire-box, which are about 120 inches in length by about 106 inches in breadth. The boiler has over 4000 square feet of heating surface and carries about 200 pounds per square inch pressure of steam. The combustion-chamber in front of the fire-box has been reduced to a length of about 6 inches, just enough for the protection of the expanded ends of the tubes. The barrel of the boiler in front of the fire-box has a diameter of 80 inches and a length of about 15 feet. The grate area is not far from 100 square feet. The improvements which have culminated in the production of this boiler are due largely to Mr. Samuel Higgins of the Lehigh Valley Road.

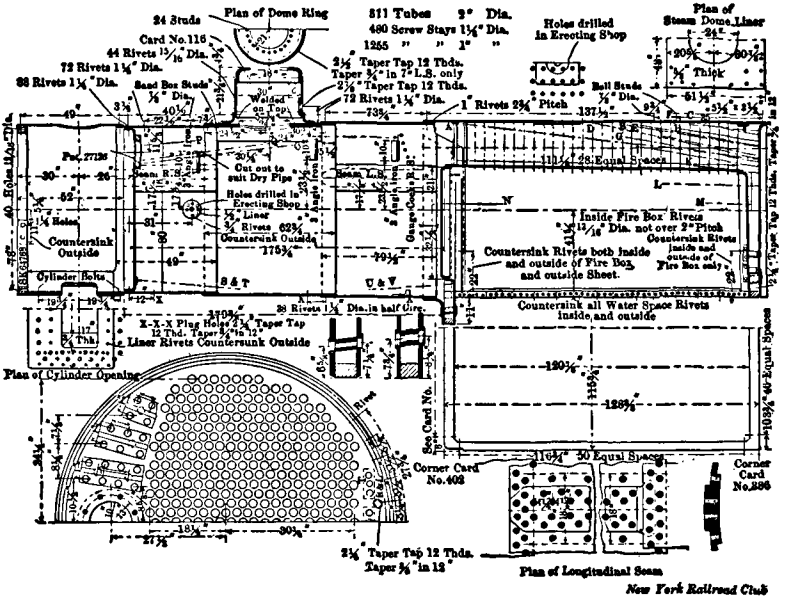

Plan of Dome Ring
24 Studs
Card No. 116
44 Rivets 15/16" Dia.
72 Rivets 1¼" Dia.
88 Rivets 1¼" Dia.
Sand Box Studs ⅛" Dia.
Welded on Top
311 Tubes 2" Dia.
480 Screw Stays 1¼" Dia.
1255 " " 1" "
2½" Taper Tap 12 Thds. Taper ¾" in 7" L.S. only
2½" Taper Tap 12 Thds.
72 Rivets 1¼" Dia.
1" Rivets 2¾" Pitch
Holes drilled in Erecting Shop
Bell Studs ⅛" Dia.
Plan of Steam Dome Liner
Thick
Cut out to suit Dry Pipe
Holes drilled in Erecting Shop
Liner ¾" Rivets 62¾" Countersink Outside
Countersink Outside
Cylinder Bolts
Inside Fire Box Rivets 13/16" Dia. not over 2" Pitch
Countersink Rivets inside and outside of Fire Box only
Countersink Rivets both inside and outside of Fire Box, and outside Sheet.
Countersink all Water Space Rivets inside and outside
38 Rivets 1¼" Dia. in half Circ.
X-X-X Plug Holes 2¼" Taper Tap 12 Thd. Taper ¾" in 12"
Liner Rivets Countersunk Outside
Plan of Cylinder Opening
See Card No.
Corner Card No. 402
Corner Card No. 386
2¼" Taper Tap 12 Thds. Taper ¾" in 12"
Plan of Longitudinal Seam
New York Railroad Club

FIG. 22.

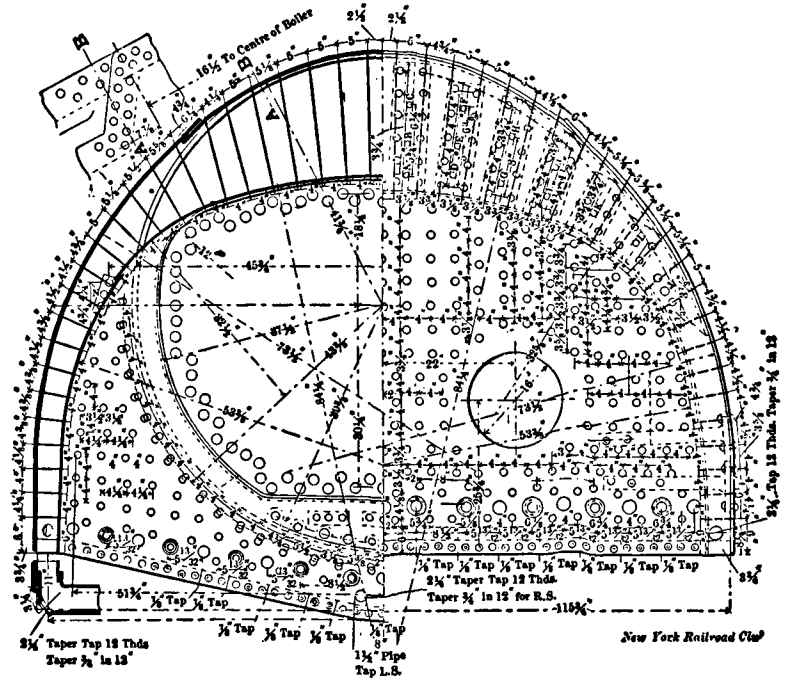

16½ To Centre of Boiler
2¼" Taper Tap 12 Thds. Taper ¾" in 12"
2¼" Taper Tap 12 Thds. Taper ¾" in 12" for R.S.
1½" Pipe Tap L.S.
New York Railroad Club

FIG. 23.

293. Locomotives with Wootten Boilers.—Fig. 24 exhibits a consolidation freight locomotive of the Lehigh Valley Railroad, having the boiler shown in Figs. 22 and 23. This machine is one of the most efficient and powerful locomotives produced at the present time. The locomotive shown in Fig. 25 has a record. It is one used on the fast Reading express service between Philadelphia and Atlantic City during the season of the latter resort. It has run one of the fastest schedule trains in the world and has attracted attention in this country and abroad. Its type is called the Atlantic and, as the view shows, it is fitted with the Wootten improved type of boiler. It will be noticed that the wide fire-box does not reach out over the rear

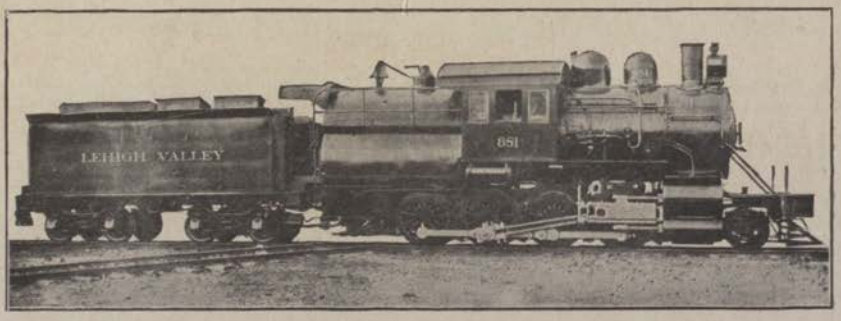


FIG. 24.

drivers, but over the small trailing-wheels immediately behind them. This is a feature of wide locomotive fire-box practice at the present time to which recourse is frequently had. There is no special significance attached to the presence of the small trailing-wheels except as a support for the rear end of the boiler, their diameters being small enough to allow the extension of the fire-box over them without unduly elevating the centre of the boiler.

The cylinders of these and many other locomotives are known as the Vauclain compound. In other words, it is a compound locomotive, there being two cylinders, one immediately over the other, on each side. The diameter of the upper cylinder is much less than that of the lower. The steam is first admitted into the small upper cylinder and after doing its work there passes into

the lower or larger cylinder, where it does its work a second time with greater expansion. By means of this compound or double-cylinder use of the steam a higher rate of expansion is secured and a more uniform pull is exerted upon the train, the first generally contributing to a more economical employment of the steam, which in turn means a less amount of fuel burned for a given amount of tractive work performed.

In the early part of November, 1901, an engine of this type hauling a train composed of five cars and weighing 235 tons made a run of 55.5 miles between Philadelphia and Atlantic City at

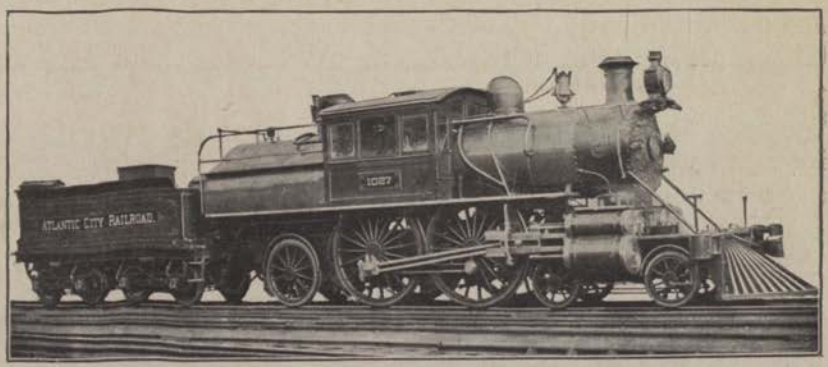


FIG. 25.

the rate of 71.6 miles per hour, the fastest single mile being made at a rate of a little less than 86 miles per hour.

The power being developed by these engines runs as high as 1400 H.P. at high speeds and 2000 H.P. at the lower speeds of freight trains.

The chief economic advantage of these wide fire-box machines lies in the fact that very indifferent grades of fuel may be consumed. Indeed there are cases where fuel so poor as to be unmarketable has been used most satisfactorily. With a narrow and small fire-box a desired high rate of combustion sometimes demands a draft strong enough to raise the fuel over the grate-bars. This difficulty is avoided in the large fire-box, where sufficient combustion for rapid steaming is produced with less intensity of blast.

294. Recent Improvements in Locomotive Design.—Concurrently with the development of the Wootten type of boiler, other wide fire-box types have been brought to a high state of excellence. In reality general locomotive progress within the past few years has been summed up by Mr. F. J. Cole as follows:

(*a*) The general introduction of the wide fire-box for burning bituminous coal.

(*b*) The use of flues of largely increased length.

(*c*) The improvements in the design of piston-valves and their introduction into general use.

(*d*) The recent progress made in the use of tandem compound cylinders.

The piston-valve, to which reference is made, is a valve in the shape of two pistons connected by an enlarged stem or pipe he entire length of the double piston, the arrangement depending upon the length of steam-cylinder or stroke; it may be 31 or 32 inches. This piston-valve is placed between the steam-

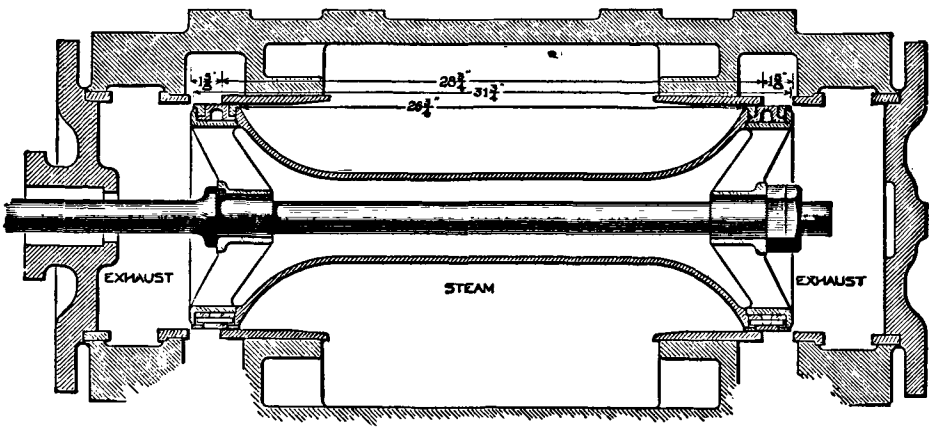


FIG. 26.

cylinder and the boiler, and is so moved by eccentrics attached to the driving-wheel axles through the medium of rocking levers and valve-stems as to admit steam to the cylinder at the beginning of the stroke and allow it to escape after the stroke is completed. Fig. 26 shows a section through the centre of one of these piston-valves. It will be noticed that the live steam is admitted around

a central portion of the valve, and that the steam escapes through the exhaust-passages at each end of the piston-valve. This type of valve is advantageous with high steam pressures for the reason that its "blast," i.e., the steam pressure, does not press it against its bearings as is the case with the old type of slide-valve, the wear of which with modern high steam pressures would be excessive, although under more recent slide-valve design this objection does not hold.

295. Compound Locomotives with Tandem Cylinders. — The tandem compound locomotive, as recently built, is a locomotive in which the high-pressure cylinder is placed immediately in

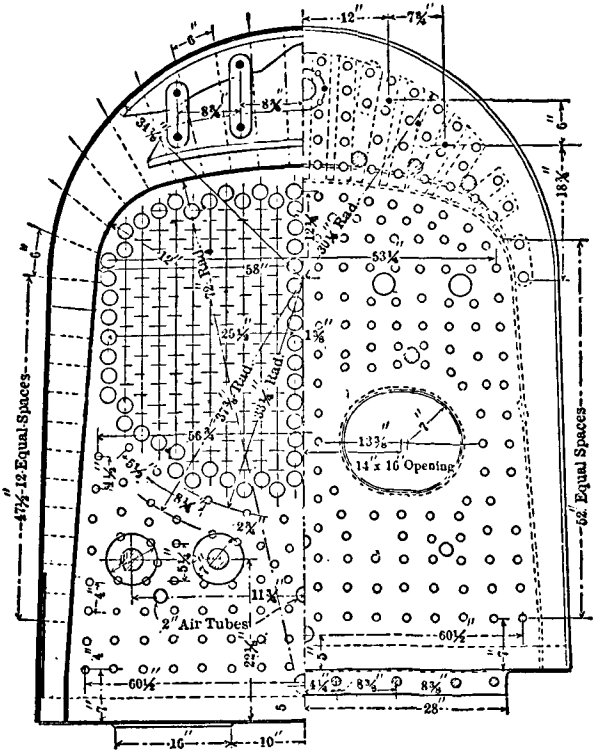
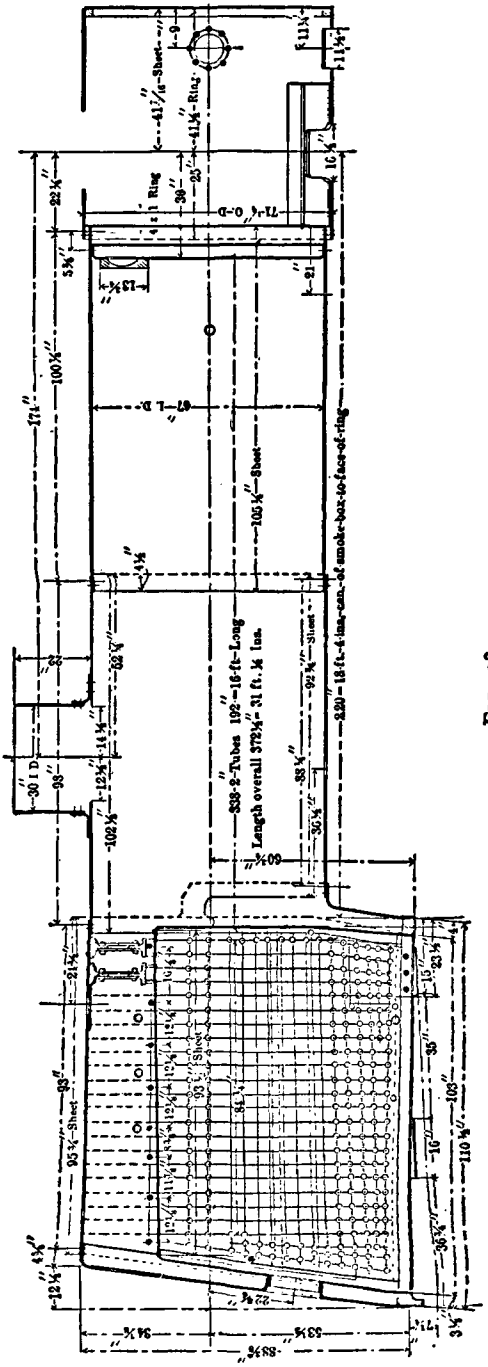


FIG. 27.

front of the low-pressure cylinder and in line with it. In the Vauclain type it is necessary to have a piston-rod for each of the two cylinders, one above the other, each taking hold of the same


Length overall 372¾" 31 ft. ¾ ins.
838-2-Tubes 192-16-ft-Long
Sheet
Ring
Sheet
Sheet
Sheet

cross-head. In the tandem arrangement with the two cylinders each in line, but one piston-rod is required. An example of a locomotive with this tandem arrangement of compound cylinders will be shown farther on.

Figs. 27 and 28 show two sections, one transverse and one longitudinal, of a type of large fire-box boiler built by the American Locomotive Works at Schenectady. The diameter of the barrel of the boiler in front of the fire-box is about 5 feet 8 inches, while the clear greatest width of the fire-box is 5 feet $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches. The length of the latter is 8 feet 7 inches, making a total grate area in this particular instance of over 45 square feet. There are 338 2-inch tubes, each 16 feet in length. The total length over all of the boiler is 31 feet $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. The result of such a design is an arrangement by which a large grate area is secured and a corresponding high rate of combustion without a too violent draft. In designing locomotive boilers for bituminous coal one square foot of grate area is sometimes provided for each 60 to 70 square feet of heating surface in the tubes.

296. Evaporative Efficiency of Different Rates of Combustion. —In the development of this particular class of locomotive

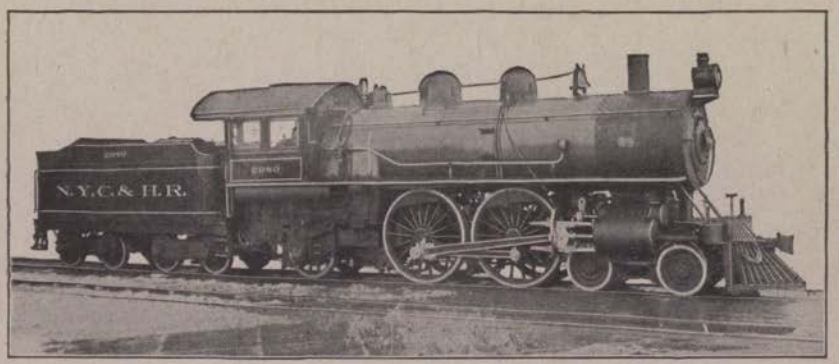


FIG. 29.

boilers it is to be remembered that as a rule the highest rates of combustion frequently mean a decreased evaporation of water at boiler pressure per pound of fuel. Modern locomotives may burn over 200 pounds of coal per square foot of grate area per hour, and in doing so the evaporation may be less than 5 pounds

of water per pound of fuel. On the other hand, when the coal burned does not exceed 50 pounds per square foot of grate area per hour, as much as 8 pounds of water may be evaporated for each pound of coal. It is judicious, therefore, to have large grate area, other things being equal, in order that the highest attainable efficiency in evaporation may be reached.

296a. Tractive Force of a Locomotive. — The tractive force of a locomotive arises from the fact that one solid body cannot be moved over another, however smooth the surface of contact may be, without developing the force called resistance of friction. This resistance is measured by what is called the coefficient of friction, determined only by experiment. The resistance of friction and this coefficient will depend both upon the degree of smoothness of the surface of contact and on its character. If surfaces are lubricated, as in the moving parts of machinery, the force of friction is very much decreased, but in the absence of that lubricant it will have a much higher value. The coefficient of friction is a ratio which denotes the part of the weight of the body moved which must be applied as a force to that body in order to put it in motion against the resistance of friction. In the case of lubricated surfaces this ratio may be as small as a few hundredths. In the case of lo omotive driving-wheels and the track on which they rest this value is usually taken at .2 to .25.

There are times when it is desirable to increase the resistance of friction between locomotive drivers and the rails. For this purpose a simple device, called the sand-box, is frequently placed on the top of a locomotive boiler with pipes running down from it so as to discharge the sand on the rails immediately in front of the drivers. The sand is crushed under the wheels and offers an increased resistance to their slipping.

The tractive force of a locomotive may also be computed from the pressure of steam against the pistons in the steam-cylinders. If the indicated horse-power in the cylinder be represented by H.P., and if all frictional or other resistance between the cylinder and the draw-bar be neglected, the following equality will hold:

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text{Draw-bar pull} \times \text{speed of train in miles} \\ \text{per hour} \times 5280\end{array}\right\} = \text{H.P.} \times 33{,}000 \times 60.$$

If S = speed in miles per hour, and if T = draw-bar pull, then the preceding equality gives

$$T = \frac{375 \times \text{H.P.}}{S}.$$

This value of the "pull" must be diminished by the friction of the locomotive as a machine, by the rolling resistance of the trucks and tender, and by the atmospheric resistance of the locomotive as the head of the train. Prof. Goss proposes the following approximate values for these resistances in a paper read before the New England Railroad Club in December, 1901.

A number of tests have shown that a steam pressure of 3.8 pounds per square inch on the piston is required to overcome the machine friction of the locomotive. Hence if d is the diameter of the piston in inches, L the piston-stroke in feet, and D the diameter of driver in feet, while f is that part of the draw-bar pull required to overcome machine friction, the following equation will hold:

$$f.\pi D = 3.8\frac{\pi d^2}{4} \times 2L \times 2. \quad \therefore\ f = 3.8\frac{d^2 L}{D}.$$

Again, if W be the rolling load in tons on tender and trucks (exluding that on drivers), and if r be that part of the draw-bar pull required to overcome the rolling resistance due to W, then experience indicates that approximately, in pounds,

$$r = \left(2 + \frac{S}{6}\right)W.$$

As before, S is the speed in miles per hour.

Finally, if h be that part of the draw-bar pull in pounds required to overcome the head resistance (atmospheric) of the locomotive, there may be written approximately

$$h = .11S^2.$$

The actual draw-bar pull in pounds available for moving the train will then be

$$t = T - f - r - h = \frac{375\ \text{H.P.}}{S} - 3.8\frac{d^2 L}{D} - W\left(2 + \frac{S}{6}\right) - .11S^2.$$

The maximum value of t should be taken as one fourth the greatest weight on drivers.

If H is the total heating surface in square feet, and if 12 pounds of water be evaporated per square foot per hour, while 28 pounds of steam are required per horse-power per hour, then

$$\text{H.P.} = \frac{12H}{28} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{375\,\text{H.P.}}{S} = \frac{161H}{S}.$$

Hence

$$t = \frac{161H}{S} - 3.8\frac{d^2L}{D} - W\left(2 + \frac{S}{6}\right) - .11S^2.$$

The actual draw-bar pull in pounds may then be computed by this formula.

Some recent tests of actual trains (both heavy and light) on the N. Y. C. & H. R. R. R. between Mott Haven Junction and the Grand Central Station, New York City, a distance of 5.3 miles, by M . Bion J. Arnold, by means of a dynamometer-car, gave the actual average draw-bar pull per ton of 2000 pounds as ranging from 12 to 25 pounds going in one direction and 12.1 to 24 pounds in the opposite direction. There were eight tests in each direction, and the greatest speed did not exceed 30 miles per hour.

As the diameter of the driver appears in the preceding formulæ, it may be well to state that an approximate rule for that diameter is to make it as many inches as the desired maximum speed in miles per hour, i.e., 70 inches for 70 miles, or 80 inches for 80 miles, per hour.

297. Central Atlantic Type of Locomotive.—Fig. 29 represents what is termed the Central Atlantic type (single cylinder) of engine, which is used for hauling most of the fast passenger trains on the New York Central and Hudson River Railroad. The characteristics of boiler and fire-box are such as are shown in Figs. 27 and 28.

The cylinders are 21 inches internal diameter, and the stroke is 26 inches. The total grate area is 50 square feet, and the total heating surface 3500 square feet. The total weight of the locomotive is 176,000 pounds, with 95,000 on the drivers. It will be observed that the total weight of locomotive per square foot of heating surface is scarcely more than 650 pounds, which is a low value. The boiler pressure carried may be 200 pounds per

square inch or more. The tractive force of this locomotive may be taken at 24,700 pounds. There is supplied to these engines, among others, what is called a traction-increasing device. This traction-increaser is nothing more nor less than a compressed-air cylinder secured to the boiler, so that as its piston is pressed outward, i.e., downward, it carries with it a lever, the fulcrum of which is on the equalizing-lever of the locomotive frame, the other or short end of the lever being attached to the main bar of the frame itself. This operation redistributes the boiler-load on the frame, so as to increase that portion which is carried by the drivers. This has been found to be a convenient device in starting trains and on up grades. In the present instance the traction-increaser may be operated so as to increase the load on the drivers by about 12,000 pounds. It is not supposed to be used except when needed under the circumstances indicated.

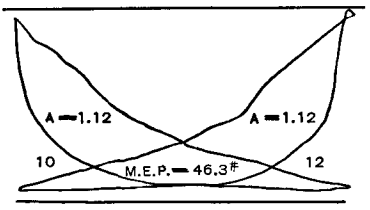


FIG. 30.

A number of indicator-cards taken from the steam-cylinders of these engines hauling the Empire State Express and other fast passenger trains on the Hudson River Division of the N. Y. C. & H. R. R. R., show that with a train weighing about 208 tons while running at a speed of 75 miles per hour 1323 H.P. was developed. Fig. 30 shows these indicator diagrams. With a train weighing 685 tons 1452 H.P. was indicated at a speed of 63 miles per hour.

298. Consolidation Engine, N. Y. C. & H. R. R. R. — One of the heaviest wide fire-box compound consolidation engines recently built for the New York Central freight service is shown in Fig. 31. It will be noticed that there is but one cylinder on each side of the locomotive, and that they are of different diam-

eters. One of these cylinders, 23 inches inside diameter, is a high-pressure cylinder, and the other, 35 inches inside diameter, is a low-pressure cylinder, the stroke in each case being 34 inches. The total grate area is 50.3 square feet, the fire-box being 8 feet long by 6 feet 3 inches wide. The total heating surface is 3480 square feet. The diameter of the barrel of the boiler at the front end is 72 inches, and the diameter of the drivers 63 inches. The

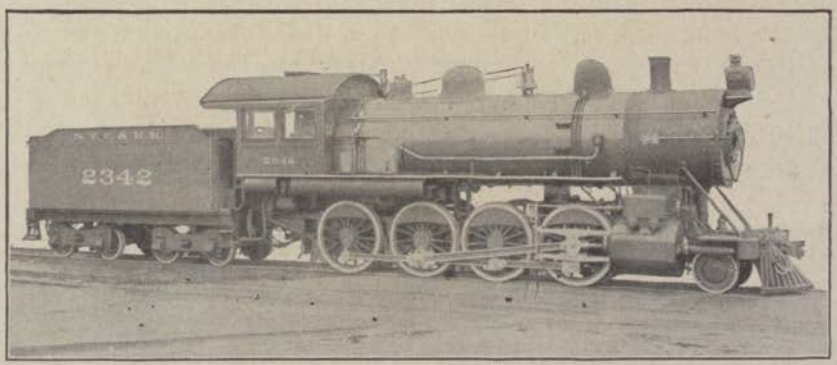


FIG. 31.

pressure of steam in the boiler is 210 pounds per square inch. The total weight of the locomotive is 194,000 pounds, of which 167,000 rests upon the drivers. These engines afford a maximum tractive force of 37,900 pounds. This engine is typical of those used for the New York Central freight service. They have hauled trains weighing nearly 2200 tons over the New York Central road.

299. P., B. & L. E. Consolidation. — The consolidation locomotive shown in Fig. 32 is a remarkable one in that it was for a time the heaviest constructed, but its weight has since been exceeded by at least two of the Decapod type built for the Sante Fé company. It was built at the Pittsburg works of the American Locomotive Company for the Pittsburg, Bessemer and Lake Erie Railroad to haul heavy trains of iron ore. The total weight is 250,300 pounds, of which the remarkable proportion of 225,200 is carried by the drivers. The tender carries 7500 gallons of

water, and the weight of it when loaded is 141,100 pounds, so that the total weight of engine and tender is 391,400 pounds. The average weight of engine and tender therefore approaches 7000 pounds per lineal foot. This is not a compound locomotive,

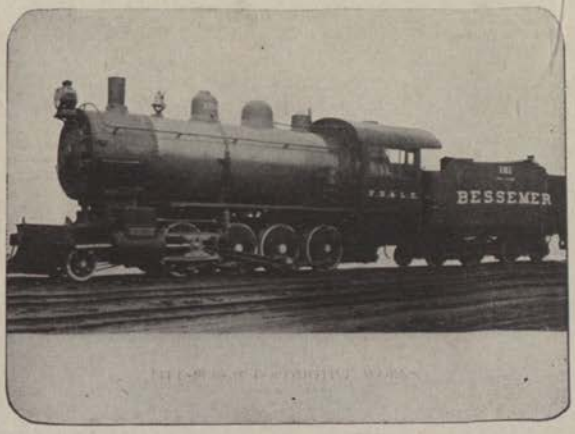


FIG. 32.

but each cylinder has 24 inches inside diameter and 32 inches stroke, the diameter of the driving-wheels being 54 inches. The boiler carries a pressure of 220 pounds, and the tractive force of the locomotive is 63,000 pounds.

A noticeable feature of this design, and one which does not agree with modern views prompting the design of wide fire-boxes, is its great length of 11 feet and its small width of 3 feet $4\frac{1}{4}$ inches. There are in the boiler 406 $2\frac{1}{4}$-inch tubes, each 15 feet long, the total heating surface being 3805 square feet.

300. L. S. & M. S. Fast Passenger Engine.—The locomotive shown in Fig. 33 is also a remarkable one in some of its features, chief among which is the 19 feet length of tubes. It was built at the Brooks works of the American Locomotive Company for the Lake Shore and Michigan Southern Railroad. The total weight of engine is 174,500 pounds, of which 130,000 pounds rests upon the drivers. The rear truck carries 23,000 pounds and the front

truck 21,500 pounds. This is not a compound engine. The cylinders have each an inside diameter of 20½ inches, and 28 inches stroke. As this locomotive is for fast passenger traffic, the driving-wheels are each 80 inches in diameter, and the driving-wheel

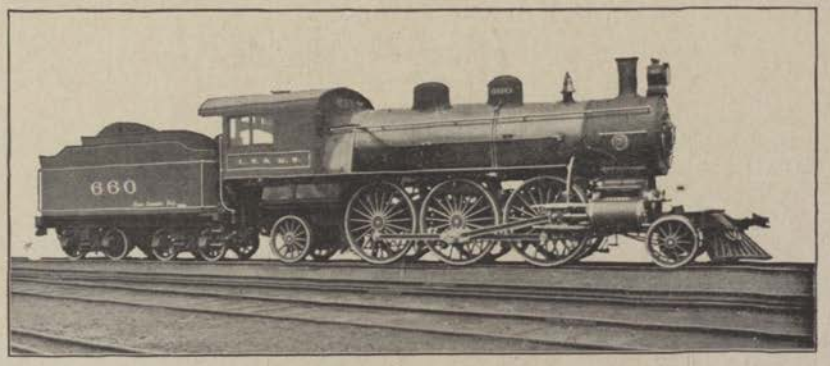


FIG. 33.

base is 14 feet. The fire-box is 85×84 inches, giving a grate area of 48½ square feet and a total heating surface of 3343 square feet. There are 285 2¼-inch flues, each 19 feet long. The tender carries 6000 gallons of water. Cast and compressed steel were used in this design to the greatest possible extent, and the result is shown in that the weight divided by the square feet of heating surface is 52.18 pounds.

301. Northern Pacific Tandem Compound Locomotive.—The diagram shown in Fig. 34 exhibits the outlines and main features of a tandem compound locomotive to which allusion has already been made. It was built at Schenectady, New York, in 1900, for the Northern Pacific Railroad, and was intended for heavy service on the mining portions of that line.

The diameters of the high- and low-pressure cylinders are respectively each 15 and 28 inches, with a stroke of 34 inches, while the boiler pressure is 225 pounds per square inch. The total weight of the machine is 195,000 pounds and the weight on the drivers 170,000 pounds, the diameter of the drivers being 55 inches. As the figure shows, it belongs to the consolidation type. The fire-box is 10 feet long by 3.5 feet wide, giving a

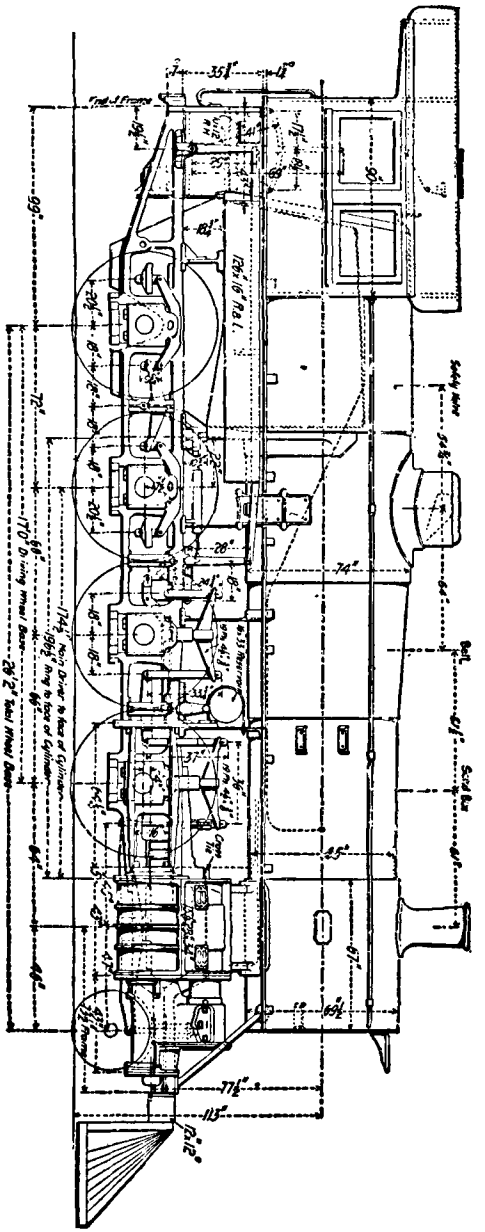


FIG. 34.

grate area of 35 square feet, with which is found a total heating surface of 3080 square feet. There are 388 2-inch tubes, each 14 feet 2 inches long. These engines are among the earliest compound-tandem type and have been very successful. Other locomotives of practically the same general type have been fitted with a wide fire-box, 8 feet 4 inches long by 6 feet 3 inches wide, with the grate area thus increased to 52.3 square feet.

302. Union Pacific Vauclain Compound Locomotive. — The next example of modern locomotive is the Vauclain compound type used on the Union Pacific Railroad. It is a ten-wheel pas-

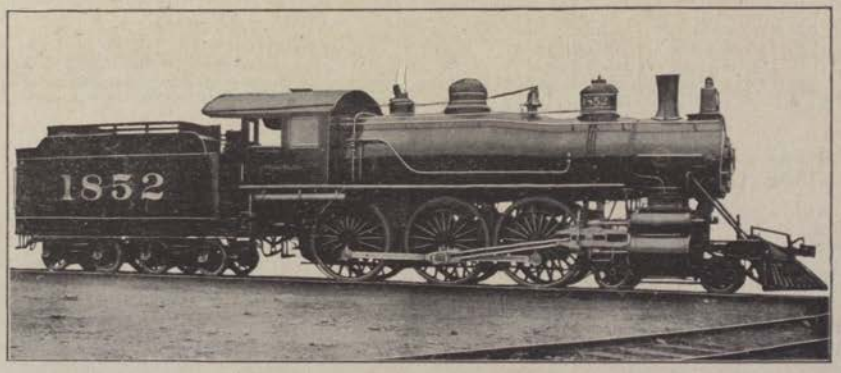


FIG. 35.

senger engine and one of a large number in use. The weight on the drivers is 142,000 pounds, and the total weight of the locomotive is about 185,000 pounds. The high-pressure cylinder has an inside diameter of 15½ inches, while the low-pressure cylinder has a diameter of 26 inches. The stroke is 28 inches and the diameter of the driving-wheels 79 inches. On the Union Pacific Railroad the diameter of the driving-wheel varies somewhat with the grades of the divisions on which the engines run.

In some portions of the country, as in Southern California, oil has come into quite extended use for locomotive fuel.

303. Southern Pacific Mogul with Vanderbilt Boiler. — The locomotive shown in Fig. 36 belongs to the Mogul type, having three pairs of driving-wheels and one pair of pilots. It is fitted with the Vanderbilt boiler adapted to the use of oil fuel. The

locomotives of which this is an example were built for the Southern Pacific Company, and they have performed their work in a highly satisfactory manner. They are not particularly large locomotives as those matters go at the present day, as they carry

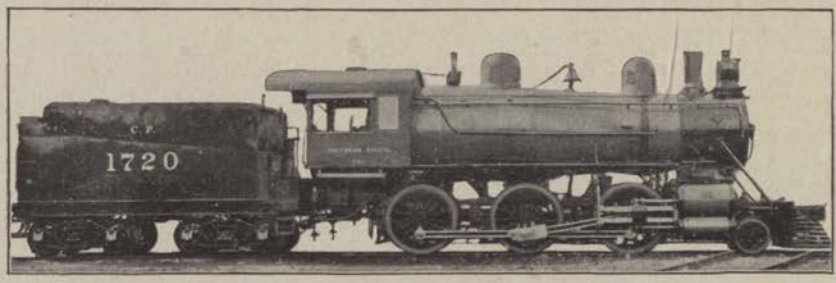


FIG. 36.

about 135,000 pounds on the drivers and 22,000 pounds on the truck, giving a total weight of 157,000 pounds. The characteristic feature of the machine is its adaptation to the burning of oil, which requires practically no labor in firing, although the services of a fireman must still be retained.

304. The "Soo" Decapod Locomotive.—It has been seen that the results of Trevethick's early efforts was a crude and simple machine, with what might be termed, in courtesy to that early attempt, a single pair of drivers. Subsequently, as locomotive evolution took place, two pairs of drivers coupled with the horizontal connecting-rod were employed. Then the Mogul with the three pairs of coupled drivers was used, and at or about the same time the consolidation type with four pairs of coupled drivers was found adapted in a high degree to the hauling of great freight trains. The last evolution in driving-wheel arrangement is exhibited in Fig. 37. It belongs to what is called the Decapod type. As a matter of fact, five pairs of coupled driving-wheels have been occasionally used for a considerable number of years, but this engine is the Decapod brought up to the highest point of modern excellence. As shown, it uses steam by the Vauclain compound system, the small or high-pressure cylinder being underneath the low-pressure cylinder. They have been built by the Baldwin Locomotive Works for

the Minneapolis, St. Paul and Sault Ste. Marie Railroad Company, on what is called the "Soo Line." It has given so much satisfaction that more of this type but of greater weight are being built for the same company. This engine was limited to

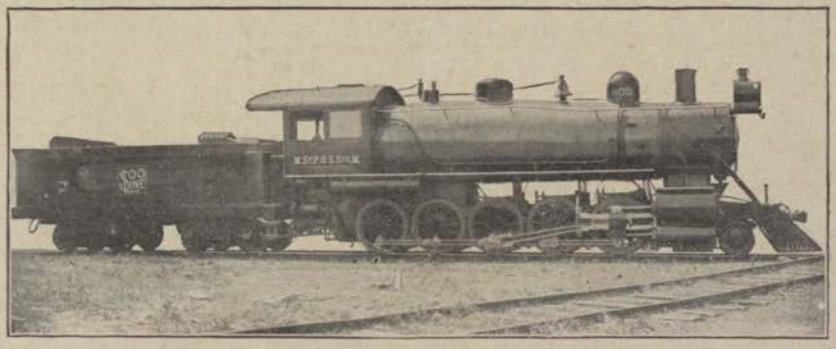


FIG. 37.

a total weight of 215,000 pounds, with 190,000 pounds on the drivers.

305. The A., T. & S. F. Decapod, the Heaviest Locomotive yet Built.—The heaviest locomotive yet constructed, consequently occupying the primacy in weight, is that shown in Fig. 38. It is a Decapod operated with others of its type by the A., T. & S. F.

FIG. 38.

Company near Bakersfield, California. It is a tandem compound coal-burner, as shown by the illustration, the high-pressure cylinder being in front of the low-pressure. The dimensions of cylinders are 19 and 32 × 32 inches stroke, and the driving-wheels are 57 inches in diameter. The total height from the top of stack

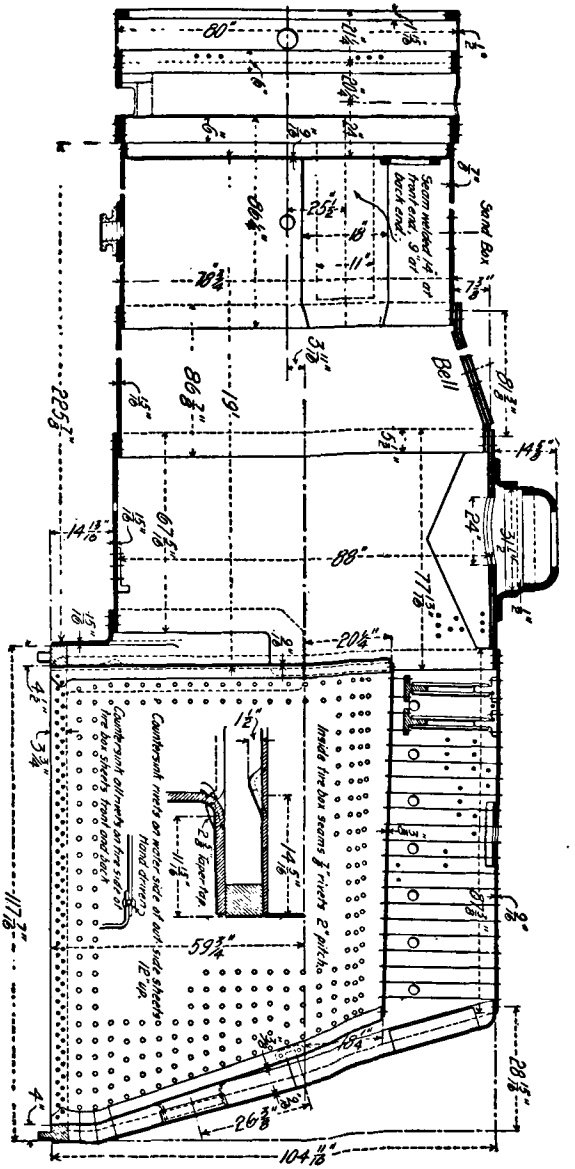

Sand Box
Bell
Inside fire box seams 7/8" rivets 2" pitch
Countersink rivets on water side of out side sheets 12" up.
Countersink all rivets on fire side of fire box sheets front and back
Seam welded 14" at front end, 9" at back end.

FIG. 39.

down to the rail is 15 feet 6 inches, while the height of the centre of the boiler above the rails is 9 feet 10 inches. Figs. 39 and 40 show some of the main boiler and fire-box dimensions. There are 463 2¼-inch tubes, each 19 feet long. The total heating surface is 5390 square feet, about one eighth of an acre, the length of the fire-box being 108 inches and the width 78 inches. The heating surface in the tubes is 5156 square feet, and in the fire-box 210.3 square feet; the grate surface having an area of 58.5 square feet. The boiler is designed to carry a working pressure of 225

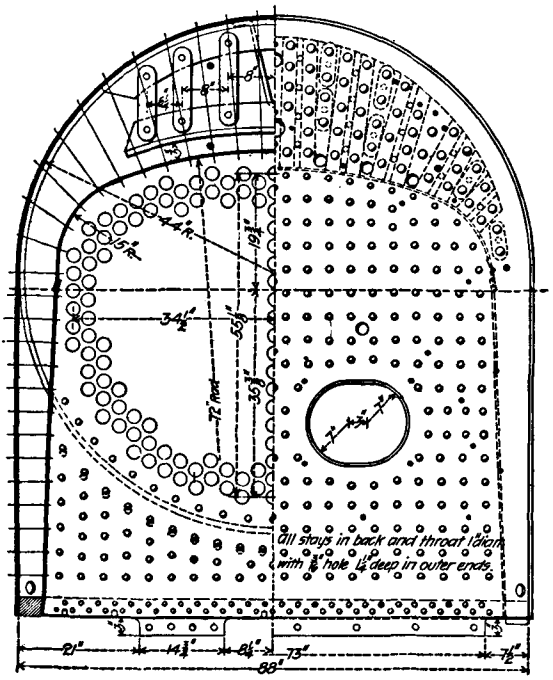


FIG. 40.

pounds per square inch, the boiler-plates being $\frac{15}{16}$ inch, $\frac{9}{16}$ inch, and $\frac{7}{8}$ inch thick, according to location. As shown by the illustrations, the boiler is what is termed an extended wagon-top with wide fire-box. The total weight of the locomotive itself is 267,800 pounds, while the weight on the driving-wheels is 237,800 pounds, making 47,560 pounds on each axle. The tractive force of this locomotive is estimated to be over 62,000 pounds.

306. Comparison of Some of the Heaviest Locomotives in Use. —The following table gives a comparison of the heaviest locomotives thus far built, as taken from the *Railroad Gazette* for January 31, 1902, revised to September 1, 1902.

COMPARISON OF HEAVIEST LOCOMOTIVES.

	Atchison, Topeka & Santa Fe.	Pittsburg, Bessemer & Lake Erie.	Union Railroad.	Illinois Central.	Lehigh Valley.
Name of builder.....	Baldwin	Pittsburg	Pittsburg	Brooks	Baldwin
Size of cylinders.....	19 & 32 × 32 in.	24 × 32 in.	23 × 32 in.	23 × 30 in.	18 & 30 × 30 in.
Total weight.....	267,800 lbs.	250,300 lbs.	230,000 lbs.	232,200 lbs.	225,082 lbs.
Weight on drivers	237,800 lbs.	225,200 lbs.	208,000 lbs.	193,200 lbs.	202,232 lbs.
Driving-wheels, diam..	57 in.	54 in.	54 in.	57 in.	55 in.
Heating surface	5,390 sq. ft.	3,805 sq. ft.	3,322 sq. ft.	3,500 sq. ft.	4,104 sq. ft.
Grate area.....	58.5 sq. ft.	36.8 sq. ft.	33.5 sq. ft.	37.5 sq. ft.	90 sq ft.

These instances of modern locomotive construction are impressive, especially when considered in contrast with the type of engine in use not more than fifty years ago. They indicate an almost incredible advance in railroad transportation, and they account for the fact that a bushel of wheat can be brought overland at the present time from Chicago to New York City, a distance of 900 miles, for about one third of the lowest charge for delivering a valise from the Grand Central Station in the city of New York to a residence within a mile of it.

PART V.

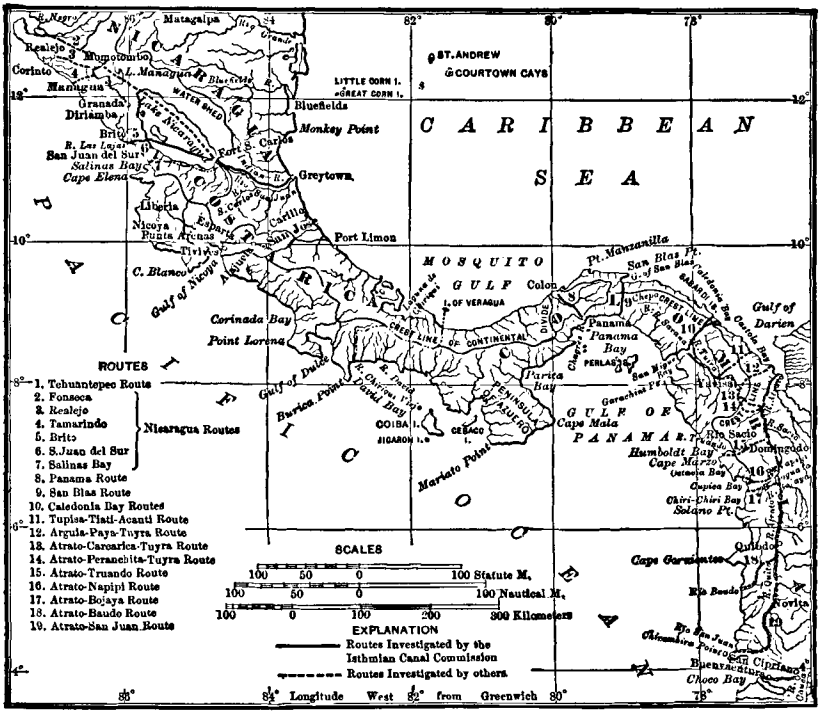
THE NICARAGUA ROUTE FOR A SHIP-CANAL.

---

307. Feasibility of Nicaragua Route. — The feasibility of a ship-canal between the two oceans across Nicaragua has been recognized almost since the discovery of Lake Nicaragua in 1522 by Gil Gonzales de Avila, who was sent out from Spain to succeed Balboa, after the execution of the latter by Pedro Arias de Avila at Acla on the Isthmus of Panama.

308. Discovery of Lake Nicaragua. — Gil Gonzales set sail from the Bay of Panama in January of that year northward along the Pacific coast as far as the Gulf of Fonseca. He landed there and proceeded to explore the country with one hundred men, and found what he considered a great inland sea, as we now know, about 14 miles from the Pacific Ocean at the place of least separation. The country was inhabited, and he found a native chief called Nicarao, who was settled with his people at or near the site of the present city of Rivas. As he found it a goodly country, fertile and abounding in precious metals, he immediately proceeded to take possession of it for his sovereign, but the Spanish explorer was sufficiently gracious to the friendly chief to name Lake Nicaragua after him. From that time the part of Nicaragua in the vicinity of the lake received much attention, and the Spaniards made conquest of it without delay. Among those who were the earliest visitors was a Captain Diego Machuca, who, with two hundred men under his command, explored Lake Nicaragua in 1529 and constructed boats on it, a brigantine among them. He seems to have been the first one who entered and sailed down the Desaguadero River, now called

the San Juan, and one of the rapids in the upper portion of the river now bears his name. He pursued his course into the Caribbean Sea and sailed eastward to the Isthmus of Panama.



Map of American Isthmus, showing Proposed Canal Routes.

309. Early Maritime Commerce with Lake Nicaragua. — Subsequently sea-going vessels passed through the San Juan River in both directions and maintained a maritime trade of some magnitude between the shores of Lake Nicaragua and Spain. Obviously these vessels must have been rather small for ocean-going craft, unless there was more water in the San Juan River in those early days than at present. There are some obscure traditions of earthquakes having disturbed the bed of the river and made its passage more difficult by reducing the depth of water in some of the rapids; but these reports are little more than traditionary and lack authoritative confirmation. It is certain, however, that the marine traffic, to which reference has been made, was maintained for a long period of years, its greatest activity

existing at about the beginning of the seventeenth century. It was in connection with this traffic probably that the city of Granada at the northwestern extremity of the lake was established, perhaps before 1530.

310. Early Examination of Nicaragua Route.—Although the apparently easy connection between the Caribbean Sea and Lake Nicaragua, together with the proximity of the latter to the Pacific coast, at once indicated the possibility of a feasible water communication between the two oceans, probably no systematic investigation to determine a definite canal line was made until that undertaken by Manuel Galisteo in 1779 under the instruction of Charles III., who was then on the throne of Spain. Galisteo made a report in 1781 that Lake Nicaragua was 134 feet higher than the Pacific Ocean, and that high mountains intervened between the lake and the ocean, making it impracticable to establish a water communication between the two. In spite of the discouragement of this report a company was subsequently formed under the patronag of the crown to construct a canal from Lake Nicaragua along the Sanoa River to the Gulf of Nicoya, but nothing ever came of the project.

311. English Invasion of Nicaragua.—The country was invaded in 1780 by an English expedition sent out from Jamaica under Captain Horatio Nelson, who subsequently became the great admiral. He proce ded up the San Juan River, and after some fighting captured by assault Fort San Juan at Castillo Viejo. Nelson and his force, however, were ill qualified to take care of themselves in that tropical country where drenching rains were constantly falling, and he was therefore obliged to abandon his plan of taking possession of Lake Nicaragua and returned instead to Jamaica. The tropical fevers induced by exposure reduced the crew of his own ship, two hundred in number, to only ten after his return to Jamaica, and he himself nearly lost his life by sickness.

312. Atlantic and Pacific Ship-canal Company.—Subsequently to this period the Nicaragua route attracted more or less attention until Mr. E. G. Squier, the first consul for the United States in Nicaragua, negotiated a treaty between the two countries for facilitating the traffic from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean by

means of a ship-canal or railroad in the interest of the Atlantic and Pacific Ship-canal Company, composed of Cornelius Vanderbilt, Joseph L. White, Nathaniel Wolfe, and others. It was at this time that the Nicaragua route became prominent as a line of travel between New York and San Francisco. Ships carried passengers and freight from New York to Greytown, then transshipped them to river steamboats running up the San Juan River and across the southerly end of the lake to a small town called La Virgin, whence a good road for 14 miles overland led to the Pacific port of San Juan del Sur. Pacific coast steamships completed the trip between the latter port and San Francisco.

313. Survey and Project of Col. O. W. Childs.—This traffic stimulated the old idea of a ship-canal across the Central American isthmus on the Nicaragua route to such an extent that Col. O. W. Childs, an eminent civil engineer, was instructed by the American Atlantic and Pacific Ship-canal Company to make surveys and examinations for the project of a ship-canal on that route. The results of his surveys, made in 1850–52, have become classic in interoceanic canal literature. He concluded that the most feasible route lay up the San Juan River from Greytown to Lake Nicaragua, across that lake, and down the general course of the Rio Grande on the west side of Nicaragua to Brito on the Pacific coast. This is practically identical with the route adopted by the Isthmian Canal Commission now (1902) being discussed in Congress.

314. The Project of the Maritime Canal Company. — The project planned by Col. Childs, like those which preceded it, had no substantial issue, but the general subject of an isthmian canal across Nicaragua was, from that time, under almo t constant agitation and consideration more or less active until the Maritime Canal Company of Nicaragua was organized in February, 1889, under concessions secured from the governments of Nicaragua and Costa Rica by Mr. A. G. Menocal. This company made a careful examination of all preceding proposed routes, and finally settled upon a plan radically different in some respects from any before considered. The Caribbean end of the canal was located on the Greytown Lagoon west of Greytown. From that point the line followed up the valley of the Deseado River and cut across the

hills into the valley of the San Juan above its junction with the San Carlos. A dam was to be constructed across the San Juan River at Ochoa, below the mouth of the San Carlos, so as to bring the surface of Lake Nicaragua down to that point. From its junction with the San Juan River the canal line followed that river to the lake, across the latter to Las Lajas, and thence down the Rio Grande to the Pacific coast at Brito. It was contemplated under this plan to carry the lake level to a point called La Flor, 13.5 miles west of the lake, and drop down to the Pacific

Breakwater of the Maritime Canal Company.
The closed former entrance to Greytown harbor is shown on the left.

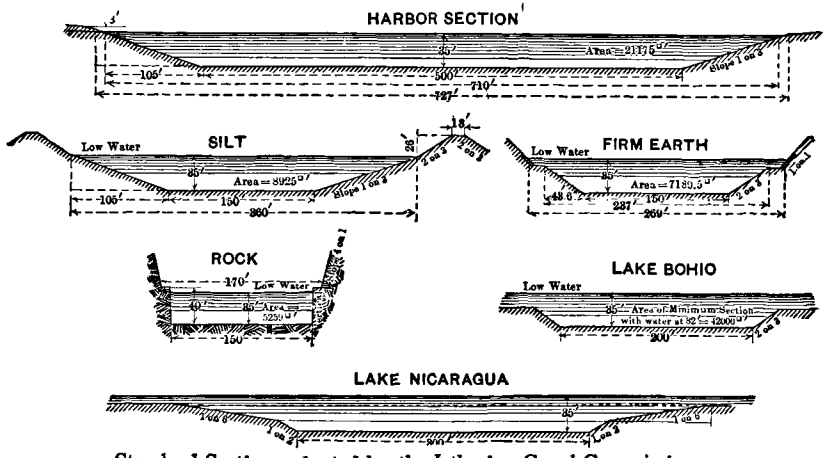
from that point by locks suitably located. After partially excavating the canal prism for about three quarters of a mile from the Greytown Lagoon, constructing a line of railroad up the Deseado valley, as well as a telegraph line, and doing certain other work preparatory to the actual wo k of construction, the Maritime Canal Company became involved in financial difficulties and suspended operations without again resuming them.

315. The Work of the Ludlow and Nicaragua Canal Commissions. —In 1895 and again in 1897 two commissions were appointed by the President of the United States to consider the plans and esti-

mates of the Maritime Canal Company in the one case, and the problem of a ship-canal on the Nicaragua route in the latter. Neither of these commissions, however, had the funds at its disposal requisite for a full and complete consideration of the problem. In 1899, therefore, the Isthmian Canal Commission was created by Act of Congress, and appointed by the President of the United States, to determine the most feasible and practical route across the Central American isthmus for a canal, together with the cost of constructing it and placing it under the control, management, and ownership of the United States. This commission consisted of nine members, and included civil and military engineers, an officer of the navy, an ex-senator of the United States, and a statistician. It was the province and duty of this commission to make examinations of the entire isthmus from the Atrato River in the northwestern corner of South America to the western limits of Nicaragua for the purpose of determining the most feasible and practical route for a ship-canal between those territorial limits. This brings the general consideration of the isthmian canal question to the Nicaragua route in particular, to which alone attention will be directed in this part.

316. The Route of the Isthmian Canal Commission. — The Isthmian Canal Commission adopted a route practically following the San Juan River from near Greytown to the lake, across the latter to Las Lajas on its westerly shore, and thence up the course of the Las Lajas River, across the continental divide into the Rio Grande valley, and down the latter to Brito at the mouth of the Rio Grande on the Pacific coast. As has already been stated, this is practically the line adopted by Col. Childs almost exactly fifty years ago. It is also essentially the route adopted by the Nicaragua Canal Commission appointed in 1897, and which completed its operations immediately prior to the creation of the Isthmian Canal Commission. The amount of work performed in the field under the direction of the commission can be realized from the statement that twenty working parties were organized in Nicaragua with one hundred and fifty-nine civil engineers and other assistants, and four hundred and fifty-five laborers.

317. Standard Dimensions of Canal Prism.—By the Act of Congress creating it, the latter commission was instructed to consider plans and estimates for a canal of sufficient capacity to accommodate the largest ships afloat. In order to meet the requirements of those statutory instructions the commission decided to adopt 35 feet as the minimum depth of water in the canal throughout its entire length from the deep water of one ocean to that of the other, wherever the most feasible and practical route might be located, the investigations of the commission having shown that the final location to be selected must narrow down to a choice between the Panama and the Nicaragua routes. It was further decided by the commission that the standard width of excavation at the bottom of the canal should be 150 feet, with 500 feet for the ocean entrances to harbors, and 800 feet in those harbors. Greater widths than that of the bottom of standard excavations were also adopted for river and lake portions.



Standard Sections adopted by the Isthmian Canal Commission.

The slopes of the sides of the excavation were determined to be 1 vertical on 1½ horizontal for firm earth, but as flat as 1 vertical on 3 or even 6 horizontal for soft mud or silt in marshy locations. In rock cutting below water the sides of the excavation would be vertical, but as steep as 4 vertical on 1 horizontal above water.

The longest ship afloat at the present time (1902) is the Oceanic of the White Star Line, and its length is about 704 feet.

The widest ships, i.e., the ships having the greatest beam, are naval vessels, and at the present time none has a greater beam than about 77 feet. In order to afford accommodation for further development in both length and beam of ships without leading to extravagant dimensions, the commission decided to provide locks having a usable length of 740 feet with a clear width of 84 feet. These general dimensions meet fully the requirements of the law, and were adopted for plans and estimates on both the Panama and Nicaragua routes.

318. The San Juan Delta. — The entire Central American isthmus is volcanic in character, and this is particularly true of the country along the Nicaragua route with the exception of the lowlands immediately back of the ocean shore-line in the vicinity of Greytown. From the latter point to Fort San Carlos, where the San Juan River leaves the lake, is approximately 100 miles. With the exception of the 15 miles nearest to the seacoast the San Juan River runs mostly through a rugged country with high hills densely wooded on either side. The soil is mostly heavy clay, although the bottom of the valley immediately adjacent to the river is largely of sandy silt with some mixture of clay. Between the hills back of Greytown and the seacoast the country is almost a continuous morass covered with coarse grasses and other dense tropical vegetation, but with a number of small isolated hills projecting up like islands in the surrounding marsh, and interspersed with numerous lagoons. All this flat country has the appearance of forming a delta through which a number of mouths of the San Juan River find their way. One of these, called the Lower San Juan, empties into the Greytown Lagoon, but the main mouth of the San Juan, called the Colorado, branches from the main river at the point where the Lower San Juan begins, about 13 or 14 miles from the ocean. The Colorado itself is composed of two branches, and at the place where it empties into the sea there are a number of long narrow lagoons parallel to the seashore, appearing to indicate comparatively recent shore formation. Again, a small river called the Rio San Juanillo leaves the main river 3 or 4 miles above the junction of the lower San Juan and the Colorado, and pursues a meandering course through the low marshy grounds back of Greytown, and finally again

joins the Lower San Juan near the town. This marshy lowland is underlaid by and formed largely of dark-colored sand brought down mostly from the volcanic mountains of Costa Rica by two rivers, the San Carlos and the Serapiqui, the former joining the San Juan about 44 miles and the latter about 23 miles from the sea.

Greytown Lagoon (formerly Greytown Harbor), showing Greytown in the Distance.

319. The San Carlos and Serapiqui Rivers.—Both those Costa Rican rivers are subject to sudden and violent floods, and they bring down large quantities of this volcanic sand, the specific gravity of which is rather low. The San Carlos bears the greater burden of this kind. In fact its bed, even when not in a state of flood, is at many points at least composed of moving sands. Both rivers are clear-water streams except in high-water stages. Below the junction of the San Carlos the San Juan is necessarily in times of floods a large bearer of silt and sand, but above that point it carries little or no sediment. There are no streams of magnitude which join the San Juan between the lake and the San Carlos.

320. The Rapids and Castillo Viejo.—About 54 miles from the ocean are the Machuca Rapids, and from that point to a distance of about 75 miles from the ocean other rapids are found, the principal of which are the Castillo and the Toro. The Castillo Rapids are at the point called Castillo Viejo, where there is located an old Spanish fort on the top of the high hill around the base of which the river flows. The town of Castillo Viejo has a small population of perhaps 500 to 600 people. It is a place with historical associations, to which reference has already been made. It was here that Captain (afterwards Admiral) Nelson captured the Spanish fort in 1780. It is a place of some importance in connection with the river traffic in consequence of necessary transhipment of freight and passengers to overcome the rapids.

321. The Upper San Juan.—The upper reaches of the San Juan within about 20 miles of the lake are bordered with considerable marshy ground. In the vicinity of its exit from the lake there is a wide strip of soft marshy country around the entire southeastern shore.

322. The Rainfall from Greytown to the Lake.—The entire country between Greytown and the lake is intensely tropical, and the vegetation is characteristically dense. It is particularly so at Greytown, where the total annual rainfall sometimes reaches as much as 300 inches. It rains many times in a day, and nearly every day in the year. The strong easterly and northeasterly trade winds, heavy-laden with the evaporation from the tropical sea, meet the high ground in the vicinity of Greytown and precipitate their watery contents in frequent and heavy showers. The general course of the San Juan valley is a little north of west or south of east, and the trade winds appear to follow the course of the valley to the lake. The rainfall steadily decreases as the seashore is left behind, so that at Fort San Carlos, the point of exit of the river from the lake, the annual precipitation may vary from 75 to 100 inches. There is no so-called dry season between the lake and the Caribbean Sea, although at Fort San Carlos the rainfall is so small between the middle of December and the middle of May that that period may perhaps be considered, relatively speaking, a dry season. It is evident, therefore, that all the conditions are favorable to luxuriant tropical growths over

this entire eastern portion of the canal route, and the coarse grasses, palms, and other tropical vegetation found in it are indescribably dense. The same general observation is applicable to the forest and undergrowth throughout the entire course of the river from Greytown to Fort San Carlos. All of the high ground is heavily timbered, with undergrowth so dense that no survey line can be run until it is first completely cut out. That observation holds with added force throughout the swampy country

The Maritime Canal Company's Canal Cut leading out of Greytown Lagoon.

adjacent to the seashore. All the heavy forest growth carries dense vines and innumerable orchids, which so cover the trunks and branches of trees as in many places completely to obscure them.

323. Lake-surface Elevation and Slope of the River. — The lake surface has an area of about 3000 square miles and varies in elevation with the amount of rainfall in its basin from about 97 or 98 to perhaps 110 feet above the ocean. The average elevation can probably be taken at about 104 feet above the sea. The length of the lake is about 103 miles, with a greatest width of 45 miles. The area of its watershed is about 12,000 square

miles. Inasmuch as the length of the San Juan River from the ocean to the lake is but a little more than 100 miles, its average fall is seen to be about 1 foot per mile. The greatest slope of the river surface is at Castillo Rapids, where it falls about 6 feet in $\frac{3}{8}$ of a mile. At the Machuca Rapids it falls about 4 feet in 1 mile. From the foot of Machuca Rapids to the mouth of the San Carlos, a distance of a little over 15 miles, the surface of the river falls about 1 foot only. This pool, with practically no sensible current, is called Agua Muerte, or Dead Water. The relatively great depth of this pool shows conclusively that the upper San Juan, i.e., above the mouth of the San Carlos, carries no silt, otherwise the pool would be filled; in other words, that part of the San Juan River is not a sediment-bearer. The slope of the river surface in the Toro Rapids, about 27 miles from the lake, gives a fall of $7\frac{3}{10}$ feet in $1\frac{7}{10}$ miles.

324. Discharges of the San Juan, San Carlos, and Serapiqui.—In times of heavy floods the San Carlos River may discharge as much as 100,000 cubic feet per second into the San Juan, but such floods have a duration of a comparatively few hours only. Its low water-discharge may fall below 3000 cubic feet per second. The maximum outflow of the lake during a rainy season or a season of heavy rainfall probably never exceeds about 70,000 cubic feet per second, but that rate of discharge may continue for a number of weeks. The low water-discharge of the San Juan above the mouth of the San Carlos may fall below 10,000 feet per second, or 13,000 feet per second below the mouth of the San Carlos but above that of the Serapiqui.

325. Navigation on the San Juan.—From what has been said of the San Juan River it is evident that in times of low water no boats drawing more than about 5 or 6 feet can navigate it, and most of the river boats draw less than that amount. In times of low water no boat can navigate the Lower San Juan drawing more than about $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 feet of water. Nor, again, can the ordinary river boats pass up the rapids at Castillo except at high water. It is necessary, therefore, that the larger boats used on the river confine their trips on the one hand between the mouth of the Colorado and Castillo, and on the other between Castillo above the rapids to Fort San Carlos. It is the custom, therefore, to

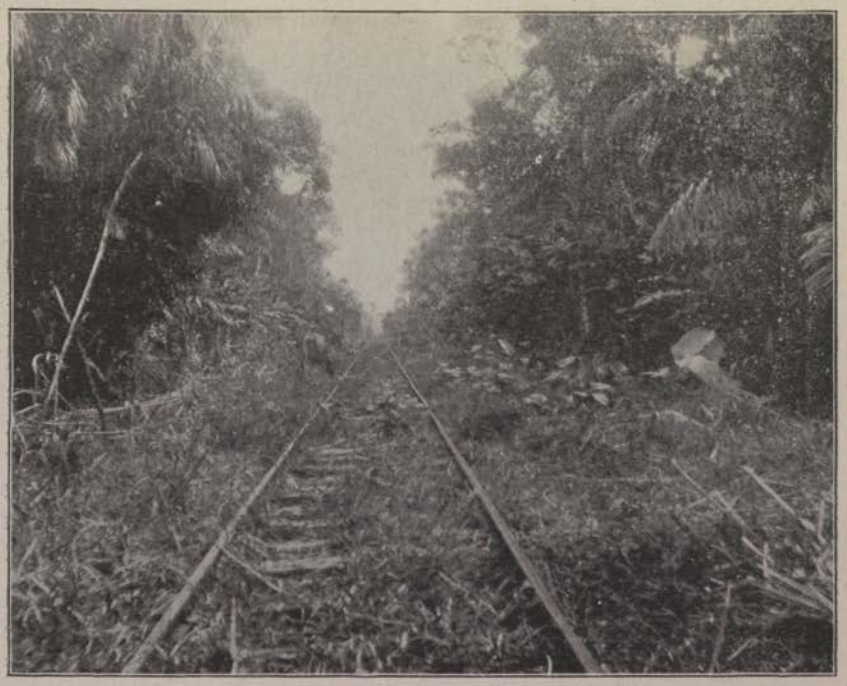
transfer passengers and freight from boats below the rapids at Castillo by a short tramway to other boats in waiting above the rapids at that point. Boats pass up Machuca and Toro rapids at practically all seasons, but sometimes with difficulty.

In order to meet the exigencies of low water in the Lower San Juan a railroad called the Silico Lake Railroad, with 3 feet gauge, has been constructed from a point opposite the mouth of the Colorado, called Boca Colorado, to Lake Silico in the marshes back of Greytown, a distance of about 6 miles. Light-draft boats connect Lake Silico with Greytown for the transfer of passengers and freight. The type of light-draft steamboat used on the San Juan River is the stern-wheel pattern, so much used on the western rivers of this country, the lower deck carrying the engines and boilers as well as freight, while the upper deck, fitted with crude staterooms, furnishes a kind of accommodation for passengers.

326. The Canal Line through the Lake and Across the West Side.—The little town of Fort San Carlos on a point raised somewhat above the lake where the San Juan River leaves the latter is the second place on the entire river from Greytown where any population may said to be found, and probably not more than 400 or 500 people even there. Its position is on the north side of the river, at the extreme southeastern end of the lake, commanding a fine view of the water and the country bordering it in that vicinity. To the westward lie the Solentiname Islands, a group a short distance to the north of which the sailing line for the canal in the lake is located. After passing this group of islands that line deflects a little toward the south, so that its course westward is but a little north of west, straight to a point near to and opposite Las Lajas on the westerly shore of the lake, southwest from the large island on which Ometepe and Madeira are located; indeed those two volcanic cones, the former still active, constitute the entire island. The point called Las Lajas is at the mouth of a small river of that name which discharges any sensible amount of water only during the wet season: it is located not more than 10 miles from Ometepe, and affords a most impressive view of that perfect volcanic cone rising almost an exact mile above the water. The general direction of the

canal route is a little west of south from Las Lajas on the lake to Brito on the ocean shore. The line follows the Las Lajas about a mile and a half only of the 5 miles from the lake in a southwesterly direction to the point where the continental divide is crossed. The elevation of the divide at this place is about 145 feet only above sea-level. The line then descends immediately into the valley of the Rio Grande and follows that stream to its mouth at Brito,

327. Character of the Country West of the Lake.—The country on the west side of the lake exhibits a character radically different from that on the easterly side, i.e., between the lake and the Caribbean. It is a country in which much more population is found. While there are no towns along the 17 miles of the



The Maritime Canal Company's Railroad near Greytown.

route from Las Lajas to Brito, the old city Rivas, containing perhaps 12,000 to 15,000 people, is about 6 miles from Las Lajas, and the small towns of San Jorge, Buenos Ayres, Potosi, as well

as others, are in the same general vicinity. Plantations of cacao and various tropical fruits abound, and there is a large amount of land under cultivation. It is largely a cleared country, so that far less dense forest areas are found.

There are two distinct seasons in the year, the wet and the dry, the latter extending from about the middle of December to the middle of May. The annual rainfall is extremely variable, but in the vicinity of Rivas it may run from 30 or 40 to nearly 100 inches. The country is of great natural beauty, and one which, under well-administered governmental control, would afford many places of delightful residence. The trade winds blow across the lake from east to west with considerable intensity and great regularity. They produce a beneficial effect upon the climate and render atmospheric conditions far more agreeable than in that part of Nicaragua in the vicinity of Greytown.

It will be remembered that Rivas is the city where the American filibuster Walker carried on some of his operations before he was captured and shot in 1857.

328. Granada to Managua, thence to Corinto.—At the northwestern end of the lake is located the attractive city Granada, sometimes called the "Boston of Nicaragua." A reference to a map of Nicaragua will show that a short distance north of Granada is the river Tipitapa, which connects Lake Nicaragua with Lake Managua, the latter lying 18 miles to the northwest of the former. A railroad connects Granada with the city of Managua, which is the capital of Nicaragua, running on its way through the city of Masaya, chiefly noted for the volcano of the same name located near by, and which has been subjected to a most destructive eruption. The old lava-flow still shows its path of destruction by a broad black mark extending many miles across the country. A railroad connects Lake Managua at Momotombo with the Pacific port of Corinto.

329. General Features of the Route.—It is thus seen that the proposed route of the Nicaragua Canal lies first along the valley of the San Juan River, then across the lake, cutting the continental divide west of the latter at the low elevation of 145 feet above the sea, thence following the valley of the Rio Grande to the Pacific Ocean at Brito. From Greytown to Castillo the San

Juan River is the boundary between Nicaragua and Costa Rica, and concessions from both governments would be necessary for that part of its construction. From Castillo to the Pacific Ocean the route lies entirely in Nicaraguan territory, and the only concession necessary fo that portion of the line would be from the government of Nicaragua. From Castillo to and around the southern end of the lake the boundary-line is located 3 miles easterly from the river, fol owing its turns, and the same distance from the lake shore, all by an agreement recently reached between the two governments. The summit level of the canal would therefore be the surface of the water in Lake Nicaragua, which is carried down to Conchuda, 52 miles from the lake on the San Juan River toward the east, by a great dam located there, and to a lock between 4 and 5 miles from the lake toward the west. Hence the summit level would stretch throughout a distance of about 126 miles, leaving a little more than 46 miles on the Caribbean end and about 12 miles on the Pacific end of the regular canal section. The 50-mile stretch from the lake to the point where the canal cuts the San Juan River near Conchuda is a canalized portion of the San Juan River, as a large amount of excavation must be done there in order to give the minimum required depth of 35 feet. The points of river bends or curves are in some cases cut off by excavated canal section in order to shorten the line and reduce the curvature. Considerable portions of the line in the lake, particularly near Fort San Carlos, would be excavated. For several miles in the latter vicinity large quantities of silt and mud must be removed, as the lake is shallow and the bottom is very soft. The entrance into the western portion of the canal at Las Lajas requi es a large amount of rock excavation, as the shore and bed of the lake there are almost entirely of rock.

330. Artificial Harbor at Greytown. — The preceding observations are mostly of a general character, and give but little consideration to the engineering features of the canal construction. In considering the canal as a carrier of ocean traffic probably the first inquiry will be that relating to harbors. In reality there is no natural harbor at either end of the Nicaragua route. Fifty years ago there was an excellent harbor at Grey-

town into which ships drawing as much as 30 feet found ready entrance, and within which was afforded a well-protected anchorage. As early as that date, however, a point of land or sand-pit was already pushing its way northward in consequence of the movement of the sand along the beach in that direction, and in 1865 it had nearly closed the entrance to the harbor.

Scene on the San Juan River.

For many years that entrance has been entirely closed, and now what was once the protected harbor of Greytown is a shallow body of water, completely closed, and known as the Greytown Lagoon. There is a narrow, circuitous, and shallow channel leading from it out to an opening in the sand-bar, which may be navigated by boats drawing not more than 2 or 3 feet, and by means of which freight and passengers are taken from steamers, which are obliged to anchor in the offing. Occasionally heavy storms break through this strip of sand between Greytown Lagoon and the ocean, and for a short time form a shallow entrance to the former. The sand movement in that vicinity northward or westward is so active that it is but a short time before such openings are again closed. The deepest water in the lagoon probably does not exceed 8 or 10 feet at the present

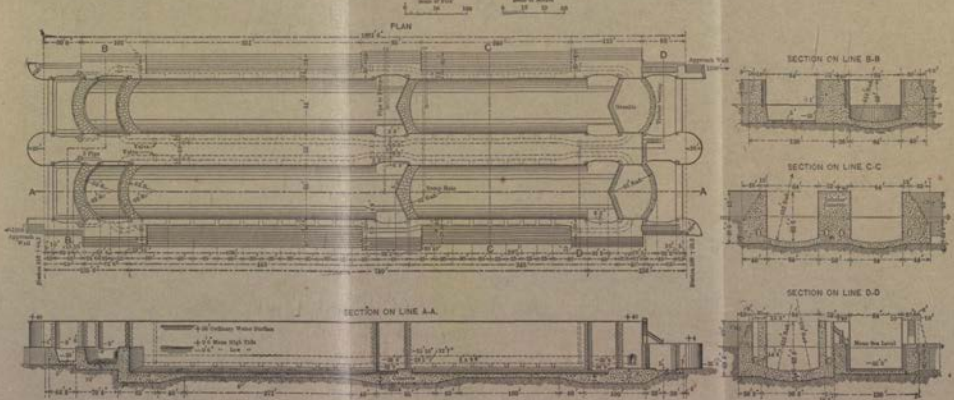
time, and the most of it is much shallower. The tidal action at Greytown is almost nothing, as the range of tide between high and low is less than 1 foot. The mean level of the Caribbean Sea is the same as that of the Pacific Ocean.

Under these circumstances it is necessary to create what is practically a new harbor at Greytown, and that work is contemplated in the plans of the Isthmian Canal Commission. The canal line is found entering the lagoon about 1 mile northwest of Greytown, where a harbor is planned having a length of 2500 feet and a width of 500 feet, increased at the inner end to 800 feet to provide a turning-basin. The entrance to this harbor from the ocean will be dredged to a width of 500 feet at the bottom, and it will be protected outside of the beach-line by two jetties, the easterly about 3000 feet long, and the westerly somewhat shorter. These jetties would "be built of loose stone of irregular shape and size, resting on a suitable foundation," the largest, constituting the covering, weighing not less than 10 to 15 tons each. These jetties would be carried 6 feet above high water and have a top width of 20 feet. The trade winds, which blow from the easterly and northeasterly, would have a direction approximately at right angles to that of the easterly jetty, and ships making the entrance of the canal would consequently be protected against them while between the jetties. The easterly of these jetties would act as an obstruction against the westerly movement of the sand, but it is practically certain that a considerable amount of the latter would be swept into the channel, and possibly to some extent into the harbor, necessitating dredging a considerable portion of the time. The commission estimates that the maintenance of the entrance and harbor would require an annual expenditure of $100,000.

331. Artificial Harbor at Brito.—The harbor at Brito presents a problem of a different kind. There is absolutely no semblance of a harbor there at the present time (1902); it is simply a location on the sandy beach of the ocean protected against swells from the west by a projecting rocky point called Brito Head, the Rio Grande River emptying into the ocean just at the foot of Brito Head, between it and the canal terminus. The entire harbor and its entrance would be excavated in the low ground of that

vicinity, composed mostly of sand and silt, although there would be a little rock excavation. The entrance to the harbor would be dredged 500 feet wide at the bottom, and be protected by a single jetty on the southeasterly side. The harbor itself would be excavated back of the present beach; it would have a length of 2200 feet and a width of 800 feet. As the depth of water increases rather rapidly off shore, the 10-fathom curve is found at about 2200 feet from low-water mark, hence the jetty would not need to be more than probably 1800 to 2000 feet long. In this vicinity the water is usually smooth; indeed but few storms annually visit this part of the coast. The conditions are quite similar to those found on the coast of Southern California. There is little sand movement in this vicinity, and the annual expenditures for maintenance of the harbor and entrance would be relatively small; the commission has estimated them at $50,000.

332. From Greytown Harbor to Lock No. 2.—The canal line, on leaving the harbor at Greytown, is found in low marshy ground for a distance of about 7 miles, the excavation being mainly through the sand, silt, mud, and vegetable matter characteristic of that location. Throughout almost this entire distance the natural surface is but little above sea-level. The first ground elevated much above this marshy country is known as the Misterioso Hills, in which Lock No. 1 is founded, having a lift of 36½ feet and raising the water surface in the canal by that amount above sea-level. Another stretch of marshy country, but not quite so wet as the preceding, follows for a distance of about 11 miles, when the Rio Negro Hills rise abruptly to an elevation of a little over 150 feet above sea-level. At this point is located Lock No. 2, with a lift of 18½ feet. This lock is about 21 miles from the 6-fathom line off Greytown. The canal line here practically reaches the San Juan River, the latter lying a considerable distance easterly of the canal, between this point and the ocean. Between Greytown and Lock No. 2 embankments, never reaching a greater height than 10 to 15 feet, are required to keep the water in the canal at various locations along the low ground. These embankments do not necessarily follow parallel to the centre line of the canal route, but are planned to connect hills, or rather high ground, so as to reduce their length and give them a more



Lock No. 1, Nicaragua Route, about Seven Miles from Greytown.

stable character than if they were located close to the canal excavation. While some embankments will still be found above Lock No. 2, they are few, and even lower than those already noticed. From Lock No. 2 to Lake Nicaragua the route of the canal lies practically along the San Juan River, the chief excep-

Telegraph Office at Ochoa on the San Juan River.

tion to that statement being the cut-off in the vicinity of the Conchuda dam.

333. From Lock No. 2 to the Lake.—Inasmuch as both the Serapiqui and San Carlos rivers flow from Costa Rican territory into the San Juan, that is, from its right bank, the canal line necessarily is located along the northerly or left bank of that river. At a distance of 23 miles from the ocean the canal line cuts through what are called the Serapiqui Hills opposite the mouth of the river of that name, and at a distance of a little over 26 miles from the ocean it pierces the Tamborcito Ridge, where is found the deepest cutting on the entire route. The total length of

cut through this ridge is about 3000 feet, but its greatest depth is 297 feet, and it consists largely of hard, basaltic rock. The next lock, or Lock No. 3, is found about 17 miles from Lock No. 2, or 38 miles from the sea, and it has, like Lock No. 2, a lift of 18½ feet, raising the surface of the water in the canal to an elevation of 73½ feet above the sea. Continuous heavy cutting through what are called the Machado Hills brings the line to Lock No. 4, at a distance of a little less than 41 miles from the ocean. This lock has a lift varying from 30.5 to 36.5 feet, inasmuch as it raises the surface of the water in the canal to the summit level in the lake. The maximum lift of 36.5 feet would be required when the lake level stands at an elevation of 110 feet above the sea, and 30.5 feet when the same surface stands at an elevation of 104 feet above the sea. Although the water surface in the canal level above this lock is identical with the summit level in the lake, the canal line again runs through continuous heavy cutting for a distance of 5 miles before it reaches the canalized San Juan. This portion of the line between Lock No. 4 and the San Juan River is called the Conchuda cut-off, for the reason that the point called Conchuda, where the great dam is located, is but 3 miles down the river from the point where the canal enters it. From Conchuda to the lake, as has already been stated, the canal line follows the course of the San Juan River, which must be canalized by considerable excavation of earth and rock, both along the bed and in cut-offs. The greater part of this cutting must obviously be on that portion of the river toward the lake, as that is the highest part of the river-bed in its natural condition.

334. Fort San Carlos to Brito.—The distance from the point of entrance of the canal into the San Juan River near Conchuda to Fort San Carlos on the shore of Lake Nicaragua is about 50 miles, while the distance across the lake on the canal line is 70.5 miles, which brings the line to Las Lajas on the southwesterly shore of the lake.

There is considerable heavy cutting through the continental divide between the lake and the first lock westerly of it, i.e., Lock No. 5. The maximum cutting is but 76 feet in depth, and the average is but little less than that for nearly 3 miles. This lock

is located a little less than 10 miles from the lake and nearly 176 miles from the 6-fathom line off Greytown. The place at which this lock is located is known as Buen Retiro. The lift of Lock No. 5 varies from 28½ feet as a maximum to the minimum of 22½ feet, bringing the water surface in the canal down to 81½ feet above mean ocean level. Lock No. 6 is located but about 2 miles west of Lock No. 5, and also has a lift of 28½ feet. The line now

Surveying Party of the Isthmian Canal Commission on the San Juan River.

runs along the course of the Rio Grande to the ocean, Lock No. 7 being also 2 miles west of Lock No. 6, again with a lift of 28½ feet. The last lock on the line, or Lock No. 8, but a mile from the Pacific Ocean, and about 182 miles from the Caribbean Sea, has a maximum lift of 28½ feet, and a minimum lift of 20½ feet, the range of tide in the Pacific Ocean being but 8 feet at Brito. There are thus four locks between the lake and the Pacific Ocean, each having a possible lift of 28½ feet.

The entire distance between the 6-fathom lines in the two oceans is 183.66 miles.

335. Examinations by Borings.—Obviously it is of the greatest importance that such structures as the locks and dams required in connection with this canal route should be founded on

bed-rock. In order to determine not only such questions, but the character of all materials to be excavated from one end of the route to the other, a great number of borings were made along the canal line, not only by the water-jet process, but also with the diamond drill. By means of the latter, whenever it was so desired, cores or circular pieces could be taken out of the bed-rock so as to show precisely its character at all depths. These borings, both through earthy material by the jet and into bed-rock by the diamond drill, were made at suitable distances apart along the centre line of the canal, and in considerable numbers, closer together at proposed lock and dam sites. By these means every lock on the line has certainly been located on bed-rock, as well as the great dam at Conchuda. In addition to this the commission has been able to classify the material to be excavated, so that if the canal should be built every contractor would know precisely the character and quantity of the various materials which he would have to deal with.

336. Classification and Estimate of Quantities.—The following table is arranged to exhibit a few only of the principal items of excavation, so as to give an approximate idea at least of the magnitude of the work to be done:

Dredging	130,920,905 cu. yds.
Dry earth	47,440,316 "
Soft rock	14,029,170 "
Hard rock	24,151,214 "
Rock under water	2,780,040 "
Embankment and back-filling	8,389,960 "
Clearing	6,831 acres.
Stone-pitching	250,089 sq. yds.
Concrete, excluding retaining-walls	3,400,840 cu. yds.
Concrete in retaining-walls	424,321 "
Cut stone	22,272 "
Steel and iron, excluding cast-iron culvert lining	61,735,230 lbs.
Cast-iron culvert lining	19,286,000 "
Brick culvert lining	34,542 cu. yds.
Cost of lock machinery	$1,600,000
Excavation in coffer-dam	9,907 cu. yds.
Pneumatic work	145,557 "
Piling	415,600 lin. ft.
Rock fill in jetties	451,500 cu. yds.
Clay puddle, bottom and sides of canal	936,800 "

337. Classification and Unit Prices.—The classification of the material to be excavated, both on the Nicaragua and Panama routes, was one to which the commission gave very thoughtful study no less than to the prices to be used in making the estimates. The following table, taken from pages 67 and 68 of the commission's report, exhibits the classification and the prices adopted by the commission for purposes of its estimates:

Removal of hard rock, per cu. yd	$1.15
Removal of soft rock, per cu. yd	.80
Removal of earth, not handled by dredge, per cu. yd.	.45
Removal of dredgable material, per cu. yd	.20
Removal of rock, under water, per cu. yd.	4.75
Embankments and back-filling, per cu. yd.	.60
Rock in jetty construction, per cu. yd.	2.50
Stone-pitching, including necessary backing, per sq. yd	2.00
Clearing and grubbing in swamp sections of Nicaragua, per acre.	200.00
Other clearing and grubbing on both routes, per acre.	100.00
Concrete, in place, per cu. yd	8.00
Finished granite, per cu. yd	60.00
Brick in culvert lining, per cu. yd.	15.00
All metal in locks, exclusive of machinery and culvert linings, per lb.	.075
All metal in sluices, per lb	.075
Cast iron in culvert lining, per lb.	.04
Allowance for each lock-chamber for operating machinery	50,000.00
Additional allowance for each group of locks for power-plant	100,000.00
Price of timber in locks, per M B. M	100.00
Sheet-piling in spillways, per M B. M	75.00
Bearing piles in spillways, per lin. ft.	.50
Average price of pneumatic work for the Bohio dam, below elevation—30, per cu. yd.	29.50
Caisson work for the Conchuda dam, in place, per cu. yd	20.00
Single-track railroad complete with switches, stations, and rolling stock, per mile of main line	75,000.00

There are evidently other more or less uncertain expenditures, depending upon all possible conditions affecting the cost of such work, including those of climate, police, and sanitation. In order to cover such expenditure the commission determined to add 20 per cent to all its estimates of cost on both routes, and that percentage was so added in all cases.

338. Curvature of the Route.—Among the engineering features of a ship-canal line it is evident that curvature is one of great importance. Small steam-vessels may easily navigate almost any tortuous channel, but it is not so with great ocean

steamships. On the other hand, it may require very deep and expensive cutting to reduce the curvature of the route, as curves are usually introduced to carry the line around some high ground. It is necessary, therefore, to make a careful and judicious balance between these opposing considerations. The commission wisely

Boring Party of the Isthmian Canal Commission on a Raft in the San Juan River.

decided to incur even heavy cutting at some points for the purpose of avoiding troublesome curvature on the Nicaragua route. The table on page 415, taken from page 135 of the commission's report, gives all the elements of curvature for the entire line.

From the description of the line as given, it is evident that much curvature must be found in spite of the most judicious efforts to avoid it, and the table indicates that condition. Yet the amount of curvature may be considered moderate for a location through such a country as Nicaragua. The smallest radius is seen to be a little over 4000 feet. The result may be considered satisfactory for such a difficult canal country, although the total amount of curvature is rather formidable.

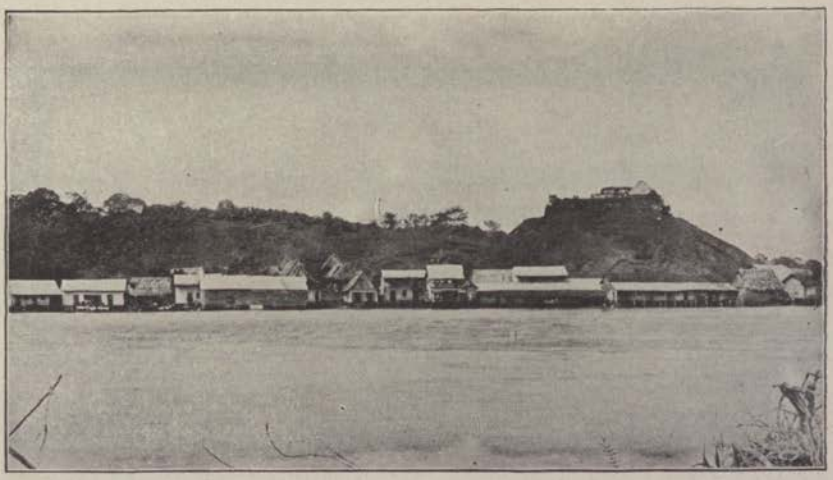
339. The Conchuda Dam and Wasteway.—The most important single engineering feature of the whole plan is the dam at Conchuda. The ordinary low-water elevation in the river at

Number of Curves.	Radius.	Length.	Total Degrees of Curve.		
	Feet.	Miles.	°	′	″
2	17,189	1.53	26	51	10
8	11,459	6.80	179	31	50
4	8,594	4.31	151	40	50
1	8,385	1.43	51	44	30
2	7,814	1.90	73	28	30
1	7,759	1.73	67	16	50
5	6,876	4.64	204	34	40
2	5,927	2.40	122	41	20
16	5,730	11.08	584	47	40
2	5,289	2.27	129	45	50
1	5,209	1.15	66	38	30
2	5,056	1.22	73	17	40
1	4,982	.82	49	49	00
3	4,911	2.75	169	36	00
1	4,297	.63	44	19	50
1	4,175	.81	58	20	40
4	4,045	3.82	285	25	40
56		49.29	2,339	50	30

the dam site may be taken at about 55 feet above the sea. Inasmuch as the greatest elevation of the water in the lake is supposed to be about 110 feet, it will be seen that its surface will be but 55 feet above the present elevation, making its maximum depth at that point about 105 feet if there should be no fill on the upstream side of the dam, inasmuch as the present depth of water in the river at the stage assumed is about 50 feet.

This dam would be a structure of concrete masonry with cut-stone facing only at a few points where it would be advisable to use that material. A large part of the flood discharge, or the discharge of other surplus water, would be made over a properly designed crest of the dam; hence its outline would be that shown in the accompanying figure, shaped so as to prevent the overflowing sheet of water from damaging the structure. This dam will be founded upon pneumatic caissons, and the borings made by the commission show that the deepest of them would reach satisfactory bed-rock at no greater depth than 25 feet below sea-level, or about 80 feet below the ordinary stage of water in the river. The construction of this dam therefore would involve no unusual operations, but it would all be performed within the more usual and easy limits of the pneumatic process of con-

structing foundations. The masonry crest of this dam would be finished at the elevation of 97 feet above sea-level, or about 13 feet below the highest elevation of water in the lake. The length of that part of this masonry dam, located on pneumatic caissons, would be 731 feet, but the total length of the entire masonry structure would be 1310 feet. The total length of crest,



Castillo Viejo, on the San Juan River, about thirty-seven miles from the lake and at the Castillo Rapids. The old fort is shown on the right at the summit of the hill.

including the masonry piers on it, over which the surplus waters would flow, would be 810 feet, but there are twenty piers 9 feet thick, so that the net length of crest available for overflow of waste-waters would be about 630 feet. The piers to which reference is made are those required for the support of the movable gates of the Stoney type which would be employed to regulate the discharge over the dam. The maximum elevation of the tops of these piers required for the support and operation of the Stoney gates is 132 feet above sea-level. The masonry dam thus furnished with movable gates can be used in times of flood to prevent the water of the lake rising above about 110 feet above sea-level. In times of low rainfall or during the dry season the gates would prevent the escape of water needed for storage.

The total available length of crest on this masonry dam is not sufficient to exercise all the control that is needed to keep

the lake within desired limits, and the commission was obliged to avail itself of a low depression or saddle between the hills less than a half-mile easterly of the dam site. The depression affords an additional total length of crest of 1239 feet, or, taking out thirty-one piers, each 9 feet wide, a net available length of 960 feet, making in combination with the crest of the main dam a total net available length of 1590 feet. The total wastage over these two structures, i.e., the main dam at Conchuda and the Conchuda wasteway on the Costa Rican side of the river, may be at the rate of 100,000 cubic feet per second, with a maximum depth over the crest of 7 feet, which is sufficient to meet the demands of the heaviest rainfall in the lake basin.

The plans and elevations on pages 421, 423, and 424 show all the main features of both the Conchuda dam and wasteway as designed by the commission.

340. Regulation of the Lake Level.—One of the most important engineering questions connected with the consideration of the Nicaragua route is that of the regulation or control of the surface of the water in Lake Nicaragua constituting the summit level of the canal.

As has already been stated, the drainage-basin of the lake, about 12,000 square miles in area, is subjected to an annual wet season extending from about the middle of May to the middle of December, the dry season extending over the remaining portion of the year. The average annual rainfall over the entire lake basin is not accurately known, although the Isthmian Canal Commission maintained rainfall records at several points on the lake shore and at other points in the basin during periods of 1½ to 2 years, and records running back over periods of perhaps 12 to 15 years are available from Rivas, Granada, and Masaya. Fortunately, also, both the Nica agua and the Isthmian Canal Commissions maintained gauging-stations at various points on the San Juan throughout the periods of service of these commissions, so that the discharges of the river could be known from accurate measures at various seasons for at least two or three years. These observations, although not as extended as could be desired, yield sufficient data for a comparatively thorough treatment of the subject of lake-surface control.

Obviously throughout the rainy season of the year, except during years of low rainfall, some water would necessarily be wasted from the lake because its retention would raise the surface of the lake too high, causing damage, floods, or injurious overflows at various places around the lake shore. On the other hand, unless some water were stored from the rainy periods or wet seasons there would not be sufficient in the lake to supply

Village of Fort San Carlos at Entrance to the San Juan River. Lake Nicaragua is on the right and San Juan River in the middle ground.

during the dry period of the year, or during low rainfall years, the requisite quantity for the wastage of evaporation from its surface and for the operation of the canal, and at the same time maintain the minimum depth of water of 35 feet required in the canal. It was necessary, therefore, to design at least the general features of such regulating-works as would prevent the lake from rising too high in wet periods, and from falling too low in dry periods or low rainfall years.

341. Evaporation and Lockage.—The observations of both commissions show conclusively that the average evaporation from the surface of Lake Nicaragua is about 60 inches or 5 feet per year, varying from perhaps a maximum of 6 inches per month to a minimum of possibly about 4 inches per month. Furthermore, careful estimates of the quantity of water required for the

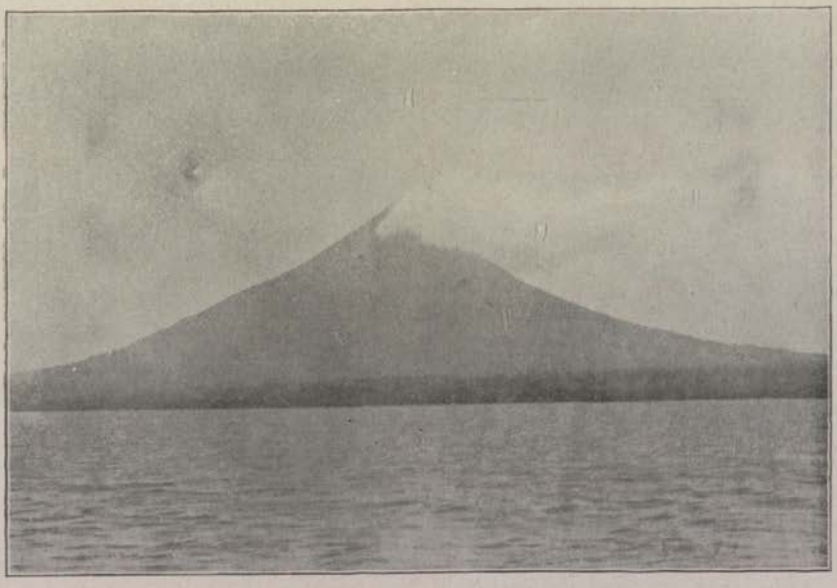
purposes of the canal, on the supposition that about 10,000,000 tons of traffic would pass through it annually, including lockage, leakage through the gates of the locks, evaporation, power purposes, and other incidentals, show that about 1000 cubic feet of water per second must be provided. Whatever may be the character of the season, therefore, there must be at least sufficient water stored in the lake to provide for the wastage of evaporation from the lake and canal surfaces and for the proper operation of all the locks throughout the length of the canal. The superficial area of Lake Nicaragua is but little less than 3000 square miles. The quantity of water required for the operation of the canal, amounting to 1000 cubic feet per second, would, for the entire year, make a layer of water over the lake surface of less than 5 inches in thickness. In other words, the operation of the canal, for a traffic of about 10,000,000 tons annually, requires an amount of water less than one twelfth of that which would be evaporated from the lake surface during the same period.

342. The Required Slope of the Canalized River Surface. — The dam located at Conchuda and fitted with suitable movable gates affords means of accomplishing the entire lake-surface control. That dam is located, however, nearly 53 miles from the lake, and in order that the requisite discharge may take place over it during the rainy season there must be considerable slope of the water surface in the canalized river from the lake down to the dam. It was necessary, therefore, to compute that slope, from data secured by the commission, with the lake surface at various elevations between the minimum and maximum permitted. These slopes were found to be such that the difference in elevations of the surface of the water at the dam and in the lake might vary from about 6 to 9 feet, those figures representing the total fall for the distance of 53 miles.

343. All Surplus Water to be Discharged over the Conchuda Dam.—The Nicaragua Commission contemplated the construction of dams not only on the San Juan River at Boca San Carlos, about 6 miles below Conchuda, but also another a few miles west of the lake at La Flor, so as to discharge the surplus waters at both points, but by far the largest part over the dam at Boca San Carlos. The Isthmian Canal Commission, however, decided

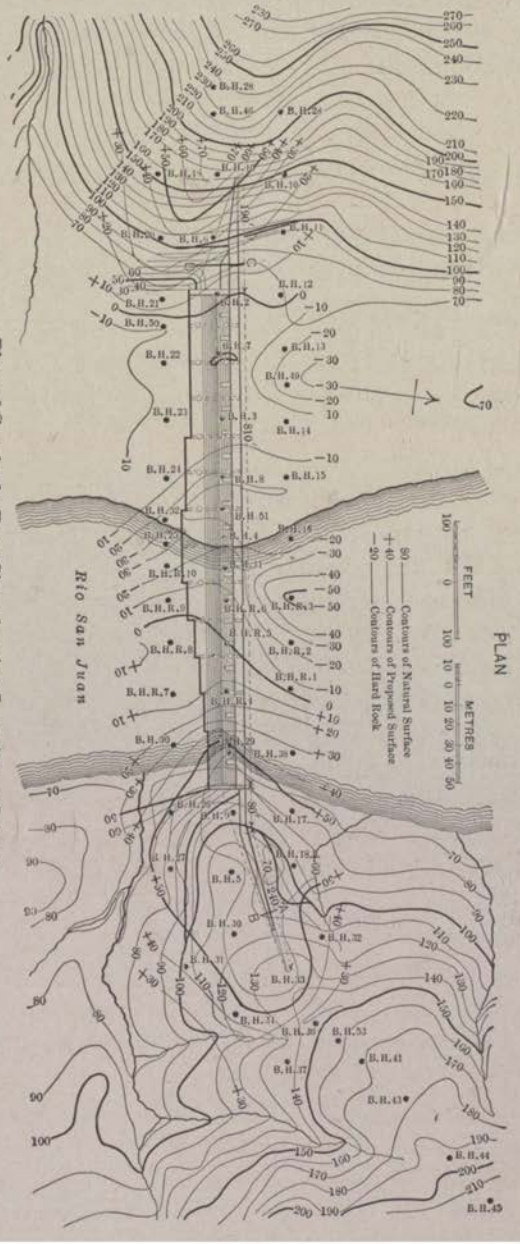
to build no dam on the west side of the lake, but to discharge all the surplus waters over the dam at Conchuda.

344. Control of the Surface Elevation of the Lake.—The rainfall records in the lake basin have shown that a dry season beginning as early as November may be followed by an extremely low rainfall period, which in turn would be followed by a dry season in natural sequence, lasting as late as June. It may happen, therefore, that from November until a year from the succeeding June, constituting a period of nineteen months, there will be a



The Active Volcano Ometepe in Lake Nicaragua, showing Clouds on Leeward Side of the Summit. The crater is nearly eleven miles from the canal line.

very meagre rainfall in the lake basin, during which the precipitation of the seven low rainfall wet months may not be sufficient even to make good the depletion of evaporation alone during the same period. It would be necessary, then, at the end of any wet season whatever, i.e., during the first half of any December, or in November, to make sure of sufficient storage in the lake to meet the requirements of the driest nineteen months that can be anticipated. That condition was assumed by the commission, and the elements of control of the lake surface, in its plans, are



Plan of Conchuda Dam Site, showing Location of Boring.

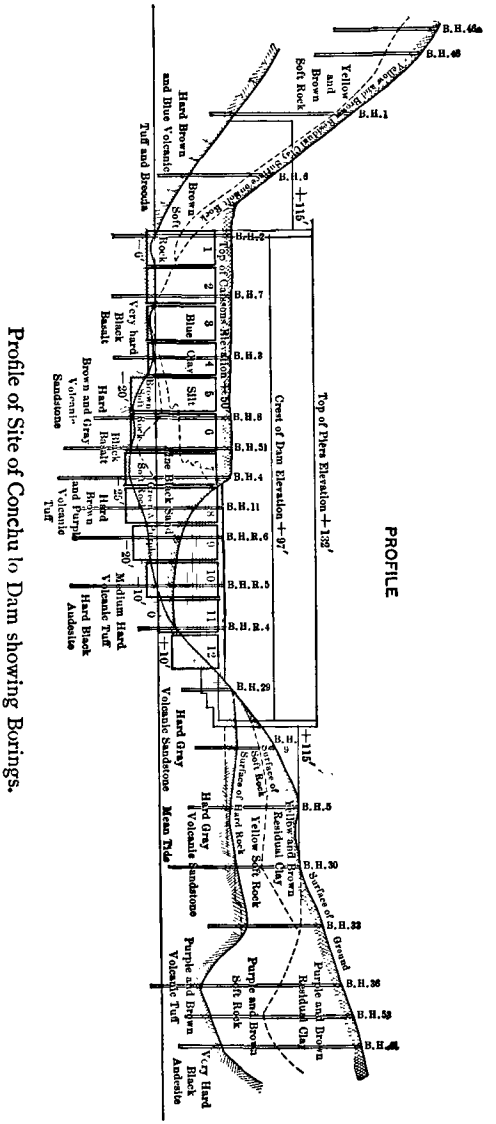
such as to afford resources to meet precisely those low-water conditions.

The commission's study of these features of the Nicaragua Canal problem resulted in plans of works to prevent the surface of the lake ever falling below 104 feet above sea-level, or rarely if ever rising higher than the elevation of 110 feet above the same level, thus making the possible range of the lake surface about 6 feet between its lowest and its highest position.

Obviously at the end of a dry season the gates at the dam will always be found closed, and there will be no water escaping from the lake except by evaporation and to supply the needs of canal operation. It is equally evident that the gates will also remain closed so as to permit no wastage during the early part of the wet season. As the wet season proceeds the surface of the lake will rise toward, and generally quite to its maximum elevation; the operation of wasting over the weirs will then commence. The time of beginning of this wastage will depend upon the amount and distribution of the rainfall during the wet period. Indeed no wastage whatever would be permitted during such a low-water wet season as that shown by the records of 1890, which was almost phenomenal in its low precipitation. The rainfall for the entire drainage-basin would be impounded in the lake in that case, and it would then fall short of restoring the depletion resulting from evaporation and requirements of the canal. On the other hand, during such a wet season as that of 1897 wastage would begin at an early date. In general it may be said that neither the rate nor the law of the rise of water surface in the lake can be predicted. There will be years when no wastage will be permitted, but generally considerable wastage will be necessary in order to prevent the lake rising above the permissible highest stage.

Detailed computations based upon the statistics of actual rainfall records in the basin of Lake Nicaragua may be found by referring to pages 147 to 152 of the Report of the Isthmian Canal Commission, and they need not be repeated here. Those computations show among other things that October is often a month of excessive rainfall, and that the greatest elevation of the lake surface is likely to follow the precipitation of that month. Hence

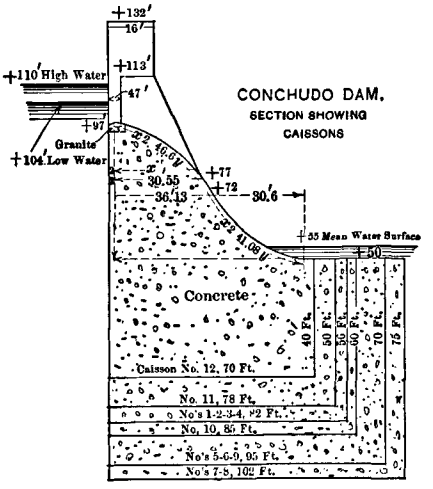
the greatest discharge of surplus waters over the Conchuda dam may be expected in consequence of the resulting run-off or inflow

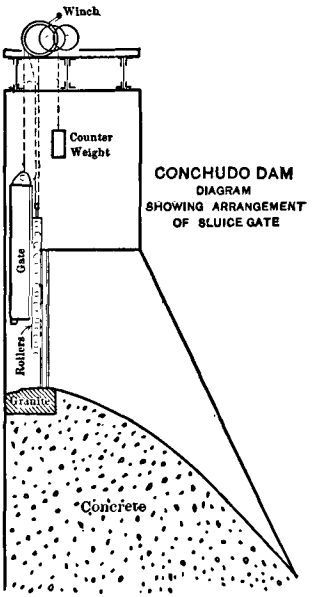


Profile of Site of Conchu lo Dam showing Borings.

into the lake. Those computations also show that at long intervals of time the lake surface might reach an elevation of nearly

112 feet above sea-level for short periods, causing the discharge in the canalized river or over the Conchuda dam to reach possibly 76,000 cubic feet per second, the elevation of the water at the dam being 104 feet above sea-level. Furthermore, the Sabalos River and one or two other small streams, emptying into the San Juan above the dam, might concurrently be in flood for at least a few hours and augment the discharge over the dam to 100,000 cubic feet per second. The regulating-works at the dam, consisting of the movable (Stoney) gates, were devised by the commission to afford that rate of discharge, an aggregate net or available length of overflow crest at the dam and wasteway of 1590 feet being necessary for that purpose with a depth of water on the crest not exceeding 7 feet.





The commission states on page 156 of its report:

"While, therefore, no detailed instructions can be set forth regarding the condition of the sluices at the wasteway on specified dates, the general lines of their operation should be stated below, viz.:

"1. A full lake with surface probably a little above 110 feet on December 1.

"2. Wasteway sluices closed at least from about December 1 to some date in the early portion of the succeeding rainy season, or throughout that season if it be one of unusually low precipitation.

"3. A variable opening of wasteway sluices, if necessary, during the intermediate portion of the rainy season, so as to maintain the lake surface elevation but little, if any, below 110 at the beginning of October.

"4. The operation of wasteway sluices during October and November so as to reach the 1st of December with a full lake, or lake elevation probably a little above 110 feet."

It is thus seen that while the measures for control and regulation are entirely feasible, they are not sharply defined, nor so simple that some experience in their ope ation might not be needful for the most satisfactory results.

345. Greatest Velocities in Canalized River. — It is necessary to ascertain whether the velocities induced in the canalized portions of the San Juan River would not be too high for the convenience of traffic during the highest rainfall season. The following table and the succeeding paragraph, taken from the commission's report, show that no sensible difficulty of this kind would exist.

Elevation of Lake.	Elevation of Water at Dam.			
	103 Feet.		104 Feet.	
Feet.	Feet per Second.	Miles per Hour.	Feet per Second.	Miles per Hour.
110	4.16	2.8	3.9	2.7
111	4.51	3.1	4.2	2.9
112	4.85	3.3	4.5	3.1

"The discharge of the river corresponding to the velocity of 2.7 miles per hour is 63,200 cubic feet per second; while that corresponding to 3.3 miles per hour is 77,000 cubic feet per second. These estimated high velocities will occur but rarely, and they will not sensibly inconvenience navigation. In reality they are too high, for the reason that while the overflow at the minimum

Brito, at the Pacific Terminus of the Nicaragua Route, showing the mouth of the Rio Grande on the left and the easterly side of Brito Head.

river section materially increases the areas of those sections, it has been neglected in this discussion."

346. Wasteways or Overflows.—At a number of places on the route there are some small streams which must be taken into the canal, and which when in flood require tha certain wasteways or overflows from the canal prism should be provided at or near where such streams are received. These wasteways are simply overfall-weirs with the crests at the elevation of the lowest water surface in the canal prism. The principal works of this kind are on the east side of the lake and involve a total drainage area or area of watershed of about 107 square miles. Ample provision has been made by the commission for all such structural features.

347. Temporary Harbors and Service Railroad.—Before actual work could be begun at either end of the Nicaragua route temporary harbors would have to be constructed both at Greytown and at Brito to enable contractors to land plant and supplies or other material. These temporary harbors would probably require no greater depth of water than 18 feet, but they would be works of considerable magnitude, and provision was made for them in the commission's estimate of cost. Again, a service railroad of substantial character would have to be built from Greytown up to Sabalos, approximately half-way between the Conchuda dam and Fort San Carlos, as well as from the west shore of the lake to Brito, making a total line of about 100 miles. The commission estimated the cost of this railroad and its rolling stock at $75,000 per mile.

348. Itemized Statement of Length and Cost. — The following table gives the lengths of the various portions of the canal and the principal items of its cost, so arranged as to show the classification of the various items of the total sum to be expended for all purposes during the construction of the entire work.

The commission estimated the total time required in preparing for and performing the actual construction of the work at eight years, but the writer believes that at least two years more should be allowed for the work.

	Miles.	Cost.
Greytown harbor and entrance	2.15	$2,198,860
Section from Greytown harbor to lock No. 1, including approach-wall to lock	7.44	4,899,887
Diversion of Lower San Juan	.....	40,100
Diversion of San Juanillo	.....	116,760
Lock No. 1, including excavation	.20	5,719,689
Section from lock No. 1 to lock No. 2, including approach-walls, embankments, and wasteway	10.96	6,296,632
Lock No. 2, including excavation	.20	4,050,270
Section from lock No. 2 to lock No. 3, including approach-walls, embankments, and wasteway	16.75	19,330,654
Lock No. 3, including excavation	.20	3,832,745
Section from lock No. 3 to lock No. 4, including approach-walls, embankments, and wasteway	2.77	4,310,580
Lock No. 4, including excavation	.20	5,655,871
Section from lock No. 4 to San Juan River, including approach-wall and embankments	5.30	8,579,431
Conchuda dam, including sluices and machinery	.....	4,017,650
Auxiliary wasteway, including sluices, machinery, and approach-channels	.....	2,045,322
San Juan River section	49.64	23,155,670
Lake Nicaragua section	70.51	7,877,611
Lake Nicaragua to lock No. 5, including approach-wall to lock and receiving-basins for the Rio Grande and Chocolata	9.09	19,566,575
Diversion of the Las Lajas	.....	199,382
Lock No. 5, including excavation	.20	4,913,512
Dam near Buen Retiro	.....	125,591
Section from lock No. 5 to lock No. 6, including approach-walls and wasteway	2.04	3,259,283
Lock No. 6, including excavation	.20	4,368,667
Section from lock No. 6 to lock No. 7, including approach-walls, embankments, and wasteway	1.83	2,309,710
Diversion of Rio Grande	.....	176,180
Lock No. 7, including excavation	.20	4,709,502
Section from lock No. 7 to lock No. 8, including approach-walls, embankments, and wasteway	2.43	1,787,496
Diversion of Rio Grande	.....	117,580
Lock No. 8, including excavation	.20	4,920,899
Section from lock No. 8 to Brito harbor, including approach-wall	.23	553,476
Brito harbor and entrance, including jetty	.92	1,509,470
Railroad, including branch line to Conchuda dam site, at $75,000 per mile	.....	7,575,000
Engineering, police, sanitation, and general contingencies, 20 per cent	.....	31,644,010
Aggregate	183.66	$189,864,062

PART VI.

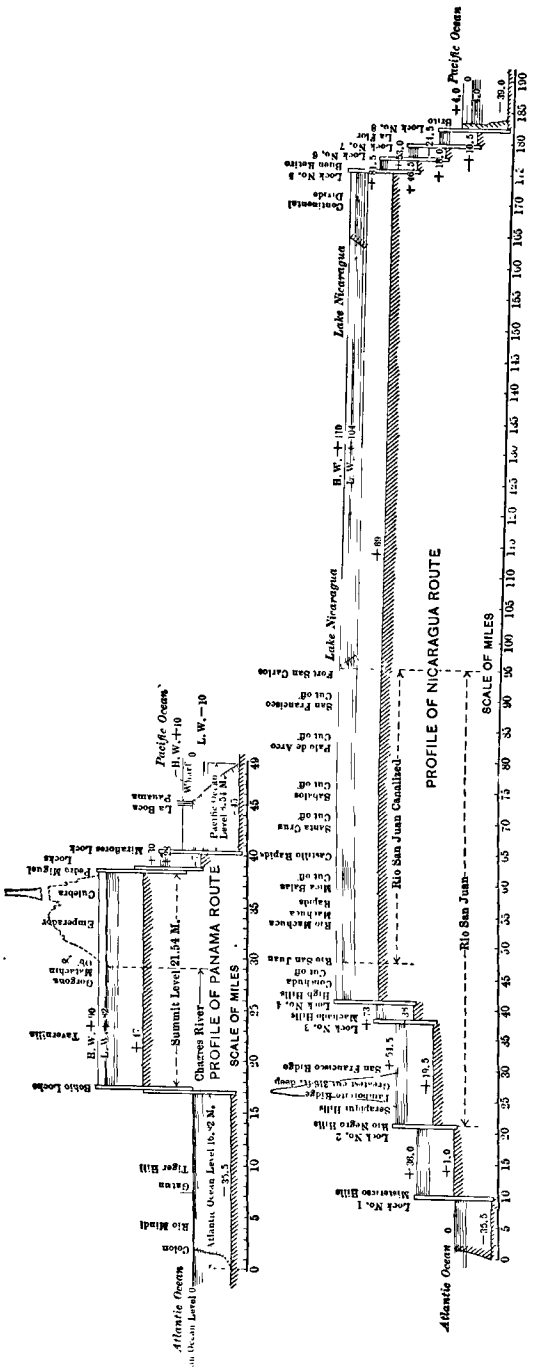
THE PANAMA ROUTE FOR A SHIP-CANAL.

---

349. The First Panama Transit Line.—The Panama route as a line of transit across the isthmus was established, as near as can be determined, between 1517 and 1520. The first settlement, at the site of the town of old Panama, 6 or 7 miles easterly of the present city of that name, was begun in August, 1517. This was the Pacific end of the line. The Atlantic end was finally established in 1519 at Nombre de Dios, the more easterly port of Acla, where Balboa was tried and executed, having first been selected but subsequently rejected.

The old town of Panama was made a city by royal decree from the throne of Spain in September, 1521. At the same time it was given a coat of arms and special privileges were conferred upon it. The course of travel then established ran by a road well known at the present time through a small place called Cruces on the river Chagres, about 17 miles distant from Panama. It must have been an excellent road for those days. Bridges were even laid across streams and the surface was paved, although probably rather crudely. According to some accounts it was only wide enough for use by beasts of burden, but some have stated that it was wide enough to enable two carts to pass each other.

350. Harbor of Porto Bello Established in 1597. — The harbor of the Atlantic terminus at Nombre de Dios did not prove entirely satisfactory, and Porto Bello, westerly of the former point, was made the Atlantic port in 1597 for this isthmian line of transit. The harbor of Porto Bello is excellent, and the location was more



Profiles of the two Canal Routes. The horizontal scales are different, but the vertical scales are the same.

healthful, although Porto Bello itself was subsequently abandoned, largely on account of its unhealthfulness.

351. First Traffic along the Chagres River, and the Importance of the Isthmian Commerce.—As early as 1534, or soon after that date, boats began to pass up and down the Chagres River between Cruces and its mouth on the Caribbean shore and thence along the coast to Nombre de Dios and subsequently to Porto Bello. The importance of the commerce which sprang up across the isthmus and in connection with this isthmian route is well set forth in the last paragraph on page 28 of the report of the Isthmian Canal Commission:

"The commerce of the isthmus increased during the century and Panama became a place of great mercantile importance, with a profitable trade extending to the Spice Islands and the Asiatic coast. It was at the height of its prosperity in 1585, and was called with good reason the toll-gate between western Europe and eastern Asia. Meanwhile the commerce whose tolls only brought such benefits to Panama enriched Spain, and her people were generously rewarded for the aid given by Ferdinand and Isabella in the effort to open a direct route westward to Cathay, notwithstanding the disadvantages of the isthmian transit."

352. First Survey for Isthmian Canal Ordered in 1520.—This commercial prosperity suggested to those interested in it, and soon after its beginning, the possibility of a ship-canal to connect the waters of the two oceans. It is stated even that Charles V. directed that a survey should be made for the purpose of determining the feasibility of such a work as early as 1520. "The governor, Pascual Andagoya, reported that such a work was impracticable and that no king, however powerful he might be, was capable of forming a junction of the two seas or of furnishing the means of carrying out such an undertaking."

353. Old Panama Sacked by Morgan and the Present City Founded.—From that time on the city of Panama increased in wealth and population in consequence of its commercial importance. Trade was established with the west coast of South America and with the ports on the Pacific coast of Central America. In spite of the fact that it was made by the Spaniards a fortress second in strength in America only to old Cartagena, it

was sacked and burned by Morgan's buccaneers in February, 1671. The new city, that is the present city, was founded in 1673, it not being considered advisable to rebuild on the old site.

View of the Harbor of Colon.

354. The Beginnings of the French Enterprise. — The project of a canal on this route was kept alive for more than three centuries by agitation sometimes active and sometimes apparently dying out for long periods, until there was organized in Paris, in 1876, a company entitled "Société Civile Internationale du Canal Interocéanique," with Gen. Etienne Türr as president, for the purpose of making surveys and explorations for a ship-canal between the two oceans on this route.

355. The Wyse Concession and International Congress of 1879. —The work on the isthmus for this company was prosecuted under the direction of Lieut. L. N. B. Wyse, a French naval officer, and he obtained for his company in 1878 a concession from the Colombian Government, conferring the requisite rights

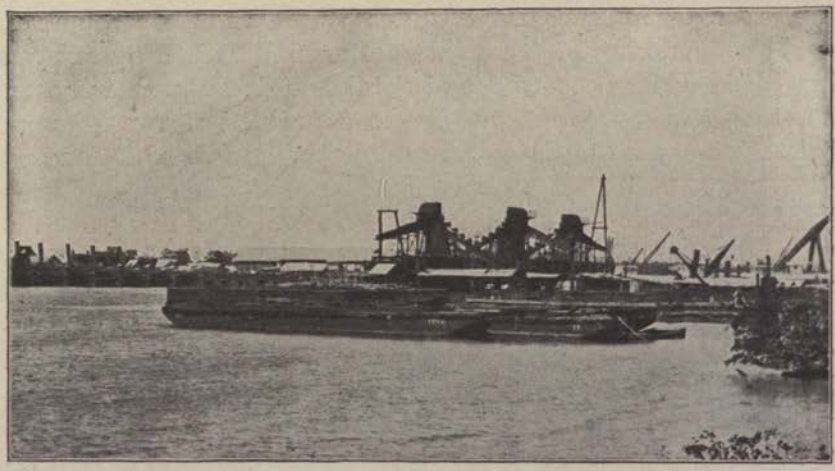
and privileges for the construction of a ship-canal on the Panama route and the authority to do such other things as might be necessary or advisable in connection with that project. This concession is ordinarily known as the Wyse concession.

A general plan for this transisthmian canal was the subject of consideration at an international scientific congress convened in Paris in May, 1879, and composed of 135 delegates from France, Germany, Great Britain, the United States, and other countries, but the majority of whom were French. This congress was convened under the auspices of Ferdinand de Lesseps, and after remaining in session for two weeks a decision, not unanimous, was reached that an international canal ought to be located on the Panama route, and that it should be a sea-level canal without locks. The fact was apparently overlooked that the range between high and low tides in the Bay of Panama, about 20 feet, was so great as to require a tidal lock at that terminus.

356. The Plan without Locks of the Old Panama Canal Company.—A company entitled "Compagnie Universelle du Canal Interocéanique" was organized, with Ferdinand de Lesseps as president, immediately after the adjournment of the international congress. The purpose of this company was the construction and operation of the canal, and it purchased the Wyse concession from the original company for the sum of 10,000,000 francs. An immediate but unsuccessful attempt was made to finance the company in August, 1879. This necessitated a second attempt, which was made in December, 1880, with success, as the entire issue of 600,000 shares of 500 francs each was sold. Two years were then devoted to examinations and surveys and preliminary work upon the canal, but it was 1883 before operations upon a large scale were begun. The plan adopted and followed by this company was that of a sea-level canal, affording a depth of 29.5 feet and a bottom width of 72 feet. It was estimated that the necessary excavation would amount to 157,000,000 cubic yards.

The Atlantic terminus of this canal route was located at Colon, and at Panama on the Pacific side. The line passed through the low grounds just north of Monkey Hill to Gatun, 6 miles from the Atlantic terminus, and where it first met the Chagres River.

For a distance of 21 miles it followed the general course of the Chagres to Obispo, but left it at the latter point and passing up the valley of a small tributary cut through the continental divide at Culebra, and descended thence by the valley of the Rio Grande to the mouth of that river where it enters Panama Bay. The total length of this line from 30 feet depth in the Atlantic to the



Old Dredges near Colon.

same depth in the Pacific was about 47 miles. The maximum height of the continental divide on the centre line of the canal in the Culebra cut was about 333 feet above the sea, which is a little higher than the lowest point of the divide in that vicinity. Important considerations in connection with the adjacent alignment made it advisable to cut the divide at a point not its lowest.

357. The Control of the Floods in the Chagres. — Various schemes were proposed for the purpose of controlling the floods of the Chagres River, the suddenness and magnitude of which were at once recognized as among the greatest difficulties to be encountered in the construction of the work. Although it was seriously proposed at one time to control this difficulty by building a dam across the Chagres at Gamboa, that plan was never adopted, and the problem of control of the Chagres floods remained unsolved for a long period.

358. Estimate of Time and Cost—Appointment of Liquidators.—It was estimated by de Lesseps in 1880 that eight years would be required for the completion of the canal, and that its cost would be $127,600,000. The company prosecuted its work with activity until the latter part of 1887, when it became evident that the sea-level plan of canal was not feasible with the resources at its command. Changes were soon made in the plans, and it was concluded to expedite the completion of the canal by the introduction of locks, deferring the change to a sea-level canal until some period when conditions would be sufficiently favorable to enable the company to attain that end. Work was prosecuted under this modified plan until 1889, when the company became bankrupt and was dissolved by judgment of the French court called the Tribunal Civil de la Seine, on February 4, 1889. An officer, called the liquidator, corresponding quite closely to a receiver in this country, was appointed by the court to take charge of the company's affairs. At no time was the project of completing the canal abandoned, but the liquidator gradually curtailed operations and finally suspended the work on May 15, 1889.

359. The "Commission d'Etude."—He determined to take into careful consideration the feasibility of the project, and to that end appointed a "commission d'études," composed of eleven French and foreign engineers, headed by Inspector-General Guillemain, director of the *Ecole Nationale des Ponts et Chaussées.* This commission visited the isthmus and made a careful study of the entire enterprise, and subsequently submitted a plan for the canal involving locks. The cost of completing the entire work was estimated to be $112,500,000, but the sum of $62,100,000 more was added to cover administration and financing, making a total of $174,600,000. This commission also gave an approximate estimate of the value of the work done and of the plant at $87,300,000, to which some have attached much more importance than did the commission itself. The latter appears simply to have made the "estimate" one half of the total cost of completing the work added to that of financing and administration, as a loose approximation, calling it an "intuitive estimate"; in other words, it was simply a guess based upon such information

as had been gained in connection with the work done on the isthmus.

360. Extensions of Time for Completion.—By this time the period specified for completion under the original Wyse concession had nearly expired. The liquidator then sought from the Colombian Government an extension of ten years, which was granted under the Colombian law dated December 26, 1890. This extension was based upon the provision that a new company should be formed and work on the canal resumed not later than Feb-

The Partially Completed Panama Canal, about eight miles from Colon.

ruary 28, 1893. The latter condition was not fulfilled, and a second extension was obtained on April 4, 1893, which provided that the ten-year extension of time granted in 1890 might begin to run at any time prior to October 31, 1894, but not later than that date. When it became apparent that the provisions of

this last extension would not be carried out an agreement between the Colombian Government and the new Panama Company was entered into on April 26, 1900, which extended the time of completion to October 31, 1910. The validity of this last extension of time has been questioned.

361. Organization of the New Panama Canal Company, 1894.—A new company, commonly known as the new Panama Canal Company, was organized on the 20th of October, 1894, with a capital stock of 650,000 shares of 100 francs each. Under the provisions of the agreement of December 26, 1890, authorizing an extension of time for the construction of the canal, 50,000 shares passed as full-paid stock to the Colombian Government, leaving the actual working capital of the new Panama Company at 60,000,000 francs, that amount having been subscribed in cash. The most of this capital stock was subscribed for by certain loan associations, administrators, contractors, and others against whom suits had been brought in consequence of the financial difficulties of the old company, it having been charged in the scandals attending bankruptcy proceedings that they had profited illegally. Those suits were discontinued under agreements to subscribe by the parties interested to the capital stock of the new company. The sums thus obtained constituted more than two thirds of the 60,000,000 francs remaining of the share capital of the new company after the Colombian Government received its 50,000 shares. The old company had raised by the sale of stock and bond not far from $246,000,000, and the number of persons holding the securities thus sold has been estimated at over 200,000.

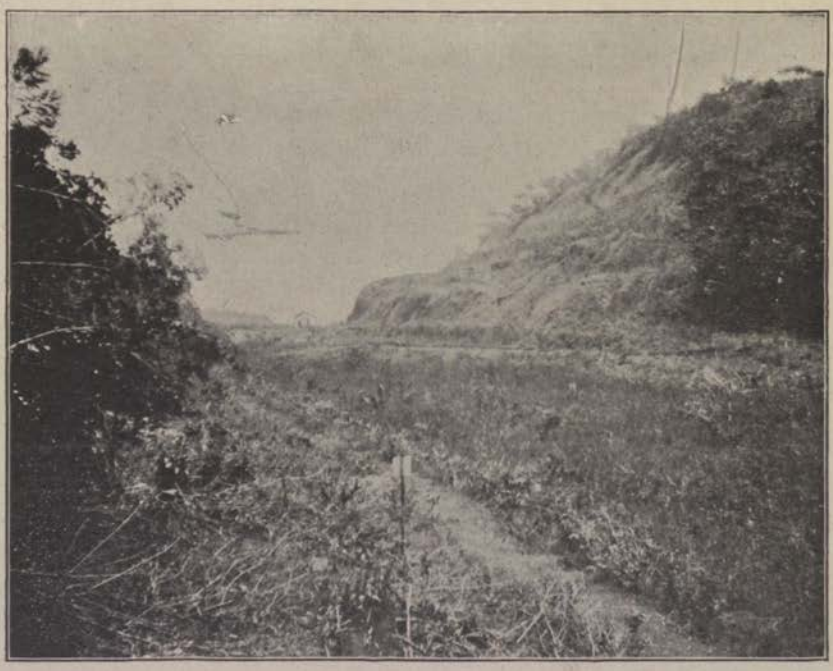
362. Priority of the Panama Railroad Concession.—The Panama Railroad Company holds a concession from the Colombian Government giving it rights prior to those of the Wyse concession, so that the latter could not become effective without the concurrence of the Panama Railroad Company. This is shown by the language of Article III of the Wyse concession, which reads as follows:

"If the line of the canal to be constructed from sea to sea should pass to the west and to the north of the imaginary straight line which joins Cape Tiburon with Garachine Point, the grantees

must enter into some amicable arrangement with the Panama Railroad Company or pay an indemnity, which shall be established in accordance with the provisions of Law 46 of August 16, 1867, 'approving the contract celebration on July 5, 1867, reformatory of the contract of April 15, 1850, for the construction of an iron railroad from one ocean to the other through the Isthmus of Panama.' " It became necessary, therefore, in order to control this feature of the situation, for the old Panama Company to secure at least a majority of the stock of the Panama Railroad Company. As a matter of fact the old Panama Canal Company purchased nearly 69,000 out of the 70,000 sha es of the Panama Railroad Company, each such share having a par value of $100. These shares of Panama railroad stock are now held in trust for the benefit of the new Panama Canal Company. A part of the expenditures of the old company therefore covered the cost of the Panama Railroad Company's shares, now held in trust for the benefit of the new company.

363. Resumption of Work by the New Company—The Engineering Commission and the Comité Technique. — Immediately after its organization the new Panama Canal Company resumed the work of excavation in the Emperador and Culebra cuts with a force of men which has been reported as varying between 1900 and 3600. It also gave thorough consideration to the subject of the best plan for the completion of the canal. The company's charter provided for the appointment of a special engineering commission of five members by the company and the liquidator to report upon the work done and the conclusions to be drawn from its study. This report was to be rendered when the amount expended by the new company should reach about one half of its capital. At the same time the company also appointed a "Comité Technique," constituted of fourteen eminent European and American engineers, to make a study of the entire project, which was to avail itself of existing data and the results of such other additional surveys and examinations as it might consider necessary. The report rendered by this committee was elaborate, and it was made November 16, 1898. It was referred to the statutory commission of five to which reference has already been made, which commission reported in 1899 that the canal

could be constructed within the limits of time and money estimated. On December 30, 1899, a special meeting of the stockholders of the new company was called, but the liquidator, who was one of the largest stockholders, declined to take part in it,



The Excavation at the Bohio Lock Site.

and the report consequently has not received the required statutory consideration.

364. Plan of the New Company.—The plan adopted by the company placed the minimum elevation of the summit level of the canal at 97½ feet above the sea, and a maximum at 102½ feet above the same datum. It provided for a depth of 29½ feet of water and a bottom width of canal prism of about 98 feet, except at special places where this width was increased. A dam was to be built near Bohio, which would thus form an artificial lake with its surface varying from 52.5 to 65.6 feet above the sea. Under this plan there would be a flight of two locks at Bohio,

about 16 miles from the Atlantic end of the canal, and another flight of two locks at Obispo about 14 miles from Bohio, thus reaching the summit level, a single lock at Paraiso, between 6 and 7 miles from Obispo, a flight of two locks at Pedro Miguel about 1.25 miles from Paraiso, and finally a single lock at Miraflores, a mile and a quarter from Pedro Miguel, bringing the canal down to the ocean elevation. The location of this line was practically the same as that of the old company. The available length of each lock-chamber was 738 feet, while the available width was 82 feet, the depth in the clear being 32 feet 10 inches. The lifts were to vary from 26 to 33 feet. It was estimated that the cost of finishing the canal on this plan would be $101,850,000, exclusive of administration and financing.

In order to control the floods of the Chagres River, and to furnish a supply of water for the summit level of the canal, a dam was planned to be built at a point called Alhajuela, about 12 miles from Obispo, from which a feeder about 10 miles long, partly an open canal and partly in tunnels or pipe, would conduct the water from the reservoir thus formed to the summit level.

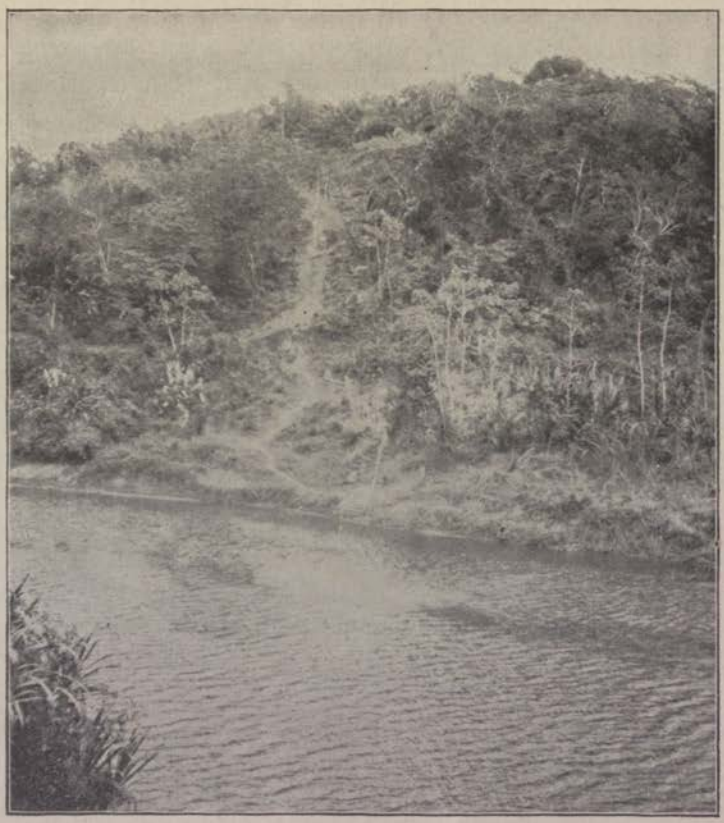
365. Alternative Plan of the New Panama Canal Company.— Although the plan as described was adopted, the "Comité Technique" apparently favored a modification by which a much deeper excavation through Culebra Hill would be made, thus omitting the locks at both Obispo and Paraiso, and making the level of the artificial Lake Bohio the summit level of the canal. In this modified plan the bottom of the summit level would be about 32 feet above the sea, and the minimum elevation of the summit level 61.5 feet above the sea. This modification of plan had the material advantage of eliminating both the Obispo and Paraiso locks. The total estimated cost of completing the canal under this plan was about $105,500,000. Although the Alhajuela feeder would be omitted, the Alhajuela reservoir would be retained as an agent for controlling the Chagres floods and to form a reserve water-supply. The difference in cost of these two plans was comparatively small, but the additional time required to complete that with the lower summit level was probably one of the main considerations in its rejection by the committee having it under consideration.

366. The Isthmian Canal Commission and its Work.—This brings the project up to the time when the Isthmian Canal Commission was created in 1899 and when the forces of the new Panama Canal Company were employed either in taking care of the enormous amount of plant bequeathed to it by the old company or in the great excavation at Emperador and Culebra. The total excavation of all classes, made up to the time when that commission rendered its report, amounted to about 77,000,000 cubic yards.

The work of the commission consisted of a comprehensive and detailed examination of the entire project and all its accessories, as contemplated by the new Panama Canal Company, and any modifications of its plans, either as to alignment, elevations, or subsidiary works, which it might determine advisable to recommend. In the execution of this work it was necessary, among other things, to send engineering parties on the line of the Panama route for the purpose of making surveys and examinations necessary to confirm estimates of the new Panama Canal Company as to quantities, elevations, or other physical features of the line selected, or required in modifications of alignment or plans. In order to accomplish this portion of its work the commission placed five working parties on the Panama route with twenty engineers and other assistants and forty-one laborers.

367. The Route of the Isthmian Canal Commission that of the New Panama Canal Company.—The commission adopted for the purposes of its plans and estimates the route selected by the new Panama Canal Company, which is essentially that of the old company. Starting from the 6-fathom contour in the harbor of Colon, the line follows the low marshy ground adjoining the Bay of Limon to its intersection with the Mindi River; thence through the low ground continuing to Gatun, about 6 miles from Colon, where it first meets the Chagres River. From this point to Obispo the canal line follows practically the general course of the Chagres River, although at one point in the marshes below Bohio it is nearly 2 miles from the farthest bend in the river, at a small place called Ahorca Lagarto. Bohio is about 17 miles from the Atlantic terminus, and Obispo about 30 miles. At the

latter point the course of the Chagres River, passing up-stream, lies to the northeast, while the general direction of the canal line is southeast toward Panama, the latter leaving the former at this location. The canal route follows up the general course of a small stream called the Camacho for a distance of nearly 5 miles where the continental divide is found, and in which the great



The French Location for the Bohio Dam.

Culebra cut is located, about 36 miles from Colon and 13 miles from the Panama terminus. After passing through the Culebra cut the canal route follows the course of the Rio Grande River to its mouth at Panama Bay. The mouth of the Rio Grande, where the canal line is located, is about a mile and a half westerly

of the city of Panama. The Rio Grande is a small, sluggish stream throughout the last 6 miles of its course, and for that distance the canal excavation would be made mostly in soft silt or mud.

Although the line selected by the French company is that adopted by the Isthmian Canal Company for its purposes, a number of most important features of the general plan have been materially modified by the commission, as will be easily understood from what has already been stated in connection with the French plans.

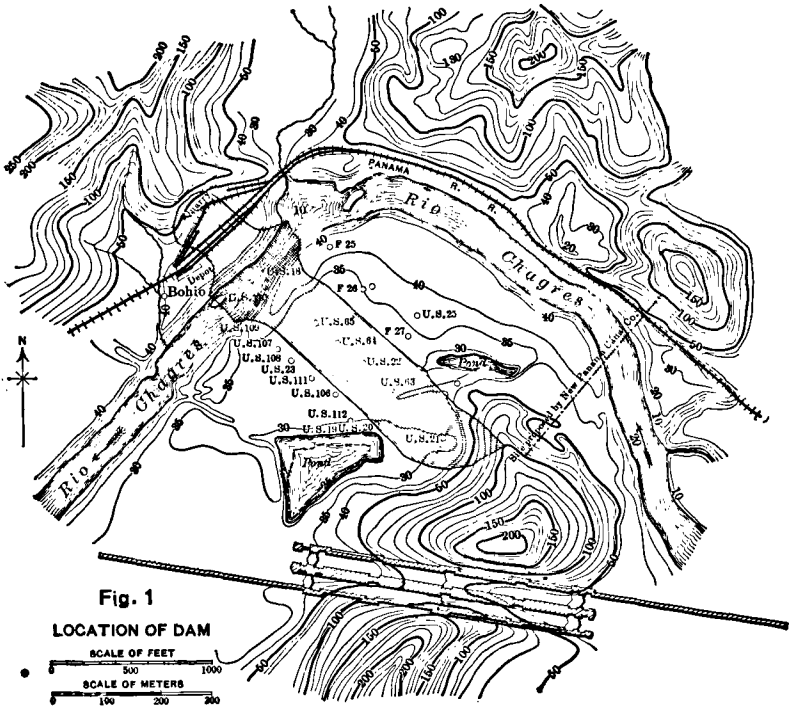
368. Plan for a Sea-level Canal.—The feasibility of a sea-level canal, but with a tidal lock at the Panama end, was carefully considered by the commission, and an approximate estimate of the cost of completing the work on that plan was made. In round numbers this estimated cost was about $250,000,000, and the time required to complete the work would probably be nearly or quite twice that needed for the construction of a canal with locks. The commission therefore adopted a project for the canal with locks. Both plans and estimates were carefully developed in accordance therewith.

369. Colon Harbor and Canal Entrance.—The harbor of Colon has been fairly satisfactory for the commerce of that port, but it is open to the north, and there are probably two or three days in every year during which northers blow into the harbor with such intensity that ships anchored there must put to sea in order to escape damage. The western limit of this harbor is an artificial point of land formed by material deposited by the old Panama Canal Company; it is called Christoph Colon, and near its extreme end are two large frame residences built for de Lesseps. The entrance to the canal is immediately south of this artificial point. The commission projected a canal entrance from the 6-fathom contour in the Bay of Limon, in which the harbor of Colon is found, swinging on a gentle curve, 6560 feet radius, to the left around behind the artificial point just mentioned and then across the shore line to the right into the lowland southerly of Colon. This channel has a width of 500 feet at the bottom, with side slopes of 1 on 3, except on the second curve, which is somewhat sharper than the first, where the bottom width is made 800 feet

for a length of 800 feet for the purpose of a turning-basin. This brings the line into the canal proper, forming a well-protected harbor for nearly a mile inside of the shore line. The distance from the 6-fathom line to this interior harbor is about 2 miles. The total cost of constructing the channel into the harbor and the harbor itself is $8,057,707, and the annual cost of maintenance is placed at $30,000. The harbor would be perfectly protected from the northers which occasionally blow with such intensity in the Bay of Limon, and it could readily be made in all weathers by vessels seeking it.

370. Panama Harbor and Entrance to Canal.—The harbor at the Pacific end of the channel where it joins Panama Bay is of an entirely different character in some respects. The Bay of Panama is a place of light winds. Indeed it has been asserted that the difficulties sometimes experienced by sailing-vessels in finding wind enough to take them out of Panama Bay are so serious as to constitute a material objection to the location for a ship-canal on the Panama route. This difficulty undoubtedly exists at times, but the simple fact is to be remembered that Panama was a port for sailing-ships for more than two hundred years before a steamship was known. The harbor of Panama, as it now exists, is a large area of water at the extreme northern limit of the bay, immediately adjacent to the city of Panama, protected from the south by the three islands of Perico, Naos, and Culebra. It has been called a roadstead. There is good anchorage for heavy-draft ships, but for the most part the water is shallow. With the commission's requirement of a minimum depth of water of 35 feet, a channel about 4 miles long from the mouth of the Rio Grande to the 6-fathom line in Panama Bay must be excavated. This channel would have a bottom width of 200 feet with side slopes of 1 on 3 where the material is soft. Considerable rock would have to be excavated in this channel. At 4.41 miles from the 6-fathom line is located a wharf at the point called La Boca. A branch of the Panama Railroad Company runs to this wharf, and at the present time deep-draft ships lie up alongside of it to take on and discharge cargo. The wharf is a steel frame structure, founded upon steel cylinders, carried down to bed-rock by the pneumatic process. Its cost was about $1,284,000. The

total cost of the excavated channel leading from Panama harbor to the pier at La Boca is estimated by the commission at $1,464,-



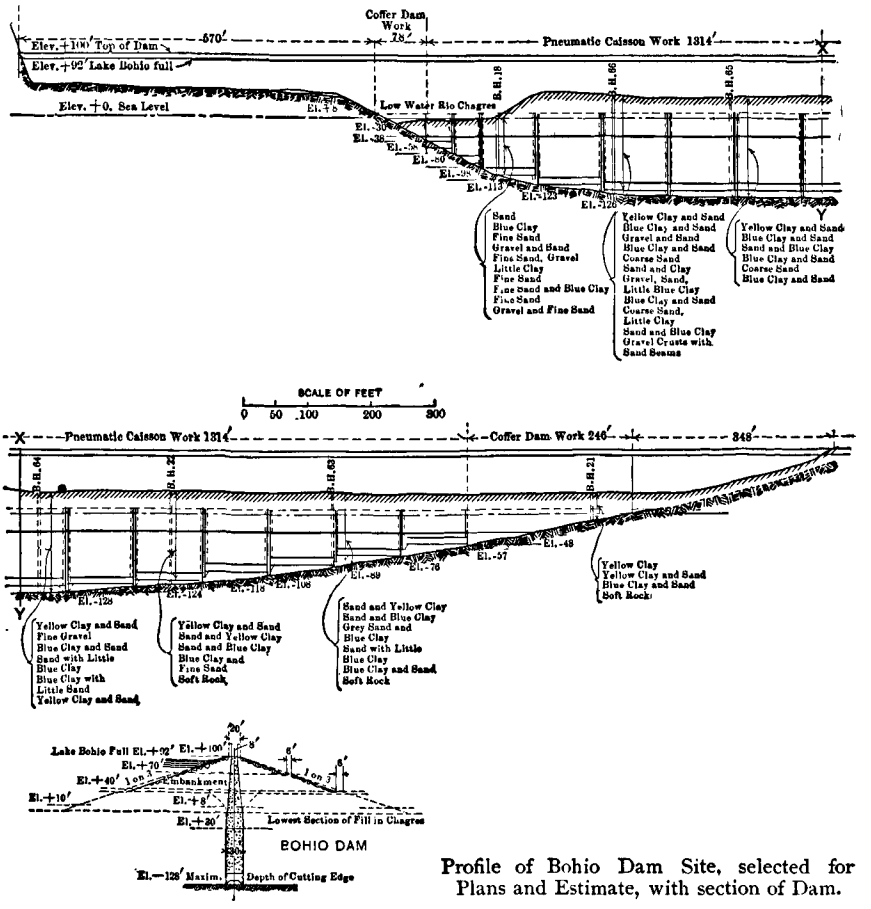
The Bohio Dam Site.

513. As the harbor at Panama is considered an open roadstead, it requires no estimate for annual cost of maintenance.

371. The Route from Colon to Bohio.—Starting from the harbor of Colon, the prism of the canal is excavated through the low and for the most part marshy ground to the little village called Bohio. The prism would cut the Chagres River at a number of points, and would require a diversion-channel for that river for a distance of about 5 miles on the westerly side of the canal. Levees, or protective embankments, would also be required on the same side of the canal between Bohio and Gatun, the Chagres River leaving the canal line at the latter point on its way to the sea.

372. **The Bohio Dam.**—The principal engineering feature of the entire route is found at Bohio; it is the great dam across the Chagres River at that point, forming Lake Bohio, the summit level of the canal. The new Panama Canal Company located this dam at a point about 17 miles from Colon, and designed to make it an earth structure suitably paved on its faces, but without any other masonry feature. Some borings had been made along the site, and test-pits were also dug by the French engineers. It was the conviction of the Isthmian Canal Commission, however, that the character of the proposed dam might be affected by a further examination of the subsurface material at the site. Consequently the boring parties of the Commission sunk a large number of bore-holes at six different sections or possible sites along the river in the vicinity of the French location. These borings revealed great irregularity in the character and disposition of the material below the bed and banks of the river. In some places the upper stratum of material was almost clear clay, and in other places clear sand, while all degrees of admixture of clay and sand were also found. At the French site the bed-rock at the deepest point is 143 feet below sea-level, with large masses of pervious and semi-pervious sand, gravel, and mixtures of those materials with clay. Apparently there is a geological valley in the rock along the general course of the Chagres River in this vicinity filled with sand, gravel, and clay, irregularly distributed and with all degrees of admixture, large masses in all cases being of open texture and pervious to water. The site adopted by the commission for the purposes of its plans and estimates is located nearly half a mile down the course of the river from that selected by the new Panama Canal Company. The geological valley is nearly 2000 feet wide at this location, but the deepest rock disclosed by the borings of the commission is but 128 feet below sea-level. The actual channel of the river is not more than 150 feet wide and lies on the extreme easterly side of the valley. The easterly or right bank of the river at this place is clean rock and rises abruptly to an elevation of about 40 feet above the river surface at ordinary stages. The left or westerly bank of the river is compacted clay and sand, and rises equally as abruptly as the rocky bank of the other side, and to about the

same elevation. From the top of the abrupt sandy clay bank a plateau of rather remarkable uniformity of elevation extends for about 1200 feet in a southwesterly direction to the rocky hill in which the Bohio locks would be located. The rock slope on the easterly or northerly bank of the river runs down under the sandy river-bed, but at such an inclination that within the limits of the channel the deepest rock is less than 100 feet below sea-level.



Profile of Bohio Dam Site, selected for Plans and Estimate, with section of Dam.

After the completion of all its examinations and after a careful study of the data disclosed by them, the commission deemed

it advisable to plan such a dam as would cut off absolutely all possible subsurface flow or seepage through the sand and gravel below the river surface. It is to be observed that such a subsurface flow might either disturb the stability of an earth dam or endanger the water-supply of the summit level of the canal or both. The plan of dam finally adopted by the commission for the purposes of its estimates is shown by the accompanying plans and sections. A heavy core-wall of concrete masonry extends from bed-rock across the entire geological valley to the top of the structure, or to an elevation of 100 feet above sea-level, thus absolutely closing the entire valley against any possible flow. The thickness of this wall at the bottom is 30 feet, but at an elevation of 30 feet below sea-level its sides begin to batter at such a rate as to make the thickness of the wall 8 feet at its top. On either side of this wall are heavy masses of earth embankment of selected material properly deposited in layers with surface slopes of 1 on 3. As shown by the plans, the lower portions of the core-wall of this dam would be sunk to bed-rock by the pneumatic process, the joints between the caissons being closed and sealed by cylinders sunk in recesses or wells, also as shown by the plans.

373. Variation in Surface Elevation of Lake.—The profile of this route shows that the summit level would have an ordinary elevation of 85 feet above the sea, but it may be drawn down for uses of the canal to a minimum elevation of 82 feet above the same datum. On the other hand, under circumstances to be discussed later, it may rise during the floods of the Chagres to an elevation of 90 or possibly 91 or 92 feet above the level of the sea. The top of the dam therefore would be from 8 to 10 feet above the highest possible water surface in the lake, which is sufficient to guard against wash or overtopping of the dam by waves. The total width of the dam at its top would be 20 feet, and the entire inner slope would be paved with heavy riprap suitably placed and bedded.

374. Extent of Lake Bohio and the Canal Line in It.—This dam would create an artificial lake having a superficial area during high water of about 40 square miles. The water would be backed up to a point called Alhajuela, about 25 miles up the river

from Bohio. For a distance of nearly 14 miles, i.e., from Bohio to Obispo, the route of the canal would lie in this lake. Although the water would be from 80 to 90 feet deep at the dam for several miles below Obispo, it would be necessary to make some excavation along the general course of the Chagres in order to secure the minimum depth of 35 feet for the navigable channel.

375. The Floods of the Chagres.—The feature of Lake Bohio of the greatest importance to the safe and convenient operation of the canal is that by which the floods of the river Chagres are controlled or regulated. That river is but little less than 150 miles long, and its drainage area as nearly as can be estimated,

Location of the Proposed Alhajuela Dam on the Upper Chagres.

contains about 875 square miles. Above Bohio its current moves some sand and a little silt in times of flood, but usually it is a clear-water stream. In low water its discharge may fall to 350 cubic feet per second.

As is well known, the floods of the Chagres have at times been regarded as almost if not quite insurmountable obstacles to the construction of a canal on this line. The greatest flood of which there is any semblance of a reliable record is one which occurred in 1879. No direct measurements were made, but it is stated with apparent authority that the flood elevation at Bohio was 39.3 feet above low water. If the total channel through which the flood flowed at that time had been as large as at present, actual gaugings or measurements of subsequent floods show that the maximum discharge in 1879 might have been at the rate of 136,000 cubic feet per second. As a matter of fact the total channel section in that year was less than it is at the present time. Hence if it be assumed that a flood of 140,000 cubic feet per second mus be controlled, an error on the safe side will be committed. Other great floods of which there are reliable records are as follows:

1885	Height	at	Bohio	33.8	feet	above	low	water.
1888:	"	"	"	34.7	"	"	"	"
1890:	"	"	"	32.1	"	"	"	"
1893:	"	"	"	28.5	"	"	"	"

The maximum measured rate of the 1890 flood was 74,998 cubic feet per second, and that of 1893, 48,975 cubic feet per second. It is clear, therefore, that a flood flow of 75,000 cubic feet per second is very rare, and that a flood of 140,000 cubic feet per second exceeds that of which we have any record for practically forty years.

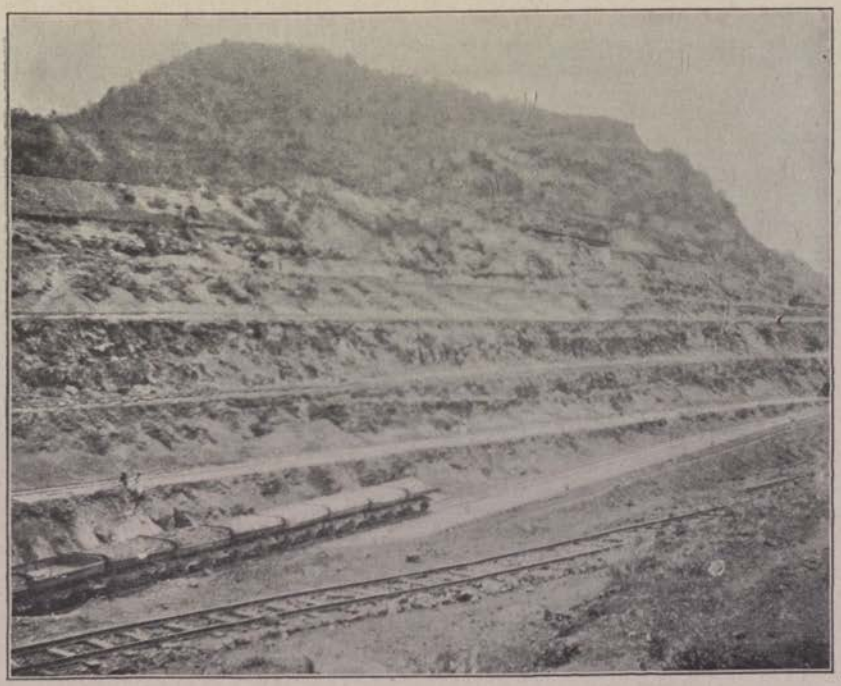
376. The Gigante Spillway or Wasteweir.—It is obvious that the dam, as designed by the commission, is of such character that no water must be permitted to flow over its crest, or even in immediate proximity to the down-stream embankment. Indeed it is not intended by the commission that there shall be any waste-way or discharge anywhere near the dam. At a point about 3 miles southwest of the site of the dam at Bohio is a low saddle or notch in the hills near the head-waters of a small stream called the Gigante River. The elevation of this saddle or notch is such that a solid masonry weir with a crest 2000 feet long may readily

be constructed with its foundations on bed-rock without deep excavation. This structure is called the Gigante spillway, and all surplus flood-waters from the Chagres would flow over it. The waters discharged would flow down to and through some large marshes, one called Peña Blanca and another Agua Clara, before rejoining the Chagres. Inasmuch as the canal line runs just easterly of those marshes, it would be necessary to protect it with the levees or embankments to which allusion has already been made. These embankments are neither much extended nor very costly for such a project. The protection of the canal would be further aided by a short artificial channel between the two marshes, Pñea Blanca and Agua Clara, for which provision is made in the estimates of the commission. After the surplus waters from the Gigante spillway pass these marshes they again enter the Chagres River or flow over the low, half-submerged country along its borders, and thence through its mouth to the sea near the town of Chagres, about 6 miles northwest of Gatun.

377. Storage in Lake Bohio for Driest Dry Season.—The masonry crest of the Gigante spillway would be placed at an elevation of 85 feet above the sea, identically the same as that which may be called the normal summit level of the canal. It is estimated that the total uses of water in the canal added to the loss by evaporation, taken at six inches in depth per month, from the surface of the lake will amount to about 1070 cubic feet per second if the traffic through the canal should amount to 10,000,000 tons per annum in ships of ordinary size. This draft per second is the sum of 406 cubic feet per second for lockage, 207 for evaporation, 250 for leakage at lock-gates, and 200 for power and other purposes, making a total of 1063, which has been taken as 1070 cubic feet per second. The amount of storage in Lake Bohio between the elevations of 85 and 82 feet above sea-level, as designed, is sufficient to supply the needs of that traffic in excess of the smallest recorded low-water flow of the Chagres River during the dry season of a low-rainfall year. The lowest monthly average flow of the Chagres on record at Bohio is 600 cubic feet per second for March, 1891, and for the purposes of this computation that minimum flow has been supposed to continue for three months. This includes a sensible margin of safety. In not

even the driest year, therefore, can it be reasonably expected that the summit level of the canal would fall below the elevation of 82 feet until the total traffic of the canal carried in ships of the present ordinary size shall exceed 10,000,000 tons. If the average size of ships continues to increase, as will probably be the case, less water in proportion to tonnage will be required for the purposes of lockage. This follows from the fact that with a given tonnage the greater the capacity of the ships the less the number required, and consequently the less will be the number of lockages made.

378. Lake Bohio as a Flood-controller.—On the other hand it can be shown that with a depth of 5 feet of water on the crest of the Gigante spillway the discharge of that weir 2000 feet long



The Eastern Face of the Culebra Cut.

will be at the rate of 78,260 cubic feet per second. If the flood-waters of the Chagres should flow into Lake Bohio until the head of water on the crest of the Gigante weir rises to $7\frac{1}{2}$ feet, the rate

of discharge over that weir would be 140,000 cubic feet per second, which, as already shown, exceeds at least by a little the highest flood-rate on record. The operation of Lake Bohio as a flood controller or regulator is therefore exceedingly simple. The flood-waters of the Chagres would pour into the lake and immediately begin to flow over the Gigante weir, and continue to do so at an increasing rate as the flood continues. The discharge of the weir is augmented by the increasing flood, and decreases only after the passage of the crest of the flood-wave. No flood even as great as the greatest supposable flood on record can increase the elevation of the lake more than 92 to 92½ feet above sea-level, and it will only be at long intervals of time when floods will raise that elevation more than about 90 feet above sea-level. The control is automatic and unfailingly certain. It prevents absolutely any damage from the highest supposable floods of the Chagres, and reserves in Lake Bohio all that is required for the purposes of the canal and for wastage by evaporation through the lowest rainfall season. The floods of the Chagres, therefore, instead of constituting the obstacle to construction and convenient maintenance of the canal heretofore supposed, are deprived of all their prejudicial effects and transformed into beneficial agents for the operation of the waterway.

379. Effect of Highest Floods on Current in Channel in Lake Bohio.—The highest floods are of short duration, and it can be stated as a general law that the higher the flood the shorter its duration. The great floods which it is necessary to consider in connection with the maintenance and operation of this canal would last but a comparatively few hours only. The great flood-flow of 140,000 cubic feet per second would increase the current in the narrowest part of the canal below Obispo to possibly 5 feet per second for a few hours only, but that is the only inconvenience which would result from such a flood-discharge. That velocity could be reduced by additional excavation.

380. Alhajuela Reservoir not Needed at Opening of Canal.—Inasmuch as this system of control, devised and adopted by the Isthmian Canal Commission, is completely effective in regulating the Chagres floods; the reservoir proposed to be constructed by the new Panama Canal Company at Alhajuela on the Chagres

about 11 miles above Obispo is not required, and the cost of its construction would be avoided. It could, however, as a project be held in reserve. If the traffic of the canal should increase to such an extent that more water would be needed for feeding the summit level, the dam could be built at Alhajuela so as to impound enough additional water to accommodate, with that stored in Lake Bohio, at least five times the 10,000,000 annual traffic already considered. Its existence would at the same time act with substantial effect in controlling the Chagres floods and relieve the Gigante spillway of a corresponding amount of duty.

381. Locks on Panama Route.—The locks on the Panama route are designed to have the same dimensions as those in Nicaragua, as was stated in the lecture on that route. The usable length is 740 feet and the clear width 84 feet. They would be built chiefly of concrete masonry, while the gates would be of steel and of the mitre type.

382. The Bohio Locks.—The great dam at Bohio raises the water surface in the canal from sea-level in the Atlantic maritime section to an ordinary maximum of 90 feet above sea-level; in other words, the maximum ordinary total lift would be 90 feet. This total lift is divided into two parts of 45 feet each. There is therefore a flight of two locks at Bohio; indeed there are two flights side by side, as the twin arrangement is designed to be used at all lock sites on both routes. The typical dimensions and arrangements of these locks, with the requisite culverts and other features, are shown in the plans and sections between pages 396 and 397, Part V. They are not essentially different from other great modern ship-canal locks. The excavation for the Bohio locks is made in a rocky hill against which the south-westerly end of the proposed Bohio dam rests, and they are less than 1000 feet from it.

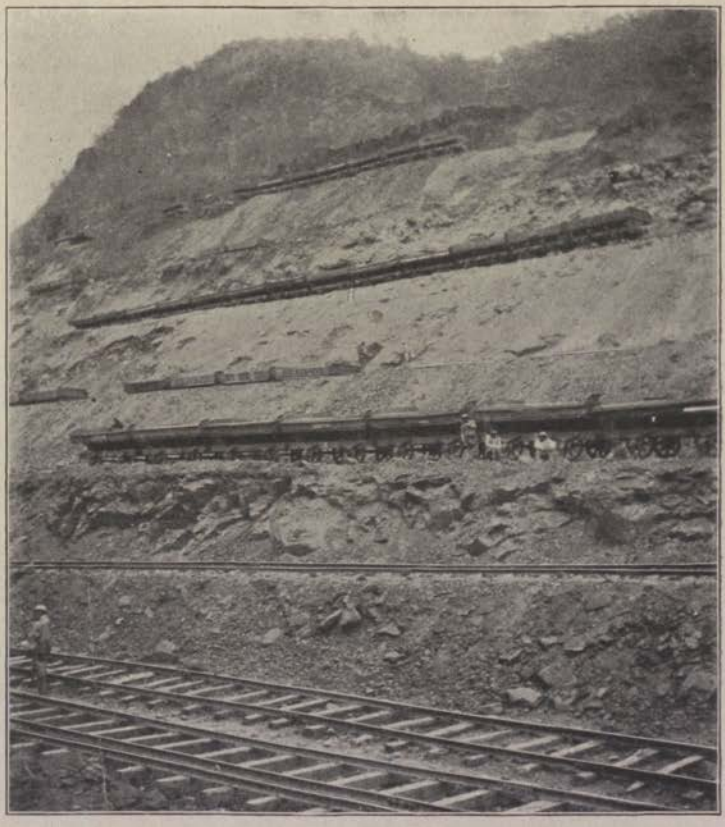
383. The Pedro Miguel and Miraflores Locks.—After leaving Bohio Lake at Obispo a flight of two locks is found at Pedro Miguel, about 7.9 miles from the former or 21½ miles from Bohio. These locks have a total ordinary maximum lift of 60 feet, divided into two lifts of 30 feet each. The fifth and last lock on the route is at Miraflores. The average elevation of water between Pedro Miguel and Miraflores is 30 feet above mean sea-level. Inas-

much as the range of tide between high and low in Panama Bay is about 20 feet, the maximum lift at Miraflores is 40 feet and the minimum about 20. The twin locks at Miraflores bring the canal surface down to the Pacific Ocean level, the distance from those locks to the 6-fathom curve in Panama Bay being 8.54 miles. There are therefore five locks on the Panama route, all arranged on the twin plan, and, as on the Nicaragua route, all are founded on rock.

384. Guard-gates near Obispo.— Near Obispo a pair of guard-gates are arranged "so that if it should become necessary to draw off the water from the summit cut the level of Lake Bohio would not be affected."

385. Character and Stability of the Culebra Cut.—An unprecedented concentration of heavy cutting is found between Obispo and Pedro Miguel. This is practically one cut, although the northwesterly end toward Obispo is called the Emperador, while the deepest part at the other end, about 3 miles from Pedro Miguel, is the great Culebra cut with a maximum depth on the centre line of the canal of 286 ft. On page 93 of the Isthmian Canal Commission's report is the following reference to the material in this cut: "There is a little very hard rock at the eastern end of this section, and the western 2 miles are in ordinary materials. The remainder consists of a hard indurated clay, with some softer material at the top and some strata and dikes of hard rock. In fixing the price it has been rated as soft rock, but it must be given slopes equivalent to those in earth. This cut has been estimated on the basis of a bottom width of 150 feet, with side slopes of 1 on 1." When the old Panama Canal Company began its excavation in this cut considerable difficulty was experienced by the slipping of the material outside of the limits of the cut into the excavation, and the marks of that action can be seen plainly at the present time. This experience has given an impression that much of the material in this cut is unstable, but that impression is erroneous. The clay which slipped in the early days of the work was not drained, and like wet clay in numerous places in this country it slipped down into the excavation. This material is now drained and is perfectly stable. There is no reason to anticipate any future difficulty if reasonable

conditions of drainage are maintained. The high faces of the cut will probably weather to some extent, although experience with such clay faces on the isthmus indicates that the amount of



The Culebra Cut.

such action will be small. As a matter of fact the material in which the Culebra cut is made is stable and will give no sensible difficulty in maintenance.

386. Small Diversion-channels.—Throughout the most of the distance between Colon and Bohio on the easterly side of the canal the French plan contemplated an excavated channel to receive a portion of the waters of the Chagres as well as the flow of two smaller rivers, the Gatuncillo and the Mindi, so as to con-

duct them into the Bay of Manzanillo, immediately to the east of Colon. That so-called diversion-channel was nearly completed. Under the plan of the commission it would receive none of the Chagres flow, but it would be available for intercepting the drainage of the high ground easterly of the canal line and the flow of the two small rivers named, so that these waters would not find their way into the canal. There are a few other small works of similar character in different portions of the line, all of which were recognized and provided for by the commission.

387. Length and Curvature.—The total length of the Panama route from the 6-fathom curve at Colon to the same curve in Panama Bay is 49.09 miles. The general direction of the route in passing from Colon to Panama is from northwest to southeast, the latter point being about 22 miles east of he Atlantic terminus. The depression through which the line is laid is one of easy topography except at the continental divide in the Culebra cut. As a consequence there is little heavy work of excavation, as such matters go except in that cut. A further consequence of such topography is a comparatively easy alignment, that is, one in which the amount of curvature is not high. The smallest radius of curvature is 3281 feet at the entrace to the inner harbor at the Colon end of the route, and where the width is 800 feet. The radii of the remaining curves range from 6234 feet to 19,629 feet.

The following table gives all the elements of curvature on the route and indicates that it is not excessive:

Number of Curves.	Length.	Radius.	Total Curvature.
	Miles	Feet.	° ′
1.....	0.88	19,629	14 17
1.....	.48	13,123	11 04
4.....	4.22	11,483	111 32
15.....	11.61	9,842	355 50
4.....	2.44	8,202	90 20
2.....	1.67	6,562	77 00
1.....	.73	6,234	35 45
1.....	.82	3,281	75 51
	22.85		771 39

388. Principal Items of Work to be Performed.—The principal items of the total amount of work to be performed in completing

the Panama Canal, under the plan of the commission, can be classified as shown in the following table:

Dredging	27,659,540	cu. yds.
Dry earth	14,386,954	"
Soft rock	39,893,235	"
Hard rock	8,806,340	"
Rock under water	4,891,667	"
Embankment and back-filling	1,802,753	"
Total	97,440,489	"
Concrete	3,762,175	cu. yds.
Granite	13,820	"
Iron and steel	65,248,900	lbs.
Excavation in coffer-dam	7,260	cu. yds.
Pneumatic work	108,410	"

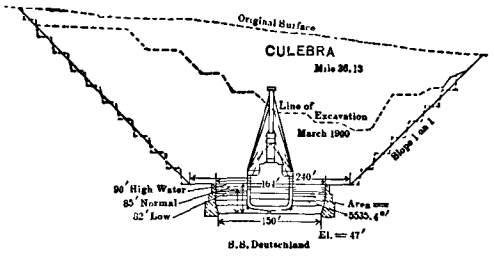
389. Lengths of Sections and Elements of Total Cost. — The lengths of the various sections of this route and the costs of completing the work upon them are fully set forth in the following table, taken from the commission's report, as were the two preceding:

TOTAL ESTIMATED COST.

	Miles.	Cost.
Colon entrance and harbor	2.39	$8,057,707
Harbor to Bohio locks, including levees	14.42	11,099,839
Bohio locks, including excavation	.35	11,567,275
Lake Bohio	13.61	2,952,154
Obispo gates	.....	295,434
Culebra section	7.91	44,414,460
Pedro Miguel locks, including excavation and dam	.35	9,081,321
Pedro Miguel level	1.33	1,192,286
Miraflores locks, including excavation and spillway	.20	5,781,401
Pacific level	8.53	12,427,971
Bohio dam	.....	6,369,640
Gigante spillway	.....	1,209,419
Peña Blanca outlet	.....	2,448,076
Chagres diversion	.....	1,929,982
Gatun diversion	.....	100,000
Panama Railroad diversion	.....	1,267,500
Total	49.09	120,194,465
Engineering, police, sanitation, and general contingencies, 20 per cent.	.....	24,038,893
Aggregate	.....	$144,233,358

The item in this table called Panama Railroad diversion affords provision for the reconstruction of the railroad necessitated by

the formation of Lake Bohio. That lake would submerge the present location of the railroad for 14 or 15 miles.



The Culebra Cut with Steamer Deutschland in it.

390. The Twenty Per Cent Allowances for Exigencies.—It will be observed that in the estimates of cost of the canal on both the Nicaragua and the Panama routes, 20 per cent is allowed for "engineering, police, sanitation, and general contingencies." For the purposes of comparison the same percentage to cover these items was used on both routes. As a matter of fact the large amount of work which has already been performed on the Panama route removes many uncertainties as to the character of material and other features of difficulty which would be disclosed only after the beginning of the work in Nicaragua. It has therefore been contended with considerable basis of reason that a less percentage to cover these uncertainties should be employed in connection with the Panama estimates than in connection with those for the Nicaragua route. Indeed it might be maintained that the exigencies which increase cost should be made proportional to the length of route and the untried features. On the other hand, both Panama and Colon are comparatively large centres of population, and, furthermore, there is a considerable population stretched along the line of the Panama Railroad between those points. The climate and the unsanitary condition of practically every centre of population in Central America and on the isthmus contribute to the continual presence of tropical fevers, and other diseases contingent upon the existing conditions of life. It is probable, among other things, that yellow fever is always present on the isthmus. Inasmuch as the Nicaragua route is practically without population, the amount o'

disease existing along it is exceedingly small, there being practically no people to be sick. The initial expenditure for the sanitation of the cities at the extremities of the Panama route, as well as for the country between, would be far greater for that route than on the Nicaragua. This fact compensates, to a substantial extent at least, for the physical uncertainties on the Nicaragua line. Indeed a careful examination of all the conditions existing on both routes indicates the reasonableness of applying the same 20 per cent to both total estimates of cost.

391. Value of Plant, Property, and Rights on the Isthmus.— The preceding estimated cost of $144,233,358 for completing the Panama Canal must be increased by the amount necessary to be paid for all the property and rights of the new Panama Canal Company on the isthmus. A large amount of excavation has been performed, amounting to 77,000,000 cubic yards of all classes of materials, and nearly all the right of way has been purchased. The new Panama Canal Company furnished the commission with a detailed inventory of its entire properties, which the latter classified as follows:

1. Lands not built on.
2. Buildings, 2431 in number, divided among 47 subclassifications.
3. Furniture and stable outfit, with 17 subclassifications.
4. Floating plant and spare parts, with 24 subclassifications.
5. Rolling plant and spare parts, with 17 subclassifications.
6. Plant, stationary and semi-stationary, and spare parts, with 25 subclassifications.
7. Small material and spare parts, with 4 subclassifications.
8. Surgical and medical outfit.
9. Medical stores.
10. Office supplies, stationery.
11. Miscellaneous supplies, with 740 subclassifications.

The commission did not estimate any value for the vast amount of plant along the line of the canal, as its condition in relation to actual use is uncertain, and the most of it would not be available for efficient and economical execution of the work by modern American methods. Again, a considerable amount

of excavated material along some portions of the line has been deposited in spoil-banks immediately adjacent to the excavation from which it was taken, and would have to be rehandled in forming the increased size of prism contemplated in the commission's plan.

In view of all the conditions affecting it, the commission made the following estimate of the value of the property of the new Panama Canal Company, as it is now found on the Panama route:

Canal excavation	$21,020,386
Chagres diversion	178,186
Gatun diversion	1,396,456
Railroad diversion (4 miles)	300,000
	22,895,028
Contingencies, 20 per cent.	4,579,005
Aggregate	27,474,033
Panama Railroad stock at par	6,850,000
Maps, drawings, and records	2,000,000
	$36,324,033

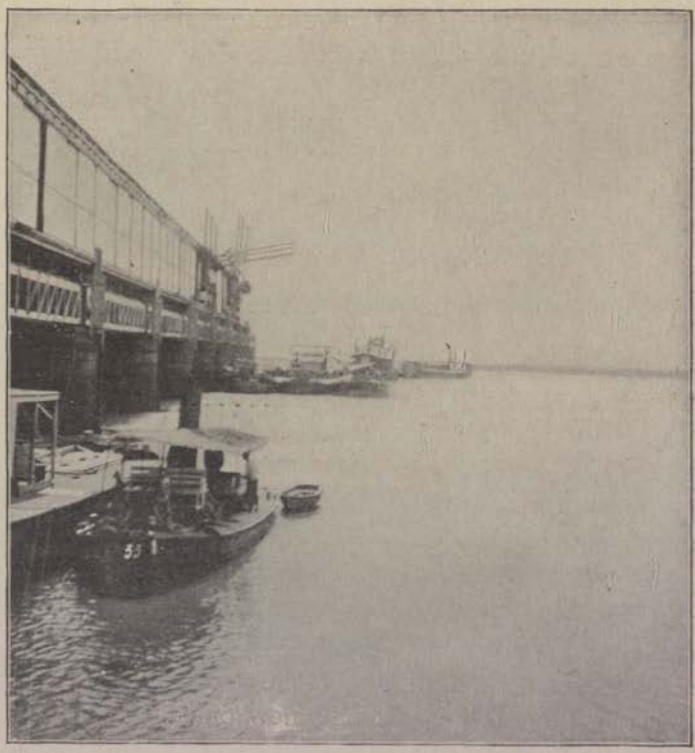
The commission added 10 per cent to this total "to cover omissions, making the total valuation of the" property and rights as now existing, $40,000,000.

In computing the value of the channel excavation in the above tabulation it was estimated that "the total quantity of excavation which will be of value in the new plan is 39,586,332 cubic yards."

392. Offer of New Panama Canal Company to Sell for $40,000,000. —In January, 1902, the new Panama Canal Company offered to sell and transfer to the United States Government all its property and rights on the isthmus of every description for the estimate of the commission, viz., $40,000,000. In order to make a proper comparison between the total costs of constructing the canal on the two routes it is necessary to add this $40,000,000 to the preceding aggregate of $144,233,358, making the total cost of the Panama Canal $184,233,358. It will be remembered that

the corresponding total cost of the Nicaragua Canal would be $189,864,062.

393. Annual Costs of Operation and Maintenance.—It is obvious that the cost of operating and maintaining a ship-canal across the American isthmus would be an annual charge of large



The Railroad Pier at La Boca, the Panama end of the Canal.

amount. A large organized force would be requisite, and no small amount of material and work of various kinds and grades would be needed to maintain the works in suitable condition. The commission made very careful and thorough studies to ascertain as nearly as practicable what these comparative costs would be. In doing this it gave careful consideration to the annual expenditures made in maintaining the various ship-canals of the world, including the Suez, Manchester, Kiel, and St. Mary's

Falls canals. The conclusion reached was that the estimated annual costs of maintenance and operation could reasonably be taken as follows:

For the Nicaragua Canal.....	$3,300,000
For the Panama Canal.....	2,000,000
Difference in favor of Panama.....	$1,300,000

394. Volcanoes and Earthquakes. — Much has been written regarding the comparative liability to damage of canal works along these two routes by volcanic or seismic agencies. As is well known, the entire Central American isthmus is a volcanic region, and in the past a considerable number of destructive volcanic eruptions have taken place at a number of points. There is a line of live volancoes extending southeasterly through Nicaragua and Costa Rica. Many earthquake shocks have occurred throughout Nicaragua, Costa Rica, and the State of Panama, some of which have done more or less damage in large portions of those districts. At the same time many buildings which have been injured have not been substantially built. In fact that has generally been the case. Both routes lie in districts that are doubtless subject to earthquake shocks, but there is little probability that the substantial structures of a canal along either line would be essentially injured by them. The conclusions of the commission as to this feature of the matter are concisely stated in three paragraphs at the top of page 170 of its report:

"It is possible and even probable that the more accurately fitting portions of the canal, such as the lock-gates, may at times be distorted by earthquakes, and some inconvenience may result therefrom. That contingency may be classed with the accidental collision of ships with the gates, and is to be provided for in the same way, by duplicate gates.

"It is possible also that a fissure might open which would drain the canal, and, if it remained open, might destroy it. This possibility should not be erected by the fancy into a threatening danger. If a timorous imagination is to be the guide, no great work can be undertaken anywhere. This risk may be classed

with that of a great conflagration in a city like that of Chicago in 1871, or Boston in 1872.

"It is the opinion of the commission that such danger as exists from earthquakes is essentially the same for both the Nicaragua and Panama routes, and that in neither case is it sufficient to prevent the construction of the canal."

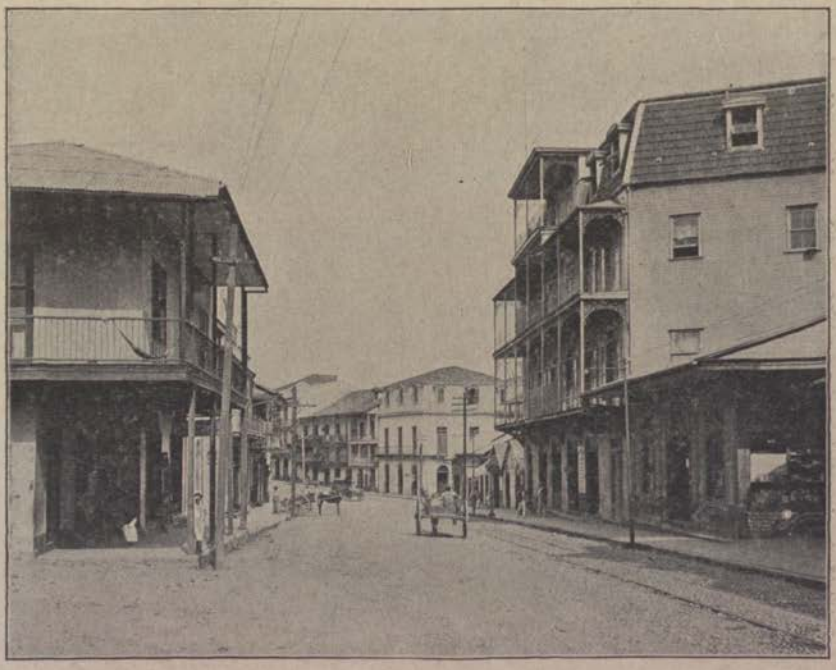
The Nicaragua route crosses the line of live volcanoes running from northwest to southeast through Central America, and the crater of Ometepe in Lake Nicaragua is about 11 miles only from the line. The eruptions of Pelée and Soufriere show that such proximity of possible volcanic action may be a source of great danger, although even the destruction by them does not certainly indicate damage either to navigation or to canal structures at the distance of 11 miles. Whatever volcanic danger may exist lies on the Nicaragua route, for there is no volcano nearer than 175 miles to the Panama route.

395. Hygienic Conditions on the Two Routes.—The relative healthfulness of the two routes has already been touched upon. There is undoubtedly at the present time a vast amount of unhealthfulness on the Panama route, and practically none on the Nicaragua route, but this is accounted for when it is remembered, as has also been stated, that there is practically no population on the Nicaragua route and a comparatively large population along the Panama line. There is a wide-spread, popular impression that the Central American countries are necessarily intensely unhealthful. This is an error, in spite of the facts that the construction of the Panama Railroad was attended with an appalling amount of sickness and loss of life, and that records of many epidemics at other times and in other places exist in nearly all of these countries. There are the best of good reasons to believe that with the enforcement of sanitary regulations, which are now well understood and completely available, the Central American countries would be as healthful as our Southern States. A proper recognition of hygienic conditions of life suitable to a tropical climate would work wonders in Central America in reducing the death-rate. At the present time the domestic administration of most of the cities and towns of Nicaragua and Panama, as well as the generality of Central American cities, is characterized

by the absence of practically everything which makes for public health, and by the presence of nearly every agency working for the diseases which flourish in tropical climates. When the United States Government reaches the point of actual construction of an isthmian canal the sanitary features of that work should be administered and enforced in every detail with the rigor of the most exacting military discipline. Under such conditions, epidemics could either be avoided or reduced to manageable dimensions, but not otherwise. The commission concluded that "Existing conditions indicate hygienic advantages for the Nicaragua route, although it is probable that no less effective sanitary measures must be taken during construction in the one case than in the other."

396. Time of Passage through the Canal.—The time required for passing through a transisthmian canal is affected by the length, by the number of locks, by the number of curves, and by the sharpness of curvature. The speed of a ship, and consequently the time of passage, is also affected by the depth of water under its keel. It is well known that the same power applied to a ship in deep water of unlimited width will produce a much higher rate of movement than the same power applied to the same ship in a restricted waterway, especially when the draft of the ship is but little less than the depth of water. These considerations have important bearings both upon the dimensions of a ship-canal and upon the time required to pass through it. They were most carefully considered by the commission, as were also such other matters as the delay incurred in passing through the locks on each line, the latter including the delay of slowing or approaching the lock and of increasing speed after passing it, the time of opening and closing the gates, and the time of emptying and filling the locks. It is also evident that ships of various sizes will require different times for their passage. After giving due weight to all these considerations it was found that what may be called an average ship would require twelve hours for passing through the Panama Canal and thirty-three hours for passing through the Nicaragua Canal. Approximately speaking, therefore, it may be stated that an average passage through the former waterway will require but one third the time needed for the latter.

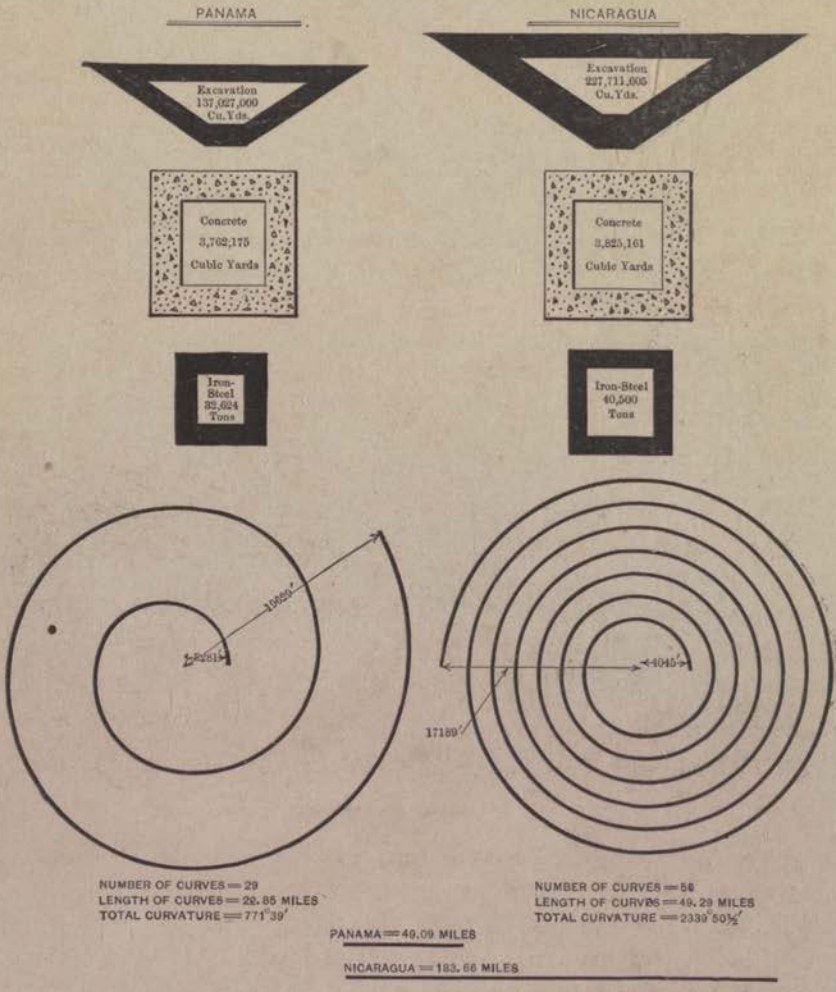
397. Time for Completion on the Two Routes.—The time in which an isthmian canal may be completed and ready for traffic is an element of the problem of much importance. There are two features of the work to be done at Panama, each of which is of sufficient magnitude to affect to a controlling extent the time required for the construction of the canal, viz., the Bohio dam and the Culebra cut. Both of these portions of the work may,



A Street in Panama.

however, be prosecuted concurrently and with entire independence of each other. There are no such features on the Nicaragua route, although the cut through the divide west of the lake is probably the largest single work on that route. In considering this feature of the matter it is well to observe that the total amount of excavation and embankment of all grades on the Nicaragua route is practically 228,000,000 cubic yards, while that remaining to be done on the Panama route is but little more than 97,000,000 cubic yards, or 43 per cent of the former. The

accompanying figures show the relative quantities of total excavation, concrete, iron, and steel required in construction along the two routes, as well also as the total amounts and radii of curvature.



Diagrams comparing some of the main Elements of the two Routes.

The commission has estimated ten years for the completion of the canal on the Panama route and eight years for the Nicaragua route, including in both cases the time required for preparation

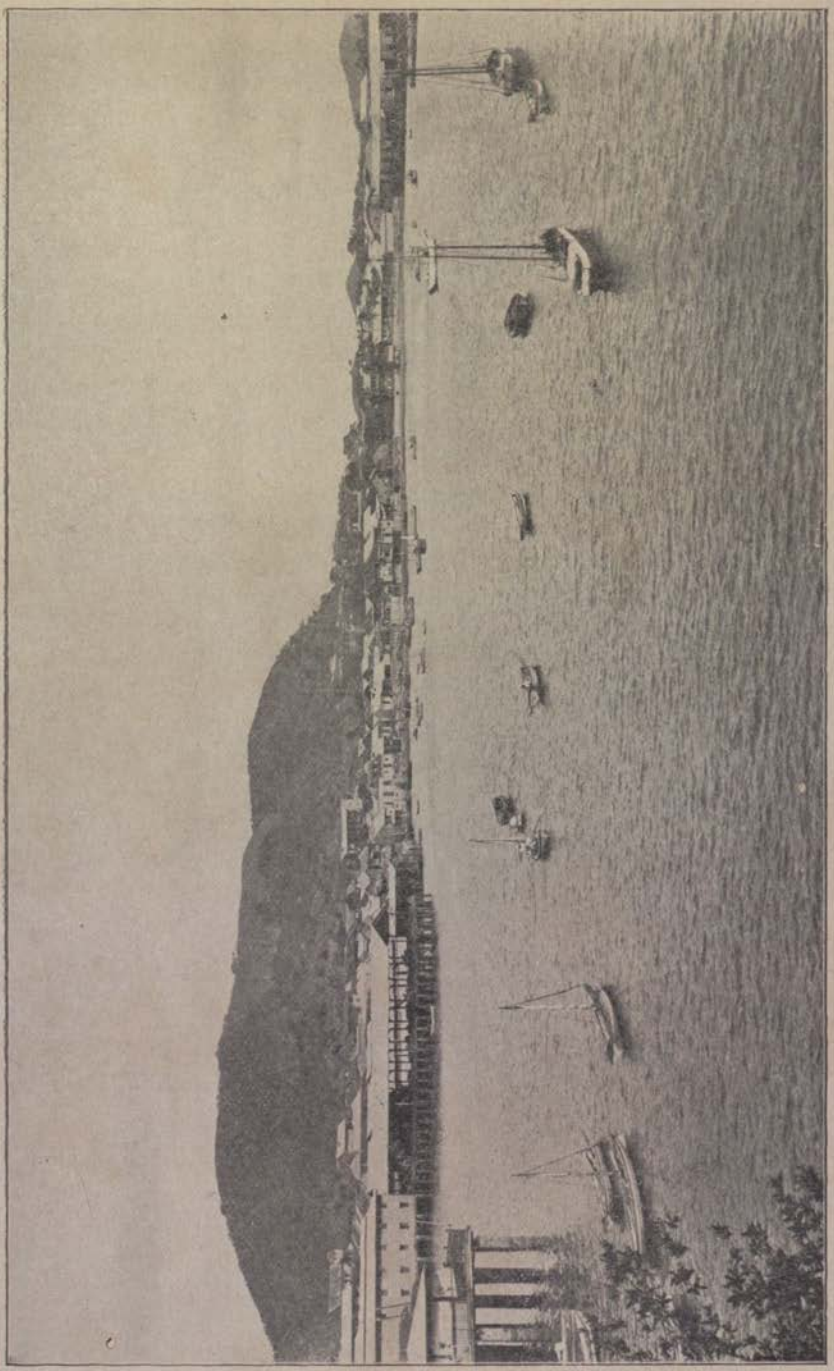
and that consumed by unforeseen delays. The writer believes that the actual circumstances attending work on the two routes would justify an exchange of these time relations. There is great concentration of work in the Culebra-Emperador cut on the Panama route, covering about 45 per cent of the total excavation of all grades (43,000,000 cubic yards), which is distributed over a distance of about 7 miles, with the location of greatest intensity at Culebra. This demands efficient organization and special plant so administered as to reduce the working force to an absolute minimum by the employment of machinery to the greatest possible extent. A judicious, effective organization and plant would transform the execution of this work into what may be called a manufactory of excavation with all the intensity of direction and efficiency of well designed and administered machinery which characterizes the concentration of labor and mechanical appliances in great manufacturing establishments. Such a successful installation would involve scarcely more advance in contract operations than was exhibited, in its day, in the execution of the work on the Chicago Drainage-canal. By such means only can the peculiar difficulties attendant upon the execution of great works in the tropics be reduced to controllable dimensions. The same general observations may be applied to the construction of the Bohio dam, even should a no more favorable site be found.

The greatest concentration of excavation on the Nicaragua route is between the lake and the Pacific, but it constitutes only 10 per cent of the total excavation of all grades, and it can be completed in far less time than the great cut on the Panama route. If this were the only great feature of work besides the dam, the time for completion of work on this route would be materially less than that required for the Panama crossing. As a matter of fact, there are a succession of features of equivalent magnitude, or very nearly so, from Greytown nearly to Brito, extending over a distance of at least 175 miles, requiring the construction of a substantial service railroad over a considerable portion of the distance prior to the beginning of work. This attenuation of work requires the larger features to be executed in succession to a considerable extent, or much duplication of plant

and the employment of a great force of laborers, practically all of whom must be foreigners, housed, organized, and maintained in a practically uninhabited tropical country where many serious difficulties reach a maximum. It is not within the experience of civil engineers to execute by any practicable means that kind of a programme on schedule time. The weight of this observation is much increased when it is remembered that the total volume of work may be taken nearly twice as great in Nicaragua as at Panama, and that large portions between Lake Nicaragua and the Caribbean Sea must be executed in a region of continual and enormous rainfall. It would seem more reasonable to the writer to estimate eight years for the completion of the Panama Canal and ten years for the completion of the Nicaragua Canal.

398. Industrial and Commercial Value of the Canal. — The prospective industrial and commercial value of the canal also occupied the attention of the commission in a broad and careful study of the elements which enter that part of the problem. It is difficult if not impossible to predict just what the effect of a transisthmian canal would be either upon the ocean commerce of the United States or of other parts of the world, but it seems reasonable to suppose from the result of the commission's examinations that had the canal been in existence in 1899 at least 5,000,000 tons of the actual traffic of that year would have been accommodated by it. The opening of such a waterway, like the opening of all other traffic routes, induces the creation of new traffic to an extent that cannot be estimated, but it would appear to be reasonable to suppose that within ten years from the date of its opening the vessel tonnage using it would not be less than 10,000,000 tons.

The Nicaragua route would favor in distance the traffic between our Atlantic (including Gulf) and Pacific ports. The distances between our Atlantic ports and San Francisco would be about 378 nautical miles less than by Panama. Between New Orleans and San Francisco this difference in favor of the route by Greytown and Brito would be 580 nautical miles. It must be remembered, however, that the greater time by at least twenty-four hours required for passage through the Nicaragua Canal practically obliterates this advantage, and in some cases would



View of Panama.

throw the advantage in favor of the Panama waterway. This last observation would hold with particular force if for any reason a vessel should not continue her passage, or should continue it at a reduced speed during hours of darkness, which could not be escaped on the Nicaragua Canal, but might be avoided at Panama. For all traffic between the Atlantic (including Gulf) ports and the west coast of South America the Panama crossing would be the most advantageous. As a matter of fact, while there may be some small advantage in miles by one route or the other for the traffic between some particular points, on the whole neither route would have any very great advantage over the other in point of distance or time; either would serve efficiently the purposes of all ocean traffic in which the ports of the United States are directly interested.

The effect of this ship waterway upon the well-being of the United States is not altogether of a commercial character. As indicated by the commission, this additional bond between the two portions of the country will have a beneficial effect upon the unity of the political interests as well as upon the commercial welfare of the country. Indeed it is the judgment of many well-informed people that the commercial advantages resulting from a closer touch between the Atlantic and Pacific coasts of the country are of less consequence than the unifying of political interests.

In a final comparison between the two routes it is to be remembered that the concession under which the new Panama Company has been and is now prosecuting its work is practically valueless for the purposes of this country. It will therefore be necessary to secure from the republic of Colombia, for the Panama route, as well as from the republics of Nicaragua and Costa Rica, for the Nicaragua route, such new concessions as may be adequate for all the purposes of the United States in the construction of this transisthmian canal. The cost of those concessions in either case must be added to the estimated total cost of the work, as set forth, in order to reach the total cost of the canal along either route:

399. Comparison of Routes.—Concisely stating the situation, its main features may be expressed somewhat as follows:

Both routes are entirely "practicable and feasible."

Neither route has any material commercial advantage over the other as to time, although the distance between our Atlantic (including Gulf) and Pacific ports is less by the Nicaragua route.

The Panama route has about one fourth the length of that in Nicaragua; it has less locks, less elevation of summit level, and far less curvature, all contributing to correspondingly decreased risks peculiar to the passage through a canal. The estimated annual cost of operation and maintenance of the Panama route is but six tenths that for the Nicaragua route.

The harbor features may be made adequate for all the needs of a canal by either route, with such little preponderance of advantage as may exist in favor of the Panama crossing.

The commission estimated ten years for the completion of the Panama Canal and eight years for the Nicaragua waterway, but the writer believes that these relations should be exchanged, or at least that the time of completion for the Panama route should not be estimated greater than for the Nicaragua.

The water-supply is practically unlimited on both routes, but the controlling or regulating works, being automatic, are much simpler and more easily operated and maintained on the Panama route.

The Nicaragua route is practically uninhabited, and consequently practically no sickness exists there. On the Panama route, on the contrary, there is a considerable population extending along the entire line, among which yellow fever and other tropical diseases are probably always found. Initial sanitary works of much larger magnitude would be required on the Panama route than on the Nicaragua, although probably as rigorous sanitary measures would be required during the construction of the canal on one route as on the other.

The railroad on the Panama route and other facilities offered by a considerable existing population render the beginning of work and the housing and organization of the requisite labor force less difficult and more prompt than on the Nicaragua route.

The greater amount of work on the Nicaragua route, and its distribution over a far greater length of line, involve the employ-

ment of a correspondingly greater force of laborers, with greater attendant difficulties, for an equally prompt completion of the work.

The relative seismic conditions of the two routes cannot be quantitatively stated with accuracy, but in neither case are they of sufficient gravity to cause anxiety as to the effects upon completed canal structures.

Concessions and treaties require to be secured and negotiated for the construction of the canal on either route, and under the conditions created by the $40,000,000 offer of the new Panama Canal Company this feature of both routes appears to possess about the same characteristics, although the Nicaragua route is, perhaps, freer from the complicating shadows of prior rights and concessions.

ADDENDUM—1907.

Since the publication of the first edition of this book the selection of the Panama route for the Isthmian Canal has been made, and much work has been accomplished in the progress of construction.

The present Isthmian Canal Commission was created under an act of Congress in the early part of 1904. Within a year after its creation the requisite engineering force had been appointed and organized and a great volume of work had been accomplished by it; a complete sanitary and hospital organization for the entire line of the Canal from Colon to Panama, and effective quarantine systems at both those terminal ports were installed and securing effective results; efficient police forces were organized and an admirable Zone government established for the Canal Zone, including judiciary and school systems. A full code of laws was also enacted by the Commission. The operations of the engineering organization were so efficiently conducted that departments of materials, machinery and supplies, and a commissary were established; buildings and hotels along the entire line were planned and constructed; the double-tracking and re-equipment of the Panama railroad begun; docks and piers at the two termini were constructed, and the actual building of the Canal begun by a force which at the end of the first year had grown to nearly 12,000 men. The organizations thus created and started on the great work have since been continued and developed along the lines so effectively laid down.

The type of canal, *i. e.*, sea-level or lock plan, was a matter of prolonged consideration by an international board of consulting engineers to the Isthmian Canal Commission convened at Washington on September 1, 1905. This board consisted of thirteen members; eight American and five European engineers. Their report, dated January 10, 1906, favored a sea-level plan by a

majority recommendation of eight to five, while the minority of five reported in favor of a lock plan. The President transmitted the reports to Congress with a special message recommending the adoption of the minority, or lock, plan, which was subsequently approved by both houses of Congress in 1906. Since that time work has been progressing on the adopted plan, although the locks recommended by the minority of the International Consulting Board have been increased in size to the dimensions recommended by the majority.

The lock plan on which work is now being done has a summit level, 85 feet above mean sea level. Its total length, including the approach channels, is 49.72 miles. The locks are 1000 feet in usable length by 100 feet usable width. Its main feature is a great earth dam across the Chagres River, at Gatun, 135 feet high above the bed of the Chagres River at that point. The total length of this dam is about a mile and a half. It is proposed to construct a twin system of three locks in series, in a small hill forming a part of the dam site, to be founded in soft rock. Each of these locks has a lift of 28.5 feet.

This dam is about 7 miles from Colon. Gatun Lake, which it forms, backs up the water of the Chagres very nearly to Alhajuela and forms lake navigation from Gatun nearly to Obispo, a distance of about 23 miles. Nearly 13 miles of this distance is almost entirely between submerged banks, and with sharp curvatures. The southerly end of the summit level is formed by twin locks at Pedro Miguel, about 39 miles from Colon and 8 miles from Panama, having a lift of about 31 feet. Three earth dams near La Boca and Tivoli form a terminal lake at the Pacific end of the Canal, with the surface of water in it about 55 feet above mean tide. A twin system of two locks in series founded on rock in Losa will lead down to the tide water of Panama Bay.

Many borings have shown that the great earth dam at Gatun is founded upon pervious material, through which water may find its way with sufficient freedom, at least, to make the security of the structure questionable, and this apprehension may be increased by the recent partial failure of the inner slope of the north dike of the Wachusett reservoir, after which the Gatun structure was largely patterned.

The original estimated cost of this minority lock plan was

about $140,000,000, but omissions and changes have now largely increased this estimate and it is doubtful whether the work can be completed much, if any, under $200,000,000.

The time originally estimated for the construction of the lock plan was 9 years, and about 13 years for the sea-level plan. Recent progress in the excavation of the great Culebra Cut has been such as to indicate that the time required for the construction of the sea-level plan may be much less than at first contemplated. Indeed, advocates of the sea-level plan contend that the asserted saving in cost and time of execution of the lock plan over the sea-level plan would largely, and possibly entirely disappear in actual construction of the work. When these considerations are coupled with the much greater freedom from danger and saving of time in navigating a sea-level waterway, and the much less cost of maintenance and operation of the latter, it is believed by many that a reconsideration of plan in favor of the sea-level canal would be judicious, especially in view of the fact that there would be no great disadvantage in the matter of work done if such a change should be delayed even for a year or two more.

00080547

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 23 January, 2019